k

# *ROHAULT's*
# SYSTEM
# OF
# Natural Philoſophy,

ILLUSTRATED WITH
Dr. *Samuel Clarke*'s NOTES
Taken moſtly out of
Sir *Iſaac Newton*'s Philoſophy.
With ADDITIONS.

## VOL. I.

Done into *Engliſh* by
JOHN CLARKE, D. D. *Prebendary of* Canterbury,
*and Chaplain in Ordinary to His Majeſty.*

*LONDON:*
*Printed for* JAMES KNAPTON, *at the* CROWN
*in St.* PAUL'S-CHURCH-YARD. MDCCXXIII.

BRITISH MUSEUM

## THE

# Tranſlator's Preface.

THE ſeveral Editions which this Treatiſe has paſs'd through, both in *French* and *Latin*, are a ſufficient Teſtimony how acceptable and uſeful it has been to the World, and a juſt Apology for my tranſlating it into *Engliſh*: I ſhall not therefore trouble the Reader with any particular Account either of the Excellency of the Subject, the Abilities of the Author, or the Method he has proceeded in, but refer them all to be judged of by the Book it ſelf: Only as to the Notes the Reader is deſired to take Notice, that therein is a full Anſwer to ſuch Objections made againſt the Author as ſeem not to have any juſt Foundation, and a great many Things in Natural Philoſophy, which have been ſince found out by the Pains and Induſtry of later Philoſophers, are here ſelected from the beſt Writers; and there are alſo ſeveral Things added out of the Obſervations of the ancient Writers of Natural Philoſophy and Natural Hiſtory, where they ſeemed further to explain and illuſtrate Matters: In all which, to avoid Repetition, Gratitude demands that the Reader ſhould know that there are a great many Things owing to the learned and induſtrious Dr. *Laughton*, and to the Reverend Mr. *Morgan*. The former of which communicated a great many Things diſperſed throughout the whole Book, and corrected Abundance of Errours: And ſix whole Diſſertations are owing to the latter, *viz.* Thoſe concerning *The Laws of communicating Motion in elaſtick Bodies*; *The Explication of the Forces of the mechanick Powers*, which are contained in this firſt Part, and thoſe concerning *the Celerity with which heavy Bodies deſcend, the Motion of Projectiles, the Motion of Pendulums, and that concerning the Rainbow*, which are contained in the following Parts.

THE fourth Part of this Work is but ſhort, and not very perfect; wherefore it is thought more adviſeable to refer the Reader to later Writers of Anatomy who have handled that Subject clearly and fully, than to tranſcribe ſo many Particulars. I hope the Whole will be agreeable and acceptable.

# THE
# *Author's* PREFACE.

THE Treatiſes of Natural Philoſophy which have hitherto been publiſhed, being pretty much alike, both as to the Matter of them, and the Manner of handling them; It is eaſy for me to foreſee, that amongſt thoſe who read This, there will be a great many who will be at firſt ſurpriſed at the great Difference there is between this Treatiſe and others. To prevent therefore in ſome Meaſure this Surprize, and to give what Satisfaction I can in this Matter, I think my ſelf obliged to give an Account of the Obſervations which I have made upon the Philoſophy of the Ancients, and of the Method which I have taken in this Work.

In reflecting upon the different Effects of Time, I have long ſince obſerved, how favourable it is to ſome Things, which it is continually advancing to Perfection, and how pernicious it is to others, ſo as to ſtrip them of thoſe Beauties and Graces which they had at their firſt Riſe; and I always concluded that Arts and Sciences cannot be of the Number of theſe latter, but that Time is ſo far from being prejudicial to them, that on the other Hand it is very advantagious. For as a great Number of Perſons who cultivate the ſame Art or Science for ſeveral ſucceeding Ages, add their own Induſtry, and their new Light to the ancient Diſcoveries of thoſe who went before them, it is impoſſible but that ſuch an Art or Science muſt receive great Improvement, and arrive nearer and nearer to its utmoſt Perfection.

AND thus I ſaw that Mathematicks did really increaſe by little and little in this Manner; as it is eaſy for any one to be convinced of, who conſiders only the vaſt Progreſs that hath been made by the great Genius's of our Time, who have excelled all others in this Particular, and ſurmounted ſuch Difficulties as the moſt Learned in former Ages confeſſed they were not able to ſolve. I ſaw alſo that moſt Arts were perfected by Time; Workmen every Day finding out a Multitude of curious Inventions, which are not ſo much eſteemed as they deſerve, becauſe they are very common, and we do not enough take Notice of them. Though amongſt thoſe Engines which are employed in making Things of common Uſe, there is one that has been lately invented, which has in it ſo much Contrivance, that this ſingle Thing deſerves to be more admired than all the Inventions of Antiquity.

BUT when I came to conſider Philoſophy, particularly Natural Philoſophy, I was very much ſurprized to ſee it ſo barren as not to have produced any Fruit, in ſo much that twenty Ages have paſſed, without any new Diſcovery made in it.

HOWEVER I could not perſuade my ſelf, that the Study of Natural Things was neglected, becauſe it was thought to be of no Uſe; for Health has always been eſteemed one of the chief Bleſſings of Life, and no one can be ignorant, that Phyſick, the ſole End of which is to maintain and reſtore Health, is built upon Natural Philoſophy.

NOR could I ever perſuade my ſelf, that thoſe who improved this Science were leſs ingenious, than common Artiſts: For we find by Experience that in Families where there are a great many Children, when they come to make Choice of their Profeſſions, thoſe of them which have the quickeſt Genius, are appointed for Study, or voluntarily incline themſelves to it; and thoſe only whoſe Underſtanding is not ſo good, apply themſelves to the mechanical Arts, and are contented with their Lot.

HEREUPON I ſuſpected, that perhaps the Knowledge of Natural Things was above the Reach of humane Underſtanding, ſo that it was in vain to labour to attain that which is beyond our Capacity: But when I conſidered the ſurprizing Things done by ſome Philoſophers of our own Age, who within forty or fifty Years have found out Things which were looked upon as moſt difficult, and which ſome have doubted, whether ever they could be found out at all; I immediately caſt off this Suſpicion.

So that I was forced to conclude, that the *Manner* of philoſophizing, was the Thing that had hitherto been miſtaken, and that the Errors *therein* which have been introduced, being ſuch as no Body had any Hopes of finding out a Remedy equal to, were a certain Bar to hinder the Approaches towards Truth. I ſet my ſelf then to enquire wherein the *Manner* of their treating Philoſophy was defective; and after having examined with the greateſt Diligence poſſible, what the Method has been from the Schools of the *Athenians* down to this very Time; there ſeemed to me to be four Things blameable in this Matter.

*Firſt*, The too great Authority that hath always been given to the Ancients in the Schools: For beſides that this prodigious Difference which is put between them and the Moderns, is without the leaſt Foundation; for Reaſon is to be found in every Place and every Age; it is certain that ſuch a blind Submiſſion to the Opinions of Antiquity, is the Cauſe why Perſons of the greateſt Genius, receiving ſuch Opinions for true without conſidering them, when perhaps they may be falſe, have not an Opportunity of knowing the contrary Opinions, nor conſequently of finding out all thoſe other Truths that depend upon thoſe which ſo fatal a Prejudice has hindred them from ſeeing. And further, this ſtrong Perſuaſion of our being ſo much inferiour to the Ancients, cauſes in us a Kind of Sluggiſhneſs and Diffidence, which hinders us from attempting to enquire into any Thing at all. We imagine that Reaſon is limited at the Place where they ſtopped, and that all is done that can be done humanely ſpeaking, if we go as far as they went. Thus the greateſt Genius's contenting themſelves with going over the Reaſonings of the Ancients, don't exerciſe their own Reaſon at all; and though they be never ſo capable of finding out any Thing themſelves, they contribute no more to the advancing Natural Philoſophy, than if they had not meddled with it all.

I ſay nothing in particular of that Veneration which hath been paid to *Ariſtotle*, though ſometimes it has riſen to ſuch an Exceſs, that to alledge that he ſaid ſuch a Thing, was ſufficient to make any One not only to doubt of what his Reaſon convinced him, but even to condemn it. I ſhall only make this Obſervation; that the Imagination which a great many have had, that he knew all that could be known; and that all Science was contained in his Books, hath cauſed the greateſt Part of the beſt Philoſophers ſince to apply themſelves in vain to read his Works, to find out in them what was not there, and what they might perhaps otherwiſe have found out by their own Ingenuity. But if there have been ſome who, not being quite ſo zealous as others, did not hope to reap ſo very much Fruit from reading him; yet it always happened that the Deſire of recommending themſelves by explaining thoſe Places which he left obſcure (on Purpoſe, as ſome think, or elſe for Want of better Light) hath made them imploy their whole Strength of Mind, and all their leiſure Time, to very little Purpoſe, in writing Comments upon his Philoſophy, without promoting the Science at all: For thoſe who have undertook to explain *Ariſtotle*; have underſtood him ſo differently, that there are an infinite Number of Places which all the Schools are divided about; And if there be ſome few in which they have agreed, it is becauſe the Notions contained in them were ſo common, that very few Perſons were ignorant of them. So that they took more Pains to ſtudy *Ariſtotle* than they did to ſtudy Nature, which perhaps is not near ſo myſterious as he. There are a Multitude of Things which Nature plainly declares to thoſe who apply their Mind thereto. But alas, this is not the Cuſtom, we had rather hearken to *Ariſtotle* and the Ancients; and this is the Reaſon why we make ſo little Progreſs.

ANOTHER Thing which hinders the Progreſs of Natural Philoſophy, is the Treating

ing thereof in a Manner too metaphyſical; and the Diſputing about Queſtions ſo abſtract and general, that though all Philoſophers were agreed in their Notions of them, yet they could not help to explain the leaſt particular Effect in Nature; whereas every uſeful Science ought to deſcend immediately to Particulars. For Inſtance, what good do thoſe long and nice Diſputes do, *about the Diviſibility of Matter?* For though it could not be accurately determined, whether it be infinitely diviſible or no; it would be ſufficient to know, that it can be divided into Parts ſmall enough to ſerve for all Purpoſes that can be.

It is very uſeful, without doubt, to find out the Nature of Motion in general. And it may not be very improper to examine a little whether it be well or ill defined thus, *The Act of a Being in Power, ſo far forth as it is in Power.* But we ſhould not ſpend too much Time in determining this, and ſuch like Queſtions; I ſhould rather think, that after having conſidered a little the true Nature of Motion in general, we ſhould particularly and diſtinctly examine all the Properties of it, ſo that what we affirm concerning it, may be applied to ſome Uſe; In a Word, I think we ſhould carefully enquire into the Cauſe why Matter produces ſuch a particular Effect rather than any other, and not accuſtom ourſelves to ſay that it is the Effect of a certain *Quality*; for from hence it is that we are led to give

Words inſtead of Reaſons, and hence ariſes that ſenſeleſs Vanity of thinking that we know more than others, becauſe we know Words which the common People don't know, and which indeed have no determinate Meaning. To ſay the Truth; it ſhows a mean Spirit, and one that is ſoon ſatisfied; to believe that we know more of Nature than other Men, becauſe we have learn'd that there are occult Qualities, and can give a general Anſwer to all Queſtions propoſed to us concerning the different Effects of Nature. For what Difference is there in the Anſwer of a Plowman and a Philoſopher, if they are both asked, whence is it, for Inſtance, that the Loadſtone attracts the Iron, and the one anſwers, that he does not know the Reaſon of it, and the other ſays, it is done by ſome Vertue or occult Quality? Is not this in plain *Engliſh*, to ſay the ſame Thing in different Words? and is it not evident, that all the Difference there is betwixt them is only this, that the one is ſo honeſt as to confeſs his Ignorance, and the other has the Vanity to endeavour to conceal his?

A third Defect which I have found in the Method of Philoſophers, is, that ſome of them are wholly for Reaſoning, and depend ſo much upon the Strength of their Arguments (eſpecially if they be borrowed from the Ancients) that they judge it ſuperfluous to make any Experiments. Others on the contrary, quite tired with ſuch tedious Arguments,

guments, the greateſt Part of which are not concluſive, or are nothing to the Purpoſe, think every Thing ought to be reduced to Experiment, and that there ſhould be no Reaſoning at all. But both theſe Extremes do equally hinder the Progreſs of Natural Philoſophy. For they who fall into the firſt of theſe Errors, hinder themſelves of the beſt Means of finding out new Diſcoveries, and of confirming their own Arguments likewiſe; And they who fall into the ſecond, by depriving themſelves of the Liberty of drawing Concluſions, hinder the Knowledge of a large Train of Truths, which may many Times be deduced from one ſingle Experiment. Wherefore it cannot but be very advantagious to mix Experiments and Arguments together. For Reaſoning perpetually, and upon ſuch general Things only as are ordinarily argued about, without deſcending to Particulars, is by no Means the Way to attain any very extenſive or very certain Knowledge: Thus we ſee the ſame Things continually bandyed about, and no new Diſcoveries made; nay, we are not very ſure of the old ones, as general as they are. We ſee alſo that they who confide moſt in thoſe Arguments which they believe to be *Ariſtotle*'s, are in perpetual Diſpute, and that they contend for Opinions which are directly contrary to one another, without being able to convince thoſe of the other Side by their Arguments. And this plainly ſhows how little Certainty or Evidence there is in their bare Reaſoning.

EXPERIMENTS therefore are neceſſary to eſtabliſh Natural Philoſophy; and this was a Thing which *Ariſtotle* was ſo fully convinced of, that the Reaſon why he thought that very young Perſons ſhould not apply themſelves to the Study of Natural Philoſophy, was, becauſe at that Age they are ſo little acquainted with Things, as to be unable to have made many Experiments; and on the other Hand he was of Opinion, that they were then moſt capable of receiving Mathematicks, becauſe this Science conſiſts of meer Reaſoning, of which the Mind of Man is naturally capable, and does not at all depend upon Experiments.

BUT on the contrary to reject entirely all Reaſoning, in Order to do nothing but make Experiments, is to run into another Extremity much more prejudicial than the former. For this is wholly to diſcard Reaſon, and yield all up to Senſe, and to contract our Knowledge into a very narrow Compaſs; for by Experiments we can come to the Knowledge of groſs and ſenſible Things only. Wherefore if we would proceed rightly in our Enquiries into natural Things, we muſt of Neceſſity mix theſe two Means of Knowledge together and join Reaſon with Experiments.

AND that we may the better ſee the good Effects of theſe two when joined together, and the Uſe that may be made of them, to the Advantage of Natural Philoſophy; we may obſerve that there are three Sorts of Experiments. The firſt is, to ſpeak properly, only the mere ſimple uſing our Senſes; as when accidentally and without Deſign, caſting our Eyes upon the Things around us, we cannot help taking Notice of them, without thinking of applying what we ſee to any Uſe. The ſecond Sort is, when we deliberately and deſignedly make Tryal of any Thing, without knowing or foreſeeing what will come to paſs; As when, after the Manner of Chymiſts, we make Choice of firſt one Subject and then another, and make all the Tryals we can think of upon each of them, and carefully remember what we have at any Time found to ſucceed, and the Manner in which we arrived at any certain Effect, in Order to apply the ſame Means another Time to produce the ſame Effect. We alſo make Experiments in this ſecond Way, when we go amongſt different Sorts of Workmen in Order to find out the Myſteries of their Arts, as Glaſsmakers, Enamellers, Dyers, Goldſmiths, and ſuch as work different Sorts of Metals, and to obſerve how they prepare their Matters, and how every one of them afterwards work upon thoſe which belong to them. Laſtly, The third Sort of Experiments are thoſe which are made in Conſequence of ſome *Reaſoning* in order to diſcover whether *it* was juſt or not As when after having conſidered the ordinary Effects of any particular Subject, and formed a true Idea of the *Nature* of it, that is, *of That in it which makes it capable of producing thoſe Effects*; we come to know by our Reaſoning, that if what we believe concerning the *Nature* of it be true, it muſt neceſſarily be, that by diſpoſing it after a certain Manner, a new Effect will be produced, which we did not before think of, and in Order to ſee if this Reaſoning holds good, we diſpoſe the Subject in ſuch a Manner as we believe it ought to be diſpoſed in Order to produce ſuch an Effect.

Now it is very evident that this third Sort of Experiments is of peculiar Uſe to Philoſophers, becauſe it diſcovers to them the Truth or Falſity of the Opinions which they have conceived. And as to the two foregoing ones, though they be not altogether ſo excellent, yet they ought not to be wholly rejected as of no Uſe to Natural Philoſophers: For beſides that their Knowledge is continually enlarged by them, they are alſo the Occaſion of making the firſt Conjectures concerning the Nature of thoſe Subjects which Natural Philoſophers are converſant about; and preſerve them from ſome falſe Notions they might otherwiſe perhaps have entertain'd. Thus, for Inſtance, we might have concluded in general, that *Cold contracts and condenſes every Thing*, if we had not diſcovered by Chance or otherwiſe, that there are Things which are dilated by Cold.

THE fourth Defect that I obſerved in the Method of Philoſophers, is the neglecting Mathematicks to that Degree, that the very firſt Elements thereof are not ſo much as taught in their Schools. And yet, which I very much wonder at, in the Diviſion which they make of a Body of Philoſophy, they never fail to make Mathematicks one Part of it.

NOW this Part of Philoſophy is perhaps the moſt uſeful of all others, at leaſt it is capable of being apply'd more Ways than all the others: For beſides that Mathematicks teach us a very great Number of Truths which may be of great Uſe to thoſe who know how to apply them: They have this further very conſiderable Advantage, that by exerciſing the Mind in a Multitude of Demonſtrations, they form it by Degrees and accuſtom it to diſcern Truth from Falſehood infinitely better, than all the Precepts of Logick without Uſe can do. And thus they who ſtudy Mathematicks find themſelves perpetually convinced by ſuch Arguments as it is impoſſible to reſiſt, and learn inſenſibly to know Truth and to yield to Reaſon; inſomuch that if inſtead of neglecting them, as is uſually done, it were an eſtabliſhed Cuſtom, to make Children apply themſelves to this Science at firſt, and to improve them in theſe Studies as much as we do in others; it would be of vaſt Uſe to hinder them from contracting that invincible Obſtinacy in their Opinions which we ſee in the greateſt Part of thoſe who have compleated their Courſe of Philoſophy; who probably would not have fallen into ſo pernicious a Temper of Mind, if they had been accuſtomed to, and familiar with convincing Truths; and not ſeen thoſe who maintain in publick any Doctrine whatever, continually triumph over thoſe who endeavour to ſupport the contrary; ſo that all Things ſeem to them only mere Probabilities. They do not look upon ſtudying as a Means to diſcover new Truths, but only as a Piece of Wit to exerciſe themſelves in, the only End of which is ſo to confound Truth with Falſehood by Means of ſome ſubtle Diſtinctions, that the one or the other may be equally maintained, without ever being compelled by any Reaſons to yield, let the Opinion they defend be never ſo extravagant. And indeed this is the Event of all publick Diſputes, where very often Opinions directly contrary to each other, are by Turns propoſed from the ſame Chair, and equally triumphed in, without making Matters at all clear or eſtabliſhing any Truth thereby.

But the great Advantage that natural Philoſophers have from Mathematicks in particular, is, that they are thereby accuſtomed to the viewing of Figures, and enabled to underſtand the different Properties of them. I know it is here objected by ſome, that we ought not to ſtop at Fgures becauſe they are not *active*. But though they are not *active* in themſelves, yet it is certain notwithſtanding that their *Differences* make Bodies which we put into Action capable of certain Effects, which otherwiſe they could not have produced. Thus a Knife by having an Edge ſet upon it becomes capable of cutting, which before it was not; and Workmens Tools, by their different Figures, are fitted to produce thoſe different Works which are made by the Help of them. And if the Figures of Bodies which come under our Senſes are ſo neceſſary to the Effects which they produce, it is reaſonable to think that the moſt imperceptible Parts of Matter, ſeeing they have every one a certain Figure, are alſo capable of producing certain Effects in Proportion to their Bigneſs, like thoſe which we ſee produced by the groſſeſt Bodies.

BUT not to enter too far into Particulars concerning the great Uſe of Mathematicks, Is it not enough to put us upon applying ourſelves more to them than we have hitherto done, to conſider that 'tis by their Means that the modern Philoſophers have diſcovered all that is excellent and peculiar in natural Philoſophy? And alſo that it is by the Help of Mathematicks, that the moſt celebrated Artiſts in every Age have made all thoſe noble Diſcoveries, the Uſe of which is ſo advantagious to us at this very Time, and which make all the Variety of Arts and all the Conveniences of Life. It may be ſome may think on the contrary,

that

that theſe very Artiſts, the greateſt Part of whom it is very probable have not much applied themſelves to this Science, will juſtifie it, that it is not ſo neceſſary as I would perſuade them. But here there are two Things to be conſidered: Firſt, that as there is a natural Logick in all Men, ſo is there alſo natural Mathematicks, which according as their Genius's are diſpoſed, make them more or leſs capable of Invention. Secondly, That if their Genius alone, conducted only by natural Light, will carry them ſo far, we cannot but hope greater Things from the ſame Genius if the Study of Mathematicks be added to its natural Light, than if that Study be neglected. And indeed all the Propoſitions in Mathematicks, are only ſo many Truths, which thoſe, who apply themſelves to it, come to the Knowledge of by good Senſe. And they who find themſelves naturally diſpoſed to it, do very ill to neglect what others have before diſcovered: For it is the moſt certain Way of finding out any Thing new, to know all that has been before found out by others, and the Manner how it was found out.

HOWEVER, I don't put them upon the Rank of Inventors who have met with ſomething by Chance which they did not ſearch after: As was the Caſe of that Workman who by cooling on a ſudden in the Water a Piece of Steel which he had heated red-hot, found it in a Moment very much harder than it was before: It was without doubt a very lucky Thing to find out this Way of tempering Steel; but the Workman who had the good Fortune to hit upon it, does not deſerve the Name or Title of an Inventor; as a great many others do who are not beholden to Chance for the Glory of their Inventions: As for Inſtance, the Perſon who firſt invented a Fire-lock to a Gun; for it is certain that this latter had the whole Engine in his Head, if I may ſo ſpeak, before he made the leaſt Part of it, whereas the other found out the Way of tempering Steel, by hitting upon a Thing, as was before ſaid, by Chance, which he did not ſearch after.

*Laſtly*, THAT Mathematicks are of very great Uſe in the other Parts of Philoſophy, we need no other Teſtimony than that of the moſt celebrated ancient Philoſophers, who not only ſpeak honourably of them in their Writings, but do alſo make uſe of them themſelves. It is ſufficiently known, that *Plato* cauſed it to be written over his School Door, *That none but Geometricians ſhould enter in there*. And they who have taken the Pains to read over the Works of *Ariſtotle*, have taken Notice of the ſeveral Applications he has made of Mathematicks in many Places; ſo that they who do not underſtand the Elements at leaſt, have no great Reaſon to boaſt of their being able to underſtand the Writings of this Philoſopher.

THE more I conſider theſe four Defects in the Method of Philoſophers, the more I find it impoſſible to come to the Knowledge of philoſophical Truths, without correcting them. And this does not appear to me to be very difficult; for though I had made ſome Proficiency in Mathematicks, and accuſtomed my ſelf to follow Reaſon rather than Authority, yet I did not find my ſelf ſuch a Lover of my own Reaſonings, as to neglect Experiments, nor ſo bent upon Experiments, as not to ſuffer my Reaſon to go beyond what they diſcovered.

BUT though this was ſufficient to put me upon improving natural Philoſophy, and to make me hope that I might be able in ſome Meaſure to help forward the Progreſs of this Science; yet I obſerved a fifth Defect, not in the *Method* of thoſe who ſtudy Philoſophy, but in *that* of a great many who read their Works; which made me think, that to publiſh any Thing upon natural Philoſophy, was ſo far from being any Advantage, that it was but too much to expoſe one's ſelf. For that Averſion which is uſual againſt ſuch Perſons, and that diſagreeable Manner in which thoſe who are uncapable of finding out any Thing themſelves, receive the Writings of ſuch as attempt to exceed what is common, often hazard the Reputation of the Author. For ſcarce can a Philoſopher preſent the Publick with any Fruits of his Studies, but ſome unknown Perſon who has a Mind to ſignalize himſelf,

ſelf, attacks them before he underſtands them. And hence come thoſe trifling Diſcourſes or Diſſertations, for the moſt Part anonymous ones, which never fail immediately to appear, wherein are ſeldom any Thing elſe but Reproaches and very low Jeſts; and not being able to overthrow Truths that are ſo firmly eſtabliſhed; they try to turn them into Ridicule, by ſhowing that they are contrary to ſome ancient Maxim or popular Error, which tickle the Ears of half-witted People, who are accuſtomed to take Things without any Proof: And that which is very remarkable here, is, that theſe Writers for the moſt Part attack the Works of others only becauſe they think them contrary to *Ariſtotle*; and yet becauſe they have read nothing of this Philoſopher but only thoſe Citations which they found in their philoſophical Lectures, it very often happens that the Thing which they thus attempt to confute, is what *Ariſtotle* himſelf has ſaid in expreſs Terms. We may ſafely affirm, that the Ancients did more Juſtice to Men's Labours, and without doubt it was in a good Meaſure owing to this, that Philoſophy made ſome Progreſs in the firſt Ages of it; ſo far were they from ſuffering thoſe who had made any new Diſcoveries, to be cried down at a Venture and without any Reaſon; every Body knows that there were publick Rewards appointed for ſuch; even to have ſometimes Statues erected to them; ſo firmly were they perſuaded in thoſe Times that Honour contributed moſt to the Invention of Arts.

It is true indeed, that this Maxim ſeems to be revived and re-eſtabliſhed in our Age. Yet though Princes have by their Authority approved and favoured Arts and Sciences, the long Stiffneſs which they who ſtudied natural Philoſophy have in ſo many Ages contracted, have ſo accuſtomed them to reſt ſatisfied with what they received from their Predeceſſors, that the very propoſing any new Thing, is enough to render both the Thing and him that propoſes it odious. Now to take away the Foundation or rather the Pretence of this Averſion, ſuch Perſons ought to know, that this Reproach of Novelty is generally a great Deceit: For if a Thing be true, it cannot be new, becauſe nothing is ſo ancient as Truth, and it is the Diſcovery of the oppoſite Errour only that can be ſaid to be new. For Want of rightly diſtinguiſhing theſe two Things, we often ſee ſome Perſons crying out that we overthrow the Order of Nature, when we only overthrow a falſe Opinion which they were prejudiced in. But though ſuch Sort of Perſons have not much Reaſon on their Side, yet the Credit and Authority which they may have over others, is the Cauſe of their Exclamations always making an Impreſſion upon the Minds of a great many; and this muſt ever be diſagreeable to thoſe who have no other Deſign,

ſign, bnt to contribute to the Publick Good.

WHAT a Vexation muſt it be to Dr *Harvey*, for Inſtance, to ſee all his Life long, how ill the Diſcovery he had made of the Circulation of the Blood, was received; the Motion of which was quite different from what the Ancients thought? Surely we cannot ſhow too great an Acknowledgment to a Man who had undeceived the World of an ancient Errour, and by the Truth which he eſtabliſhed, made us ſee as clear as the Day, that almoſt all the Theory of the Phyſick of the Ancients was falſe. But how many Enemies has this Doctrine got him inſtead of Thanks? I ſolemnly declare therefore, that upon ſeeing what Liberty is taken to oppoſe the beſt Things, becauſe the Misfortune of Mens having always been ignorant of them, made them to be thought new; I laid aſide the Thoughts of ever entertaining the Publick with any Thing of my own, or what I learned from the Works of ſome modern Writers. But thus much I thought at leaſt, that it was not impoſſible to advance a little further than is generally done in the Knowledge of Natural Things, if I carefully avoided falling into any of thoſe Defects which I obſerved in the Method this Study was in at preſent. And indeed having ſpent ſome Years in reading the Ancients and Moderns, but with a firm Reſolution not to follow them any further than I could ſee the Reaſons of each of them; it appeared to me that my Deſign was not entirely fruſtrated. But while I was thus inſtructing my ſelf by reading Books, and converſing with learned Men, and thoſe that were excellent in any Art, I never laid aſide the Uſe of my Reaſon, but conſidered the ſeveral Subjects, and endeavoured always to ground my Reaſons upon mathematical Truths, and ſure Experiments. And ſo good Succeſs had I in carrying on my Deſign, that a great many of my Friends, whoſe Abilities all the World, I ſaw, had a great Value for, adviſed me to communicate it to others by publick Conferences, or at leaſt by private Converſation. I muſt ſay, that it was very difficult to perſuade my ſelf to this, becauſe I am diſtruſtful of my ſelf, and do not think my ſelf Oratour good enough to undertake to plead the Cauſe of Truth thus publickly. However I ſuffered my ſelf to be over-ruled; and though I was ſenſible I wanted a great many Talents, yet I ſubmitted to my Friends, who aſſured me, that if the Things were plainly propoſed, and in a mathematical Way, they would be acceptable at leaſt to the beſt Judges. And indeed their Advice ſucceeded: For theſe Conferences were not only agreeable, but it was wiſhed that the Subjects had been put down in Writing. And by conſenting to this Opinion of my Friends, I perceived that I had inſenſibly wrote a Book; and becauſe there were ſo many Copies of it about, that it was become,

come, as it were, publick, and a great many Faults ſlipp'd in, I reſolved to review it more exactly, in Order to perfect it as much as I could. They who read it over, will eaſily ſee, that I have overlooked nothing that is good in the Ancients.

I have taken all the general Notions from *Ariſtotle*, either for the eſtabliſhing the Principles of natural Things, or the chief Properties of them: And I have rejected *a Vacuum* and *Atoms, or Epicurus's indiviſible Particles*, which I think are Things contrary to what is firmly eſtabliſhed by *Ariſtotle*; and I have learnt of him to conſider with the greateſt poſſible Care the different Bigneſſes, Figures, and Motions of the inſenſible Parts of which ſenſible Things are compoſed. And this I was the readier to do, becauſe all theſe Things have a neceſſary Connexion with, and Relation to *the Diviſibility of Matter*, which I acknowledge with *Ariſtotle*, who hardly reſolves any particular Queſtion, without conſidering the Bigneſs, Figure, and Motion of the Parts of Bodies, and the Pores which are between them. But that which moſt of all determined me to this Conſideration, was, that though there ſeems to me to be a juſt Ground to doubt of the Truth of ſome *Qualities* and *Powers* commonly aſcribed to ſome Bodies, yet I do not think that there is the ſame Reaſon to doubt of their being compoſed of *inſenſible Parts*, or that I can be deceived in affirming that all theſe Parts have their particular Figure and Bigneſs.

Besides thoſe Aſſiſtances which I had from the Ancients, I have alſo collected a great many other Truths, from the moſt eminent modern Philoſophers, whoſe Names you may find in their Places. But the Perſon whom I have moſt of all made Uſe of in this Work, and whoſe Name I have not mentioned at all, to avoid perpetual Repetition, is the famous *Cartes*; whoſe Merit, by which he becomes more and more known to all the Nations in *Europe*, as he has long been to many of the principal States, will draw a Confeſſion from the whole World, that *France* is at leaſt as happy in producing and educating great Men in all Sorts of Profeſſions, as ancient *Greece* was.

I have divided this Work into four Parts, The firſt treats of natural Bodies in general, and their principal Properties, ſuch as *Diviſibility*, *Motion and Reſt*, *of Elements*, *and of ſenſible Qualities*, and I have particularly inſiſted upon explaining thoſe which relate to *Seeing*. And I flatter my ſelf that upon this ſingle Subject I have collected more Truths into eight or nine Chapters than are contained in ſeveral large Volumes which treat of Opticks, Dioptricks and Catropticks after the Manner of the Ancients.

The ſecond. treats of *the Syſtem of the World, or of Coſmography*, which I thought might prove more uſeful than the general Queſtions that are uſually propoſed in the common Books of natural Philoſophy, which are as it were Commentaries upon *Ariſtotle's* Books *concerning the World.* I have alſo treated of *the Nature of the Stars and their Influences.* And after having explained wherein *Gravity* and *Levity* conſiſt (which I could not ſpeak of in the firſt Part, not having premiſed what was neceſſary,) I conclude this Part with explaining the *Flux and Reflux of the Sea.*

THE third Part is taken up in explaining the Nature of the *Earth* and of *terreſtrial Bodies,* that is, of the Bodies contained in it, or which ſurround it, as *Air, Water, Fire, Salts, Oyls, Metals, Minerals, and Meteors.*

*Laſtly,* I have endeavoured in the fourth Part to compriſe all that is hitherto, with any Certainty, known of the *Animal Body.*

ONE Thing perhaps will be obſerved in the Method I have taken, *viz.* that I have been pretty long and particular, in explaining, in the firſt Part of this Book, all the ſenſible Qualities, which Philoſophers uſually explain, and that but briefly, at the End of their Treatiſes of Philoſophy, in which they comment upon theſe Books of *Ariſtotle's concerning the Soul.* The Reaſon of which is, becauſe this teaches us to know ourſelves, and becauſe hereby we are ſeaſonably freed from a popular Errour, and a Prejudice which we have entertained from our Infancy, which I have known by Experience a great many never to have been able to get rid of, not even after they have gone through their whole Courſe of Lectures, but have brought back from the Schools thoſe Habits they carried thither, *viz.* the aſcribing their own Senſations to the Objects which cauſe them, and the conſidering theſe Senſations as Qualities in the Objects.

FURTHER, you will not find a great many Things in this whole Treatiſe contrary to *Ariſtotle*; but you will find more than I could wiſh that are contrary to moſt of the Commentators upon him: And beſides this, you will meet with a great many Things, which neither *Ariſtotle* nor his Followers have treated of at all, which I have however judged more uſeful than many others which Philoſophers have wholly imployed themſelves in. And in all this I did not think it very ill in me to depart from ſome particular Notions, when I found that theſe Notions were diſagreeable to Truth.

BUT what has very much abated thoſe Scruples which I had about this Matter, is, that when I came to compare thoſe Places in this Treatiſe which are contrary to *Ariſtotle*, with the Writings of the publick Profeſſors of his Philoſophy, I could not find near ſo many in my own Works as in the Works of others. And without enumerating the Particulars, it is eaſy to be ſatisfied herein, If we do but conſider, that there is ſcarce any Queſtion in Controverſy, but one half of them draw Concluſions directly contrary to the other half. Whence it follows, that we muſt neceſſarily find in the Writings of thoſe who profeſs to teach the Doctrines of *Ariſtotle*, as many Places againſt him as for him.

But though all the Philoſophers did agree with each other and with *Ariſtotle*, I don't ſee that this Agreement of theirs ought to force me to be of their Opinions, nor that Philoſophers can pretend that I am obliged to follow them, in what I am fully perſuaded and convinced they are in the wrong of. For ſince it is the Cuſtom with them to propoſe the Matters which they treat of, in the Form of Queſtions, this very doubting Manner of theirs ſhows that there is a perfect Liberty of taking that Side which we think to be moſt reaſonable. In what Manner my good Intentions will be received Time will ſhow. However, I am preparing a *Latin* Verſion for the Uſe of Foreigners, with whom I hope to meet with a favourable Reception.

# The CONTENTS
## OF
## PART I.

CHAP. 1. *The Meaning of the Word Phyſicks, and the Manner of treating ſuch a Subject.*
2. *An Examination of the Notions that preceed the Study of Natural Philoſophy.*
3. *The Manner of applying Philoſophy to particular Subjects.*
4. *A Caution concerning Words.*
5. *The principal Axioms of Natural Philoſophy.*
6. *Of the Principles of Natural Things.*
7. *Of Matter.*
8. *Some Corollaries of the foregoing Notion.*
9. *Of the Diviſibility of Matter.*
10. *Of Motion and Reſt.*
11. *Of the Continuation and Ceſſation of Motion.*
12. *Of ſuch Motions as are commonly aſcribed to the Fear of a* Vacuum.
13. *Of the Determination of Motion.*
14. *Of the Compoſition of Motion and of its Determination.*
15. *Of Reflexion and Refraction.*
16. *Of hard Bodies put into Liquors.*
17. *Of Accretion, Diminution, and Alteration.*
18. *Of Forms.*
19. *Of Elements according to the Opinion of the Ancients.*
20. *Of the Elements of the Chymiſts.*
21. *Of the Elements of natural Things.*
22. *Of the Form of a Hard and of a Liquid Body, or of Hardneſs and Liquidity.*
23. *Of Heat and Cold.*
24. *Of Taſtes.*
25. *Of Smells.*
26. *Of Sound.*
27. *Of Light and Colours, and of Tranſparency, and Opakeneſs.*
28. *A Deſcription of the Eye.*

29. *How Viſion is commonly explained.*
30. *Of the Paſſage of the Light through the Humours of the Eye.*
31. *What we mean, when we ſay, that the Images of the Objects are impreſſed upon the Organs of Sight.*
32. *How Viſion is performed.*
33. *Of Dioptricks.*
34. *Of Looking-Glaſſes.*
35. *A Solution of ſome Problems concerning Viſion.*

## PART II.

1. *OF the Meaning of the Word Coſmography, and the Uſefulneſs of the Science.*
2. *General Obſervations.*
3. *Conjectures how to explain the apparent Motions of the Stars.*
4. *Of the principal Points, Lines and Circles, which are imagined to be upon the Superficies of the World.*
5. *Of the chief Uſes of the Circles of the Sphere of the World.*
6. *Obſervations about the Sun's Motion.*
7. *Conjectures how to explain the Phænomena of the Sun.*
8. *Obſervations and Conjectures about the fixed Stars.*
9. *Obſervations about the Moon.*
10. *Conjectures whereby to explain the Phænomena of the Moon.*
11. *Of Eclipſes.*
12. *Of the true Bigneſs of the Earth, Moon, and Sun, and of their Diſtance from each other.*
13. *Of the Phænomena of* Mercury *and* Venus.
14. *Conjectures for explaining the Phænomena of* Mercury *and* Venus.
15. *Of the Phænomena of* Mars, Jupiter, *and* Saturn.
16. *Conjectures whereby to explain the Phænomena of* Mars, Jupiter *and* Saturn.

An Explication of the Phænomena, upon Suppoſition that the Earth turns about its own Center in Twenty-four Hours.
17. *A Caution about the Poles and the Circles.*
18. *An Explication of the Sun's Phænomena.*
19. *An Explication of the apparent Motion of the fixed Stars.*
20. *An Explication of the Motions of* Mercury *and* Venus.
21. *An Explication of the Motion of* Mars, Jupiter *and* Saturn.
22. *An Explication of the Moon's Motion.*
23. *Of the Syſtem of* Tycho-Brahe.
24. *Reflections upon the Hypotheſes of* Ptolemy, Copernicus, *and* Tycho.
25. *Of the Nature of the Stars.*
26. *Of Comets.*
27. *Of the Influences of the Stars, and of judicial Aſtrology.*
28. *Of Gravity and Levity.*
29. *Of the Flux and Reflux of the Sea.*

## PART III.

1. *Of the Earth.*
2. *Of the Air.*
3. *Of Water.*
4. *Of Salt.*
5. *Of Mineral Oil.*
6. *Of Metals.*
7. *Of Minerals.*
8. *Of the Load-Stone.*
9. *Of ſubterraneous Fires and Earthquakes.*
10. *Of Fountains.*
11. *Of Winds.*
12. *Of Miſts and Clouds.*
13. *Of Rain, Drizzle, Dew, and Evening Damps.*
14. *Of Snow, Hail, and Hoar-Froſt.*

15. *Of Honey-Dew, extraordinary Rain, and Manna.*
16. *Of Thunder, Lightning, and Thunderbolts.*
17. *Of the Rain-bow.*

## PART IV.

1. OF *the Things contained in this Fourth Part.*
2. *A general Deſcription of the larger Parts contained in a humane Body.*
3. *Of the Brain, Nerves, and Muſcles.*
4. *Of the Heart.*
5. *Of the Veins and Arteries.*
6. *Of the Lacteal and Lymphatick Veins.*
7. *Of the Tongue and ſalival Ducts.*
8. *Of the Lungs.*
9. *Of the Liver.*
10. *Of the Spleen.*
11. *Of the Kidneys and Bladder.*
12. *Of the Motion of the Blood.*
13. *Of the Pulſe, or Beating of the Heart and Arteries.*
14. *What Time the Blood circulates in.*
15. *Of natural Heat.*
16. *Of Nouriſhment and Growth.*
17. *Of the Animal Spirits, and of the Motion of the Muſcles.*
18. *Of Reſpiration.*
19. *Of Waking and Sleeping.*
20. *Of the Concoction of Meat.*
21. *Of the Motion of the Chyle.*
22. *How the Blood is made.*
23. *Of the Excrements.*
24. *Of Hunger and Thirſt.*
25. *Of Sickneſs and Health.*
26. *Of a Fever.*

# ERRATA.

| *Page* | *Line* | *for* | *read* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 37 | 36 | 325745 | 325795 |
| 50 | 7 | $\frac{A^2a \pm ABb}{A+B}$ | $\frac{A^2a \mp ABb}{A \pm B}$ |
| ibid. | 28 | $\frac{2Aa \pm Bb \mp AB}{A+B}$ | $\frac{2Aa \pm Bb \mp Ab}{A+B}$ |
| 52 | 29 | $\frac{Aa \pm 2Bb - Ab}{A+B}$ | $\frac{Aa \pm 2Bb - Ba}{A+B}$ |
| 55 | 13. | *dele* Attraction | |
| 82 | 32. | *dele* CD | |
| 83 | 4. | EN | FN |
| 90 | 28. | Center A | Center B |
| 91 | 29. | Superficies C | Superficies CF |
| 95 | Sect. 12. | in the Margin, *add* Tab. III. Fig. 3. | |
| 98 | 32. | the Body A | the Body I |
| 135 | *penult.* | meet other | meet each other |
| 161 | 21. | DE | DF |
| 163 | 36. | *dele* them | |
| 243 | *Margin* | Tab. VII. Fig. 2. | Fig. 1. |
| 283 | in the *Margin* of the *Notes*, *add*, | Tab. XVIII. Fig. 4. | |

23 JY 63

**PART II.**

| *Page* | *Line* | *for* | *read* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 51 | 10. | *Pole of the Heavens which is ſeen,* | *apparent Pole of the* (*Heavens* |
| 98 | *ante-penult* | deficient | efficient |
| 103 | 4. | PC | PG |
| 105 | 32. | GB | GD |
| 107 | 45. | in | to |
| 108 | 43. | AB | AD |
| ibid. | 38 | E will approach | the Point F will approach |
| 126 | 4. | required | acquired |
| 160 | 40. | Grain of Sand, *add* is made | |
| 164 | 38. | touch the Load-ſtone, *add* firſt | |

ROHAULT's

# *ROHAULT's* SYSTEM OF Natural Philoſophy.

## PART I.

### CHAP. I.

### *The Meaning of the Word Phyſicks, and the Manner of treating ſuch a Subject.*

*1. The Meaning of the Word Phyſicks.*

THIS Word, *Phyſicks*, ſtrictly ſpeaking, and according to the Etymology of it, ſignifies no more than *Natural*; but we here uſe it to ſignify the Knowledge of natural Things, that is, that Knowledge which leads us to the Reaſons and Cauſes of every Effect which Nature produces.

*2. That it is needleſs to ſtop at previous Queſtions.*

2. But becauſe we muſt firſt ſtudy natural Philoſophy, before we can be certain whether there be any ſuch thing as Phyſicks or no; I ſhould not proceed in a proper Method, if I ſhould here undertake to reſolve this Difficulty.

I ſhall not therefore at all inſiſt on this, nor any other Queſtions which are commonly called *previous* ones. We had better at firſt remain in ſome kind of Doubt about theſe ſort of Queſtions; but ſuch a Doubt only, as ought not in the leaſt to hinder us from uſing our utmoſt Endeavours to acquire this Knowledge, and to obtain the End propoſed, without neglecting any Thing, that may ſerve to illuſtrate the Truth, and explain the Effects of Nature.

*3. That the Notions of the Antients may be injurious.*

3. One Thing we ought particularly to take notice of, and that is, that all they who apply themſelves to the Study of Natural Philoſophy, are not Perſons utterly ignorant; for by their Converſation with learned Men, by reading of Books, by Experiments, and particular Obſervations, their Minds are filled with variety of Notions. But becauſe, perhaps, we have given too much Credit to the Reports of others, or perhaps have not throughly examined what we have received by our own Senſes, or have impoſed upon our ſelves by falſe Reaſoning; therefore we are not to think, that there is any great Advantage to be had from that Knowledge which is got by theſe Means: On the contrary, it may be very injurious, becauſe the Errors imbibed in our tender Age, before we could make a right Uſe of our Reaſon, may cauſe us to fall into ſtill greater ones.

*4. That they ought to be re-examined.*

4. Wherefore if we would proceed regularly, we muſt lay aſide all our old Prejudices, and reject them as falſe; not that we are immediately to embrace the contrary Opinions as true, but only ſo to diſpoſe our Minds, as to give Credit only to thoſe Things which we have throughly examined; and to begin natural Philoſophy at the very Beginning. But ſeeing this is a very difficult Task, and it is hard to bring our ſelves to it, becauſe we eaſily perſwade our ſelves, that amongſt the Errors that have privately crept in, there have been alſo a great many Truths, which ought by no means to be rejected; we will therefore go in the common Method, and retaining as many of our antient Opinions as we can, we will endeavour to lighten that Burden which cannot but be very heavy. And we muſt be very unreaſonable indeed, if we will not review our old Notions, and ſubmit them to a freſh Examination.

# CHAP. II.

## *An Examination of the Notions that precede the Study of Natural Philoſophy.*

*1. The VVhole of natural Philoſophy may be comprehended under two Heads.*

THE Notions which precede the Study of Natural Philoſophy, may be reduced to two general Heads. For firſt, we know that there are *Things* really *exiſting* in the World; and from hence we think we know, at leaſt in part, *what* they are. Theſe two Conſiderations are principally to be attended to, that our propoſed Examination may be as univerſal as poſſible. Let us firſt ſee what Motives there are to induce us to believe, that there are certain *Things* really *exiſting* in the World; and then let us ſee what Reaſon we have to believe them to be *ſuch* as we judge them to be.

*2. How we come by the Knowledge of our own Exiſtence.*

2. And to begin with our own ſelves; we know by experience, that we are capable of diverſe *Thoughts*, which cannot be in us, but they muſt be perceived. The *Idea* of *Exiſtence* is one of theſe *Thoughts*; and our natural Reaſon teaches, that *Nothing can have no Properties*, and that *what thinks, muſt exiſt*. Hence it is plain how we come by the Knowledge of *our own Exiſtence*. For every Man muſt neceſſarily reaſon in this manner: *I think*; that which thinks muſt of neceſſity *exiſt*; therefore *I exiſt*.

*3. That our Mind is known to us ſooner than our Body, and that theſe are two really diſtinct Things.*

3. A Man who comes to the Knowledge of his Exiſtence in this manner, knows himſelf only to be ſomething that exiſts, the *Idea* of which does not include *Extenſion* in it. It is true, he may have an *Idea* of a Thing *extended* into *Length, Breadth*, and *Height*; but becauſe this *Idea* does not at all include *Thought* in it, the *Thing* that *thinks*, and the *Thing* that is *extended*, are to be looked upon as two *Things* really different from each other; and there is no Reaſon hitherto for ſuch a Perſon to think himſelf an *extended* Thing. And becauſe *That* which *thinks*, which is in us, which we know before all other Things, which we imagine not to be extended, is what we call our *Soul* or *Spirit*, and *That* which we conceive to be extended in Length, Breadth, and Height, and to which we imagine Thought does not belong, is what we call our Body; it is evident, that our *Soul* or *Spirit* is known to us ſooner than our *Body*.

*4. That we have no other knowledge of the Exiſtence of thoſe Bodies of which the World is compoſed, but by the different ways of knowing that are in us.*

4. As to thoſe Bodies of which the World is compoſed, (amongſt which our own is to be reckoned) it is certain we cannot know that they exiſt, but by *the different Ways of Knowledge* which are in us; and in order to know if we have made a right Uſe of them, we will here conſider each of them diſtinctly.

*5. What theſe Ways of Knowledge are.*

5. The different *Ways* of Knowledge that are in us, may all be reduced to theſe Four: *viz. Perception, Judgement, Reaſon*, and *Senſation.*

*6. What is meant by Perception or Imagination.*

6. By *Perception* is meant ſimple Apprehenſion, or the ſimple *Idea* which we have of Things, without affirming or denying any thing concerning them; whether this *Idea* raiſes any Image in our Minds, and ſo is called *Imagination*, or raiſes no Image, and ſo has only the general Name of *Perception* given to it. Thus when we hear the Word *Tree*, the *Idea* which we then form in our Minds, is an *Imagination*; but when we ſpeak of a Thing which cannot be repreſented by any Image, as of *Doubtfulneſs*; the *Idea* which we then have, is only ſimple *Perception.*

*7. What is meant by Judgement.*

7. *Judgement* is the joining or disjoining of two Things by the Mind, when, according to the different manner of its conceiving them, it affims or denies the one or the other. Thus when we ſay, that *the Earth is round*, we join together the two Things which we underſtand by the Words Earth and Roundneſs, and this is called *Judgement:* So alſo when we ſay that *the Earth is not round*, that is, disjoin thoſe Words; this is alſo called *Judgement.*

*8. What is meant by Reaſon.*

8. *Reaſon* is a Judgement that depends upon a former Judgement. For Example: After I have judged, *that no even Number can be compounded of five odd Numbers*, and alſo, *that the Number Twenty is an even Number*, and thence conclude, *that the Number Twenty cannot be divided into five odd Numbers*; this is called, *Reaſoning.*

*9. What is meant by Senſation.*

9. *Senſation*, is *Touching, Smelling, Taſting, Hearing* and *Seeing.*

*10. That Perception alone is not a ſufficient Aſſurance of the Exiſtence of any Thing.*

10. Firſt, it is evident, that the *bare Perception* of a Thing is not ſufficient to convince us that the Thing it ſelf exiſts; for Inſtance, becauſe I can *conceive* a *Triangle*, it does by no means from thence follow, *that a Triangle exiſts.*

*11. Neither does Judgement alone fully convince us of the Exiſtence of Things.*

11. It is certain alſo, that our *Judgement* alone is not ſufficient to convince us of the Exiſtence of any Thing. For though we cannot help paſſing our *Judgement* upon many Things; for Inſtance, *That if two Things be equal to a Third, they are equal to each other; that if Equals be added to Equals, their Sums will be equal*, &c. notwithſtanding which, we do not certainly know, that any Things that are equal or

unequal exiſt, and the Truth of our *Judgement* agrees only to the Things that may poſſibly exiſt.

*12. That Reaſon does not convince us that any Thing exiſts without our ſelves.*

12. We may alſo *reaſon* infinitely various ways; and by this means all the Mathematical Truths are diſcovered, which are ſo different from one another, and from the Principles from which they are deduced: But becauſe the Conſequences have a ſtrict Relation to the Antecedents, and can contain no more in them than they; and we have already ſeen that our *Judgement* does not prove that any *Thing* exiſts; it follows, that our *Reaſoning* proves no more than this, that Things without us may poſſibly exiſt.

*13. The Exiſtence of God may be proved by Reaſon.*

13. However, [1] there is *one* Exception to this Rule, and that is, *God:* For whoever has the *Idea of Him*, may by Reaſon be aſſured of his Exiſtence, if he be conſidered as a Being every way perfect, and if Exiſtence be owned to be a Perfection. But I ſhall not here enter into the Particulars of this Demonſtration; the Dignity of this Subject merits to be treated of particularly by it ſelf.

*14. That we ought to make uſe of our Senſes to prove, that the Things without us exiſt.*

14. But ſince we are here ſpeaking only of natural Things, and our *Perception*, *Judgement*, and *Reaſon* alone do not prove their Exiſtence, we muſt certainly have recourſe to our *Senſes* before we can judge that they exiſt. And we cannot know whether our *Senſes* do ſufficiently prove this, nor in what manner they prove it, unleſs we firſt define what we mean by *Senſation*.

*15. The Way to know diſtinctly what Senſation is.*

15. Long Cuſtom makes us many times reaſon with ſo much eaſe and readineſs, that very often, Reaſon and Senſation go together, when we think that Senſation only is concerned: Wherefore that we may not confound the one with the other, and ſo be led into Error, let us examine this Matter in other Perſons. Let us ſuppoſe a Man juſt born, and that he was in an extraordinary manner endued with the Judgement and Prudence of a grown Perſon; and, that we may examine only one Senſe at a time, let us ſuppoſe that his Eyes are not yet open, and, that he is put into a Place, where there is no kind of Smell or Noiſe.

*16. An Example in a Needle.*

16. Now in order to find out what the *Senſe* of **Feeling** is; let this Man's Arm be prick'd with a Needle. It is manifeſt, that he will feel the ſame ſort of Pain that we feel, when at any time we are pricked with a Needle, becauſe we ſuppoſe him to be ſuch a ſort of a *Man* as we

---

[1] *There is one Exception*,) How the Idea of God proves his Exiſtence, See *Carteſ. Princip. Part.* 1. *Artic.* 14. and *Regis Metaphyſ. Lib.* I. *Part.* 1. *Cap.* 5. But this is too nice and ſubtle an Argument; that drawn from the Variety, Beauty, Order, and Diſpoſition of the Creation, does much more fully and ſtrongly infer *a God.*

are: Now abſtractedly from any Judgement or Reaſoning, it is evident, that *Senſation* in this Man is nothing elſe, but the being affected with a certain Pain, which belongs to himſelf only. So that if any Perſon were ſo weak as to believe, that a like Pain was in the Needle, we ſhould certainly know for all that, that it was not the very Pain which the Man by Senſation felt.

17. *That we feel the pricking, and nothing elſe.*

17. Let us make ſome Reflection here: In the *Senſation* now mentioned, there are four Things obſervable: Firſt, A *Man* capable of Senſation: Secondly, A *Needle*, or the Object that raiſes the Senſation: Thirdly, *The Action of a Needle* upon the Body, in which it produces ſome Change: Laſtly, *The Effect of the Action of the Needle, and of the Paſſion of the Body*, namely, *the Pricking*, or *the Pain*. Now ſince 'tis this Laſt only that is known, we muſt conclude, that this *Senſation* not being attended with any Judgement or Reaſon, is nothing elſe but a *confuſed Perception* ariſing from the new State of the Mind, which does not any way make known to us this new State, nor the external Object which cauſes it, and is the Occaſion of the Senſation.

18. *This Example teaches us what the Senſations of Feeling, Taſting and Smelling are.*

18. From what has been ſaid of that *Pain* which is cauſed by a Needle, it is eaſy to apprehend the ſame thing of the other Sort of Senſations, ſuch as *Feeling*, *Taſting*, and *Smelling*. For ſuppoſe the naked Arm of the forementioned Perſon to be lightly touched with a *Feather*, or any other ſoft Thing; ſuppoſe a *red-hot Coal*, or a *Piece of Ice* to be laid on any part of his Body; ſuppoſe *a Drop of Wine* poured on his Tongue, or a *Roſe*, or any other *ſweet-ſmelling Thing* put to him; we can eaſily underſtand, that *the Tickling*, *the Heat*, *the Cold*, *the Taſte*, and *the Smell*, which this Man perceives, are all within himſelf, and belong to him in the ſame manner as the *Pain* did.

19. Ariſtotle *had good Reaſon to affirm, that Senſation and Paſſion were the ſame.*

19. And ſince there is no Reaſon why we ſhould think differently of the Senſations of *Hearing* and *Seeing* than of the others, we may look upon it as certain, that *Sound*, and *Light*, and *Colours*, are as much in us as *Pain* or *Tickling*. Wherefore we may ſay with *Ariſtotle*,[1] *that all Senſation is a kind of Paſſion*, and when we have any Senſation, whatever ſort it be, we know very well what the Objects raiſe in us, but we don't know what they are in themſelves.

---

[1] Ariſtot. de Anima. Lib. 2. cap. 5. *Senſation conſiſts in being put into Motion, and is a ſort of Paſſion, as was ſaid before; for there ſeems to be ſome Change or Alteration made in us*, and again, chap. 11. *Senſation is a ſort of Paſſion.*

*20. A vulgar Error.*

20. But this is not the general Opinion of Mankind, who, on the contrary, are apt to think, that the *Sound* which they hear, is in the *Air*, or in the *ſounding Body* as they call it; ſo alſo that the *Light* and *Colours* which they ſee, are in the *Flame* or the *Tapeſtry* which they look upon; and the Reaſon of it is this, becauſe we do not feel [1] *Sound*, and *Light*, and *Colours* within our ſelves, as we do *Pain* and *Tickling*, but aſcribe them to external Things; and beſides, the *Colours* which we ſee, oftentimes ſeem to be much bigger than our ſelves.

*21. The common Notion refuted by many Experiments.*

21. But to ſhow that theſe Reaſons are not of any Weight, we need only conſider, that very often we have a Perception of a Multitude of Things, which we think are without us, and are a great deal bigger than our ſelves, when at the ſame time there really is nothing without us, that is the Cauſe of that Perception.

*22. I. Experiment.*

22. *Firſt*, In *Dreams* we very often hear Sounds, and ſee Colours, in the ſame manner as if we were awake, and we aſcribe thoſe Sounds and Colours to external Objects; and we imagine thoſe Colours to be much larger than our ſelves; though there is indeed nothing without us, to which they can truly be aſcribed.

*23. II. Experiment.*

23. *Secondly*, Perſons in a Phrenſie, or in a violent Fever, ſee alſo Things without them, which really are not ſo.

*24. III. Experiment.*

24. *Thirdly*, We often hear a *Ringing* in our *Ears*, or a certain Sound which we judge to be at a great diſtance, when the Cauſe of it is very near us.

*25. IV. Experiment.*

25. *Fourthly*, A *Candle*, or any other ſmall Object, at a little diſtance, appears double to a Perſon in Drink; or if we preſs the Corner of our Eye with our Finger; ſo that there will then appear to be two Objects, when we certainly know, that there really is but one.

---

[1] *Sound, and Light, and Colours*, &c.) In order to account for theſe Prejudices, we may obſerve, 1. That Pain and Tickling do much more ſtrongly affect us, and make a greater Change in the State of the Mind, than Sound, and Light, and Colours; ſo that they are ſooner and more eaſily taken notice of, and imagined to belong to us, and to be in us. 2. When Sound, and Light, and Colours, are at firſt perceived, there is always ſomething before us, that acts upon us, and to which we aſcribe them: But Pain and Tickling often ariſe from an inviſible Alteration of the ſmall Particles of the Body, that is, from a Cauſe at firſt unknown to us: Therefore we are a long while uſed to look upon theſe as ſomething in us; 'till there appears to be ſomething without us, to which they may be aſcribed; and afterwards, when we do ſometimes experience, that they proceed from various external Things, we are ſtill apt to think, that they are not in thoſe external Things, but in our ſelves, becauſe we have been uſed to think ſo.

26. V. *Experiment.* 26. *Fifthly,* If in the Dark we wink with our Eyes upon the *Flame of a Candle* at a little diſtance, we ſhall imagine, that we ſee Rays of Light, which ſeem to ſtream from the Flame upwards and downwards in the Air; and yet there is no doubt, but that thoſe Rays ariſe from the Senſation of him that perceives them, and that out of him they are nothing; if we conſider, that other Perſons who look upon the Candle at the ſame time, do not ſee them; and the Perſon himſelf who ſees them when he winks, ceaſes to ſee them the Moment that he opens his Eyes, and looks more intently.

27. *There is ſomething remarkable in this Experiment.* 27. We ſhall be more fully ſatisfied, that theſe Rays are not in the Place that we imagine them to be, by this Conſideration; If they were there, it would follow, that upon putting a dark Body between the Eye and the Place where they appear to be, they muſt immediately vaniſh; but they do not vaniſh, but on the contrary are ſeen ſtill, only a little nearer, *viz.* between the Eye and the dark Body that interpoſes. But that which is moſt obſervable in this Experiment, is, that if the dark Body be raiſed by little and little, as if the lower Rays were intended wholly to be hidden by its Interpoſition, they will be ſtill ſeen, when the upper ones wholly diſappear; which could not be, if the Rays were really in the Place which they ſeem to be in.

28. VI. *Experiment.* 28. *Sixthly,* We ſee the Colours through a triangular Glaſs Priſm, very bright, and exactly like the Colours in the Rainbow; theſe we certainly know are not where they appear to be.

29. VII. *Experiment.* 29. Of this kind are the Experiments of *Looking-Glaſſes and Multiplying-Glaſſes,* which repreſent Objects to us, where we are ſure they are not.

30. VIII. *Experiment.* 30. We muſt not here omit an Experiment of thoſe Perſons who have loſt any of their Limbs, an Arm, or a Leg, who, many Months, and ſometimes many Years after they are cured, feel frequent Prickings, and other Senſations, which they cannot help judging to be without them, *viz.* in thoſe Places where their Fingers or Toes would have been, if they had not been cut off. This Judgement is evidently a Miſtake, it being certain, that this Senſation is within themſelves, and not where they take it to be.

31. *A Difficulty which ariſes from the common Cuſtom of Speaking.* 31. This Experiment, together with all the foregoing ones, plainly ſhow, that we have within our ſelves the Senſations of many Things, which we cannot help thinking are without us, though they really are not; and were it not for the common Way of Speaking, which is the uſual

ſual Reaſon given, we ought wholly to lay aſide that vulgar Notion, which we have entertained in our Minds from our Infancy, *viz. that they are without us.* For (may any one ſay) as he who touches a Stick, has reaſon to believe, that the Stick is ſomething without him that touches it; ſo when any one ſays, that he ſees a Colour, he has Reaſon to ſay, that the Colour which he ſees, is ſomething different from him that ſees it, and belongs to the Object.

*32. The common way of ſpeaking explained.*

32. But it is eaſy to get clear of this Difficulty, if we obſerve, that all Languages do not afford equal Plenty of Words upon every Subject. Thus for Example, in the *Latin* Tongue, the Word *Animal* is uſed to expreſs the Kind, under which the whole Species of Animals is contained; the Words *Man* and *Horſe*, are uſed to ſignify thoſe Species; and the Words *Peter* and *Paul*, *Bucephalus* and *Bayard*, to ſignify the Individuals of thoſe Species: But the Caſe is different in the preſent Subject; we uſe indeed in our Language the Word *Senſation*, by which we underſtand, in general, every Perception which we have by the means of Bodies; we have alſo the Words *Feeling*, *Taſting*, *Smelling*, and *Hearing*, to ſignify the particular Species of thoſe Senſations; but if we would deſcend to any thing ſtill more particular; we then want Words, and are forced to make uſe of a general Name, with which we only joyn ſome other Word, to determine its Signification: Whence it follows, that when we ſay, for Example, that *we feel the Heat*, or that *we ſee the Colour*, if we forbear Reaſoning about them, and attend only to the bare Senſation; the *Feeling* ought no otherwiſe to be diſtinguiſhed from the *Heat*, nor the *Seeing* from the Colour, than in any Species,[1] the *Genus* is diſtinguiſhed from the *Difference*: For the Colour and the Heat are Senſations which belong to our own ſelves only, and are nothing more than our own Perceptions.

---

[1] *The Genus is diſtinguiſhed,* &c.) The Author's Meaning is this, that many People are led into Error, by the Forms of ſpeaking; as when by reaſon of the Fewneſs of Words, our Meaning cannot be expreſſed but by more Words than one; thus when we ſay, that *we ſee Redneſs*, or *feel Heat*; they ſo underſtand it, as if by one of theſe Words we intended to ſignify the Senſation it ſelf, and by the other, to ſignify ſomething without us, which is the Cauſe of that Senſation. Now if what we call *ſeeing Redneſs*, and *feeling Heat* could be expreſſed by one word, as *Pain*, which is the ſame Thing as *feeling Pain*, or *Tickling*, which is the ſame as *feeling Tickling*, are expreſſed by one Word; we ſhould eaſily apprehend, that the *Redneſs* which we perceive by our Sight, and the *Heat* which we perceive by our *Feeling*, are no more without us, than the *Pain* which we feel when our Arm is pricked with a Needle; or the *Tickling*, when it is touched lightly with a Feather.

*33. The Conformity there is betwixt Sight and Feeling.*

33. Though I have been already too long in ſhowing that *what we perceive ſimply by Sight, is wholly within our ſelves*; I would yet make appear the entire Conformity there is betwixt Seeing and Feeling. Let us conſider then, that when an Object of Feeling affects the Body but lightly, it raiſes in us indeed a real Senſation, but it is ſo weak an one, that it is gone as ſoon as the Object ceaſes to touch the Organ of Senſation; ſo likewiſe, if the Object of Light be weak, it is no ſooner removed from our Eyes, but we ceaſe to ſee it. And as an Object of Feeling, which ſtrikes us with a greater Force, excites a Senſation, which remains after it is ſeparated from the Organ; in the ſame manner alſo, a very ſtrong Object of Sight, raiſes a bright Senſation, which continues for ſome time, though we do not look upon it, but turn our Head another way. Thus if any one looks full upon the Sun, and immediately goes into a dark Place, he will ſee the Sun there, and ſome Sparklings of it.

*34. That we have made uſe of ſeveral Means of Knowledge, in order to be convinced that Things exiſt without us.*

34. From what has been ſaid concerning our *Senſes*, and *the Manner of Senſation*, ſince it is evident, that they make known to us only what is in us, and belongs to us; it is alſo as certain, that they are not alone ſufficient to prove to us, that any Thing at all exiſts without us which does not belong to us; and this having been already ſhown of *every particular Means of Knowledge*, we muſt neceſſarily conclude, that we have made uſe of *ſeveral of thoſe Means* in order to be convinced that Things do exiſt without us.

*35. The Method which we proceed in.*

35. The Method we ſeem to have proceeded in, is this. Firſt, Senſation: Next, we obſerve, That this Senſation is ſometimes in our own Power, and ſometimes not: Whence we infer, that we our ſelves are not the ſole Cauſe of our own Senſations; that we contribute ſomething towards them, but not ſo much, but that we depend alſo upon ſome other Cauſe; and ſo we begin to ſee, that we do not exiſt alone, but that [1] there are many other Beings exiſting together with us in the World.

*36. The Exiſtence of Things cognizable by our Senſes, is made known to us principally by Reaſoning.*

36. Whoever acknowledges this Truth, muſt confeſs, that he has been in an Error ſo long as he thought that the Exiſtence of Things without him was proved by his Senſes;

---

[1] *There are many other Beings*, &c.) But even this does not ſeem ſufficiently to demonſtrate, that corporeal Things exiſt: and indeed it does not ſeem capable of a ſtrict *Demonſtration*. See *Malbranch. Annot. Chap.* 10. *Book*. 1. *of his Search after Truth*. We muſt acquieſce in this; That God has not created us in ſuch a manner, that every Judgement which we make of Things exiſting without us, ſhould be inevitably falſe. See *Carteſ. Princip. part* 2. *Artic*. 1.

ſes; for all that theſe can do, is only to be the Occaſion of knowing them; and it is chiefly from Reaſoning that we are aſſured of their Exiſtence.

*37. How we know that there are many ſorts of Bodies exiſting.*

37. In the ſame manner as we conclude from one ſingle Senſation, that one Thing exiſts; we conclude alſo from different Sorts of Senſations, that there are different Things exiſting; all which, becauſe we imagine them to be extended in Length, Breadth, and Thickneſs, we call *Bodies*.

*38. How we come to the Knowledge of our own Body in particular.*

38. Amongſt theſe Bodies, there is one which we conſider differently from the reſt, and are obliged, in a ſpecial manner, to look upon as our own; not only becauſe it is always preſent with us, but alſo, becauſe, when any Alteration is made in it by other Things, it cauſes certain Senſations in us; and on the other hand, certain Thoughts in us, produce certain Alterations in that. Thus if I will to move my Arm, it is preſently moved; but if I will to move another Body, that will not be put into motion by my Will alone.

*39. We are not to think that there are as many Things exiſting without us, as we have different Senſations.*

39. We may further obſerve, that after the foregoing Reflections have convinced us that our Body is compoſed of many different Parts, ſome of which are the *Organs* of Senſation; the different Senſations we have, are no longer a certain Proof of the Exiſtence of a Number of Things without us: For there is juſt Reaſon to ſuſpect, that the ſame Object may raiſe different Senſations in us, by acting upon different *Organs*; and therefore though the Fire by affecting our Eyes when it is at a great diſtance, raiſes the Senſation of Light; and when it is near, raiſes the Senſation of Heat by affecting our Hands; yet we cannot from hence collect the Exiſtence of more than one Object.

*40. A Precaution, in order to be certain of a Number of Things.*

40. There is another Miſtake contrary to this, which it is eaſy to fall into, and therefore ought to be avoided. For, does it not ſeem reaſonable to determine with Aſſurance the Exiſtence of many Things, without any danger of being deceived, if in making uſe of but one Senſe, and employing it in but one manner only, it repreſents to us many Objects at the ſame time? Now that we may not be deceived here alſo, we ought to conſider the Medium through which the Action of the Object is tranſmitted; for Example, *a multiplying Glaſs* makes us ſee many Objects at once, when there is only one that really affects our Eyes; which ſhows, that here alſo we may be deceived.

41. Theſe

*41. The Signification of the Names which we give to many Things.*

41. Theſe two Obſervations teach us, that we ought not to judge raſhly, nor at firſt Sight, that a Number of Things exiſt: However, after having taken all the Precautions requiſite, when we are once plainly and fully convinced of their Exiſtence, by Means of the different Senſations which they raiſe in us; we cannot help arguing from the Act to the Power, as Philoſophers call it, which is very natural to all Perſons; and thence concluding, that thoſe Things have within them a Power to affect our Senſes: And hence it is, that we give Names to thoſe Things, ſignifying ſuch different Powers. Thus a Body which raiſes Heat in us, we call a hot Body; and the bare Power of raiſing this Senſation in us, we call the Heat of this Body.

*42. A Miſtake about the Signification of Words.*

42. Whence it is plain, that they are deceived, who, before they have ſtudied Philoſophy, underſtand theſe Words in a larger Senſe than was ſaid before; for example, who, when we mention the Heat of the Fire, imagine preſently, that there is ſomething, I know not what, in the Fire, like that Heat which the Fire raiſes in us; for the giving of a mere Name only to a Thing unknown does not at all make that Thing known to us.

*43. Another Miſtake.*

43. They alſo deceive themſelves as fooliſhly, though to appearance they are more acute, who, in order to prove that there is in the Fire ſomething, I know not what, like that Heat which it excites in us, bid us go near it and try: Now, though we a thouſand times go near it, nay, though we were ſcorched by it, all that this demonſtrates, is only what the Fire does to us, and not what it is in it ſelf. When we ſpeak therefore of the *Heat*, or *Cold*, or *Smells*, or *Sounds*, or *Light*, or *Colours* of Bodies, to ſay, that they are really *Things* which are properly Objects of our Senſes, is a great Miſtake. For he who ſays this, muſt imagine, that we come to the Knowledge of them by bare Senſation only, which is abſolutely falſe.

CHAP.

# CHAP. III.

## *The Manner of applying Philoſophy to particular Subjects.*

*1. We muſt have no Prejudices in Philoſophy.*

THE Obſervation which we have now made, is of ſo great Importance, that it alone ſhows us the true Method of Philoſophy on particular Subjects: For from hence we learn, that in order to find out what the Nature of any Thing is, we are to ſearch for ſome one Particular in it, that will account for all the Effects which Experience ſhows us it is capable of producing. Thus, if we would know what the Heat of the Fire is, we muſt endeavour to find out ſome particular Thing, by means of which, it is capable of producing in us that Sort of Tickling, or pleaſant agreeable Heat which we feel at a little diſtance from it; and that Sort of Pain, or ſcorching Heat, which we feel when we approach too near it; and the ſame Thing muſt alſo explain to us, how the Fire comes to rarify ſome Bodies, and to harden others, and to diſſolve others: In a word, it muſt explain all the Effects that Fire produces. And in order to this, we are principally to guard againſt any Prejudices we may have entertained concerning it; and not immediately to imagine, that there is in the Fire the ſame kind of Heat, whether pleaſant or ſcorching, which we feel, when at a diſtance, or near to it. For indeed, there is no more reaſon to attribute ſuch ſort of Heat to the Fire, than there is to aſcribe the ſame ſort of Pain to the Needle, which we feel when we are prick'd by it; and as he would without all doubt be deceived, who ſhould aſcribe the ſame Pain that we feel to the Needle; and would after this, labour to no purpoſe, in trying to find out the Nature of it; ſo likewiſe would it be in vain, after having aſcribed to the Fire that ſort of Heat which we our ſelves feel upon that Occaſion, to attempt philoſophically to explain the Nature of Fire; for nothing ſolid can be built upon ſo bad a Foundation, nothing but Conjectures and Chimera's.

*2. When our Conjectures are to be allowed, and when not.*

2. What is now ſaid of Heat, may be applied to all other Things: And by this Rule, every Thing hereafter is to be examined. If that which we fix upon, to explain the particular Nature of any Thing, do not account clearly and plainly for every Property of that Thing, or if it be evidently contradicted by any one Experiment; then

we are to look upon our Conjecture as falſe; but if it perfectly agrees with all the Properties of the Thing, then we may eſteem it well grounded, and it may paſs for very probable.

*3. We muſt for the moſt part be content with Probability.*

3. Thus we muſt content our ſelves for the moſt part, to find out how Things may be; without pretending to come to a certain Knowledge and Determination of what they really are; for there may poſſibly be different Cauſes capable of producing the ſame Effect, which we have no Means of explaining.

*4. When a Conjecture may be allowed very probable.*

4. Now as he that undertakes to decypher a Letter, finds out an Alphabet ſo much the more probable, as it anſwers to the Words with the feweſt Suppoſitions; ſo we may affirm of that Conjecture concerning the Nature of any Thing, that it is the more probable, by how much the more ſimple it is, by how much the fewer Properties were had in view, and by how much the more Properties, different from each other, can be explained by it. Thus, for Example; if having taken notice only of four Properties of a Thing, we form ſuch a Notion of it, that the Conjecture we make to explain them, will hold as ſtrong for twenty Properties which we find to be in it; it is certain, that theſe are ſo many Proofs that our Conjecture is very good.

*5. When a Conjecture is ſuch as may be allowed for a Truth.*

5. And indeed there may be ſo many, and ſo very different Properties in the ſame Thing, that we ſhall find it very difficult to believe, that they can be explained two different ways. In which Caſe, our Conjecture is not only to be looked upon as highly probable, but we have Reaſon to believe it to be the very Truth.

*6. We ought not too eaſily to part with a Conjecture that is well grounded.*

6. Laſtly, To prevent any Scruples that may afterwards ariſe, we muſt conſider, that, if our Conjecture be otherwiſe well grounded, it does not loſe its Probability, becauſe we cannot upon the Spot explain by it a Property, which appears from ſome new Experiment, or which we did not before think of: For it is one Thing to know certainly, that a Conjecture is contrary to Experience; and another Thing, not to ſee how it agrees to it; for though we do not at all ſee the Agreement, it does not from thence follow, that it is repugnant. And it may be, though we don't ſee it to Day, we may ſee it to Morrow; or others who can ſee further than we, may at one time or other diſcover it. Thus, as we ſhall ſee* afterwards, Teleſcopes which were not in uſe till our Days, have confirmed the Hypotheſis of *Copernicus, concerning the Motion of Venus and Mercury,* which ſeemed not very well to agree with *the different Magnitude of* Venus *at different times.*

** Part II. Chap. 14. Artic. 7.*

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

### *A Caution concerning Words.*

*1. That we ought to avoid Words, whoſe Meaning we don't underſtand.*

SINCE we are accuſtomed to connect our Thoughts with our Words, and oftentimes attend more to the Words than to the Things ſignified by them; that we may not for the future be led into Miſtake by Words, we ſhall not make uſe of any here, nor have regard to any, whoſe Meaning we do not clearly underſtand. Wherefore in this Treatiſe we ſhall wholly neglect ſuch ſpecious Words as *Antiperiſtaſis*, *Sympathy*, *Antipathy*, a *Deſire of Union*, *Contrariety*, and the like. And as we do not uſe them our ſelves, ſo we ſhall have no regard to them from others, unleſs they tell us, very clearly and diſtinctly, what they mean by them, and how we are to underſtand them.

Leſt therefore we ſhould fall into that Fault which we condemn in others, we ſhall here define *the Terms of Art*, which, after the Example of moſt Philoſophers, we ſhall make uſe of.

*2. What is meant by a Being.*

2. The Word *Being* ſignifies only that which *is* or *exiſts*; for that which does not exiſt, is indeed nothing. For if any Thing be to exiſt next Year, we may affirm, that at preſent it is nothing, and it is only the Idea which we have of it, that is any Thing.

*3. What is meant by Subſtance.*

3. We underſtand by *Subſtance* here a Thing which we conceive to ſubſiſt of it ſelf, independent of any other created Thing: Thus a Piece of Wax is a Subſtance, becauſe we conceive it to ſubſiſt of itſelf, independent of any other created Thing.

*4. That we ought to judge of Things according to our Ideas of them.*

4. Obſerve here, that I don't ſay abſolutely, that a Subſtance is a Thing which ſubſiſts of it ſelf; but that it is a Thing which *we conceive* to ſubſiſt of it ſelf, which I ſay on purpoſe to make this Definition of uſe. For though I know very well, that our Conceptions or Imaginations lay no Neceſſity upon *the Things themſelves*, yet they are neceſſary towards *our judging* of them, becauſe we know Things from our Idea's only, and we ought always to judge according to our Thoughts.

*5. VVhat is meant by a Mode.*

5. We call *that* a *Mode*, or *Manner of Exiſting*, or *an Accident*, which we conceive neceſſarily to depend upon ſome Subſtance. Thus, becauſe we cannot poſſibly conceive the *Roundneſs* of a Globule of Wax to ſubſiſt without

out the Wax, therefore we call it a *Mode* or *Manner of exiſting*, or *an Accident*.

*6. That a Mode cannot be transferred from one Subject to another.*

6. From whence it follows, that a *Mode*, or *an Accident*, cannot be transferred from that Subſtance which is the Subject of it, to any other Subſtance; for if it could, it would not then have depended entirely upon the firſt Subſtance when it was in it, which is abſurd.

*7. What is meant by a Quality.*

7. By the World *Quality* we mean that, by which a Thing is denominated *ſuch*; Thus *that* in the Fire, whatever it be, which has a Power to raiſe the Senſation of Heat in us, we call a *Quality* of the Fire, becauſe it is from *this* that the Fire is ſaid to be hot.

*8. That the word Quality has not a determinate Signification, but is however uſeful.*

8. That which is to be feared here, and which hath made ſome over-ſcrupulous Perſons wiſh that this Word were never uſed, but wholly ſuppreſſed; is, that ſome Men fooliſhly think, that they are very knowing, if they can but apply this Word, and ſome other of the like Sort, to expreſs a Thing which they do not at all underſtand. However, I cannot agree to them, but think it ſufficient, if we do not uſe it in a bad Senſe. For it ſeems to me (as it did formerly to *Ariſtotle*) to be very properly uſed for *that* in general, whatever it be, which we conceive to belong to a Subject, and on the account of which, we give a particular Name to it. Thus, until we clearly and diſtinctly underſtand what the Heat of the Fire is, we may call it *a Quality* of the Fire.

*9. What is meant by the Words Vertue or Faculty.*

9. The Words *Vertue* or *Faculty*, in any Subject, ſignify in general, the Power which a Thing has to produce ſome Effect in another Thing. Thus what we juſt now called a *Quality*, upon this Account, that the Fire is from thence denominated hot; may alſo be called a *Vertue* of the Fire, if we conſider, that it is from *this*, though we know not what it is, that the Fire can heat any Thing.

*10. What the Eſſence of a Thing is.*

10. The *Eſſence* of a Thing, is that which it principally is, or that which conſtitutes the Nature of it, and by which it is what it is: Thus the *Eſſence* of a right-lined Triangle conſiſts in this, that it is a Figure terminated by three right Lines. From whence it is evident, that allowing the *Eſſence* of a Thing, is allowing the Thing it ſelf; and on the contrary, taking away the Eſſence, is taking away the Thing it ſelf.

*11. What the eſſential Property of a Thing is.*

11. We call that *an eſſential Property of a Thing*, which we conceive ſo to belong to the Thing, that it is the neceſſary Conſequence of its Eſſence: Thus, that any two Sides together, are longer than the Third; and that the three Angles are equal to two right ones, are Properties

that belong to the Eſſence of a Triangle; becauſe theſe ſo belong to it, that they are a neceſſary Conſequence of a Figure's being terminated by three right Lines. So likewiſe it is the *eſſential Property* of a right-angled Triangle, to have the Square of the Side oppoſed to the right Angle, equal to the Squares of the two other Sides; becauſe this ſo belongs to this Sort of Triangle, that it neceſſarily follows from its being right angled.

*12. What the accidental Property of a Thing is.*

12. We call that *an accidental Property of a Thing*, or in general an *Accident*, which we do not think neceſſary to it; or which ſo belongs to it, that it might have been without it, and yet not ceaſed to have been what it was: Thus the Blackneſs in a Triangle is an *Accident*, becauſe this Colour is not neceſſary to a Triangle; and it may be not Black without ceaſing to be a Triangle.

*13. What is meant by the Word Generation.*

13. The Production of Something which before was not, we call *Generation*; thus we ſay Fire is *generated*, when we ſee Fire where the Wood was before; ſo likewiſe we ſay a Chicken is *generated*, when we ſee a Chicken in the room of an Egg.

*14. What is meant by that of Corruption.*

14. When a Thing is deſtroyed, or ceaſes to be what it was before, we call it *Corruption*; thus we ſay it is a *Corruption* of the Wood, when we ſee the Wood no longer; but only the Fire in the Place of it; And in the ſame manner we ſay an Egg is *corrupted*, when we ſee the Egg no longer, but a Chicken in its Place.

*15. What is meant by the Word Alteration.*

15. A Thing is ſaid to be *altered*, when it has undergone ſome Change, but not ſo great a Change as for us not to know it again, or to have a new Name given to it: Thus when a Piece of Iron, which was before cold, is made hot, it is ſaid to be *altered*; for this Change is not ſo great, but we know it to be Iron ſtill, and do not give a new Name to it. We muſt take particular Notice here, that the *Alteration* muſt make but a moderate Change; for if it be ſo great, that we cannot know the Thing thus changed, we do not then ſay that it is *altered*, but that it is corrupted.

*16. What is meant by the firſt Principles of natural Things.*

16. By the *firſt Principles* of natural Things, we underſtand, that which is firſt, and moſt ſimple in them, or that of which they are originally compoſed, and beyond which they cannot be reduced. Thus, the *firſt Principles* of a Chicken, are thoſe Things which are united together to compoſe a Chicken, and which are ſo ſimple, that they themſelves are void of all Compoſition.

*17. That the forementioned Terms ſignify no more than is contained in the Definition of them.*

17. Now I do not pretend that the foregoing Definitions contain any ſecret Things in them, nor do I deſign they ſhould paſs for Things very ſublime, as ſome Philoſophers have done; but on the contrary, my principal Deſign in laying them down here, was no other than to explain the Meaning of the Terms which I have defined ſo diſtinctly, that no one might be deceived, in putting any other Senſe upon them more enlarged or reſtrained; and to do it in ſuch a manner, that no Fictions might be made out of them.

*18. A Caution about the Meaning of ſome Nouns Subſtantives.*

18. I ſhall here add one Caution about Words, and it is this, That though thoſe which we call *Nouns ſuſtantive* were invented to ſignify Subſtances; and *Adjectives* and *Verbs* properly ſignify only Qualities or Modes, or Manners of exiſting or acting; yet there are a great many Words, which in Grammar paſs for Nouns ſubſtantive; whoſe Signification is the ſame as that of Verbs. Thus when we ſay that *a Walk is wholeſome,* we mean no more than *that it is wholeſome to walk.*

*19. An Errour ariſing from want of attending hereto.*

19. For want of attending to this Rule, the Generality of young Men, when they begin to ſtudy, take the Things ſignified by theſe Sort of Nouns ſubſtantives, to be real Beings, and imagine them to have a particular Exiſtence, and by this Means fill the World with *Scholaſtick Entities,* and *rational Entities,* which they are many times ſo poſſeſſed with, that they become incapable, all their Lives after, of applying themſelves to any Thing that is ſolid and ſubſtantial.

---

## CHAP. V.

### *The principal Axioms of Natural Philoſophy.*

*1. The Foundation of natural Philoſophy.*

AFTER having explained the principal Terms made uſe of in natural Philoſophy; I ſhall now lay down ſome important *Truths,* which are ſelf-evident, and which, being the Foundation of all Philoſophical Truths, are conſequently the principal *Axioms* of Philoſophy.

*2. Axiom I.*

2. The firſt is, that *Nothing,* or *that which has no Exiſtence, has no Properties.* Thus we cannot ſay that Nothing is hot, or cold, can be divided, or has Parts, *&c.* Therefore where we know there is any Property, whatever it be, there we may affirm, that there is ſome Thing, ſome real Being.

3. *Secondly, It is impoſſible that Something ſhould be made of abſolute Nothing; or that mere Nothing can become any Thing.* This *Axiom* is a neceſſary Conſequence of the foregoing one, and proves it ſelf to them who grant that. For if Nothing can be made Something, it would follow, contrary to the preceeding Axiom, that Nothing has ſome Property: Which is abſurd. 3. *Axiom* II.

4. When I ſaid *that it is impoſſible for Something to be made of Nothing,* I expreſsly added the Word *Abſolute,* becauſe I do not at all doubt, any more than any other Perſon, that a Thing may be made out of what has nothing of that Thing in it, or to ſpeak more clearly, may be made out of that which is not that Thing. Thus for Example: No one can doubt, but that Bread may be made of Water and Meal, which are not yet Bread. 4. *In what Senſe it may be ſaid, that any Thing is made of Nothing.*

5. *Thirdly, No Thing or Subſtance can be wholly annihilated; that is, ſo ceaſe to be, that there ſhall remain nothing at all of it.* Indeed; when any thing wholly diſappears, we eaſily apprehend, that it ceaſes to be the Thing that it was, in order to become ſome new Thing: Thus we eaſily apprehend, that Corn ceaſes to be Corn, in order to become Meal, and that every Part of the Meal may be ſtill divided into other Parts, ſo ſmall that they may be utterly imperceptible; but how that which is Something, can become abſolutely Nothing, this is utterly unconceivable. 5. *Axiom* III.

6. *Fourthly, Every Effect preſuppoſes ſome Cauſe.* This is ſo generally allowed by all the World, that the dulleſt of all, are led to admire certain Effects, for that very Reaſon, becauſe they are perſwaded that they proceed from a Cauſe, and that this Cauſe is wholly unknown to them. If this was not a very true Axiom, we ſhould not ſo much wonder at that moſt known Property of a Loadſtone for Example; but reſt ſatisfied, with knowing only that the Iron does really approach the Loadſtone, without wiſhing for any Thing further. 6. *Axiom* IV.

7. *Fifthly,* Which is a Conſequence of the foregoing *Axiom*; *If we our ſelves are not the Cauſe of any Effect, it muſt neceſſarily depend upon ſome other Cauſe.* Thus, if I know certainly, that a particular Effect which is within my own ſelf, does not depend upon me; I certainly conclude, that it depends upon ſome other Cauſe. 7. *Axiom* V.

8. *Sixthly, Every Thing, as much as it can, endeavours to continue in that State in which it is.* Thus, if any Thing be ſquare, it will continue always ſquare, and will never of its own ſelf become round, or any other Figure. This 8. *Axiom* VI.

is what others mean, when they ſay, that Nothing tends to the deſtroying of it ſelf.

9. *Axiom* VII.

9. From whence it follows, *Seventhly*; *That every Alteration is made by ſome external Cauſe.* Thus if we ſee a Flower in a Garden very freſh in the Morning, and in the Evening find it withered; we conclude, that either the Sun, or the Wind, or perhaps ſome Perſons roughly handling of it, have cauſed this Change, and though we could not at all gueſs what it was that had made this Change; yet we ſhould aſcribe it to ſome Cauſe.

10. *Axiom* VIII.

10. *Eighthly, Every Alteration is always proportionable to the Force of the Agent which cauſes it.* So that the Thing which is altered continues, as much as it can, in its firſt State. Thus if a Body, which moves ſlowly, comes upon another Body at reſt, and puſhes it before it, we cannot think that it can move this latter Body [1] ſwifter than it goes it ſelf.

11. *That there are many more Axioms.*

11. There are yet more *Axioms* which I ſhall afterwards draw many Concluſions from; but becauſe they are not ſo general as theſe, I ſhall content my ſelf with mentioning them, when I have occaſion to make uſe of them.

12. *That Things are here treated of in their natural State.*

12. But before we proceed any further; as my Deſign is to treat of natural Things, and to explain as well the Cauſes by the Effects, as the Effects by the Cauſes; that I may not go beyond the Limits of my Subject, but contain my ſelf within the Bounds of the Science I treat of; I expreſsly declare, that my Deſign is to conſider Things in their ordinary and natural State, and that I pretend not to ſay, or determine, what they are, or may be, in an extraordinary or preternatural State: Becauſe, I think, it is great Raſhneſs to undertake to determine, how far the Power of God can extend it ſelf, whom I acknowledge to be the Author of every Thing in the World, and who, I believe, can make a Multitude of Things above the Capacity of humane Underſtanding.

13. *That we ought not to ſay, that there is any Thing which God cannot do.*

13. Wherefore I will never venture to affirm, that there is any Thing impoſſible with God; and inſtead of ſpeaking in ſuch a manner, which is too common amongſt Philoſophers, I will content my ſelf, with only ſaying, that ſuch a Thing is not of the Number of thoſe Things which I know he can do.

---

[1] *Swifter than it goes it ſelf.*) Unleſs it be endued with an *elaſtick Force*, which is to be underſtood as an Addition of *new Force.* See below, Chap. xi. Art. 6.

14. *That we ought not to be too inquiſitive into Myſteries.*

14. And above all Things, I particularly guard my ſelf againſt enquiring into the *Myſteries* of Faith, and attempting to explain what is obſcure therein; becauſe I am firmly perſwaded, that that which God Almighty would have to be a *Myſtery* to the Ignorant and Unlearned, he would have to be ſo likewiſe to the moſt exalted Genius, and to them who think themſelves much greater Philoſophers than I am.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the Principles of Natural Things.*

1. *Of Matter.*

IN order to know what the Principles are, of which natural Things are compoſed, we may take one particular Effect for a Rule, and examine that; as for Example, what is done, when the Wood is converted into Fire: For by this Means, it will be eaſy to judge, what paſſes in other Productions of Nature; and this will, as it were, lead us by the Hand, and help us to diſcover what natural *Principles* are, and how many there are of them. Firſt then, becauſe, according to the Maxims before eſtabliſhed, it is impoſſible to conceive the Wood to be wholly annihilated, or the Fire to be made out of abſolute Nothing, therefore we muſt think, that there is Something which before belonged to the Wood, which now belongs to the Fire, and is therefore common to them both. Now this, whatever it be, that ſubſiſts under theſe two Forms, we call *Matter*, as others call it; ſo that *Matter* is one of the Principles of natural Things.

2. *Of Form.*

2. *Secondly*, We apprehend alſo, that there muſt neceſſarily be ſomething elſe added to Matter, which makes it to be Wood and not Fire, or to be Fire and not Wood; and whatever this be, which does not cauſe Matter to exiſt, but only to exiſt in that manner, we call it the *Form*; and this we reckon another Principle of natural Things.

3. *That Privation ought to preceed the Generation of a Thing.*

3. *Ariſtotle* obſerved, that though a Thing could not be made abſolutely out of Nothing, it might however be made out of what was not that Thing. Thus a Chicken may be made out of that which is not now a Chicken; ſo that the Non-exiſtence of a Thing which he calls *Privation*, muſt immediately preceed the Generation of

it: From whence he concludes, that there are three Principles of natural Things, *Privation*, *Matter*, and *Form*.

*4. That Privation ought not to be called a Principle.*

4. But by making Privation a Principle, the Word Principle becomes ambiguous, and quite another Meaning is given to it, than when we ſaid of Matter and Form, that they were the Principles of natural Things; for it is certain, that Privation is not at all a Thing, nor does it go to the Compoſition of any Thing.

*5. That there are only two Principles,* viz. *Matter and Form.*

5. Beſide, there is no Reaſon to make a particular Myſtery of this Word Privation; for there is no Body but knows what it means; and ſince it is of no uſe to explain natural Things by, we conclude, that there is but two Principles of natural Things, *viz. Matter*, and *Form*.

*6. That it is neceſſary rightly to underſtand what Matter and Form are.*

6. But we have not yet made any great Advances in the Knowledge of the Things of Nature: For, he is very far from underſtanding the Nature of Fire, who knows only thus much, that *Matter* is neceſſary to the Compoſition of it, that is, it has ſomething, we know not what, in common with other Things; and that a *Form* is alſo neceſſary to it, that is, another Something, we know not what, which gives that particular Exiſtence to the Fire; for, as was obſerved before, a Thing that is unknown, does not become known, by giving a Name to it; we muſt therefore conſider more diſtinctly, what Matter and Form particularly are. We will begin with Matter, and try to find out what that is, which we call we don't know what, which is common to all the Things in Nature.

---

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of Matter.*

*1. The Method of finding out what Matter is.*

SINCE there are but three Things neceſſary to a perfect Underſtanding of any Thing, *viz.* its *Eſſence*, its *Properties*, and its *Accidents*, that we may comprehend fully what Matter is, we muſt diſtinctly explain what the *Eſſence* of it conſiſts in, what the *Properties* of it are, and what *Accidents* it is capable of; in order to which, we have no more to do, but to examine all that we conceive any way to belong to material Things, conſidered as material, that is to belong to *Matter*; and then exactly to diſtinguiſh its *Eſſence*, from its *Properties*, and *Accidents*.

*2. The Accidents which belong to Matter.*

2. Now according to this Method, if we conſider, that though we do not perfectly underſtand what *Hardneſs*, *Liquidity*, *Heat*, *Cold*, *Heavineſs*, *Lightneſs*, *Taſte*, *Smell*, *Sound*, *Light*, *Colour*, *Tranſparency*, *Opacity*, and the like, are; yet we underſtand enough of them, to know, that they are none of them inſeparable from Matter, that is, it may exiſt without any of them, (for we ſee that ſome material Things are without *Hardneſs*, ſome without *Liquidity*, ſome without *Heat*, and ſome without *Cold*, and ſo of the reſt,) wherefore we ſay, that the *Eſſence* of Matter does not conſiſt in any of theſe Things, but that theſe are accidental only.

*3. That Extenſion is not accidental to Matter.*

3. But when we conſider Matter as *extended into Length, Breadth, and Thickneſs; as having Parts, and thoſe Parts having ſome Figure, and that they are impenetrable*, we do not judge in the ſame manner of theſe, nor think them mere Accidents of Matter. For, as to *Extenſion*, it is certain, that we cannot ſeparate the *Idea* of that, from any Matter whatſoever; becauſe if *Extenſion* does not go along with it, we immediately loſe the *Idea of Matter*, in the ſame manner as the *Idea* of a Triangle vaniſhes, if we ceaſe to have in our Minds the Image of a Figure terminated by three Lines.

*4. To have Parts, is not accidental to Matter.*

4. As to the *Parts* of Matter, we apprehend them to belong to it ſo neceſſarily, that we cannot imagine any Portion of it ſo ſmall, be it the ſmalleſt we can conceive, but that if it be put upon a plain Superficies, we muſt think at the ſame time, that it touches it in one Part, and does not touch it in another; that is, this ſmall Portion of Matter, conſiſts of Parts.

*5. That Figure is not accidental to Matter.*

5. With reſpect to *Figure*, though it be nothing elſe but the Diſpoſition of the extreme Parts of a Body, and perhaps we cannot determine the particular Figure of a particular Body; it is however manifeſt, that we cannot conceive any Body, be it ever ſo great, or ever ſo ſmall, but at the ſame time we conceive it to have ſome Figure.

*6. That Impenetrability is not an accident of Matter.*

6. *Laſtly*, With regard to *Impenetrability*, ſince a certain Portion of Matter, ſuppoſe a *cubic* Foot, has all that is neceſſary to ſuch a Magnitude, we cannot conceive how another *cubic* Foot can be added to it, without making two *cubic* Feet: For ſuppoſe any one would reduce them to one *cubic* Foot by Penetration, this would not be ſo much reducing them to one *cubic* Foot, as it would be deſtroying the firſt Suppoſition; whence we are led to think, that the Parts of Matter are in their own Nature impenetrable.

7. Now

*7. Of the Eſſential Properties of Matter.*

7. Now this being ſo, we muſt ſay, that *Extenſion, Diviſibility, Figure, and Impenetrability*, are, at leaſt, *eſſential Properties* of Matter, becauſe they always go along with it, and cannot be ſeparated from it; and theſe being all that we conceive to belong to Matter neceſſarily, for we know of nothing more, we are aſſured, that the *Eſſence* of Matter conſiſts in one of theſe.

*8. What the Eſſence of Matter conſiſts in.*

8. And becauſe we conceive *Extenſion* before the other Three, and becauſe we cannot conceive the other Three, without firſt ſuppoſing *Extenſion*, [1] we ought to think that *Extenſion* is that in which the Eſſence of Matter conſiſts.

*9. In what a natural Philoſopher ought to acknowledge the Eſſence and eſſential Properties of Matter to conſiſt.*

9. If it ſhould be here objected; That God could make Something to be the *Eſſence* of Matter, which neither we, nor any Man living, can underſtand what it is; we can make no other Anſwer, but only this; that God, being Lord of all Things, might create them according to his own Will; for we do not pretend to determine by our Reaſon, that which Reaſon cannot come at. Wherefore leaving ſuch Sort of Queſtions to be treated of by thoſe, who are of a higher Profeſſion than that of mere natural Philoſophy, and who carry their Views far beyond what Reaſon can do; we ſhall contain our ſelves within the Limits which that preſcribes, without invading the Territories of others; and conclude from that Knowledge which we have by Reaſon, that the Eſſence of Matter conſiſts in Extenſion, becauſe that is what we firſt perceive in it, and from which every Property of Matter is derived, and upon which it depends.

---

[1] *We ought to think Extenſion*, &c.) It does no more ſeem to follow from hence; that, becauſe we conceive Extenſion before any other Properties of Matter, and that thoſe Properties can't be conceived to exiſt, without firſt conceiving Extenſion; therefore *Extenſion* is the Eſſence of Matter; than it follows from hence, that *Exiſtence* is conceived before all other Properties of Matter, and therefore *Exiſtence* is the Eſſence of Matter. But ſince Extenſion is a more general Word, and comprehends more under it than material Things, it ſhould ſeem, that *that impenetrable Solidity* which belongs to all Matter, and to Matter only, and from which all its Properties manifeſtly flow, may be more truly called the Eſſence of Matter.

But further, if *Extenſion* were the Eſſence of Matter, and ſo *Matter* the ſame as *Space it ſelf*; it would follow, that Matter is infinite, and neceſſarily eternal, and could neither have been created, nor be reduced to nothing; which is very abſurd. Beſide, it evidently appears from Gravity, as ſhall be afterwards explained, and from the Motion of Comets, and from the Vibrations of Pendulums, that *Space it ſelf* is not *Matter*. Wherefore not *Extenſion*, but *ſolid Extenſion, impenetrable*, which is endued with *a Power of reſiſting*, may (as was before ſaid) be more truly called the *Eſſence of Matter*,

10. *That Extenſion is not a mere Mode.*

10. Further, that we may carry our Knowledge as far as the Light of Nature will permit, let us conſider that the Idea of Extenſion is ſo far from depending upon any created Thing, that we can ſcarce get it out of our Minds, when we try to imagine Nothing, which we believe was before the Creation of the World; which ſhows that it does not depend upon created Things, that it is not a Conſequence nor a Property of them, much leſs is it an Accident or Mode of exiſting, but a true Subſtance.

11. *That this Notion is not agreeable to the greateſt part of them, who call themſelves the Diſciples of* Ariſtotle.

11. It is generally believed, that this is very different from the Opinion of *Ariſtotle*, becauſe he ſays in his Metaphyſicks, that Matter is not a Thing that can any way anſwer to Queſtions which relate to *Eſſence*, *Quantity*, or *Quality*; and indeed, that it is not a certain determinate Thing. This the *Ariſtotelians*, for the moſt part, ſo interpret, that they would have us think that Matter is not at all extended, nor has any Exiſtence.

12. *That his Opinion is not contrary to it.*

12. But *Ariſtotle* ſeems in this Place to ſpeak of Matter in general; for he expreſsly diſtinguiſhes between *Extenſion* and *Quantity*, as every one ought, becauſe we can conceive the one without the other. Thus, for Example, a Surveyor of Land conceives at firſt Sight, that a Field is extended, but he does not know the Quantity of it, till after he has meaſured it. Now in this Senſe of the Word Matter, there is no Inconſiſtency in ſaying, that it may be extended, and yet not be any Thing that will anſwer to thoſe Queſtions which *Ariſtotle* there enumerates; for thoſe Queſtions are to be underſtood only of Matter under ſome particular Form: Thus we cannot ſay of Matter in general, that it is Hot or Cold, that it contains a certain Number of Feet, or that it is ſuch a particular Thing, as Gold, or Wood, or Marble; any more than we can ſay of an Animal in general, that it is a Horſe, and not a Dog, or any other particular Species.

13. *That it is not Authority but Reaſon, which ought to be the Judge of Truth.*

13. But be this as it will, if *Ariſtotle* was not of this Opinion, as many of his Interpreters think he was not; we ſhall make no Difficulty in this Matter, to differ from him; becauſe we do not govern our ſelves by Authority, when we endeavour to eſtabliſh Things upon Reaſon. And there ſeems to me no Reaſon to ſay, that Matter, which is the common *Subject* of all Things, has it ſelf no Exiſtence; for there is no Difference betwixt Non-Exiſtence and Nothing, or having no Properties.

*14. That Extenſion in Length, Breadth, and Thickneſs, cannot be a Mode.*

14. Some *Ariſtotelians*, who may be ſatisfied with this Anſwer, will perhaps find fault with me, becauſe I call Extenſion in Length, Breadth, and Thickneſs, a Subſtance, and not a mere Mode or Accident, as they do. Thus, for Example, when we ſpeak of the Extenſion of a Table, they underſtand that the Extenſion is a Mode, and the Table the Subſtance of it. But it is eaſy to make appear, that this is a Miſtake ariſing from the Manner of Speaking; and is altogether as groſs, as it would be, in ſpeaking of the City of *Rome*, to imagine, that theſe were two different Things, one the Mode, and the other the Subſtance. But to clear all Difficulty in this Matter, we muſt obſerve, that it is of *the Nature of a Subſtance to be able to exiſt without its Mode*, on the other hand, *The Nature of a Mode is, not to be able to exiſt without that Subſtance of which it is the Mode.* For it is evident, [1] that the whole Extenſion of the Table can ſubſiſt without being a Table, but on the contrary, there can be no Table without Extenſion. Wherefore, ſo far ought we to be from ſaying, that Extenſion is a Mode of which the Table is the Subſtance, that we ought to ſay, on the contrary, that Extenſion is the Subſtance, and the Form of the Table the Mode.

*15. Whence it is that natural Philoſophy has been hitherto ſo barren.*

15. *Laſtly*, They who deny Extenſion to be the Eſſence of Matter; cannot diſtinctly tell us what they mean by Matter, nor in what its Eſſence conſiſts; and they lay down ſo obſcure a Thing for a Principle, that it is impoſſible to draw any Conſequences from it, that can enlighten our Minds, or ſerve to clear up any Truth. Wherefore we need not be ſurprized, that their Philoſophy is ſo barren, and that it is not capable of explaining the ſmalleſt Effect in Nature. Let us now ſee if the ſame may be affirmed of the Principle which we have maintained.

---

[1] *That the whole Extenſion of the Table,* &c) Yes, if neither the *Table*, nor the *Matter it ſelf, or Subſtance of the Table* exiſted. This Inſtance therefore does not prove, that Extenſion is *that* Subſtance or Matter of the Table, but that there muſt neceſſarily be ſome *Subſtance* ſubſiſting under *the Form of the Table*, which is it ſelf extended; which extended Subſtance is not Extenſion it ſelf, but ſubſiſts in Extenſion or extended Space.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *Some Corollaries of the foregoing Notion.*

1. *That it is impoſſible there ſhould be what the Philoſophers call a* Vacuum.

FROM what we have now laid down concerning the Eſſence of Matter, we infer in the firſt place, 1 *that what the Philoſophers call a* Vacuum *cannot poſſibly be*: For by a *Vacuum* they mean a Space void of all Matter; but by Space (or Extenſion) we mean the ſame Thing as Matter; and to aſk if there can be any Space without

---

1. *That what Philoſophers call a* Vacuum, *&c.*) This it conſiſtently enough ſaid by him, who affirms the Eſſence of Matter to be Extenſion: But it is very evident from Gravity, (which ſhall afterwards be briefly explained) that there muſt not only be a *Vacuum* in Nature, but that it is the far greateſt Part.

Beſides, a *Vacuum*, as I ſaid now, is demonſtrated from the Motion of *Comets*. For ſince *the Comets are carried with a continual Motion through the Heavenly Spaces, from every Part, and all Ways, and to all Parts* (in Orbits which cut the Orbits of the Planets tranſverſely every way) *it is evident from thence, that the Heavenly Spaces, muſt be void of any ſenſible Reſiſtance, and conſequently of any ſenſible Matter.* Newt. Optic. p.310. See alſo the Notes on Part II. chap. 25, 26.

This is ſtill further evident from the *Vibrations of Pendulums*, for they meet with no Reſiſtance in Spaces, out of which the Air is exhauſted, wherefore it is plain, there is no ſenſible Matter in thoſe Spaces, nor in the occult Pores of the Bodies themſelves. The Fiction of *Cartes*, that the *Smalneſs* of his ſubtil Matter is the Reaſon why the Reſiſtance is inſenſible, for a ſmall Body ſtriking againſt a large one, cannot move it in the leaſt, nor hinder its Motion, but is reflected with the Whole of its own Motion; this is very weak, and contrary both to Reaſon and Experience. For the famous Sir *Iſaac Newton* has demonſtrated, that *the Denſity of fluid Mediums is pretty nearly in proportion to their* Reſiſtance (Opt. p. 311.) and that they are very much miſtaken, *who think that the Reſiſtance of projectile Bodies is infinitely diminiſhed, by the infinite Diviſion of the Parts of the Fluid*; (Princip. Book II. Prop. 38. Corol. 2.) *For on the contrary, it is evident, that the Reſiſtance can be but a very little diminiſhed, by the Diviſion of the Parts of the Fluid* (Ibid. Prop. 40. Corol. 3.) For, *the reſiſting Forces of all Fluids are very nearly as their Denſities.* For why ſhould not the ſame Quantity of Matter, make the ſame Reſiſtance, whether it be divided into a great many very ſmall Parts, or into a few large ones? Wherefore, if there were no *Vacuum*, it would follow, that a Body moved in Air, or in a Place out of which the Air is exhauſted, would meet with as much Difficulty, as if it were moved in Quick-ſilver; which is contrary to Experience, and therefore it is evident, that there is a *Vacuum* in Nature, and (as was ſaid before) it is much the greateſt Part.

Since therefore the Eſſence of Matter does not conſiſt in *Extenſion*, but in *impenetrable Solidity*, we muſt ſay, that the whole World is made up of *ſolid Bodies* which move in a *Vacuum*. And we need not fear, that the Phænomena of Nature ſhould not be ſo well explained thereby; for the Explication of thoſe Phænomena which ſeem chiefly to depend upon a *Plenum*, *viz.* The *Barometer*, *the Flux and Reflux of the Sea*, *the Motions of the Stars, and of Light*, theſe can be more eaſily and fully explained upon other Principles (as ſhall be ſhown hereafter;) but as to the other Phænomena of Nature, which depend upon Cauſes not ſo general, the Explication of them is the ſame in our Syſtem as in that of *Cartes*.

Matter, is the ſame as to ask, if there can be any Matter without Matter, which is a manifeſt Contradiction. And it ſignifies nothing to ſay, that we can conceive a Space, in which we ſuppoſe there is no Light, Colour, Hardneſs, Heat, Weight, in a Word, in which we ſuppoſe there is not any one Quality that we can imagine; for when this is done, and all theſe Things denied of Extenſion, it is the *Accidents* only that are taken away from the Thing, whoſe real Eſſence is at the ſame time ſuppoſed.

*2. What the Conſequence would be, if God ſhould annihilate the Air in a Room.*

2. And here we ſhall not trouble our ſelves to give an Anſwer to any one who ſhould put the following Queſtion to us; Whether God could not by his Omnipotence make a *Vacuum*, by annihilating all the Air in a Room, and hindring any more from coming in its Place? For, as we ſaid before, it does not belong to us to determine how far the Power of God can extend it ſelf. But if the Queſtion be a little altered, and we be only asked, what *we conceive* would follow, if God ſhould annihilate all the Air in a Room, and not ſuffer any other to enter in its Place? We ſhould return for Anſwer, not concerning our ſelves with what would come to paſs without the Room, that the Walls would approach one another ſo near, that there would remain no Space betwixt them.

*3. That the Diſpoſition of the Walls in making a Room, depend upon the Extenſion of the Matter that is contained between them.*

3. Perhaps it may be urged by ſome, that the Walls of a Room exiſt independent of what is contained between them, and conſequently that they might continue in the State they were, without approaching one another, though what is between them were annihilated. To which I anſwer, that it is very true, that the Exiſtence of the Walls does not depend upon what is contained between them; but the State they are in, or the Diſpoſition of them, in order to compoſe a Room, this depends upon Extenſion, or ſome Matter which is between them, and conſequently, this Extenſion cannot be deſtroyed without deſtroying the Diſpoſition which the Walls were in before, though not the Walls themſelves.

*4. What is meant by Place.*

4. *Secondly*, We are to underſtand that *internal Place, or the Space which any Body poſſeſſes,* [1] *does not at all differ from the Body it ſelf.* And therefore when we ſay a Body changes its Place, we mean its *external Place*, that is, *with regard to the Superficies of other Bodies with which it is ſurrounded, to the different Parts of which, it may be differently applied.*

---

[1] *Does not at all differ,* &c.) This indeed is not true; but it makes no difference as to the Explication of the Phænomena of Nature. For the true Definition of *Place*. See the *Notes on Chap.* x. *Art.* 2.

*5. How Bodies are rarefyed and condenſed.*

5. *Thirdly*, When a Body appears to take up more Room than it did before, without our perceiving any Matter to be added to it, which is what we call *Rarefaction*, we ſhall conclude [1] that ſome very ſubtile Matter has entered into it, and diſtended its Parts. So likewiſe, when a Body appears to take up leſs Room than it did before, without our perceiving any thing to be taken from it, which is what we call *Condenſation*, we ſhall think that ſome imperceptible Matter is gone out of its Pores, and that by this means its Parts approach nearer each other. For ſince Extenſion and Matter are to us the ſame Thing, we cannot conceive that a Body ſhould appear more or leſs extended, let the Manner be what it will, but that it muſt have more or leſs Matter.

*6. In what Senſe it is, that we ſay that a rarefyed Body acquires nothing, and a condenſed Body loſes nothing.*

6. And this does not hinder, but that we may ſay with *Ariſtotle*, that a *rare* Body is that, which has but a little Matter, and poſſeſſes a large Space, and a *denſe* Body, is that which poſſeſſes a ſmall Space, and has a great deal of Matter; or which is the ſame Thing, that a rarefyed Body does not acquire any new Matter, nor a condenſed Body loſe any of its own. For this imperceptible Matter which we ſpeak of, ought to be conſidered as a Thing that is foreign, and which does not at all belong to the Body it enters into, or comes out of, when it is rarefyed or condenſed. Thus when Paſte is turned into Bread, it is rarefyed before, and while it is baking, yet we don't ſay, becauſe of this, that we have more Bread than we had Paſte; though it is viſible, that a great deal of Air is got into thoſe large Spaces which we call *the Eyes of the Bread*; becauſe, what is thus got in, is not what we call Bread: So alſo when we preſs the Crumb of the Bread in our Hand, and bring it to a leſs Compaſs, though we are ſure that a great deal of Air is ſqueezed out of it, yet we don't ſay that there is leſs Crumb than there was before, becauſe there remains yet all that we call Crumb, and the Air which went out of it, did not belong to it.

*7. Whence it is that a Cheſnut burſts upon the Fire.*

7. What we have now ſaid about *Rarefaction*, may be thought perhaps hardly to agree with what we experience in a Cheſnut, which, when put upon the Fire, burſts with a Noiſe; for it may perhaps be imagined,

---

[1] *That ſome very ſubtile Matter*, &c.) When any Body is rarefyed, it is often very manifeſt, that its Parts are diſtended by the Entrance of the Air, or ſome more ſubtile Matter. But this does not follow from a *Plenum*, but either from the Liquidneſs, or from an elaſtick Force, or from Gravity and Preſſure, or from ſome accidental Motion in that ſubtile Matter which enters into the Pores of the rarefyed Body.

that the ſubtile Matter which enters through the Pores of the Husk of the Cheſnut, may come out with the ſame eaſe as it enters in, without breaking, or making any Noiſe. But this Difficulty is eaſily reſolved, if we conſider, that it is not the foreign Matter that enters in, and comes out of the Cheſnut, which is the immediate Cauſe of the Noiſe; but the more groſs Parts of the Cheſnut it ſelf, which are torn in Pieces, and put in ſuch Motion, [1] by the ſubtile Matter which enters the Pores like ſo many little Wedges, that they break the Husk with a Noiſe.

*8. That the World is indefinite.*

8. *Fourthly*, We conclude, [2] that *the World is indefinite*, becauſe at how great diſtance ſoever we ſet its Bounds, it is impoſſible for us not to imagine Extenſion to be ſtill beyond. Now Extenſion and Matter, being, as was ſaid before, the ſame Thing; we have no Notion of the World's being ſo big, but we can imagine it to be ſtill bigger.

*9. That it is impoſſible that there ſhould be many Worlds.*

9. *Fifthly*, It is evident, that though we can ſee no Reaſon why there may not be many Bodies like to our Earth, and capable of containing many Animals, as that does; yet it is impoſſible [3] *that there ſhould be many Worlds*; for this, in which we are, poſſeſſes all that Space which we are able to conceive.

*10. That the Matter of the Heavens, and of the Bodies upon this Earth, are of the ſame Kind.*

10. *Sixthly*, Becauſe the Idea we have of the Extenſion of the Heavens is the ſame as that of the Extenſion of Things here below, we ought to think [4] *that they are of the ſame Kind*; and it is no Objection againſt this, to ſay, that the Extenſion or Matter of the Heavens is brighter, and not ſo mutable as that of Things here below, becauſe this Difference regards only the *Accidents* of Matter and not the *Eſſence* of it.

1. *By the ſubtile Matter*, &c.) Or rather by the included Air, which is very much rarefyed by the Heat, and tears the Cheſnut in pieces.

2. *That the World is indefinite*, &c.) From the Hypotheſis of a *Plenum*, it muſt neceſſarily follow, that the World is really and truly *infinite*, nay, that it is uncreated and eternal, (as was ſaid before.) But ſince it is evident, that Extenſion may exiſt without Matter, whether the material World be infinite or no, ſuch is the Shortneſs of humane Underſtanding, that it cannot certainly be known: Therefore it may very well be called indefinite ſtill.

3. *That there ſhould be many Worlds*, &c.) It is evident, that there may be many Earths like this Globe of ours, that there may alſo be many Syſtems of Stars and Planets diſperſed through the vaſt Immenſity of Space; but whether there be a *Plenum* or no, *the whole Univerſe*, which may properly be called the *World*, can of Neceſſity be but one.

4. *That they are of the ſame Kind*, &c.) This is equally true, whatever be the Eſſence of Matter.

11. *Laſtly*,

*11. That two equal Bulks contain an equal Quantity of Matter.*

11. *Laſtly*, We cannot affirm, that a Veſſel filled with Lead [1] contains more Matter than if it were filled with Wax, though it be heavier; for Heavineſs is not eſſential to Matter, but only Extenſion, which we ſuppoſe to be equal in them both.

*12. That the Properties of Matter may make a Diſcovery of many other Truths.*

12. That Notion alone which we have eſtabliſhed concerning the Eſſence of Matter, has been the only Principle we have made uſe of, to anſwer all the foregoing Queſtions with ſo much Eaſe; whence there is Room to believe, that we may with the ſame Eaſe give a ſatisfactory Anſwer to many more, if we reaſon in the ſame manner about any of its *Properties*: The firſt that offers it ſelf is *Diviſibility*, which is the more copious, becauſe all its Variety of Figures depend upon it.

---

[1] *Contains more Matter*, &c.) This is abſolutely falſe, as ſhall be fully demonſtrated afterwards, when we come to diſcourſe of the Nature of Gravity.

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of the Diviſibility of Matter.*

*1. That Matter is diviſible.*

WHEN we conſider a determinate Portion of Matter without Prejudice, and compare it with other Portions of Matter with which it is encompaſſed, we eaſily conceive that its particular Exiſtence is wholly independent of thoſe that are near it, and that it does not ceaſe to be what it is, by being joined or united to other Portions of Matter; the firſt Portion of Matter therefore is ſeparable from thoſe with which it is united, and this ſhows the Diviſibility of Matter; and the Poſſibility of having its Parts divided into ſtill leſſer Particles.

*2. Of* Epicurus's *Atoms, and that they are really diviſible.*

2. Indeed, when we conſider the Power of God, and his abſolute Dominion over all Things that are in the World, we cannot doubt, but that he is able to make certain Parts of Matter of ſuch a Nature, that there is no Being in the Univerſe capable of dividing them; whence it would follow, that theſe Parts would not at all differ from thoſe little Bodies, which *Epicurus* calls Atoms: But this Property of not being capable of being divided by any external Being, is arbitrary, and not built upon any natural Principle, but only upon a mere Suppoſition, which does not alter their real Nature; and therefore we may, notwithſtanding this, hold it for certain, that all Matter

is diviſible. The whole Difficulty in this Matter is, how many Parts a certain Portion of Matter can be divided into.

*3. That Matter is diviſible in all Points that can be aſſigned.*

3. In order to ſolve this Difficulty, we muſt remember, that all the Variety that we can conceive to be in Matter, ariſes from the *Forms* which diſtinguiſh its Parts from each other; for of its ſelf it is perfectly homogeneous, that is, all alike, being only a Subſtance extended into Length, Breadth, and Thickneſs; wherefore we cannot but think, that whatever it is capable of in one Part, it is alſo capable of in all other Parts. As therefore we cannot doubt but that it is diviſible in ſome Points, ſo alſo is it diviſible in all the Points that can be aſſigned.

*4. That the Number of Points aſſignable in Matter, is indefinite, and that Matter is indefinitely diviſible.*

Tab. I. Fig. 1.

4. Now that the Number of Points which we can conceive in a determinate Quantity of Matter (*an Inch* for Example) is indefinite; there are many Demonſtrations in Geometry to ſhow, one of which I ſhall give, which ſeems to me very eaſy. Let two indefinite Lines AB, CD, be drawn parallel to each other, and at an Inch diſtance; then the Line EF, which is perpendicular to them, and limited by them, will be alſo an Inch long. Then let the Point A, in the Line AB, be taken on the left Hand of the Line EF, and, if you will, at an Inch diſtance from it; on the Line CD to the right Hand of EF, let as many Points G, H, D, *&c.* as you pleaſe be taken, and at any diſtance from each other; to which let as many ſtreight Lines be drawn from A, as AG, AH, AD. Then it is evident, that the Line AG will paſs through the Point I of the Line EF, that the Line AH will paſs through the Point L which is higher, and the Line AD will paſs through the Point M which is higher ſtill, and ſo on; and becauſe the Line CD is indefinite, and an indefinite Number of Points, ſuch as G, H, D may be taken upon it, it will follow, that Lines drawn from A to all thoſe Points, will mark an indefinite Number of Points on the Line EF different from each other, and which approach nearer and nearer to the Extremity E, without any one of them ever paſſing through the Point E, becauſe the Line CD is ſuppoſed to be parallel to AB. Wherefore, becauſe the Length of EF was taken at pleaſure, and the ſame Demonſtration holds for any other Length whatſoever; we muſt acknowledge, that an indefinite Number of Points may be aſſigned in any determinate Portion of Matter, and conſequently that Matter is indefinitely diviſible.

5. This

*5. Another Demonſtration.*

Tab. I. Fig. 2.

5. This Truth may alſo be demonſtrated from this Conſideration, that there are ſome Quantities that are incommenſurable, that is, have no common Meaſure. Thus, ſuppoſe ABCD to be a Square, it may be geometrically demonſtrated, that the Side AB, is incommenſurable to the Diagonal AC. Let us then imagine in our Minds the Line AB, which is an Inch long, ſuppoſe, to be divided into a hundred Thouſand equal Parts, and every one of theſe into a hundred Thouſand other Parts that are equal alſo, and again, every one of theſe into a Hundred Thouſand other Parts equal to one another ſtill; we may go on in the Diviſion thus, for an Age together, without ever being able to come at Parts ſo ſmall, as to ſay, that the Line AC contains a certain determinate Number of them and no more. Now this could not be ſo, if Extenſion were not indefinitely diviſible; for then after we had divided the Line AB, for inſtance, into as many Parts as it is poſſible for Extenſion to be divided into, the Line AC would neceſſarily contain [1] a certain determinate Number of thoſe Parts. We muſt therefore conclude, that every Thing which is extended, and every Portion of Matter, is indefinitely diviſible.

*6. An Objection againſt this.*

6. This Concluſion of *Ariſtotle's*, hath been aſſented to by all his Followers, except a very few, and they departed from it only, becauſe they thought they contradicted themſelves: For, ſay they, if two Bodies be ſuppoſed unequal, and if they can be divided indefinitely, it will follow, that the Number of Parts of which the one is compoſed, is equal to the Number of Parts of which the other is compoſed, and from thence it will follow, that they are both equal, which is contrary to the firſt Suppoſition.

*7. An Anſwer to this Objection.*

7. But here is a double Miſtake. Firſt, they did not conſider, that Equality and Inequality are Properties of finite Things, which can be comprehended and compared together by humane Underſtanding; but they cannot be applied to indefinite Quantities which humane Underſtanding cannot comprehend or compare together, any more than it can a Body with a Superficies, or a Superficies with a Line. But, if it could be ſaid, that of two unequal Bodies, divided in the foregoing Manner, as the

---

[1] *A certain determinate Number*, &c.) For if the Line AB could be divided into thoſe ſmalleſt Parts, the Line AC, and all other Lines could be divided alſo into them; ſo that one of thoſe ſmalleſt Parts would be the common Meaſure of the Lines AB, AC, and of all other Lines.

*Tab. I. Fig. 2.*

Line E F was divided, the Number of the Parts in the One, was equal to the Number of the Parts in the Other; we could not conclude from thence, [1] that the two Bodies themſelves were equal, becauſe the Parts of the one, are bigger in Proportion than the Parts of the other: There is therefore no Contradiction in this particular, but the foregoing Demonſtration holds in its full force.

*8. Another Objection.*

8. Others attack the indefinite Diviſibility of Matter, another way; by ſaying, that it would from thence follow, that a ſmall Portion of Matter, ſuch as a Cube, a quarter of an Inch high, might be divided into as many thin ſquare Pieces, as would cover the whole Globe of the Earth, if it were much bigger than it is; which, they think, is abſurd.

*9. Anſwer.*

9. But theſe have no more Reaſon of their Side than the other; for their Objection is founded upon this ſingle Maxim of their own, *That every Thing is abſurd, which our Imagination can't comprehend:* This is a very groſs Miſtake, and unworthy of a Philoſopher, who cannot but know, that there are an infinite Number of Truths, which it is certain our Comprehenſion cannot attain to. Many Examples might be given of this, but I ſhall content my ſelf with Two, both which relate to the Subject we are now treating of, *viz.* The Sheets of Gold made by Gold-beaters, and the Gold Wire made by Wire-drawers.

*10. Concerning the Diviſion of Gold made by Gold-beaters.*

10. In order to a clear Conception hereof, we muſt firſt know, that it appears by Experience, that the Weight of an equal Quantity of Gold and Water is as 19 to 1, ſo that if a Cubick Foot of Water weighs 71 Pounds,

a Cu-

---

[1] *That the two Bodies themſelves are equal,* &c.) What is ſaid of Quantities decreaſing infinitely little, may alſo be underſtood of Quantities increaſing infinitely great; that is, Quantities infinitely great, are not therefore all equal to each other. For a Line drawn from a Point infinitely, one way, is but half a Line drawn from a Point infinitely, two ways. And a Rectangle of an infinite Heighth, upon a finite Baſe, may be $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, &c of a Rectangle of an infinite Height alſo, upon a proportionable Baſe. And, in Heterogeneous Quantities, an infinite Line, is not only not equal, but is infinitely leſs than an infinite Superficies, and an infinite Superficies, than an infinite ſolid Space. And in a ſolid Space, a Cylinder infinite in Length, is not only not equal in Quantity, but is really infinitely leſs, than an infinite ſolid Space of two Dimenſions, *viz.* Length and Breadth; and an infinite ſolid Space of two Dimenſions, is infinitely leſs than an infinite Space of all the Dimenſions. Whence, by the way, it appears, how weakly they argue, who, becauſe *Space* (and the ſame is true of *Duration*) may be divided into innumerable Parts which are unequal; and in *infinite Space* (or *Duration*) the Number of the greateſt Parts is as much infinite as that of the leaſt; which they think abſurd, becauſe they believe all Infinites to be equal in every reſpect; conclude from hence, that there can be no ſuch Thing at all as Infinite *Space* (or *Duration*.)

[1] a cubick Foot of Gold will weigh 1349 Pounds or [2] 21584 Ounces. [3] Now a cubick Foot contains 2985984 Cubick Lines, and therefore [4] an Ounce of Gold contains $138\frac{7392}{21584}$ cubick Lines. Wherefore an Ounce of Gold, reduced into the Form of a Cube, will be [5] very near $5\frac{1}{7}$ Lines high, and its Baſe [6] about $26\frac{22}{49}$ ſquare Lines. This being ſo, the next Thing to be known, is, that the Gold-beaters make out of an Ounce of Gold 2730 whole Leaves of 34 ſquare Lines each, beſides what they call the Waſte, which is the ſmall Shreds that are cut off, and amount to almoſt half: The Superficies of [7] every one of theſe Leaves is 1156 Lines ſquare, ſo that if they were all placed regularly by one another, they would [8] make one Superficies of 3155880 ſquare Lines; to which if we add [9] but a third Part, which is the leaſt that goes into Shreds, it will follow, that a Gold-beater makes out of an Ounce of Gold 4207840 ſquare Lines. Now ſince this Superficies [10] exceeds the Baſe of a Cube of Gold of an Ounce weight 159092 times, it is certain, that That Cube, which, as was ſaid before, did not exceed $5\frac{1}{7}$ Lines in Height, is dvided into 159092 ſquare Leaves.

*11. The Diviſion of Gold by Wire-Drawers.*

11. Though this Diviſion of Gold be very ſurprizing, yet it is very far ſhort of what is done by Wire-drawers. I have ſeen ſeveral Ingots of Silver in the Figure of Cylinders, which weighed eight Pounds a piece; one of them, which ſeemed to me more regular than the reſt, was two Foot and eight Inches long, and two Inches and

---

[1] *A cubic Foot of Gold,* &c.) For 1 : 19 : : 71 : 1349.

[2] *Or 21584 Ounces*) For 16 Ounces make a *French* Pound. See *Preſtet. Nouvel. Elem. Mathemat.* 3. *Edit.* 1. *part. lib.* 2. *pag.* 55.

[3] *Now a cubic Foot*) The Proportion between a Line and a Foot, is as 1 to 144; now in this continued geometrical Proportion, the Number is 2985984: Therefore becauſe Cubes are in a triplicate Ratio of their Sides, a cubic Line is to a cubic Foot, as 1 to 2985984, that is, a cubic Foot contains 2985984 Lines.

[4] *An Ounce of Gold*) A cubic Foot of Gold, which weighs 21584 Ounces, contains 2985984 cubic Lines; therefore by the following Proportion, it is, 21584 *Ounces* : 2985984 *cubic Lines* : : 1 *Ounce* : $138\frac{7392}{21584}$ *cubic Lines.*

[5] *Very near $5\frac{1}{7}$ Lines high*) For the Cube Root of $138\frac{7392}{21584}$ is very nearly $5\frac{1}{7}$, though $5\frac{1}{6}$ is ſtill nearer, For the Cube of $5\frac{1}{6}$ is $137\frac{199}{216}$; And the Cube of $5\frac{1}{7}$ is $136\frac{8}{343}$.

[6] *About $26\frac{22}{49}$ ſquare Lines*) For the Square of $5\frac{1}{7}$ is pretty nearly $26\frac{22}{49}$.

[7] *Every one of theſe Leaves*) For the Side of a Leaf, was ſaid before to be 34 *Lines* the Square of which is 1156.

[8] *Make one Superficies*) Multiply 1156 the Number of ſquare Lines in one Leaf, by 2730 the Number of Leaves, and it will make 3155880.

[9] *But a third Part*) To which Superficies, if we add a third Part of 3155880 that is, 1051960 it will make 4207840.

[10] *Exceeds the Baſe*) That is, the Superficies 4207840, contains the Baſe of that Cube, or $26\frac{22}{49}$ 159092 times.

nine Lines about; ſo that [1] the Cylindrical Superficies was 12672 ſquare Lines. After this Superficies was covered over with ſeveral Leaves of Gold, which all together weighed half an Ounce; the whole Cylinder was drawn through Holes made in a Plate of Steel, till it became ſuch as the ſmalleſt Wire that is made in this City; I took 25 Fathom or 150 Foot of it, and weighed them in an exact pair of Scales, and found that they weighed but 36 Grains, wanting about $\frac{1}{64}$ of a Grain. Wherefore [2] the whole Cylinder ought to have been drawn into a Wire of 307200 Foot long: Whence it follows, [3] that it is 115200 times longer than it was before, and that its Superficies is become [4] three hundred and forty times as much. To which if we add, that when this ſmall Wire is made into a thin Plate, to cover Silk with, [5] the Superficies is twice as

---

1. *The Cylindrical Superficies*) For two Feet and eight Inches (that is 384 Lines) which is the Height of the Cylinder, multiplied by two Inches and nine Lines (that is 33 Lines) which is the Circumference of the Baſe, makes 12672.

2. *The whole Cylinder*) Firſt let the whole Cylinder (which, as was ſaid before, was 8 pounds) be reduced into Grains

by multiplying
- 8 Pounds by 16, which makes 128 Ounces.
- 128 Ounces by 8, which makes 1024 Drachms.
- 1024 Drachms by 3, which makes 3072 Scruples.
- 3072 Scruples by 2, which makes 6144 half Scruples.
- 6144 half Scruples by 12, which makes 73728 Grains.

Then by the following Proportion; 36 *Grain* : 150 *Feet* : : 73728 *Grains* : 307200 *Feet*.

3. *That it is 115200 times longer*) For multiply 2 Feet and eight Inches (which is the Length of the Cylinder) or 32 Inches by 115200, and it will make 3686400 Inches, that is, 307200 Feet (the Length of the whole Wire.)

4. *Three hundred and forty times as much*) Let the whole Cylinder of Silver which is to be drawn into Wire, be called A, and ſuppoſe another Cylinder B of an equal Baſe, but 115200 times higher, and let the Cylinder of Wire be called C. It is manifeſt that the Superficies of the Cylinder B, and the Superficies of the Cylinder A, are to one another as 115200 to 1, *that is*, as the Height of the Cylinder B to the Height of the Cylinder A, *that is*, as the Baſe of the Cylinder A, to the Baſe of the Cylinder B (for the Baſes of equal Cylinders are reciprocally as their Heights) *that is*, as the Baſe of the Cylinder B, to the Baſe of the Cylinder C. Now if we ſuppoſe, according to *Cavallerius*'s Doctrine of Indiviſibles, that the Superficies of Cylinders conſiſt of an Infinite Number of Circumferences of Circles equal to the Baſes, then the Superficies of the Cylinder B, will be to the Superficies of the Cylinder C, as the Circumferences, or as the Radius's of their Baſes; now the Radius's are to one another in a ſubduplicate Ratio of the Area's of the Circles: If therefore the Superficies of the Cylinder B, be ſuppoſed 115200, the Superficies of the Cylinder C will be a mean Proportional between 115200 and 1 (that is, 340 very nearly) and the Supecficies of the Cylinder A will be 1. *Q. E. D.*

5. *The Superficies is twice as big*) If the Cylinder be made flat, its whole Superficies is made into two Parallelograms, which becauſe they lie one upon another, form a thin Parallelepipedon, capable of being made as thin again, which is done by the

as big; ſo that it then is encreaſed to ſix hundred and eighty times as much as it was at firſt, [6] and therefore contains 8616960 ſquare Lines. Now after this Wire is made into ſo thin a Plate, its ſuperficies is ſtill covered all over with Gold; ſo that only half an Ounce of Gold with which the Plate is covered, is made ſo thin, that its Superficies is 8616960 Square Lines. [7] Which Superficies exceeds 325795 times the Baſe of a Cube of Gold of an Ounce weight, and twenty ſix ſquare Lines and $\frac{22}{49}$ in Breadth; from whence it follows, that the Thickneſs of the Gold which the Silver Plate is covered with, is not above $\frac{1}{325795}$ [8] of half the Height or $\frac{1}{651590}$ of the whole Height of a Cube of Gold of an Ounce weight; ſo that the Quantity of $5\frac{1}{7}$ Lines is divided into 651590 equal Parts.

12. The foregoing Conſiderations of the Diviſion of Matter, teach us to form a better Judgement of the Power of God.

12. If we conſider further, that Gold is capable of being divided ſtill more, if there were any Occaſion for it; and above all, if we conſider that what we have now examined is done by *Men*, and with Inſtruments that are very groſs and dull, and that there are in Nature many Things, which are vaſtly more fine and ſubtile; we ſhall clearly ſee, that what exceeds our Imagination, is not therefore impoſſible; and that it is not for us to preſume, as many do, to ſet Bounds to the Power of God.

13. That there can be no Diviſion without Motion.

13. Laſtly, We are carefully to obſerve, that That Diviſion which we make in our Minds and Imaginations, makes no Alteration at all in Matter, but that all real Diviſion ariſes from Motion; that is, in order for a Portion of Matter to be really divided from that to which it is united, it muſt neceſſarily be ſeparated from it. And hence it is, that *Motion* is ſo neceſſary, and the Knowledge of it ſo uſeful, that *Ariſtotle* ſays, that he who does not underſtand Motion well, muſt neceſſarily be ignorant of all natural Things.

---

the Workmen, who beat it as thin as they can, ſo that the Superficies of the Cylinder is thereby doubled.

[6] *And therefore contains*) Multiply 12672, the Superficies of the Silver before it is beaten, by 680, and it will make 8616960.

[7] *Which Superficies exceeds*) divide 8616960 by $26\frac{22}{49}$ and it will make 325745.

[8] *Of half the Height*) Becauſe the Gold with which the Silver Wire is covered was only half an Ounce, that is, half a Cube of Gold of an Ounce Weight.

## CHAP. X.

### *Of Motion and Reſt.*

BECAUSE it is eaſier to underſtand what Motion is, by Experience, than to give a Definition of it, or to find out the Cauſe, I ſhall here make uſe of a familiar Example, agreed upon by all, which may ſerve to explain to us the Nature of Motion.

*1. What it is to be moved.*

1. Suppoſe a Man in a calm Day walking on Foot in a Park planted with Trees, and that at the Beginning he is obſerved to be between the firſt Trees in the Walk, and then between the Second, and ſo to continue on walking till he comes at the End; no Body doubts but the Man thus walking moves, and that every Step he takes is a real Motion. Conſider now, that the Motion of this Man is ſomething new, which was not in him before; and then if we take an exact Account of what we conceive to have come to him ſince he began to be moved, and reject every Thing which we certainly know is not Motion, we are ſure that what remains, is, without doubt, the Thing we enquire after, and that this will ſhow wherein Motion properly conſiſts.

*2. What Motion and Reſt are.*

2. Now becauſe we do not acknowledge a *Vacuum*, as *Democritus* and *Epicurus* did, therefore we cannot ſay with them, that this Man which we are ſpeaking of, applies himſelf to different Parts of Space, becauſe we do not diſtinguiſh Space from Matter as they did; wherefore in the Example now mentioned, there are three Things to be conſidered by us. Firſt, The Deſire of Walking in the Man: Secondly, The Effort he makes to put this Deſire in Execution: And Thirdly, The Correſpondence, or the *ſucceſſive* Application of the external Parts of this Man, to the different Parts of the Bodies which encompaſs him, and immediately touch him. Now it is evident, that the Deſire which this Man has, is not the Motion of him; for Deſire is nothing but Thought, and we acknowledge many Things to be moved, which we do not allow to have any Thought. So likewiſe we ought not to think, that the Motion of the Man conſiſts in the Effort which he makes towards Walking: For though we may truly ſay, that all Bodies which move, have an Effort, (as we know they ſometimes have, though they do not move) yet we are rather to think, that this Effort is

the Cauſe of the Motion, and not the Motion it ſelf. Nothing therefore remains but that *Motion conſiſts in* [1] *the ſucceſſive Application of a Body to the different Parts of thoſe Bodies which are immediately about it*; whence it follows alſo, that the *Reſt of a Body, is the continual Application of that Body to the ſame Parts of thoſe Bodies which are about it and immediately touch it.*

---

[1] *Succeſſive Application of a Body,* &c.) The Diſpute about the Nature and Definition of *Motion*, amongſt the Writers of Philoſophy, has always been very perplexed. I ſuppoſe, becauſe, not ſufficiently attending to the different Senſes of an ambiguous Word, they endeavoured to comprehend that in one Definition, which ought to have been very exactly diſtinguiſhed into its different Parts. That *Motion* (or rather the Effect of Motion) in general, *is a Tranſlation of a Body from one Place to another*, is pretty well agreed amongſt them all. But what is meant by *being tranſlated from one place to another*, here the Controverſy lies, and Philoſophers differ widely. They who define Motion by comparing the Thing which is moved, not with the Bodies that encompaſs it, but only with Space which is immoveable and infinite, can never know or underſtand, whether any Body at all reſts, nor what the abſolute Celerity of thoſe Bodies that are moved is; for beſides, that this whole Globe of the Earth revolves about the Sun, it can never be known whether or no the Center of this whole Syſtem, in which all the Bodies relating to us is contained, reſts, or is moved uniformly in a ſtreight Line. Again, they who define Motion, by comparing the Thing which is moved, not with infinite Space, but with other Bodies, and thoſe at a very great Diſtance, theſe neceſſarily make ſome Body the Mark by which all Motion is to be meaſured, which, whether it ſelf is at reſt, or, with reſpect to Bodies at a ſtill greater diſtance, is moved, is impoſſible to be known likewiſe. Laſtly, They who define Motion by comparing the Thing which they ſay is moved, not with diſtant Bodies, but only with that Superficies which immediately touches it; it is very weak in them to ſay, that thoſe Things are truly at reſt, which being connected with the Particles of other Bodies, are moved with the greateſt Swiftneſs; as the Globe of the Earth which is incompaſſed with Air, and revolves about the Sun. And on the contrary, that they only can be ſaid to be moved, that with the utmoſt Force, and Reſiſtance which they can make, can do no more than barely hinder themſelves from being carried along with other Bodies, as Fiſhes which ſtrive againſt the Stream.

But if we rightly diſtinguiſh the different Senſes of the ambiguous Word, this whole Miſt will immediately vaniſh. For a Thing in Motion, may be conſidered in three Reſpects, by comparing it with *the Parts of infinite and immoveable Space*, or with *Bodies that ſurround it at a diſtance*, or with *that Superficies which immediately touches it*. If theſe three Conſiderations be exactly diſtinguiſhed into their ſeveral Parts, all future Diſputes about Motion will be very eaſy. Firſt, then, a Thing in Motion may be compared with the Parts of *Space*: And, becauſe the Parts of Space are infinite and immoveable, and cannot undergo any Change like Matter, therefore that Change of Situation, which is made with reſpect to the Parts of Space, without any regard had to the Bodies which encompaſs it, may rightly be called, *abſolutely and truly proper Motion*. Secondly, a Thing in Motion may be compared with diſtant Bodies, and becauſe a Body may in this manner be transferred along with other Bodies which immediately ſurround it, therefore that Change of Situation which is made with reſpect to thoſe Bodies which are at a diſtance, and not to thoſe which are near, may properly be called, *relatively common Motion*. Laſtly, a Thing in Motion, may be compared with the Superficies of thoſe Bodies which immediately touch it: And becauſe, whatſoever is thus moved, may poſſibly have no *abſolute*

3. *In order to determine whether a Body be in Motion or no, there is no need of comparing it with Bodies at a diſtance.*

3. It is to be obſerved here, that when we ſpeak of Motion or Reſt, we always mean an immediate Application, and have no Regard to the Relation a Body ſtands in to Things at a diſtance, any further than to conſider ſuch ſort of Relation as a mere external Denomination only, which makes no Alteration in the Thing, and which is

or *common* Motion at all (as if an Arrow were ſhot towards the Weſt, with the ſame Swiftneſs, that the Earth turns towards the Eaſt;) and on the contrary, that which in this reſpect is at reſt, may really be transferred with both *abſolute* and *common* Motion (as Bodies hid in the Bowels of the Earth) therefore that Change of Situation which is made with reſpect to thoſe Superficies, which immediately touch the Thing moved, may rightly be called *Motion relatively proper*.

Firſt, *Abſolutely and truly proper Motion*, is *the Application of a Body, to the different parts of infinite and immoveable Space.* And this is indeed alone abſolute and proper Motion, which is always generated and changed by the Forces impreſſed upon the Body that is moved, and by them only; and to which alone are owing the real Forces of all Bodies to move other Bodies by their impulſe, and to which they are in proportion (*See Newt. Princip. Book* I. *Def.* 2,—8.) But this *only true Motion* cannot be found out or determined by us, nor can we diſtinguiſh, when two Bodies any way ſtrike againſt each other, which the *true Motion*, and conſequently the true Force from whence that Impulſe ariſes, belongs to; whether to that which ſeems to us to move ſwifteſt, or to that which moves ſloweſt, or perhaps ſeems to be quite at reſt; becauſe it cannot be demonſtrated whether the Center of Gravity, as was ſaid before, or of the whole Syſtem (which we may properly enough define to be, *One Point in Infinite Space*,) be at reſt or no.

Secondly, *Motion relatively common* is *the Change of Situation which is made with reſpect, not to thoſe Bodies which are neareſt, but to ſome that are at a diſtance.* And this ſort of Motion we mean, when we ſay, that Men, and Trees, and the Globe of the Earth it ſelf revolve about the Sun: And we mean this Motion alſo, when we conſider the Quantity of Motion, or the Force of a Body in Motion to ſtrike againſt any Thing. For Example, when a Ball of Wood, with a piece of Lead in it to make it heavy, is thrown out of our Hand, we commonly reckon the Quantity of Motion, or the Force with which the Ball ſtrikes, from the Celerity of the Ball, and the Weight of the included Lead together. I ſay we *commonly* reckon it ſo, and indeed truly, with reſpect to the Force it ſelf, or any ſenſible Effect of it; but whether that *Force or true Motion* be *really* in the Ball that ſtrikes, or in the Earth which ſeems to be ſtruck, this, as was ſaid before, we cannot certainly determine.

Laſtly, *Motion relatively proper*, is *the ſucceſſive Application of a Body to the different Parts of Bodies which immediately touch it.* And this is the Motion we generally mean in Philoſophical Diſputes, where we enquire into the Nature of particular Things, as when we ſay, that Heat, or Sound, or Liquidneſs, conſiſt in Motion. But particular Notice ought to be taken, that the *ſucceſſive Application of a Body* is ſo to be underſtood, that it is to be applied ſucceſſively to the different Parts of the Bodies immediately touching it, *with its whole Superficies taken together* (*par tout ce qu'il a d'exterieur*, as the *French* expreſſes it;) as when a Ball that is thrown, glides againſt the different Parts of the Air with its whole Superficies; and when our Hand is moved up and down, it is ſucceſſively applied with its whole Superficies, to the different Parts of the Air on the one Side, and of the Joint by which it is faſtned to the Body on the other Side. It was to no purpoſe therefore for Mr. *Le Clerc* to find fault with this Definition, in his *Phyſ. lib.* 5. *Chap.* 5. *It will follow*, ſays he, *that the Banks and the Channel of the River are as much moved as the Water, becauſe they are as far removed from the Water* is nothing real in the Subject under Conſideration. Thus, the Man whom we ſuppoſe walking amongſt the Trees, may always keep at the ſame diſtance from the ſame Parts of the Water that runs in a Canal juſt by, and yet we don't ſay that he *is at reſt*; and another Perſon ſitting in the Walk, may be againſt different Parts of the Water, and yet we don't ſay that he *is in Motion*. Whence it follows, that they are very much miſtaken, who, in order to determine whether a Body be at Reſt, or in Motion, compare it with immoveable Parts which they imagine to be beyond

---

*Water that runs by, as the Water is from the other Parts of the Channel and Banks.* But the Caſe of the Water is very different from that of the Banks. The whole Superficies of the Water is ſucceſſively applied to different Parts of the Bodies which ſurround it, and immediately touch it, and therefore is transferred from ſome of thoſe ſurrounding Bodies to others. But the Banks are partly fixed to the Earth, and therefore are not transferred from thoſe Bodies which immediately ſurround them. For when we ſay, that a Body is transferred, we mean that the Whole of it is transferred. Wherefore an Iſland ſticking up in the middle of a River, is not moved (not ſo much as with this *mere relative Motion*) tho' the Water ſlides by it, becauſe it is firmly fixed in the Earth, and is not transferred from that which immediately touches it. So a Body equally poiſed in a Liquor whoſe Parts run upon it with equal Force, is not moved; becauſe though every particular Part of the Superficies of it be every Moment applied to different Parts of the Liquid that ſurrounds it, yet the whole Superficies of it is not transferred at once from the concave Superficies of the Parts which ſurround it, conſidered as one whole Superficies.

Further, according to theſe different Definitions of *Motion*, are we to underſtand the Word *Place* in different Senſes. For when we ſpeak of *truly or abſolutely proper Motion* (or *Reſt*;) then by *Place* we mean, *that Part of infinite and immoveable Space which the Body poſſeſſes*; when we ſpeak of *Motion relatively common*, then by Place is meant, a *Part of ſome particular Space or moveable Dimenſion*, which Place it ſelf is truly and properly moved, along with that which is placed in it: And when we ſpeak of *Motion relatively proper* (which indeed is very improper) then by *Place*, is meant *the Superficies of the Bodies* (or *ſenſible Spaces*) *which immediately ſurround the Thing moved.*

As to the Definition of *Reſt*, all are very well agreed in it: But whether Reſt be a mere *privation* of Motion, or *any Thing poſitive*, this is ſharply diſputed. *Cartes* and ſome others contend, that That which is at reſt, has ſome kind of Force, by which it continues at Reſt, and whereby it reſiſts every Thing that would change its State; and that Motion may as well be called a Ceſſation of Reſt, as Reſt is a Ceſſation of Motion. *Malebranch in his Enquiry after Truth, Book 6. Chap. 9.* and others contend on the contrary, that Reſt is a mere privation of Motion; their Arguments may be ſeen briefly explained in Mr. *Le Clerc's Phyſ. Book 5. Chap. 5.* One Thing only I would obſerve by the way, relating to this Matter, and that is, that *Malebranch* and Mr. *Le Clerc*, who follows his Opinion, in the following Argument, beg the Queſtion. Suppoſe, ſay they, a Ball at reſt; ſuppoſe that God ſhould ceaſe to will any Thing concerning it: what would be the Conſequence? It would be at reſt ſtill. Suppoſe it be in Motion; and that God ſhould ceaſe to Will that it ſhould be in Motion, what would follow then? It would not be in Motion any longer. Why not? Becauſe the Force, whereby the Body in Motion continued in the State it was, is the *poſitive* Will of God, but that whereby it is at Reſt is only *privative*: This is a manifeſt begging of the Queſtion. In reality, the *Force* or *Tendency* by which Bodies, whether beyond the Heavens, where it is very uncertain, whether there be any Parts of Matter more immoveable than thoſe near us.

*4. A remarkable Inſtance of a Body in motion and of another Body at Reſt.*

4. Having thus explained the Nature of Motion and Reſt; when we ſee a Fiſh in the River keeping it ſelf for ſome time right againſt the ſame Part of the Bank, and neither the Stream which ſurrounds it, carrying it downward, nor its own Force, by which it ſtrives againſt the Stream, carrying it upward, we ſay that it is really *in Motion*, becauſe it really agrees in every particular, with another in a Pond, which is by all allowed to be in Motion; for the Effort of the Former, makes it to be ſucceſſively applied to the different Parts of the Running Stream, in the ſame manner, as the Effort of the Latter, makes it to be applied to different Parts of the Water in the Pond. On the contrary, when we ſee a Stake floating on the Water, and carried along with the Stream, we ſay that it is *at Reſt*, becauſe it is incompaſſed with the ſame Parts (which is the general Reaſon why we ſay a Body is at Reſt) though at the ſame time, the Stake and the River together, are but one Thing in Motion.

*5. That to reſiſt ſome ſort of Motion, is to move towards the contrary part.*

5. When a Fiſh that moves it ſelf in the manner now deſcribed, is not carried along with the Stream, we are uſed to ſay, that it reſiſts the Stream; ſo when a Body by its Reſiſtance, hinders it ſelf from being carried along with another Body with which it is entirely ſurrounded, we may as well ſay, that it moves the contrary way.

*6. That Motion and Reſt are only Modes of exiſting, and are each of them but Accidents of Matter.*

6. Becauſe we cannot conceive any Application to different Parts, without ſuppoſing a Body ſo applied, ſo that Motion depends neceſſarily upon the Thing moved; therefore we are not to think that Motion is any real Being, but only a *Mode* of the Body in Motion; and ſo likewiſe, that Reſt is only a Mode of the Body which is at Reſt. Whence it follows, that *Motion* and *Reſt* add nothing more to the Body *in Motion* or *at Reſt*, than *Figure* does to a *figured* Body; and ſince a Body may either be moved

---

ther in *Motion* or at *Reſt*, continue in the State in which they once are; is the *mere Inertia* of Matter; and therefore if it could be, that God ſhould forbear willing at all; a Body that is once in Motion, would move on for ever, as well as a Body at Reſt, continue at Reſt for ever. And the Effect of this *Inertia* of Matter is this, that all Bodies reſiſt in proportion to their Denſity, that is, to the Quantity of Matter contained in them; and every Body ſtriking upon another with a *given Velocity*, whether that other be greater or leſs, moves it in proportion to the Denſity or Quantity of Matter in the one, to the Denſity or Quantity of Matter in the other.

or not moved, we conclude, that Motion and Reſt are only accidental to Matter.

*7. How to determine the Quantity of Motion.*

7. Motion has always been acknowledged to be a Species of Quantity, which is meaſured partly by the Length of the Line, which the Body in Motion runs; for Example, when a Body of a given Bigneſs, ſuppoſe *a Cubic Foot*, moves a given Space, ſuppoſe *ſixty Foot*, we call this a determinate Quantity of Motion, and it is twice or thrice as much, if the ſame Body runs 120 or 180 Feet.

*8. Another Way to meaſure the Quantity of Motion.*

8. It is alſo partly meaſured [1] by the Quantity of Matter which moves together: For Example, If a Body of *two Cubic Feet* runs through a Line *ſixty Foot long*, it has twice as much Motion, as a Body of one *Cubic Foot*, which runs through the ſame Line: For it is evident, that we ought to reckon as much Motion, in each half of the Body of two Feet, as in the whole Body of one Foot.

*9. How two unequal Bodies may have equal Quantities of Motion.*

9. Whence it follows manifeſtly, that in order for unequal Bodies to have equal Quantities of Motion, the Lines which they run through, ought to be in reciprocal Proportion to their Bulk. Thus, if one Body be three times as big as the other, the Line which it runs through, ought to be but a third Part of that of the other.

*10. How two Bodies hung at the Ends of a Ballance may be in* æquilibrio.

Tab.I. Fig. 3.

10. When two Bodies hung at the Ends of a Ballance or Leaver, are to one another, in reciprocal Proportion to their Diſtances from the fixed Point; they muſt neceſſarily, when they are moved, deſcribe Lines which are to each other, in reciprocal Proportion to their Bulks. For Example; if the Body A be three times as big as the Body B, and theſe Bodies be ſo faſtned to the Ends of the Leaver AB, whoſe Point C is fixed, that the Diſtance BC be three times as much as the Diſtance AC, the Leaver cannot incline either to the one Side or the Other, but the Space BE along which the leſſer Body is moved, will be three times as much as the Space AD along which the greater Body is moved; wherefore the Motion of the

---

[1] *By the Quantity of Matter*) That is, of the Matter which belongs properly to the Body in Motion; For, the ſubtile Matter, if there be any ſuch Thing, with which the ſmall Pores of terreſtrial Bodies are filled, is not transferred along with them, with the ſame common Motion; Therefore if a Ball of Iron, and a Ball of Wood of the ſame Bigneſs be moved with the ſame Celerity, there will be more Motion in the Ball of Iron, than in that of Wood. So likewiſe, if two equal leaden Balls, the one ſolid, the other hollow, and empty, be moved with the ſame Celerity; the ſolid Ball will have more Motion than the hallow One, and will ſtrike a Body againſt which it is thrown with greater Force. And the Quantity of Matter which is properly contained in any Body is to be determined by its Weight. Wherefore the Quantity of Motion is not to be meaſured by the Celerity and Bigneſs, but by the Celerity and Weight of the Body in Motion; which is carefully to be obſerved.

one Body, will be exactly equal to the Motion of the Other. This being ſo, there is no Reaſon to think, that the Body A, with four Degrees, ſuppoſe, of Motion downwards, ſhould lift up the Body B with four Degrees of Motion, rather than the Body B with four Degrees of Motion tending downwards alſo, ſhould lift up the Body A with four Degrees of Motion; wherefore we ought to think that they will be in *æquilibrio*. [1] And this is the Foundation of *Mechanicks*.

**11.** *The Reaſon why Liquors ballance each other.*

Tab.I. Fig.4.

11. So likewiſe when any heavy Liquor is contained in an inverted Siphon, whoſe Tubes are wider one than the other, if we imagine the Height of the Liquor in each Tube to be divided into very many equally thin Planes; one of theſe Planes in either Tube, cannot by ſinking, raiſe the Liquor in the other Tube, but the Sinking and the Riſing muſt be in reciprocal Proportion of the Quantity of Parts which ſink to thoſe which riſe. Thus, if the Width of the Part AB, the larger Tube of the Siphon ABCD, be a hundred times as much as the Width of the Part C, the ſtraiter Tube; and conſequently, the Quantity of the Parts of the Liquor in the Plane AB, a hundred times as many as the Quantity of Parts in the Plane C; then the Riſing or Sinking of the Parts on the Side AB, will be to the Riſing and Sinking of the Parts on the Side C, in a centuple reciprocal Proportion: Wherefore the Motion of all the Parts in the Tube AB is exactly equal to the Motion of all the Parts of the Tube C. So that they in the one, are no more able by ſinking, to raiſe thoſe in the other, than theſe Latter are able by ſinking to raiſe the Former. Whence it follows, that if each Tube be divided into an equal Number of Planes, that is, if the Liquor be of an equal Height in them both, [1] it muſt keep it ſelf in *æquilibrio*, unleſs diſturbed by ſome external Cauſe.

12. Since

---

[1] *And this is the Foundation of Mechanicks*) Upon this is built that famous Problem of *Archimides*, Δὸς ϖοῦ ςῶ ϗ τὴν γῆν κινήσω, *To move a given Weight, with a given Force:* For by increaſing the Diſtance C B, the Force of the Body B may be increaſed infinitely. For the manner how this is done by increaſing the Number of *Leavers*, *Wheels*, *Pulleys*, *Screws*, &c. ſee *Wilkins's Mathematical Magick*, and others. The Force of every one of which *Mechanick Powers*, and whence it ariſes, is fully explained below in the Notes on the 14*th Chap. Artic.* 9.

Tab. I. Fig. 3.

[1] *It muſt keep it ſelf in* æquilibrio) Hence it follows, *That all Liquors preſs upon Bodies that are under them, according to their perpendicular Height, and not according to their Breadth.* Which Paradox may alſo be demonſtrated in the following Manner. Let ABCDFE be a Veſſel filled with Water: Now becauſe the Column BF is heavier than the Column HG, it is manifeſt, that if the Veſſel were open at H, the Column GH would riſe till it became

Tab. XVII. Fig. 1.

*12. That God is the firſt Mover.*

12. Since it is only the Eſſential Properties of any Subject, which can be deduced from the Eſſence of it, after it is known; it is to no Purpoſe for us to endeavour to find out how Motion could be firſt produced in Bodies, becauſe this is not an eſſential Property; we ſhall not therefore ſtand to argue upon this Subject: But as we own God to be the Creator of Matter, ſo likewiſe we own him to be the firſt Mover of it.

13. But

became in *æquilibrio* with the Column BF. Since therefore the Cover which ſhuts up the Veſſel at H, hinders the Column GH from riſing, it is evident, that the Water at H preſſes the Cover of the Veſſel upwards with a Force equal to the Weight of BL, and becauſe all Preſſure is reciprocal, it is evident alſo, that the Water at G preſſes the Bottom of the Veſſel downwards with the ſame Force; to which Force the Weight of the Column GH is to be added, by which means, the Force of the Water preſſing upon G, will be the ſame as if the Column GH were equal in height to the Column FB, that is, as if it were filled up to M. The ſame may be demonſtrated likewiſe of all the other Columns; whence it is manifeſt, that the Bottom ED is preſſed in the ſame manner, as if the Veſſel every where of equal Thickneſs, were filled with Water to NO.

But the Truth of this Demonſtration depends upon this Suppoſition, that the Liquor contained in the Veſſel be ſuch as cannot be compreſſed: as Water which cannot be compreſſed. What therefore was ſaid *of all Liquors*, is to be underſtood of *ſuch Liquors*, viz. that they *preſs upon Bodies that are under them, according to their perpendicular Height, and not according to their Breadth.*

Tab. I. Fig. 4.

*Corol.* 1. If the Tube AB be ſtopped cloſe with a Cover, and the little Tube CD be filled with Water up to D, the Water contained in this Tube, will preſs upon the Water below in the great Tube, and this Preſſure will diffuſe it ſelf through all the Water, and thruſt againſt the Sides and Cover of the Veſſel thus cloſed; and if a Hole be made in the Cover, for the Water to get out at, it will fly out thence with as much Force, as if the little Tube CD were as broad as the Tube AB.

Tab. I. Fig. 4.

*Corol.* 2. If two Cylinders be exactly fitted to the Tubes AB, CD, Weights laid upon them will be in *æquilibrio*, if they are *in proportion* to the Width of the Tubes. For Example, if the Tube AB be four times as wide as the Tube CD, one pound Weight laid upon the little Cylinder, will be equal to the Force of four Pound Weight laid upon the great Cylinder; which Experiments may be infinitely diverſifyed.

Tab. XVII. Fig. 2.

*Corol.* 3. Hence it is eaſie to explain that Paradox, which ſo much perplexed the Famous Dr. *Henry Moor*, and other learned Men, *viz.* why a flat round Board, ſuch as a Trencher, when it is put into Water, ſhould riſe up immediately, though the Weight of the incumbent Water be much greater, than that under it, and yet there be no ſuch Thing in Nature as Lightneſs to lift it up. Let ABCD be a Veſſel full of Water, F a round Board immerſed in the Water. Now becauſe, from what has been already ſaid, the Columns of Water H*b*, H*b*, communicate all their Weight to the Column *dd*, and if the Column *dd* ſhould deſcend, the Columns H*b*, H*b* would aſcend with a Celerity, proportionably greater, as they are leſs thick; whence it is evident, that theſe ought to be in *æquilibrio* with each other (in the ſame manner as in the Siphon *Tab.* I. *Fig.* 4.) if the Column *dd* be all Water. But becauſe part of this Column is not Water, but the Board F, which is *ſpecifically* leſs heavy than Water; therefore the *æquilibrium* is altered, and the Column GG*dd* having leſs Force (compounded of the Magnitude and Velocity) than the Columns H*b*, H*b*; it muſt riſe ſo far, that there muſt be as much of the Wood above

*13. That it is ſufficient to allow, that God once created Motion.*

13. But becauſe it is not the Part of a Philoſopher to make him working Miracles every Moment, and to have perpetual Recourſe to his Power, we ſhall take it for granted, that when he created the Matter of this World, he impreſſed a certain Quantity of Motion upon the Parts of it, and that afterwards, by the common Courſe of his Providence, he hindred Things from returning into their original *Nothing*, and preſerved always [1] the ſame Quantity of Motion, ſo that what remains for us to do, is only to enquire into other Circumſtances of Motion, and to examine Second or Natural Cauſes.

---

above the Superficies of the Water, as it exceeds in Bigneſs a Quantity of Water of equal Weight. If the round Trencher F were ſo exactly fitted to the Width of the Veſſel, that no Water could get between it and the Sides of the Veſſel, ſo as to communicate its Weight to the Water below, and by that means force the Board upwards; or if the Board touched the Bottom of the Veſſel ſo cloſe, that no Water could get in between it and the Bottom, then the Board would not riſe at all. As I have often tried in Quickſilver, which does not wet the Board, and therefore will eaſily let it go cloſe to the Bottom of the Veſſel.

[1] *The ſame Quantity of Motion*) *Some other Principle* (beſide the Inertia of Matter) *was neceſſary for putting Bodies into Motion; and now they are in Motion, ſome other Principle is neceſſary for conſerving the Motion. For if two Globes joined by a ſlender Rod, revolve about their common Center of Gravity with an uniform Motion, while that Center moves on uniformly in a right Line drawn in the Plane of the circular Motion; The Sum of the Motions of the two Globes, as often as the Globes are in the right Line deſcribed by their common Center of Gravity, will be bigger than the Sum of their Motions, when they are in a Line perpendicular to that right Line. By this Inſtance, it appears, that Motion may be got or loſt. By reaſon of the Tenacity of Fluids, and Attrition of their Parts, and the Weakneſs of Elaſticity in Solids, Motion is much more apt to be loſt than got, and is always upon the Decay. For Bodies which are either abſolutely hard, or ſo ſoft, as to be void of Elaſticity, will not rebound from one another. Impenetrability makes them only ſtop. If two equal Bodies meet directly* in Vacuo, *they will by the Laws of Motion ſtop where they meet, and loſe all their Motion, and remain in Reſt, unleſs they be elaſtick, and receive new Motion from their Spring. If they have ſo much Elaſticity as ſuffices to make them rebound, with a quarter, or half, or three quarters of the Force with which they come together, they will loſe three Quarters, or Half, or a quarter of their Motion. And this may be tried, by letting two equal Pendulums fall againſt one another from equal Heights. If the Pendulums be of Lead or ſoft Clay, they will loſe all, or almoſt all their Motions: If of elaſtick Bodies, they will loſe all but what they recover from their Elaſticity.* Newton's Opticks the 2d Edition, in *Engliſh*, p. 373.

If it be asked how Motion, which is thus perpetually loſt, ſhould be perpetually regained. The Anſwer is; That it is regained by certain active Principles, *ſuch as are* the Cauſe of Gravity, *by which Planets and Commets keep their Motions in their Orbs, and Bodies acquire great Motion in falling.* The Cauſe of Fermentation, *by which the Heart and Blood of Animals are kept in perpetual Motion and Heat; the inward Parts of the Earth are conſtantly warmed, and in ſome Places grow very hot. Bodies burn and ſhine; Mountains take Fire, the Caverns of the Earth are blown up; and the Sun continues violently hot and lucid, and warms all Things by his Light*; (and the *Cauſe of Elaſticity* whereby Bodies reſtore themſelves to their former Figures; all which Cauſes ſhall be treated of in their proper Places) *For we meet with very little Motion in the World, beſides what is owing to theſe active Principles.* Ibid. p. 375.

# CHAP. XI.

## *Of the Continuation and Ceſſation of Motion.*

*1. That a Body at Reſt, can never of it ſelf begin to move, nor a Body in Motion of it ſelf ceaſe to move.*

HOW it comes to paſs that a Body in Motion, ſhould continue to be moved, is one of the moſt conſiderable Queſtions relating to Motion, and has very much perplexed the Skill of Philoſophers; but upon our Principles, it is not difficult to account for it: For, as was before obſerved, nothing tends to the Deſtruction of it ſelf, and it is one of the Laws of Nature, *that all Things will continue in the State they once are* unleſs any external Cauſe interpoſes; thus that which exiſts to Day, will endeavour, as far as it can, to exiſt always; and on the contrary, that which has no Exiſtence, will endeavour, if I may ſo ſpeak, never to exiſt; for it never will exiſt of it ſelf, if it be not produced by ſome external Cauſe: So alſo, that which is now a Square, will, as far as is in its Power, always continue a Square. And as that which is at Reſt, will never of it ſelf begin to move, unleſs ſomething move it; ſo that which is once in Motion, will never of it ſelf ceaſe to move, unleſs it meets with ſomething that retards or ſtops its Motion. And this is the true Reaſon why a Stone continues to move after it is out of the Hand of him that throws it,

*2. That it is a miſtake to think that Bodies in Motion do of themſelves tend to Reſt.*

2. We ſhall therefore have but little regard to that common Saying of *Ariſtotle's, That every Thing in Motion tends to Reſt,* becauſe there is no good Reaſon for it. For if this Opinion ſeems to have ſome Foundation from what we experience on the one Hand of the Things on the Earth, where a Stone or any other Body in Motion does not continue always to move; yet it is overthrown by what is obſerved on the other Hand in the Heavens, where from the Obſervation of many thouſand Years, we find no Diminution of Motion.

*3. That Ariſtotle's Opinion cannot be proved by Experience.*

3. To which we may add, that this Opinion is not ſo eaſily ſupported, by the Experience of what is done here upon the Earth, as is imagined: For though indeed it be very evident, that we ſee the Bodies which were in Motion, ceaſe to move, and to be at perfect Reſt yet it is by no means evident, that they tend to this of themſelves: For no Body can ever think, that a Cannon-Ball, after it has entered three or four Foot into a Wall, has an Inclination after that to be at Reſt. On the contrary, when

we perceive that this Ball enters deeper or leſs deep, according to the Difference of the Bodies that receive the Force of it, we aſcribe, with more Reaſon, the Ceſſation of its Motion to the greater or leſs Reſiſtance made by thoſe Bodies.

*4. That the Air reſiſts Motion, and that the Reſiſtance of Bodies is the Cauſe of other Bodies ceaſing to move.*

4. This Opinion was peculiar to *Ariſtotle*, and no Body would have ever come into it, if they had conſidered, that Air, though it does not reſiſt Motion ſo much as a Wall, yet it makes ſome Reſiſtance, as we experience in a Fan moved quick; for then when they had ſeen a Cannon-Ball or a Stone, not always continuing to move in the Air, they would have thought, that this was cauſed by the Reſiſtance which the Air makes to the Motion of the Ball, and that the Ball loſes as much Motion as it communicates to the Air.

*5. That a Body in Motion, loſes ſo much of its own Motion as it communicates to other Bodies.*

5. Now in order to find out how much of its Motion a Body loſes when it ſtrikes againſt other Bodies, you muſt remember, that we ſuppoſed [1] that God created a certain Quantity of Motion, and that by the common Courſe of his Providence, he preſerves as much Motion in Matter, as he impreſſed upon it at the Beginning; whence it follows, that if a Body in Motion, ſtrikes directly upon another Body at Reſt, and puſhes it before it, it muſt neceſſarily loſe as much of its own Motion, as it communicates to the other, in order for them to go on together with the ſame Celerity as if the two Bodies were one common Maſs. Wherefore if a Body in Motion be three times as big as the Body at Reſt, it will loſe a fourth Part of its Motion; and inſtead of running, ſuppoſe, a Line of four Fathom, in a given time, it will run but a Line of three Fathom, that is, it will move with a fourth Part leſs Celerity, than it did before.

*6. That a Body in motion loſes leſs of its Motion, when it ſtrikes againſt another Body already in motion, than when it ſtrikes upon a Body at Reſt.*

6. If a Body in Motion, ſtrikes upon another Body in Motion alſo, it will make that move ſwifter; but it will not loſe ſo much of its own Motion, as if this latter had been wholly at reſt; becauſe all that it has to do, is only to add ſome Degrees of Motion to thoſe it has already, in order to make the Bodies move with the ſame Celerity: One Example will make this clear. Suppoſe a Body to have a certain Quantity of Motion, for inſtance, twelve

---

[1] *That God created a certain Quantity of Motion*) See above *Chap.* X. *Art.* 13. But though Motion may be deſtroyed, and hard Bodies that have no elaſtick Force, when they ſtrike againſt each other, are not reflected, but loſe their Motion; yet in other Caſes, Bodies perfectly hard, communicate their Motion to each other, according to thoſe Laws which the Author is explaining.

Degrees, and that it ſtrikes upon another which is at Reſt, according to what was now ſaid, if the firſt Body be as big again as the other, it ought to communicate four Degrees of Motion to it, and keep eight to it ſelf. But if the Body which has twelve Degrees of Motion, ſtrikes againſt the other moving with three Degrees, it ought to increaſe its Motion but two Degrees, to make it have as much as it ought to have; becauſe this being but half as big as the other, it will by this means have Motion enough to go as ſwift as the other: And therefore that Body which before kept to it ſelf only eight Degrees of Motion, will now keep Ten. [1]

---

[1] If a Body in Motion, be three times as big as another Body at Reſt, and ſtrikes againſt it with thirty two Degrees of Motion, it will give it eight Degrees of its Motion, and keep Twenty four to it ſelf: But if the latter Body had four Degrees of Motion before, it will give it but five Degrees, and keep Twenty Seven. By the ſame way of Reaſoning, it is eaſy to find out other Laws of communicating Motion in Bodies that are perfectly hard. But becauſe the hardeſt Bodies of all have alſo an *Elaſtick Force*, and becauſe the Caſe of Elaſtick Bodies, is different from this, and more difficult, you may find the Principal Laws by which their Motion is communicated, explained by theſe learned Perſons; Sir *Chriſtopher VVren*, Dr. *VVallis*, Mr. *Hugens*, in his Philoſophical Tranſactions, Numb. 43, and 46, and more fully by the ſame Mr. *Hugens* in his Poſthumous Works, and by Mr. *Marriot*, in a whole Book wrote upon this Subject, and alſo very fully by Dr. *Keil* in his Lectures upon Natural Philoſophy. But this whole Matter may be comprehended in the following

### PROBLEM.

The Weights and Velocities with which two Spherical Bodies, perfectly Elaſtick, whoſe Centers are moved in the ſame ſtreight Line, meet each other, being given; to find their Velocities after they have met.

In the following Computation, the Motion of Elaſtick Bodies after ſtriking againſt each other, is ſuppoſed to ariſe from two Cauſes.

I. From ſimple Impulſe. By the Force of which alone, if the Bodies had no Elaſtick Force, each Body after they had met, would either wholly reſt, *viz.* if they meet each other with equal Motion; or they would go both on together, as if they were united into one Body, with the ſame Velocity; and the Sum of their Motions (if they moved both the ſame Way) or the Difference of their Motions (if they moved contrary Ways) would continue the ſame after their meeting as before.

II. From *Elaſtick Force*. Which in Bodies perfectly Elaſtick, is equal to the Force with which they are compreſſed; that is, when two ſuch Bodies are ſtruck againſt each other, it is equivalent to that Motion which one of them would gain or loſe by ſimple Impulſe only. This Force acts the contrary way, and therefore the Motion which is produced by it, muſt be ſubſtracted from that Motion, which is in the Body impelling, and added to that Motion which is in the Body impelled, by the Force of ſimple Impulſe only, in order to find their Velocities after Reflection.

This being ſuppoſed. Let A and B be two perfectly Elaſtick Bodies, and let A either overtake B, or meet it; Let their Velocities be $a$ and $b$; Then the Motion of A will be $Aa$, and the Motion of B, will be $Bb$, and the Quantity of Motion, in them both together, if they be moved the ſame or contrary ways will be $Aa \pm Bb$, which (by the 1ſt *Poſition*) will be the ſame after their Impulſe as before. Now (if they had no Elaſtick Force) their common Velocity

*7. How a Body loſes its Motion.*

7. If a Body which was moved by another, be by any Means turned out of the Way, ſo that That from which it received its Motion, is left to move freely, it will continue only to move as it did after it had moved the other, and

city after they had met, would be $\frac{Aa \pm Bb}{A + B}$, and therefore the Motion of A, $\frac{A^2a \pm ABb}{A + B}$, and that of B, $\frac{ABa \pm B^2b}{A + B}$. Now if the Motion $\frac{A^2a \pm ABb}{A + B}$, which remains in A after the Impulſe, be ſubſtracted from the Motion A a, which it had at firſt, there will remain the Motion $\frac{ABa \mp ABb}{A + B}$, which the Body A has loſt by Simple Impulſe only. Now if this Motion be ſubſtracted from the Motion $\frac{A^2a \pm ABb}{A + B}$ which is in A, and added to the Motion $\frac{ABa \pm B^2b}{A + B}$ which is in B after their Meeting, from the firſt Cauſe only, the Remainder $\frac{A^2a \pm 2ABb - ABa}{A + B}$ will (by the 2d *Poſition*) be the Motion of A, and the Snm $\frac{2ABa \pm B^2b \mp ABb}{A + B}$ will be the Motion of B, from both Cauſes together, after Reflection. And by dividing ſeparately theſe Motions by their Bodies, we ſhall have $\frac{Aa \pm 2Bb - Ba}{A + B}$ for the Velocity of A, and $\frac{2Aa \pm Bb \mp AB}{A + B}$ for the Velocity of B after Reflection. Q. E. J. (See *Newt. Algebra. Pag.* 91. *Probl.* 12.)

*N. B.* It may ſo happen, that the Body A, whether it overtakes B, or meets it, may loſe all its Motion, or may be driven back the contrary to that it moved before they met. Wherefore in this Caſe the Quantity $\frac{Aa \pm 2Bb - Ba}{A + b}$ by which the Velocity after Reflection is expreſſed, will either become Nothing (the Negative and Poſitive Terms deſtroying one another) or Negative. So likewiſe it may happen, that when the Body B meets A, it may, after their Meeting, either reſt, or go on to be moved the contrary way to that A was moved in, before they met; and then the Quantity by which the Velocity is expreſſed, will either be Nothing, or (as at firſt) Negative. But if it be driven back the ſame way that A was moved in at firſt, the Quantity by which the Velocity is expreſſed, will be poſitive. For ſince the Velocity that way which A was at firſt moved in, is expreſſed by the Sign +; 'tis evident, that the Velocity the contrary way, ought to be expreſſed by the contrary Sign − throughout the whole Computation.

From theſe general Quantities now found, by which the Velocities of the Bodies A and B are expreſſed, it is eaſy to deduce the Laws of Motion which are obſerved by any perfectly Elaſtick Bodies after Reflection, in any given Caſe whatſoever. For Example.

1. If the Velocities of two Bodies meeting each other, be reciprocally as their Weights, in this Caſe it will be $Aa = Bb$, and therefore the Quantity by which the Velocity of A is expreſſed, $= \frac{-Aa - Ba}{A + B} = -a$; and that of B, $= \frac{Ab + Bb}{A + B} = b$. That is, each Body after their Impulſe, will go back with the ſame Velocity. with which they met each other.

2. If A ſtrikes againſt B, when it is at reſt, the Velocity of A will be (the Quanuity B, and conſequently its Multiples Bb, *&c.* vaniſhing) $= \frac{Aa - Ba}{A + B}$, and the Velocity of B will be $= \frac{2Aa}{A + B}$. That is, as the Sum of their Bodies is to their Difference; ſo is the Velocity of the Body A before Reflection, to its Velocity after Reflection. And as the Sum of the Bodies, to double the impelling Body, ſo is the Velocity of A before Reflection, to the Velocity of B after Reflection.

3. If

and not as it moved before it communicated any of its Motion; becauſe the Manner in which any Thing ought to continue to exiſt, and to preſerve it ſelf, is that which it has this very Moment, and not that which it had ſome

---

3. If A be equal to B, and ſtrikes againſt it when it is at Reſt, the Velocity of A will be $= 0$. And the Velocity of B will be $= a$. Which ſhows that the Body A after ſtriking, will be at Reſt, and the Body B will be moved with the ſame Celerity after the Impulſe, that A was moved with before the Impulſe.

4. If A and B be equal, and meet each other with unequal Velocity, the Velocity of A after meeting will be $= -b$; and the Velocity of $B = a$. That is, each of them will return back after meeting, having changed their Velocity.

5. If A and B be equal, and A overtakes B, the Velocity of A will be $= b$, and the Velocity of $B = a$. That is, they will both move the ſame way they did before, having changed their Velocity.

### LEMMA.

If there be three unequal Quantities A, B, C; and A be leſs than B, and B leſs than C. I ſay, (1.) that $B + \frac{AC}{B}$ is leſs than $A + C$ (2.) that $B + \frac{AC}{B}$ is leaſt of all, when B is a mean proportional between A and C.

### DEMONST.

The firſt part is evident from *Prop. 25. Book 5. of Euclid.* The *Second* Part may be demonſtrated thus. Let M be a mean proportional between A and C: then $M^2 = AC$. Now if M and B be equal, it is $B + \frac{AC}{B} = 2M$ or $2B$, But if there be any difference between M and B, let that Difference be D; and it will be $M \pm D + \frac{M^2}{M \pm D} = B + \frac{AC}{B}$. But $M \pm D + \frac{M^2}{M \pm D}$ is greater than $2M$ as is evident by multiplying each of them by $M \pm D$ and comparing their Products together. Therefore, &c. Q. E. D.

(6.) Let there be three Elaſtick Bodies, as mentioned in the Lemma, A, B, C, and let A ſtrike againſt B at reſt, and after that, let B ſtrike againſt C at reſt alſo; I ſay, that by this Means, the Body C will acquire greater Velocity, than if it had been ſtruck immediately by A alone, without the Interpoſition of B; and that it then acquires the greateſt Velocity, when B is a mean Proportional between A and C. (And the ſame holds true, if the Motion begins with the Body C.)

For by the *Second* Law, explained above, the Velocity of C, if it were impelled by A only, and the Body B not between them, will be $\frac{2Aa}{A+C}$ or $\frac{4Aa}{2A+2C}$. And by the ſame Law, the Velocity of C, when ſtruck by the Body B with that Motion which was given it by A will be $\frac{4Aa}{A+C+B+\frac{AC}{B}}$, which two Fractions, becauſe they have the ſame common Numerator (4 A a) are to one another as their Denominators, inverſely. Wherefore the Velocity of C in the firſt Caſe, is to its Velocity in the Second, as $A + C + B + \frac{AC}{B}$ to $2A + 2C$. But (*by the Lemma*) $B + \frac{AC}{B}$ is leſs than $A + C$, and leaſt of all when A, B, and C are in continual Proportion. Therefore $A + C + B + \frac{AC}{B}$ is leſs than $2A + 2C$. That is, the Velocity of C, in the firſt Caſe, is leſs than its Velocity in the Second, and this Inequality is greateſt, when A, B and C, are in continual Proportion. If the Motion begins at the Body C, then if *c* repreſents its Celerity, and be ſubſtituted in the Room of *a*, the Demonſtration will be the ſame.

Time before, but has not now. Wherefore a Body which has loſt ſome of its Motion, by meeting Another, may loſe more of it by a ſecond Meeting, or a Third, and ſo on, 'till at laſt it may be quite ſtopped, as we often ſee.

8. *That greater Bodies continue to move longer than leſſer ones.*

8. From what has been ſaid, it follows firſt, that if two like and unequal Bodies, be moved in a ſtreight Line with the ſame Celerity, [1] *the greater Body ought to move longer than the leſſer*, becauſe, the Quantity of Motion in each of theſe Bodies, is in proportion to their Maſſes, but they communicate and loſe their Motion in proportion to their Superficies only, with which they ſtrike againſt other Bodies, amongſt which they are moved; now though the *bigger* Body has more Superficies than the *Leſſer*, yet it has not ſo much in proportion to its Bulk, and conſequently *it* does not loſe every Moment ſo much of its Motion as the *leſſer* one does.

9. *An Example.*

Tab.I. Fig.5.

9. One Inſtance will make this clear. Suppoſe the Body A to be a Cube two Foot every Way, and the Body B, a Cube of one Foot; which being ſuppoſed, the Superficies of the Body A will be four times as much as the Superficies of the Body B, but the Maſs of it, will be eight times as big: And conſequently, if theſe Bodies move with the ſame Celerity, the Body A will have eight times

---

7. The more Bodies there are of a different Magnitude, between any two Bodies, ſo much the greater will the Velocity of the Laſt be: And it will be the greateſt of all, if the Bodies be in a continued Proportion. This eaſily follows from the preceding Article.

8. Perfectly elaſtick Bodies recede from each other after Reflection, with the ſame relative Velocity, that they approached each other with before Reflection; that is, in any given Time, the Diſtance between the two Bodies before, and after their meeting, will be the ſame, at the End of that time. For the diſtance of the Bodies in any given time, before they meet, may be expreſſed by $a \mp b$: *viz.* the ſame Quantities by which the Difference of their Velocities, if they be moved the ſame way, or the Sum of their Velocities if they be moved different Ways, is repreſented: Alſo the Spaces which they deſcribe ſeparately, in a given Time, after Reflection, may be expreſſed by the ſame Quantities, by which their Celerities are expreſſed; wherefore, if from the Quantity $\frac{2Aa \pm Bb \mp Ab}{A + B}$ which expreſſes the Space run through by the Body B after meeting, the ſame way that A moved before meeting, be ſubſtracted $\frac{Aa \pm 2Bb - Ab}{A + B}$ which expreſſes the Space run through by the Body A in the ſame time, and the ſame way; the Remainder $\frac{Aa \mp Ab + Ba \mp Bb}{A + B} = a \mp b$, will give the Diſtance of the two Bodies at the End of the given Time after Reflection.

And by the like Reaſoning other Laws may be found.

[1] *The greater Body ought to move longer*) It is to be obſerved, that this is ſaid of *Similar*, that is, *homogeneous* Bodies. Otherwiſe we are to undeſtand by it, not the Greateſt, but the heavieſt Body: For the Motion of Bodies that have the ſame Celerity, is not as the *Maſſes* of thoſe Bodies, but as the *Weights* of them. See the *Notes* Chap. x. Art. 8.

as much Motion as the Body B; ſo that it ought to loſe eight times as much every Moment, in order for them to ceaſe together. But this cannot be, becauſe the Body A, having but four times as much Superficies as the other, can meet with but four times as many Bodies, and not with eight times as many; wherefore the Body A will move pretty quick, when the Body B will have no Motion at all, as is confirmed by Experience; for if a Bullet and a ſmall Shot come at the ſame time out of a Gun, the Bullet will be carried vaſtly further than the ſmall Shot.

*10. That a Body will continue to move longer, when it goes one way than when it goes another.*

10. *Secondly,* Hence it follows alſo, *That a long Body, ſuch as an Arrow, will continue to move longer, when it is ſhot lengthwiſe, than it would do if it went croſswiſe,* for it meets with fewer Bodies to transfer its Motion to, and therefore it keeps the more to it ſelf.

*11. That a Body which moves almoſt within it ſelf, ought to continue its Motion longeſt of all.*

11. *Thirdly, If a Body moves almoſt wholly within it ſelf,* ſo as to transfer very little of its Motion to the Bodies that ſurround it, *it ought to continue moving longeſt of all:* Thus we find by experience, that a ſmooth well poliſhed Braſs Ball, of half a Foot Diameter, ſupported by two Pivots, will, with a ſmall Stroke continue to run round for three or four Hours.

*12. How a Body may ſeem to be wholly at Reſt.*

12. But becauſe a Body cannot ſo transfer its Motion to another as not to partake with that Body to which it is transferred, but will retain ſome to it ſelf, though it be never ſo little; therefore it ſhould ſeem that a Body once in Motion, [1] ſhould never afterwards be entirely at reſt, which is contrary to Experience. But we ought to conſider, that two Bodies which have but very little Motion, may be ſo connected and adjuſted to each other, as to be *in a manner* at Reſt, which is all that Experience ſhows us.

*13. That a Body in direct Motion makes other Bodies turn in a Circle, in order to take its Place.*

13. Becauſe the World is full, a Body moving in a ſtreight Line, muſt of neceſſity puſh another, and that a Third, but it ought not to go on thus infinitely; for ſome of thoſe which are thus puſhed, will be forced to turn out of the Way, in order to take the Place of that which was firſt moved, that being the only Place where they can go, and which is free for them: Wherefore when any Body is moved, [2] a certain Quantity of Matter muſt al-

---

[1] *Should never afterwards be entirely at Reſt*) This is falſe, becauſe built upon a falſe Foundation, *viz. that Motion cannot be deſtroyed.* See the Notes above, Chap. x. Art. 13.

[2] *A certain Quantity of Matter*) This is for the moſt part true, not becauſe the World is full, but becauſe the State of the Air, and other Fluids in which Bodies are moved, is ſuch, that when any Body is moved out of its Place, theſe, by reaſon of their Fluidity, immediately run into its Place.

ways neceſſarily be moved in the Form of a Ring or a Circle, or ſome way equivalent thereto.

14. *That this Motion in a Circle, is the Cauſe of many ſurprizing Motions.*

14. This Truth, though it was known long ago, yet Philoſophers, for want of duly attending to it, and well weighing and conſidering its Conſequences, have thought it impoſſible to account for all the Motions we ſee in Nature by Impulſe alone, which is the only way that we can conceive clearly, by which one Body moves another by puſhing it; and which ſo naturally follows from the Impenetrability of Matter, which all the World agree in. And this is the Reaſon why they introduced into their Philoſophy Things, indeed very ſpecious, ſuch as *Attraction, Sympathy, Antipathy, the Fear of a* Vacuum, *&c.* but which, at the Bottom, are mere Chimera's, invented to make them appear to give a Reaſon of that which they did not all underſtand, and therefore ought not to be uſed in the better ſort of Natural Philoſophy.

15. *The Obſcurity of the Words Attraction, Sympathy and Antipathy.*

15. For as to [1] *Attraction*, *Sympathy*, and *Antipathy*, they ought not to be allowed at all, by reaſon of their Ob-

---

[1] *Attraction*) Since nothing acts at a Diſtance, that is, nothing can exert any Force in acting where it is not; it is evident, that Bodies (if we would ſpeak properly) cannot at all move one another, but by Contact and Impulſe. Wherefore *Attraction* and *Sympathy* and all *occult Qualities*, which are ſuppoſed to ariſe from the *Specifick Forms* of Things are juſtly to be rejected. Yet becauſe, beſides innumerable other Phænomena of Nature, that univerſal Gravitation of Matter, which ſhall be more fully handled afterwards, can by no means ariſe from the mutual Impulſe of Bodies (becauſe all Impulſe muſt be in proportion to the Superficies, but Gravity is always in proportion to the Quantity of ſolid Matter, and therefore muſt of Neceſſity be aſcribed to ſome Cauſe that penetrates the very inward Subſtance it ſelf of ſolid Matter) therefore all ſuch *Attraction*, is by all means to be allowed, as is not the Action of Matter at a Diſtance, but the Action of ſome immaterial Cauſe which perpetually moves and governs Matter by certain Laws. *Have not the ſmall Particles of Bodies certain Powers, Virtues or Forces, by which they act at a diſtance, not only upon the Rays of Light for reflecting, refracting and inflecting them, but alſo upon one another for producing a great part of the Phænomena of Nature. For it is well known, that Bodies act one upon another by the* Attractions *of Gravity, Magnetiſm and Electricity; and theſe Inſtances ſhew the Tenour and Courſe of Nature, and make it not improbable but that there may be more* Attractive Powers *than theſe. How theſe* Attractions *may be performed, I do not here conſider. What I call* Attraction *may be performed by* Impulſe (not Bodily Impulſe) *or by ſome other Means unknown to me. I uſe that Word here, to ſignify only in general any Force by which Bodies tend towards one another, whatſoever be the Cauſe. For we muſt learn from the Phænomena of Nature, what Bodies* attract *one another, and what are the Laws and Properties of the* Attraction, *before we inquire the Cauſe by which the* Attraction *is performed. The* Attractions *of Gravity, Magnetiſm and Electricity reach to very ſenſible Diſtances, and ſo have been obſerved by vulgar Eyes; and there may be others, which reach to ſo ſmall Diſtances as hitherto eſcape Obſervation; and perhaps electrical* Attraction *may reach to ſuch ſmall Diſtances, even without being excited by Friction.* Newt. Opt. p. 350.

*It ſeems to me farther, that theſe Particles* (of Matter) *have not only a vis*

Obſcurity. That they are obſcure, is very evident; for if we take a Loadſtone; for Example, It is manifeſt to all the World, that to ſay it has an *attractive Vertue* or *a Sympathy* with the Iron, does not at all explain the Nature or the Properties of it. And as to the *Fear of a* Vacuum, I reſerve the Notion of That to the following Chapter, where we ſhall compare the Reaſoning of the Antients and our own together.

---

a vis Inertiæ, *accompanied with ſuch paſſive Laws of Motion, as naturally reſult from that Force; but alſo that they are moved by certain active Principles, ſuch as is that* (Attraction which we call the Attraction) *of Gravity, and that which cauſes Fermentation, and the Coheſion of Bodies. Theſe Principles I conſider not as* occult Qualities *ſuppoſed to reſult from the* Specifick Forms *of Things, but as general Laws of Nature, by which the Things themſelves are formed: Their Truth appearing to us by Phænomena though their Cauſes be not yet diſcovered. For theſe are manifeſt Qualities, and their Cauſes only are occult. And the* Ariſtotelians *gave the Name of* occult Qualities *not to manifeſt Qualities, but to ſuch Qualities only as they ſuppoſed to lie hid in Bodies, and to be the unknown Cauſes of manifeſt Effects: Such as would be the Cauſes of Gravity, and of magnetick, and electrick Attractions, and of Fermentations, if we ſhould ſuppoſe that theſe Forces or Actions aroſe from Qualities unknown to us, and uncapable of being diſcovered and made manifeſt. Such* occult Qualities *put a ſtop to the Improvement of natural Philoſophy, and therefore of late Years have been rejected. To tell us that every Species of Things is endowed with* an occult Specifick Quality *by which it acts and produces manifeſt Effects, is to tell us nothing. But to derive two or three general Principles of Motion from Phænomena, and afterwards to tell us how the Properties and Actions of all corporeal Things follow from thoſe manifeſt Principles, would be a very great Step in Philoſophy, though the Cauſes of thoſe Principles were not yet diſcovered: And therefore I ſcruple not to propoſe the Principles of Motion above-mentioned, they being of very general Extent, and leave their Cauſes to be found out.* Id. Ibid. p. 374.

---- *We have the Authority of the oldeſt and moſt celebrated Philoſophers of* Greece *and* Phœnicia, *who made a* Vacuum *and Atoms, and the* Gravity *of Atoms, the firſt Principles of their Philoſophy; tacitly attributing* Gravity *to ſome other Cauſe than denſe Matter. Later Philoſophers baniſh the Conſiderations of ſuch a Cauſe out of natural Philoſophy, feigning Hypotheſes for explaining all Things mechanically, referring other Cauſes to Metaphyſicks. Whereas the main Buſineſs of Natural Philoſophy is to argue from Phænomena without feigning Hypotheſes, and to deduce Cauſes from Effects, till we come to the very Firſt Cauſe, which certainly is not* Mechanical, *and not only to unfold the* Mechaniſm *of the World, but chiefly to reſolve Theſe and ſuch like Queſtions,* &c. Id. Ibid. p. 343.

## CHAP. XII.

## *Of ſuch Motions as are commonly aſcribed to the Fear of a* Vacuum.

*1. What was originally meant by the Fear of a* Vacuum.

THERE is no Subject more capable of ſhowing us the Difference betwixt true and falſe Philoſophy, or at leaſt betwixt Reaſoning juſtly and not juſtly, than this For we ſee manifeſtly, that the one leads us, if not to the Truth, yet to ſo great an Appearance of Truth, that the Mind acquieſces in it; but the other gives us only Words, which we can form no Idea's from. For Proof of This, Let us take for inſtance a *Syringe*, one End of which being put into the Water, and the Sucker drawn, let us hear how the Antients reaſoned about it. Firſt, They obſerved, that there could be no *Vacuum* in Nature; then they conſidered, that there would be one, if the Sucker were drawn, and no Water followed; whence they concluded, that the Water ought to enter in proportion to the drawing the Sucker; and hence they ſaid the Water aſcended, leſt there ſhould be a *Vacuum*.

*2. How the Senſe of this has been corrupted.*

2. Afterwards, the Manner of the Expreſſion was changed, without altering the Notion, and it was ſaid, that the Water aſcended, for *fear* there ſhould be a *Vacuum* in Nature: And this Expreſſion being equivocal, it was taken in a bad Senſe, and as it is cuſtomary to carry Things to Extremity, the Word *Fear* was changed to *Horrour*; ſo that it was affirmed, that the Water aſcended, out of the *Horrour* which Nature had of a *Vacuum*, as if Nature (in the Senſe that Philoſophers underſtand that Word) was capable of *Horrour*.

3. *The Fear of a* Vacuum in this latter Senſe, is very ridiculous, wherefore I am apt to think that the Philoſophers took it in the former Senſe only: But which way ſo ever it be underſtood, it does by no means anſwer the Queſtion; any more than it would, if any one ſhould ask, how Wood came from very remote Parts to *Paris*, and it ſhould be anſwered, it came *out of the Fear of Cold*; this is no anſwer to the Queſtion, becauſe the *final* Cauſe is alledged inſtead of the *efficient* Cauſe, which was the Thing demanded.

4. How-

4. *That the Reaſoning drawn from the Fear of a* Vacuum, *does not ſufficiently agree with Experience.*

4. However, if the Reaſoning of the Antients were juſt, and built upon a good Foundation, though it could not make us underſtand how the Water aſcends, that is, explain to us the *efficient* Cauſe of ſuch Aſcent; yet it ſhould prove, at leaſt, that it ought to aſcend; and their Reaſoning ſhould agree with Experience. And that you may ſee that it is defective here alſo, it is to be obſerved, that if the ſole Reaſon, why any Space is filled, is for *fear* there ſhould be any *Vacuum* in Nature, and this makes the Water aſcend; as this Reaſon is always the ſame, it will follow, that the Water ought always to aſcend, ſo long as the Sucker of the Syringe is drawing. be it never ſo long; now Pumps being only long Syringes, they ought to raiſe up Water to any Height whatſoever; yet Experience ſhews us, that we cannot by Pumps, raiſe it above One and thirty Foot and a half, after which, the Water ſtops, and will not follow the Sucker. Whence we ought to conclude, that *the fear of a* Vacuum, taken in the moſt favourable Senſe poſſible, is not at all the Cauſe of the Waters aſcending, ſince it does not agree with Experience.

5. *Various Suppoſitions to explain this another way.*

5. Having ſeen the Defect of the Reaſoning of the Antients, let us ſee if we can ſay any Thing better founded. And that I may not be guilty of the ſame Fault, I ſhall offer ſome Particulars, which are very clear and intelligible to all the World, in order to draw ſome certain and undoubted Conſequences from a Foundation which cannot be conteſted.

6. *The firſt Suppoſition.* Tab.I. Fig.6.

6. Let us ſuppoſe firſt, That ſome Body endeavours to draw the Sucker from the Bottom of the Syringe ABC, the Hollow of which it exactly fits, that the whole Syringe is in the Air, and that the Hole C is open: This being ſuppoſed, it is evident, that the Sucker D cannot be drawn towards E, but it will puſh the Air, which will puſh that beyond it, 'till, as was ſaid above, it turns in the Lines here deſcribed, or ſome ſuch like, in order to enter into the Place from whence the Sucker was drawn; whence it follows, that the Air was moved by a real Impulſe.

7. *The Second Suppoſition.*

7. Let us ſuppoſe Secondly, That the Hole at C, were ſtopped, and that there were no Pores either in the Syringe or the Sucker; In this Caſe, I ſay, [1] it would

---

[1] *It would be impoſſible*) This would indeed be true, if the World were full: But becauſe we have affirmed it to be otherwiſe; ſo much Force only is required to draw the Sucker, as can lift the whole Weight of the incumbent Air. Nor need we here trouble our ſelves with any occult Pores or ſubtile Matter.

be impoſſible to draw the Sucker, the leaſt that can be, becauſe the World being full, the Air which ought to puſh the Sucker, would have no Place to go to.

*8. The Third Suppoſition.*

8. On the other hand, Let us ſuppoſe, that the Syringe thus ſtopped, has Pores, though ſo very ſmall, as not to be perceived by our Senſes, and that amongſt the Particles of the Air, there are ſome ſo ſubtle, as to be able to enter theſe Pores. This being ſuppoſed, there is no Reaſon why the Sucker may not be drawn, though the Hole at the Bottom of the Syringe be ſtopped: For then the Sucker may make Room for it ſelf, by preſſing the groſſer parts of the Air, and by ſqueezing out the ſubtle Parts, which are forced to enter the Syringe.

*9. That the greateſt Part of terreſtrial Bodies have Pores, and that the Air conſiſts of two Sorts of Particles.*

9. In order to know whether the Sucker of the Syringe can be drawn when the Hole at the lower End is ſtopped; we muſt firſt know, whether the Syringe or the Sucker have any Pores in them or no, and after that, whether there be any Particles in the Air ſubtil enough to enter in at theſe Pores: For according to one or other of theſe Suppoſitions, will the Thing be poſſible or not poſſible. And becauſe neither of them can be determined by our Senſes or by Reaſon, and there being no Contradiction in either, it muſt be decided by Experience; now we find by Experience, that [1] if the Syringe be not too thick, we can draw the Sucker without much Difficulty; from whence it is evident, that there are Pores either in the Syringe, or in the Sucker, or rather in both of them; and that amongſt the groſs parts of the Air, there are ſome ſo fine, as to paſs through the Pores of moſt terreſtrial Bodies.

*10. Another very conſiderable Experiment; and that the Air is weighty.*

10. This Experiment helps us to another very conſiderable, which is, that if, after we have drawn the Sucker a little, we let it go again, it returns of it ſelf, and that with ſuch a Force, as to ſtrike againſt the Bottom of the Syringe; the Reaſon of which we ſhall ſee, if we remember that a Body never begins to move of it ſelf, if it be not puſhed by another which immediately touches it; now, if we obſerve, that there is nothing but the Air, that immediately touches the Sucker, we muſt think that it is the Air that cauſes this ſuprizing Motion; for, con-

---

[1] *If the Syringe be not too thick*) The Thickneſs of the Syringe ſignifies nothing (nor the occult Paſſages, nor the ſubtle Matter, as was ſaid on the *Article above*;) but the Thickneſs of the Sucker; which the greater it is, ſo much a Greater, and conſequently ſo much a heavier Column of Air muſt it ſuſtain. But the Author may be excuſed, if he means the *Bigneſs* of the whole Syringe.

ſidering that the Air always contains in it a great Quantity of the Particles of Water, and other terreſtrial Bodies, which though they be ſeparated from each other and diſperſed, yet do not loſe any of their Weight; though we do not fully underſtand the particular Nature of the Air, nor in what its Weight conſiſts; we ſhall make no Difficulty to aſſert, that the groſſer Air is heavy, and conſequently, that by its Weight, the Sucker is forced into the Syringe, from whence it ſqueezes out the ſubtil Matter through thoſe Pores which it ſelf entered in at.

11. *That the Air by its Weight may preſs upwards.*

11. But though the Air by its own Weight, preſſes chiefly downwards, yet this does not hinder, but that it may alſo preſs upwards, and force the Sucker of the inverted Syringe up into the Syringe; for the Column of Air which anſwers to the Bottom of the Sucker, is forced upwards by the Weight of thoſe Columns of Air which are on the Sides, in the ſame manner as the Water which is at the Bottom of a heavy laden Boat, is preſſed upwards againſt the Bottom which reſiſts it, by the Weight of the Water which is of conſiderable Height round the Sides.

12. *Why we do not feel the Weight of the incumbent Air.*

12. When we once underſtand this Force of the Air to preſs upwards, we ſhall not at all wonder, that when we hold out our Hand flat in the Air, we do not feel the Weight of it; that is, we do not perceive our Hand preſſed downwards, by the Weight of the Column of Air which is upon it: For this Column has no more Force to preſs it downwards, than the Column which is underneath has, to preſs it upwards.

13. *Why we do not feel the Preſſure of the Air, and alſo why Divers do not feel the Weight of the Water.*

13. As to the Preſſure which is made all over the Body, when it is immerſed in a heavy Liquid; it is certain, that we ought not to perceive it, [1] though the Weight of the Liquid be very great, any more than we do the Preſſure

---

[1] *Though the Weight of the Liquid be very great*) The Cauſe of this is excellently well explained by *Jo. Alph. Borellus, de Motibus Nat. a Gravitate factis. prop.* 29. *& ſeq.* After he had ſhown, that Sand in a very ſtrong Veſſel, cannot any way be divided, and that a Wedge will by no means enter into it; and alſo that Water in a Bladder, equally compreſſed on all Sides, can neither be ſtreightened nor bent, nor at all moved: *So likewiſe,* ſays he, *in the Body of an Animal, there is contained within the Skin, ſome Parts, which are hard and ſolid, ſuch as the Bones; others that are ſoft, ſuch as the Tendons, Nerves, Membranes and Muſcles; and others that are Fluid, Watry or Oily. Now the Bones in an Animal cannot be broken or disjointed, unleſs the incumbent Weight preſſes one way only, as it does on Porters: But if the Preſſure diffuſes it ſelf all round, ſo as to preſs upwards and downwards, and ſideways, with equal Force, ſo that there be no part of the Skin but what is preſſed; then it is impoſſible, that any Thing ſhould be ſeparated or put out of the Way. The ſame may be ſaid of the Nerves and Muſcles, which though they be ſoft, yet becauſe they conſiſt of ſtrong and tough Fibres, they can all ſupport one another, and reſiſt an univerſally*

of the Water, when in diving into the Sea, there are many Fathom of it over our Heads. The Reaſon of which is, that before we can feel the Weight of any Body, there muſt be ſome Alteration made in the Diſpoſition of our Organs. But when the Air or Water have made all the Efforts they are capable of, to preſs or thruſt inwards the external and groſſer Parts of our Body, and theſe Forces are counterballanced and put in *æquilibrio*, by the Reſiſtance and Effort of the Fluids and moveable Parts within us, the Action of which we are inſenſible of; after this, I ſay, they can do no more, and conſequently the State of our Body will not be changed, nor the Diſpoſition of its Organs, to which they are ſo uniformly applied, and with ſuch equal Forces, that no one ſingle Part can move outwards, to give way for any other to be thruſt inwards; and therefore the Effort which they continually make to preſs us inward, is rendred ineffectual.

---

*niverſally diffuſed ſpherical Compreſſion; the ſame may alſo be ſaid of the Blood and other Humours of an Animal, which are of a watry Nature; for, as it is evident, that Water cannot be condenſed, ſo likewiſe the Humours of an Animal, contained in the Cavities of its Veſſels, though they may be bruiſed by an Impulſe made from one or a few particular Places, yet they can never be forced out of their Veſſels, or torn aſunder by an univerſal Compreſſion every Way. So long therefore as the Solid, Tendinous, or Fleſhy, or Liquid Parts, do not undergo any Separation, Contuſion, nor are disjointed, nor their Situation at all changed; it is impoſſible, that any Pain or Uneaſineſs ſhould follow in the Animal, which cannot ariſe from any other Cauſe, but ſeparating that which is one continued Thing. Wherefore when Divers,* &c.

And this is confirmed by what the famous Mr. *Boyle* obſerved, *in his Second Appendix to the Eleventh Hydroſtatick Paradox*, viz. that a Tadpole, an Animal whoſe Fleſh is very tender and ſoft, put into a Veſſel half full of Water, ſo cloſed up, that the Air contained in it, being condenſed eight times as much as in its natural State, preſſed upon the Water as much, as if a Column of Water of Three hundred Feet in Height laid upon the Animal; moved it ſelf notwithſtanding, and ſwam about very quick, and found no Inconvenience, that could be perceived.

However, becauſe in moſt Animals there is a great deal of Air, which may eaſily be compreſſed and condenſed; therefore, though no particular Member is disjointed, when an Animal is immerſed very deep in Water, yet they muſt all of them neceſſarily be ſtreightned and contracted, by the equal Weight and Preſſure of the incumbent Water on all Sides, as the famous Mr. *Boyle* ſays, happened to the Tadpole in the forementioned Experiment.

Beſides, thoſe Animals, whoſe Lungs are ſo formed as to contain a great deal of thin Air and Breath in them, though the other Parts of them be not at all hurt, yet their Breaſts muſt of neceſſity be ſtreightned and contracted, in the ſame manner, as the Cork is uſually thruſt into an empty Bottle, by the Weight of the Water, when it is ſunk very deep. Therefore Men, whoſe Lungs are very large, when they dive very deep into the Sea, though they find no manner of Inconvenience in any other Part of their Bodies, yet they labour under a Difficulty of Breathing, and a Pain in their Breaſt, (though they have Air enough conveyed to them to breathe.) And thus the famous Mr. *Boyle* tells us of a certain Diver, that when he walked at the Bottom of the Sea, the Blood flew out at his Noſe and Eyes.

*14. How the Water is drawn into the Syringe.*

14. Let us, in the fourth Place, Suppoſe the Sucker which is in the Syringe, as far as it can be thruſt, to be drawn when the Hole C at the Bottom is in the Water; it ſhould ſeem as if the Air which the Sucker that is drawn preſſes upon, ought to preſs upon the Water, and make it to riſe in the Syringe, becauſe it overtakes it, in the way which we ſuppoſed it to go, in order for it ſelf to enter in, if the End of the Syringe had been in the Air, and not in the Water, and that it ought to aſcend as far as the Sucker is drawn. But there is no Neceſſity that this ſhould always happen; For having made it appear, that both the Syringe and the Sucker are full of Pores, and that the Air is full of Matter, ſubtle enough to paſs through them; and alſo that the Water, by reaſon of its Weight aſcends with greater Difficulty; the Sucker may poſſibly be drawn, and the Water not neceſſarily aſcend, to fill the Syringe, becauſe it was filled before with that ſubtil Matter, intermixed with the Air. However, Experience ſhows us, that the Water does aſcend, and that the Syringe is filled with it, and not with the ſubtle Matter, at leaſt to the Height of One and thirty Foot and a half, but no further. The Reaſon of which is, that the Air being heavy, preſſes upon the whole Superficies of the Water in which the End of the Syringe is immerſed; and when the Sucker is drawn, the Water which anſwers to the Hole in the End, not being preſſed by the incumbent Air, the Weight of that which preſſes upon the reſt of the Surface, thruſts it up, and makes it aſcend in the Syringe; in the ſame manner, as the Water in a Pail is made to aſcend up a Trunk, ſuch as they ſhoot with, open at both Ends, and one End fixed in a Hole in a Trencher which exactly fits the whole Superficies; upon depreſſing the Trencher, the Water is forced up. In like manner, the Moving of the Sucker, is the general Cauſe of the Entrance of ſome Matter into the Place which it leaves; but the Weight of the Air determines the particular Matter.

*15. That the Water in a Syringe ought to riſe but to a certain Height, and that a Column of Air weighs as much as a Column of One and thirty Foot and a half of Water of equal Thickneſs.*

15. Since we find by Experience, that the Sucker of a Syringe may be drawn, when the Hole at the End is ſtopped, this is ſufficient to convince us, that the groſſer Air is not of an infinite Weight; for if it was, it would be impoſſible to draw it; which being ſo, it is eaſy to foreſee, that the Air by its Weight cannot raiſe the Water in a Syringe above a determinate Height; ſo that if, after this Height, we continue to draw the Sucker, the Syringe, inſtead of being filled with Water will be filled with ſubtle Matter, as

was before obſerved in Pumps: And ſince the Water always riſes to about the Height of Thirty one Foot and a half, above the Level in which the End of the Pumps is immerſed, we ought to conclude, that a Column of Water of this Height, weighs as much as a Column of Air of equal Thickneſs, which reaches to the upper Surface where the groſſer Air terminates.

*16. That we ought not to perceive the Weight of the Air that is drawn into the Syringe; but we ought to perceive that of the Water.*

16. If the Sucker of the Syringe ſlips very eaſily againſt the concave Surface, againſt which it rubs, and if it had no Weight at all, the Air would very eaſily be drawn in, becauſe there is juſt as much Force to thruſt it upwards, as there is Weight upon the Sucker to thruſt it downwards: But if Water or any other heavy Liquor is to be raiſed; there muſt then be as much Force uſed, as is equal to the Weight of the Liquor to be raiſed; becauſe the Liquor, tending downward, bears upon the Air, which preſſes againſt the Bottom of the Sucker, and takes off ſo much of the Force it had to make it riſe.

*17. When a Tube filled with Water ought to empty it ſelf.*

17. There may be many Conſequences drawn from what has been ſaid of the Syringe, which if they be agreeable to Experience, are ſo many Confirmations of the Truth of our Explication. For Proof hereof, let us ſuppoſe, for Example, that after having filled a Tube with Water, one End of which is ſtopped with the Matter with which it is made (which they call *hermetically ſealed*) and the other, with the End of one's Finger, we put the End of the Tube which is ſtopped with our Finger into a Veſſel of Water, and then take our Finger away; This being ſuppoſed, if we conſider that the Air, which preſſes upon the Water in the Veſſel, reſiſts the deſcent of that which is in the Tube, we ſhall foreſee, that if the Tube be not above One and thirty Foot and a half long, it will not empty it ſelf at all; but if it be longer, the Water ought to deſcend till there is One and thirty Foot and a half in the Tube, and then ſtop, becauſe the Air has only Force enough to counterpoiſe ſuch a Quantity: And this is agreeable to Experience.

*18. That an inclined Tube ought to contain more Water than an upright one.*

18. We here ſuppoſe, that the Tube, which is above Thirty one Foot and a half long is held upright, and does not incline one way or the other: For if it inclines any way, then, becauſe the concave Surface of the Tube ſuſtains part of the Weight of the Water, for that Reaſon, the Water will not have ſo much Force to deſcend as it has ordinarily, and ſo the Air is able to ſupport a greater Quantity than One and thirty Foot and a half in the

the Tube; that is to ſay, according to the *Laws of Mechanicks*, if the Water in the inclined Tube begins to deſcend, it will ſtop, when the upper Surface of it, is One and thirty Foot and a half perpendicularly above the Superficies of the Water in the Veſſel; and ſo we find it does.

*19. That the VVater ought to be of equal Height in Tubes of different Thickneſs.*

19. And it is remarkable, that if we make uſe of Tubes of different thickneſſes, and Veſſels of different breadth, there is no difference in the Height of Water contained in the Tubes: For ſince the Water which is in each Tube, poſſeſſes the Place of that Quantity of Air, which laid upon the ſame Part of the Superficies of the Water in the Veſſel; it cannot but be in *æquilibrio* with the Air without, becauſe, it weighs juſt as much as that whoſe Place it poſſeſſes. And thus it is in all Tubes whatſoever, the Water riſes to the ſame height, which we ſee by Experience in a particular Tube, that it ought to riſe to; for as theſe different Columns of Water are of the ſame height; if that, for Inſtance, which is four times as thick as another, weighs four times as much as that other; then the Column of Air, the Place of which this groſs Column of Water poſſeſſes, weighs four times as much alſo.

*20. That there will be no Alteration made in the Height of the Water, if the Experiment be made in a Place that is ſhut up.*

20. Neither ought we to find any difference in the Height of the Water which is in the Tube, whether the Experiment be made in the open Air, or in a Chamber, provided there be a Window in it, or at leaſt any Chink through which the Air can enter; for according to *the Laws of Mechanicks*, the Weight of the Air is juſt the ſame, whether it preſſes perpendicularly, or winding or oblique.

*21. That the Height of the Water ought to be the ſame, though the Place in which the Experiment is made, be entirely cloſed up.*

21. Neither ought there to be any Difference in this Height, if after the Experiment be made, the Room be entirely cloſed up; for though the Column of Air which ſupported it before, by preſſing upon the Liquor in the Veſſel, be now intercepted by the Ceiling, yet that part of the Column of Air which is below the Ceiling, preſſes as much upon this Liquor as it did, when it bore the Weight of the Reſt of the Column, becauſe the Reſiſtance of the Ceiling does as it were preſs upon it, and hinder it from expanding it ſelf.

*22. That the Height of the Water ought to be greater, if the Place had been entirely cloſed up before the Experiment was made.*

22. It is true, that if, before the Experiment be made, the Chamber be ſo exactly ſhut up, that the Air within has no Communication with that without, then the Liquor contained in the Tube ought not to deſcend quite ſo far; becauſe as the Tube empties, and the Liquor in the Veſſel riſes, the Air which is in the Chamber cannot riſe in

Proportion: Conſequently it muſt be condenſed, and therefore will have force enough to ſuſtain a little more Liquor in the Tube; but this cannot be perceived unleſs it be a very little Place in which the Experiment is made.

23. *That Quickſilver ought not to remain in the Tube, above the Height of Twenty ſeven Inches and a half.*

23. From what has been ſaid, it is eaſy to apprehend, that if inſtead of Water, any other Liquor that is heavier or lighter be uſed, there will remain more or leſs of it in the Tube; ſo that Mercury or Quickſilver, which is about fourteen times as heavy as Water, ought not to be ſuſtained by the Air, but to about Seven and twenty Inches and a half, which is very near a Fourteenth Part of the Height that Water is ſuſtained, and the reſt of the Tube, how long ſoever it be, ought to be filled with ſubtle Matter. And this is confirmed by Experience.

24. *That Experiments are more eaſily made with Quickſilver.*

24. But that the Experiments may be more ſenſible, the Tubes ſhould be made of Glaſs, becauſe that is tranſparent: And Quickſilver being ſo heavy, that we are not obliged to have Tubes much longer than Twenty ſeven Inches and a half, their Smalneſs makes them more eaſy to be managed, and to obſerve a great many particulars, which it would be difficult to do in Tubes that are very long.

25. *That there is no* Vacuum *in the Top of the Tube.*

25. Firſt then, This may give Occaſion to thoſe who believe the Poſſibility of a *Vacuum* to obſerve; *That there is no* Vacuum *in the Top of the Tube*, but the Place which is left by the Mercury, is filled by ſome Matter, becauſe the viſible Objects behind the Tube, [1] affect our Eyes ſtill, and are as plainly ſenſible as they were before, which they could not do, if there were a *Vacuum*; becauſe their Action would be interrupted. And if the Eye were placed directly againſt the Tube, we ought not to ſee any more than in the Dark, or than if an opake Body were between; but we find it otherwiſe.

26. *Another Proof.*

26. To this we may add, that [2] *Nothing* or a *Vacuum* has no Properties, and that if we put the Top of the

---

[1] *Affect our Eyes*) It don't at all follow, *that there is no* Vacuum *in the Top of the Tube*, becauſe the Space out of which the Quickſilver came, is tranſparent; For why cannot the Rays of Light, paſs through *an entirely void Space?* On the other Hand, they can't poſſibly paſs through *a Space that is quite full*: See what is ſaid of the Nature of Light, in its Place.

[2] *Nothing, or a* Vacuum *has no Properties*) It is very true indeed, that *Nothing* has no Properties; But how does it follow, that Space which is *void of Matter*, has therefore *Nothing* in it, or is it ſelf entirely *Nothing*. But it may be allowed that there is ſome finer Matter in the Top of the Tube, or perhaps a little Air ſlipt under the Quickſilver which is rarefy'd by the Heat; but the Space is very far from being full.

Tube very near the Fire, we perceive a Rarefaction, in the ſame manner, as in a Thermometer, which makes the Mercury fall, whence it follows, that there is ſome real Matter in it.

*27. That the Top of the Tube is not full of groſs Air.*

27. However it is eaſy to ſee that this Space is not full of common Air, for if the Tube be not quite filled with Quickſilver, but an Inch or two be left for Air, and ſtopping the End of the Tube with our Finger, it be inverted; we obſerve that the Quickſilver deſcends ſlowly, and we have time to ſee the Air aſcend in the Form of Drops. Whereas let the Tube be entirely filled with Quickſilver, and immerſed in the other Quickſilver, that it may empty it ſelf in the ordinary way; then if the Tube be ſtopped with the Finger and inverted; the Quickſilver will not fall ſlowly, but all at once, as if it were one hard Body, nor ſhall we perceive any Thing to aſcend through it.

*28. The Third Proof.*

28. For a further Confirmation of this Opinion, *viz. That when the Quickſilver deſcends from the Top of the Tube, it is not filled with common groſs Air*, we may obſerve; that if the Top of the Tube be made large, in the Form of a Veſſel, and ſome Sort of Animals, as *Birds*, *Rats*, and *Mice*, be put into it, they will die, in a very ſhort time; that others, ſuch as Flies, ſeem to die, but being preſerved afterwards, two or three Days in a more temperate Place they revive and fly away; and others, ſuch as *Worms* and *Frogs* are preſerved alive, and not hurt, unleſs they continue very long in it.

*29. What Pores the ſubtil Matter which is in the Top of the Tube may paſs through.*

29. It may here be demanded, how the ſubtil Matter, which fills the Top of the Tube, gets through: To which it may be anſwered; that it ſeems rather to paſs through the Pores of the Glaſs, than thoſe of the Quickſilver, becauſe the Quickſilver being very heavy, the Pores of it ſeem to be rather too ſmall for it to paſs through them: Though I ſhall be of another Opinion, if what I have heard from *England* be true, *viz.* [1] that a Tube of ſix Foot long, will not empty it ſelf at all, if the Quickſil-

---

[1] *That a Tube ſix Foot long*) This Experiment is thus related by the famous Dr. *Wallis* in his *Hydroſtaticks*, *Prop.* 13. *If the Quickſilver ſuſpended in an inverted Tube, be very exactly cleared of all Air before it be inverted (which cannot be done but by great Care and Niceneſs,) and if the Tube be cautiouſly inverted, and fixed in a firm Place ſo as not to be in the leaſt ſhaken; the Quickſilver (though the Orifice at the Bottom be open) will remain ſuſpended, much beyond the forementioned Height* (viz. *to* 40 50, *or* 60 *Inches*;) *but if the leaſt Air gets into the Quickſilver thus ſuſpended, or if the Tube be ſhaken, the Quickſilver will immediately ruſh down to the uſual Height (and after ſome Reciprocations,) will ſtand ſtill.*

Which Experiment, having been often repeated by the Lord *Brounker*, the famous Mr. *Boyl*, Mr. *Huygens* and others, has ſucceeded; ſo that there is no doubt of the certain Truth ver with which it is filled, and that in which it is immerſed, have ſtood ſome time in a Place void of groſs Air: For in inquiring into the Reaſon of this Phænomenon, we can find no other but this, that the Quickſilver thus prepared, is cleared of ſome

Matter

---

of the Phænomenon; but upon what Cauſes ſo ſurprizing a Thing depends, is not ſo well agreed.

The Lord *Brounker thought, that the VVeight of the Air was much greater than anſwers to the Height of about* 29 *Inches of Quickſilver, but that the Quickſilver was depreſſed to that Height, by the Air which was inviſibly mixed with it (unleſs it was cleared of it) And after it was cleared of it, and there remained nothing to reſiſt the VVeight of the external Air, but only the bare weight of the Quickſilver then it was found to be otherwiſe; and the Quickſilver was ſupported to a greater Height, by the Ballance of the Air.* This is indeed very ingenious; but that which weakens very much this Explication, is, that upon the leaſt ſhaking of the Tube, the Quickſilver immediately ruſhes down: which could by no means be, if it were ſupported by an equal Weight of Air or Æther.

Wherefore the famous Dr. *VVallis* attempted the Thing another way. He imagined, *that all real Gravitation, proceeded from the Preſſure or Spring of the Air or Æther, without which thoſe inactive Bodies which we call heavy, if once at reſt, would remain ſo, without any real gravitation, or without deſcending, having no more Tendency to move downwards than ſideways. The Quickſilver therefore, when it is cleared of all Air from within, and ſuſpended in the aforeſaid manner, when it is at reſt, will continue ſo, and retain its Poſition, beyond the common Height neceſſary to an* æquilibrium, *becauſe it is free from all Preſſure of the Air, and is not preſſed upon, either by its Gravity, or by its Spring: But if it be put in Motion, either by any ſhaking of the Tube, or by any Motion within, from the Spring of the Air which was at firſt left in it, or is ſince got in, then it will continue that Motion downwards (that way being open.)*

But ſince it is now allowed, that Gravity does not depend upon the Air or Æther, but is an original connate and immutable Affection of all Matter, neither can this Explication be admitted. And indeed this very learned Perſon confeſſes, that he himſelf was not ſatisfied with it. Therefore he adds, *That the Superficies of the Tube however well poliſhed, cannot be thought to be ſo free from all Ruggedneſs or Inequality, but that there muſt remain ſome Roughneſs, which muſt cauſe Cohæſion, or (if it be moved) ſome Friction of the adjacent Body, whereby the Motion muſt be ſomething hindred.*

And indeed this Opinion comes nearer the Truth; and that chiefly becauſe upon the leaſt ſhaking of the Tube, the Quickſilver falls down, whence it is manifeſt, that the Suſpenſion does not depend upon any permanent Cauſe, ſuch as the Gravity of the Air or Æther, but upon ſome accidental Thing, ſuch as ſome kind of Adhæſion. However, becauſe there does not appear to be any ſuch *Roughneſs* in the Superficies of the Glaſs, as this learned Perſon imagines; it ſeems to be moſt probable, that the Quickſilver remains thus ſuſpended from *the Contact or Agreement of the Parts*, the Force of which is always greateſt in every Effect of Nature. Thus, a plain and ſmooth *Loadſtone* applied to a Ball of Iron ſuſpended on a ſtring from a Nail, will draw it much further from the Perpendicular, than in proportion to the Magnetick Force, if it be pulled back with a gentle and even Hand, and be not ſeparated by any accidental Shake. So alſo Water will aſcend in a *Vacuum*, in ſmall Glaſs Tubes open at both Ends. And two ſmooth poliſhed *Marbles* will not be ſeparated, though the groſſer Air be removed. And ſo the Parts of all *hard Bodies* (and in ſome meaſure alſo of *Liquids*) *cohære* together by *Contact*, that is, by that *Attraction* which always ariſes from Contact. *See what is ſaid below at* Chap. 22. Artic. 9.

All the Author's Pains therefore about *ſubtil Matter*, and about the

Pores

Matter, which before kept its Parts at a Diſtance, and made the Pores ſufficiently wide and long, to give free Paſſage to the ſubtil Matter; and becauſe it cannot thruſt the ſubtil Matter into the Place which it is diſpoſed by its Weight to quit, therefore it does not deſcend at all: However, not having had any Opportunity to ſee how well this Experiment ſucceeds, and not venturing to ſay that it is falſe, we remain in ſuſpenſe, and do not determine which Body it is, through the Pores of which the ſubtil Matter paſſes, to fill the Top of the Tube.

*30. What the Conſequence will be, if the Tube be lifted up a little, ſo that the lower End of it be out of the Quickſilver.*

30. But to return to our Diſcourſe, and to continue to draw the Conſequences which we think deducible from what has been ſaid above; Let us ſuppoſe a Tube filled with Quickſilver, and immerſed as uſual in a Veſſel, into which Part of the Liquid runs, 'till it is about the Height of Twenty ſeven Inches and a half, and then it be lifted up a little above the Surface of the Quickſilver, ſo that one Drop only of it may run out; then becauſe the Quickſilver, that remains in the Tube, does not weigh ſo much as the Air without, it ought to be impelled with Violence to the Top of the Tube, and after that, its own Weight ought to make it deſcend on the one hand, as much as the Air makes it aſcend on the other; and ſo we find it does.

*31. That we ought not to feel the Weight of the Quickſilver that is in the Tube.*

31. If, after having made the Experiment as uſual, we take the Tube out of the Veſſel in which it is immerſed, ſtopping the lower Hole with our Finger, but not preſſing very hard upon it, then we ought not to feel, nor do we indeed feel the Weight of the Quickſilver: For though it lies upon that part of the Finger, which anſwers to the Hole of the Tube, yet it is not heavy, becauſe it preſſes neither more nor leſs, than the external ſurrounding Air, which is applied to the other Part of the Finger, preſſes upon it, and repels it. And if in this Caſe, the Tube be opened at the Top, by ſuddenly removing that

---

Pores through which that fictitious Matter ſhould paſs, is to no Purpoſe. For if there were a Paſſage for *that ſubtile Matter*, either through the *Quickſilver* or the *Glaſs*; yet it would not be able to force the *Quickſilver* up into the Tube, nor to ſuſtain it there: And if there be no Paſſage for it through either of them, then it would not ſuffer the Quickſilver to ſubſide again, as it does when the Glaſs is ſhaken. But indeed the Particles of *Quickſilver*, when it is firſt cleared of all Air, cohære by mutual Contact, both with one another and with the Glaſs, *from a certain Attraction*, which ceaſes, as ſoon as the Tube is ſhaken, whereby the Particles are ſeparated from each other, and from the Glaſs. And the ſame Experiment has been made in Water well clear'd alſo of Air, by which means its Parts approached nearer to Contact. *See Newt. Opticks, pag.* 337.

which it is ſtopped with, then we ſhould feel the ſame as if the Finger which is applied to the lower Hole received a hard Blow, becauſe the groſſer Air, which deſcends quick, and with great Force into the Tube, adds on a ſudden new Weight to that of the Quickſilver; and this is confirmed by Experience.

32. *What ought to be the Conſequence of filling up the Tube with any other Liquor.*

32. If the Tube be not filled with all Quickſilver, but ſome other Liquor be put in alſo, we may determine how far each of them ought to deſcend, by conſidering how much that other weighs compared with the Quickſilver. For Inſtance: Suppoſe the Tube filled with Quickſilver all but an Inch, and we would fill the reſt with Water; becauſe Water weighs but a fourteenth Part ſo much as Quickſilver, we ought to conclude, that it will make it deſcend below the ordinary Station, the fourteenth Part of an Inch, and conſequently the Water will be Thirteen of the fourteen Parts above that Station.

33. *And what, if it be led with Air.*

33. The like Calculation may be made, whatever heavy Liquor be put in inſtead of Water: However, it is to be obſerved, that the ſame Reaſon will not hold good for *groſs Air*. For ſince we know by Experience, that it has a Power of expanding it ſelf very much, and can eaſily be mixed with the ſubtil Matter, we conceive that by mixing it ſelf with that fine Matter with which the Top of the Tube is filled, it preſſes againſt the Top of the Tube on the one Part, and upon the Top of the Quickſilver on the other Part, and ſo by this means forces it much lower than it would force it by its own Weight, which compared with Quickſilver bears no proportion to it.

34. *That the Effects of Air are different according to the different Lengths of the Tubes.*

34. We foreſee alſo, that an Inch of Air will make the Quickſilver deſcend ſo much the lower, by how much leſs the Tube exceeds Twenty ſeven Inches and a half in Length, becauſe the Power of dilating it ſelf, does in a manner reſemble a Spring: For as a Spring, the more it is bent, with ſo much greater Force does it unbend it ſelf; ſo the Air, the more it is compreſſed, with ſo much the greater Force does it dilate it ſelf; and in all this, our Reaſoning is confirmed by Experience.

35. *A very good Experiment of a Carp's-Bladder, to ſhow how much the Air is capable of expanding it ſelf.*

35. But to give a plainer Proof[1] how much a little Air, when the Weight of the Column which it ſuſtains is removed, is capable of expanding it ſelf; we need only take a Carp's Bladder, and cutting off the leſſer Part at the

---

[1] *How much a little Air*) See the Notes on *Part* III. *chap.* 2. *Art.* 3. *below.*

Neck, where it is joined to the Greater, preſs the greater Part ſo cloſe, as to ſqueeze out almoſt all the Air that is contained in it: Then tie it up to keep in that which remains, which is not bigger than a ſmall Lentil: After this, let it be put into the Top of one of the Tubes made large like a Veſſel, and filled as uſual with Quickſilver, and managed in the ſame manner as the formentioned Experiments, and then we ſhall ſee how ſurprizingly the Bladder will ſwell round almoſt all at once, and appear to be blown as big as it was before the Air was let out.

*36. VVhat the immediate Cauſe of the Dilatation of the Carp's Bladder is.*

36. Now though there be much more ſubtil Matter in the Bladder thus diſtended, than groſs Air; yet we are not to think, that it is that which preſſes upon the internal Parts of the Bladder, and ſwells it thus; this Effect cannot be produced by it, becauſe it can eaſily return through the Pores by which it entered; it is more likely, [1] that this fine Matter agitates that little groſs Air which remains in the Bladder with great Violence, which Agitation is the immediate Cauſe of the Bladder's ſwelling: And this is ſufficiently evident; for if the Bladder be entirely emptied of the groſs Air, it will not ſwell at all, and if there be a little too much, it will break.

*37. A remarkable Circumſtance of this Experiment.*

37. In order to make this Experiment well, it ſhould be done with a Tube open at both Ends, and the upper End ſhould be covered with a Hog's-Bladder, moiſtned firſt in Water, that it may ſtretch the better, and this will give us opportunity of obſerving another Circumſtance very curious, and that is, that as ſoon as the Quickſilver begins to deſcend, we ſhall ſee the Hogs-Bladder ſtretched, and forced into the Tube; the reaſon of which is, that then a very heavy Column of Air preſſes upon it, and there is none under it to ſupport it.

*38. Another Circumſtance.*

38. If the Bladder be pricked with a Needle, and the Needle be pulled out a little, to let ſome of the groſs Air in, and then the Hole be ſtopped; the groſs Air which enters in, will expand it ſelf round the Carp's-Bladder, and preſs upon it, and make it appear more or leſs wrinkled, according to the Quantity of Air let in.

*39. The Uſefulneſs of this Experiment.*

39. This Experiment may ſerve to undeceive thoſe, who upon reading *Ariſtotle* have been of Opinion, *that Air made ten times rarer than it is, neceſſarily changes its Nature, and is converted into Fire.* For the Falſity of this Ima-

---

[1] *That this fine Matter*) Not that Matter, for probably there is no ſuch Thing, but only the Elaſticity of the Air it ſelf.

gination is clearly ſeen, by ſhowing that the Air contained in the Carp's-Bladder is rarifyed above a hundred Times, and yet does not at all alter its Form.

40. *That the Height of the Quickſilver is various.*

40. When I ſpoke of the Height which the Quickſilver ſtands at in the Tube, I limited it to Twenty ſeven Inches and a half, which is the common Height obſerved at *Paris*; but to ſpeak exactly, it is ſometimes higher, and ſometimes lower; becauſe the Air at different times is lighter and heavier.

41. *That the greateſt Cold ought not to alter the Height of the Quickſilver, and what the Cauſes are, that ought to alter it.*

41. One of the beſt Obſervations that I have met with upon this Subject is this: That though we know by Experience, that the Air is condenſed by Cold, yet I have never found that the greateſt Cold, made any Alteration of the Height of the Quickſilver in the Tube. The Reaſon of which, in my Opinion, is, that the Cold being very near the ſame over a great Part of the Superficies of the Earth, the Air does not paſs from one Country to another ſo that the Bulk or Quantity of it is increaſed; but it being condenſed only from the Top to the Bottom, it is the ſame Quantity of Air, that preſſes upon any particular Place of the Earth; ſo that all the Difference that there can ariſe in the Air, muſt be imputed to more or leſs [1] Vapours and Exhalations, which are contained in it at different Seaſons, and to the Winds which blow ſometimes upwards and ſometimes downwards.

42. As

---

[1] *Vapours and Exhalations*) It has been long obſerved, that in cloſe and rainy Weather, the Quickſilver does not riſe ſo high, as when it is dry and clear; which has been thought by ſome to overthrow the whole Theory of the Weight of the Air; and indeed it is very difficult, to explain particularly the Cauſes of all the various and minute Changes of the Heavens; a great deal is owing to the Winds, which blow ſometimes upwards, ſometimes downwards; and ſometimes ſideways, a great deal to Vapours, a great deal to Steams riſing out of the Earth; ſomething muſt be aſcribed to the Alteration of the Heavrns in the neighbouring Countries, and perhaps ſomething to that *Flux* and *Reflux* which the Moon cauſes in the Air, which is much greater than that in the Sea, *&c.* To account for all which particularly and exactly, would be endleſs. However, to propoſe ſomething which may come pretty near the Truth; it is to be obſerved, that the *Air it ſelf* is heavier than *the Vapours*, and fitted to ſupport them, becauſe its Particles are groſſer, and ariſe from denſer Bodies, than the Particles of Vapours.

In the firſt Place therefore, this Weight of the Air, *in any particular Country*, may be ſo changed by the *VVinds*, that the Atmoſphere may be condenſed and made heavier, by bringing a greater Quantity of Air, and heaping it together; *viz.* whenever two Winds blow at the ſame time from contrary Parts of the Heavens; or ſome of the Air may be carried or blown away by them, and thereby an Opportunity given to the Atmoſphere to unfold it ſelf, the incumbent Weight being taken off, *viz.* as often as two Winds blow from the ſame Country to oppoſite Parts of the Heavens; or whenſoever any one particular Wind is very ſtrong; for it is found by Experience, that an artificial ſtrong Wind makes the Air lighter, and the Quickſilver in the Tube to fall very much. *See the*

42. As to any Alteration in the Height of the Quickſilver, which may be thought to ariſe from the Dilatation of the ſubtil Matter in the Top of the Tube, by the Heat of the Summer, or the Contraction of it by the Cold of the Winter, it cannot be at all ſenſible: For Experience ſhows us, that if this Matter be heated by a Fire, much more than it can be by the Heat of the Sun, it will not

*42. That neither the Heat in the Summer, nor the Cold in the Winter, do at all ſenſibly dilate or condenſe the ſubtle Matter in the Tube.*

---

*the Philoſophical Tranſactions, Numb.* 292.

Secondly, *Cold and nitrous Particles or the Air* it ſelf, *condenſed by Cold from the North* muſt condenſe the Atmoſphere where-ever it comes, and make it heavier.

Thirdly, Heavy and dry Exhalations make the Air heavy (in the ſame manner as the Specifick Gravity of any *Menſtruum* is increaſed, by diſſolving Salts and Metals) and its *elaſtick Force*, as it is called, muſt thereby become ſo much the ſtronger.

Fourthly, When the Air by theſe and ſuch like Cauſes is become heavy, then is it more able to ſupport the Vapours; which when they are entirely mixt with it, and ſwim about, and are every way diſperſed in it, make the Sky ſerene and clear: But when the Air from the contrary Cauſes, is made lighter, then is it unable to ſupport the Vapours with which it is always filled, and ſo being put into ſome ſort of violent Agitation, they gather themſelves into Clouds and Miſts, and being formed into Drops, fall down.

From theſe Obſervations, it is very evident, that the ſame Cauſes, which make the Air heavier, and more able to ſuſtain the Quickſilver in the Tube, make the Heavens alſo clear and dry; and the ſame Cauſes by which the Air is made lighter, and leſs able to ſuſtain the Quickſilver, are Showers and Rain produced alſo.

Hence it follows. Firſt, That when the Air is lighteſt, and the Quickſilver falls loweſt in the Tube, then the Clouds move very low and quick; and that clear Air which after Rain, appears between the thick Clouds, being diſcharged of its Vapours, ſeems moſt tranſparent and bright, and gives the beſt and eaſieſt proſpect of Things at a diſtance.

Secondly, When the Air is more heavy, and the Quickſilver is raiſed higher in the Tube, then the Heavens are fair, but a little thicker, and not quite ſo blue, by reaſon of the Vapours which are every way equally diſperſed about; and as has been by many obſerved, it does not afford ſo good a Proſpect of Things at a diſtance; and if there do appear any Clouds, they are very high and move very ſlow; and when the Air is heavieſt of all, the Earth is ſometimes covered with very thick Clouds, which ſeem to conſiſt of heavier ſort of Exhalations, which the Air at that time is capable of ſuſtaining, but which cannot ſwim in lighter Air.

Thirdly, Hence it is, that in our own Country, when the Cold is greateſt, and the North and North-Eaſt Winds blow, the Quickſilver in the Tube is higheſt; becauſe at that time two Winds blow together upon our Country from oppoſite Parts of the Heavens; for in the Atlantick Ocean, at the ſame *Latitude* with us, the Wind blows almoſt always from the Weſt. To which we may add, that the Air which is brought hither by the North Wind, comes condenſed by the Cold.

Fourthly, In the moſt Northern Countries, there is greater Variation of the Height of the Quickſilver in the Tube, than in thoſe Countries which are more South, becauſe in thoſe Countries, the Winds are ſtronger and more variable; aud oppoſed by each other in a leſs Tract of Land; whence the Air is ſometimes more heaped up and condenſed, and ſometimes carried away and lightned.

Laſtly, Between the Tropicks, there is the leaſt Variation of all, in the Height of the Quickſilver in the Tube, becauſe there the Wind is for the moſt part very gentle, and blows the ſame way.

See *the Philoſophical Tranſactions, Number* 181.

make the Quickſilver deſcend at all; and if the Heat of Summer can do nothing towards ſenſibly dilating it, the Cold of the Winter can much leſs do any Thing towards the condenſing it.

43. *How much the greateſt Difference in the Height of the Quickſilver is.*

43. But whatever be the Cauſe of the Quickſilver's riſing and falling in a Tube, where the Experiment is continual; the greateſt Height that I have obſerved for fifteen Years, in a Tube which I prepared for that Purpoſe, was Twenty eight Inches, and a third Part of an Inch; and the loweſt was Twenty ſix Inches and ſeven twelfth Parts of an Inch, ſo that the greateſt Difference in the Height of the Quickſilver, was an Inch and three quarters.

44. *That the Height of the Quickſilver ought to be different in Places of a different Height.*

44. Though all theſe Experiments are ſufficient to convince us, that it is by the Weight of the Air, that the Water or Quickſilver is ſupported or made to riſe in the Tube; yet it is eaſy to conceive how there may be an Alteration made in the Height of the Quickſilver, and yet no Change made in the Air it ſelf: In order to this, we need only make the Experiment in two different Places, the one the higheſt, and the other the loweſt that we can come at: For there being a leſs Quantity of heavy Air in the higheſt Place, the Quickſilver cannot be ſupported by it to ſo great a Height as in the loweſt.

45. *The firſt Experiment.*

45. Now in order to try if Experience would agree with our Reaſoning, I filled a Tube three Foot and a half long, with Quickſilver, and immerſed it into a deep and ſtrait Veſſel, into which it emptied it ſelf as uſual, after which I fixed them both in a Wooden Frame, made for that Purpoſe: And now the Inſtrument being ſuch as could conveniently be carried from one Place to another, without any Danger of ſpilling: I carried it to the Surface of the River *Seine*, which happened then to be frozen, and obſerved exactly the Height of the Mercury: After which, I went up one of the Towers of the Church of the *Virgin Mary* at *Paris*, which is about Two hundred and ſixteen Foot higher than the Place where the firſt Experiment was made, and here I found the Quickſilver was not ſo high in the Tube as before, by near three Lines, that is, near a quarter of an Inch.

46. *Another more ſenſible Experiment.*

46. The ſame Experiment was tried in *Auvergne*, in one of the loweſt Places of the Town of *Clermont*, and upon the Top of a neighbouring Mountain, called *Puy de Dome*, which is about Three thouſand Foot higher than the Vally, and the Difference in the Height of the Quickſilver was found to be above three Inches.

47. As this Experiment is more ſenſible than mine, if it was made, as there is Reaſon to think it was, with all the Exactneſs one could wiſh; it furniſhes us with an eaſy Method of finding the Height of the whole Air, ſuppoſing it to be every where of the ſame Denſity as it is near the Earth: For ſince upon taking away Three thouſand Foot of Air, the Quickſilver ſinks three Inches, this is a Proof, that a Column of Quickſilver of three Inches high, weighs equal to Three thouſand Foot of Air, and conſequently the Height of the whole Air, which counterpoiſes Twenty ſeven Inches and a half of Quickſilver, is Twenty ſeven thouſand and five hundred Foot high.

*47. A Method of finding the Height of the Air.*

48. As therefore we conclude, that when there is leſs Height of the groſſer Air to preſs upon the Quickſilver in the Veſſel; there ought alſo to be leſs Height of that in the Tube; for the ſame Reaſon, if we ſuppoſe that there were no groſs Air at all to preſs it upwards, we ought to conclude that all the Quickſilver would fall down, ſo that *That* in the Tube would be level with *that* in the Veſſel.

*48. That all the Quickſilver would fall out of the Tube, if there were no groſs Air to preſs upon the Veſſel.*

49. Some have imagined it impoſſible to make any Obſervation by which it ſhould appear, that Reaſon and Experience agree in this Particular; becauſe there is no Mountain high enough to carry us up to the upper Surface of the Air; and becauſe, if there were, the Air would be ſo thin, that we could not breathe in it. But I thought of a Means to remove theſe two Difficulties, and by which the Thing might eaſily be effected; and that was, to prepare ſome ſmall Room, with tranſparent Walls, which one might ſtand without and look upon, without any Danger from what might happen within. I cauſed therefore a Glaſs Inſtrument to be made, according to the following Repreſentation. BC is a Tube, upwards of Twenty ſeven Inches and a half long, and is open at C: AB is a large Cavity, which has a Communication with BC by the Part BL, and is cloſed, and has no Aperture at A: DE is a ſmall Glaſs Tube ſtopped up at the End D, and ſticks out of the Cavity AB by the Length FE, and is open at E: Beſides there is a ſmall Hole F in this little Tube, where it is cemented on the outſide to the Glaſs AB in ſuch a manner, that the Cavity of the little Tube has a Communication, with the large Cavity AB by this little Hole F: Laſtly, by means of the Neck BG, the external Air has a Communication with that in the whole Tube ABC.

*49. A Deſcription of an Inſtrument to make this Experiment.*

Tab. I. Fig. 7.

*50. How the foregoing Inſtrument is to be uſed.*

50. I firſt ſtop the Hole G with a Hog's-Bladder, and turning the whole Inſtrument, ſo that the End C may be uppermoſt, then I pour in the Quickſilver at the Hole E, which at firſt falls only into the little Tube DFE, but when it is full up to F, then continuing ſtill to pour in, it runs through the Hole there, and fills the Cavity AB which ſurrounds this Tube, which I fill up as high as B; then I fill the reſt of the large Cavity, pouring the Quickſilver in at C, 'till it riſes as far as the Hole E, which I ſtop then with a Hog's-Bladder; after this, I continue to pour the Quickſilver in at the Hole C, 'till the Tube BC is quite full, Having done this, I ſtop the Hole C with my Finger, and invert the whole Inſtrument which is full of Quickſilver as uſual, and immerſe it in a Veſſel of the ſame; Then the Cavity AF empties itſelf as far as IL, and at the ſame Time, the little Tube DFE empties itſelf to the ſame Height, and the Tube C empties it ſelf to H, which is Twenty ſeven Inches and a half above the Quickſilver in the Veſſel: And thus we ſee that Reaſon and Experience agree; for as there is no groſs Air to preſs upon the Surface IL of the Quickſilver which remains in the Baſon IFL, ſo there is nothing to force it to riſe in the little Tube DFE.

*51. Surpriſing Effects from the Entrance of the Air into the Inſtrument.*

51. Now if the Hog's-Bladder which ſtops the Hole at G, be pricked with a Needle, it is evident, that the groſſer Air which enters into the Cavity ABG ought to produce Two very different, and therefore very remarkable Effects: The firſt is, That preſſing upon the Quickſilver which is directly under G, it will cauſe it to deſcend; and alſo preſſing upon the Surface IL of the Quickſilver which remains in the Baſon IFL, it will make Part of it to aſcend in the little Tube DFE, and fill it quite full, provided it does not exceed Twenty ſeven Inches and a half in Length. The Experiment will be more pleaſant, if after the Hog's-Bladder, with which the Hole G is ſtopped, be pricked, the Needle be pulled back ſeveral times a very little, to let a little Air in at a time through the Hole, and then thruſt forward to ſtop it again; for then you will have the Pleaſure to ſee the Quickſilver in the little Tube DFE aſcend by little and little at the ſeveral times, and that in the Tube BC deſcend in the ſame manner. Then if the Needle be pulled out all at once,

you will ſee at the ſame time it will riſe as much on the one Hand, as it falls on the other.[1]

*52. That the Water cannot be drawn into a Syringe where there is no Air to ſupport it.*

52. If the Liquor with which the Baſon belonging to the Tube is filled, falls all down, becauſe there is no Air to ſupport it, as we ſee in the foregoing Experiment, where the little Tube DFE, is entirely emptied of the Quickſilver; the Reaſon holds ſtronger for its not riſing, if there be no Air to thruſt it up; wherefore there is no need of making any Experiment, to be aſſured, that the Water ought not to riſe in a Syringe, when the Sucker is drawn, if the Veſſel in which the End of the Syirnge is immerſed, be ſo ſtopped, that the external Air cannot enter into it. But if any one be ſtill ſo obſtinate, as not to be content without referring it to Experience, he need only put the End of the Syringe into the Mouth of a Glaſs Bottle, which is round and ſtrong, and full of Water; but not begin to draw the Sucker, 'till the Mouth of the Bottle be well ſtopped with Wax, or ſome ſuch Thing, to prevent the external Air entring; and then he will ſee that the Water will not riſe at all in the Syringe.

*53. Why the Weight of the Air does not at all raiſe the Water in a Syphon.* Tab. II. Fig. 1.

53. That we may go on to explain the moſt conſiderable *Phænomena* of Hydraulick Inſtruments; I come now to give an Account of the Syphon. Let ABCD then be ſuch a Syphon, the ſhorter Arm of which CD is put into a Veſſel of Water; Then, as has been often ſaid, the Air which preſſes upon the Water which is in the Veſſel, ought not to make it riſe up in the Syphon, becauſe the Air which is in the Syphon hinders it.

*54. What is the Cauſe of the Waters riſing in the Syphon.*

54. But if the Water in the Veſſel be made to riſe up into the Syphon, either by ſucking it at the End A, or any other way, ſo that it be filled quite full of Water, and then we take our Mouth away from the Hole A, the Water will not ceaſe to run, but continue running, ſo long as the ſhorter Arm CD remains in the Water in the Veſſel: The Reaſon of which is this. So long as the ſhorter Arm CD is immerſed in the Water, the Force of the Air indeed, which preſſes upon the Water in the Veſſel, and which endeavours to make it riſe in this Arm, is not ſenſibly greater or leſs, than the Force of the Air which endeavours to repell it, when it offers to run out at the Hole in the other Arm: But becauſe the Force of

---

[1] You may find the Deſcription of an Inſtrument not much unlike this in the *Experiments of the Academy del Cimento.* But the Air Pump of the famous Mr. *Boyle* exceeds them all, and is ſo well known, that I need not deſcribe it.

each of theſe two Arms is diminiſhed, in proportion to the Weight of the Water which each of them impels; and the Weight of the Water in the longer Arm being heavier, than that in the ſhorter Arm; it follows, that there remains more Force in the Air which acts upon the Water in the Veſſel, to make it riſe in the ſhorter Arm, than there does in the other to repel it; ſo that it is indeed made to riſe, and forced to run out through the longer Arm, notwithſtanding the Reſiſtance of the Air which oppoſes it.

*55. How high the Arms of the Syphon muſt be for the Water to aſcend.*

55. I here ſuppoſe, that the Arms of the Syphon do not exceed that Height of the Liquor which the Air would ſuſtain in a perpendicular Tube; for if they be longer, the Liquor with which the Syphon is filled, will divide at the Top, and deſcend in each of the Arms; which is confirmed by Experience.

*56. How the Air is drawn into a pair of Bellows.*

56. After ſo many different Explications as have been already given, I don't think it neceſſary to inlarge much upon explaining how the Air enters, and is received into a Pair of Bellows; for it is eaſy to apprehend, that when the Sides are ſeparated from each other, they thruſt forward the Air, which not being able to move freely every way, [1] becauſe the World is full, or at leaſt not being able to enter in at the Noſe with Eaſe, and quick enough to fill readily that Space which is left by the Sides of the Bellows when they are opened; is turned back, and enters with Eaſe and Swiftneſs through the Holes of the Bellows.

*57. How we draw in the Air by Reſpiration.*

57. It is proper here to obſerve, that we receive in the Air by Reſpiration, much after the ſame manner: For it is certain, that the Muſcles of the Thorax and Abdomen, ſerve to diſtend, and ſwell the Body, by which Means the Air being thruſt back, gets into the Hollow of Lungs through the Mouth and Noſtrils.

*58. Whence it is that we find no Difficulty in breathing.*

58. The only Difficulty here is, that ſince we ſuſtain a great many Columns of Air, which are all heavy, and which preſs upon the external Parts of our Body, and thruſt it inwards; it ſhould ſeem that we ought to feel ſome Difficulty in breathing, in order to overcome this Reſiſtance: But the Anſwer is eaſy; For if there be ſome

---

[1] *Becauſe the World is full*) Whether the World be full or not, it is the ſame Thing; for it cannot be, but that the Air by its own Weight (*and Spring*) muſt ruſh into the empty Bellows when they are open. Which I remark here, to ſhow, that whatever becomes of the Fulneſs of the World, the Explication of theſe and ſuch like Motions, is the ſame.

to thruſt it inwards, there are alſo a ſufficient Quantity of others, which enter into the Cavity of the Breaſt to preſs it outwards; ſo that there is an *equilibrium* between theſe Forces or Powers; and this is the Reaſon why we ought not to find any Difficulty in Breathing, or if we do, it is owing to ſome other Cauſe.

*59. How it is that we ſuck in Air.*

59. The ſucking in of Air through a Quill is done in the ſame manner as Reſpiration; for it is the ſame as if our Mouth were as long as the Quil.

*60. Why it is more difficult to ſuck a heavy Liquor.*

60. If we try to ſuck a heavy Liquor through a Quill dipped into it, we ought to find ſo much the greater Difficulty as the Quantity of Liquor we make to riſe is greater; becauſe this Liquor preſſing by its Weight upon the external Air which endeavours to raiſe it in the Quill, [1] hinders it from impelling and aſſiſting the Air which is in the Lungs, ſo much as it uſually does; by which means the Air in the Lungs is weakned, and has juſt ſo much leſs Force to thruſt the Parts of the Body outwards, than the Air which is applied to the external Surface of the Body has to thruſt them inwards, as the Liquor which is cauſed to riſe in the Quill is heavier.

*61. Concerning the Uſe of Cupping-Glaſſes.*

61. I ſhall finiſh what I have to ſay concerning theſe Sort of Motions, with explaining that Swelling which Surgeons make in the Fleſh, by the Application of Cupping-Glaſſes; the common Method of which, and that to which all others may be reduced is this; they take a ſmall round Card, upon which they fix four ſhort pieces of Wax-Candle, which they light, and ſet like a Candleſtick upon the Part of the Body which they intend to cup: Then they cover all the Candles with the Cupping-Glaſs, bnt do not put it cloſe to the Fleſh, 'till the Air that is within it, is ſufficiently heated; then as ſoon as it is

---

[1] *Hinders it from impelling*) If the entire Weight of the Liquor only be conſidered; we muſt ſay, that the Difficulty of Sucking, is therefore greater or leſs, becauſe, in proportion to the greater or leſs *Height* or *Thickneſs* of the Column of Liquor, the Breaſt is more or leſs diſtended by the Power of the Muſcles; ſo that the Reſiſtance of the internal Air (by which it endeavours to hinder the Liquor from riſing) muſt be ſo much more or leſs weakned by Rarefraction, according to the Power of the external Air, to raiſe up the heavy Liquor to the Mouth. But becauſe the Columns of Liquor are raiſed by the external Air with leſs or greater Difficulty, according as they are leſs or greater in *Height* and not in *Thickneſs*; therefore if we ſuppoſe two ſuch Columns, one of which is twice as high as the other, and this other twice as thick as that; though it be plain, that in both Caſe, there is the ſame Quantity of Air to be ſucked out of the Quill, and the ſame Quantity of Liquor to be ſucked through it; yet it is evident, that a greater Diſtention of the Breaſt, and a greater Force of the Muſcles is required, that is, it is more difficult to ſuck or raiſe up the Firſt than the Second.

put cloſe, the Candles go out, and we ſee the Fleſh ſwell, and riſe up.

*62. Why the Fleſh ſwells.*

62. In order to underſtand the Reaſon of this Experiment, it is to be obſerved, that during that ſhort time that the Candles continue light, the Air which is in the Cupping-Glaſs,[1] though very much agitated and dilated by the Flame, does however preſs upon the Fleſh, as much as it did before, becauſe the Cupping-Glaſs being not yet put quite cloſe, does not take off any of the Weight, which it had before it was dilated; but it is otherwiſe after the Candles are extinguiſhed by the immediate Application of the Cupping-Glaſs to the Body: For then the Air which is contaiued in it, is no longer preſſed upon by the Air without, and as it grows cooler, it has not Force ſufficient to take up ſuch a Compaſs, as when it was agitated by the Heat: Wherefore ſince all the other Parts of the Body are preſſed upon by the external Air, which alſo preſſes the Cupping-Glaſs to the Body, the one muſt of neceſſity enter into the other; that is, the Fleſh muſt be thruſt into the Cupping-Glaſs, and the Air within it condenſed.

---

[1] *Though very much agitated and dilated by the Flame, does however preſs upon the Fleſh as much as it did before, becauſe the Cupping-Glaſs being not yet put quite cloſe, does not take off any of the VVeight, which it had before it was dilated.)* This Explication had been ſomewhat more plain, if the Author ſaid----*though dilated by the Flame, yet ſince it is very much agitated, it does however.* Nor was *there any need of having recourſe to the VVeight of the external Air here.*

## CHAP. XIII.

### *Of the Determination of Motion.*

*1. VVhat is meant by the Determination of Motion.*

WHEN a Body moves any particular way, the Diſpoſition that it has to move that way, rather than any other, is what we call its *Determination.*

*2. That ſuch Determination is ſomething diſtinct from Motion. The firſt Proof.*

2. *Determination* is a Mode which is diſtinguiſhed from *Motion,* and which may remain the ſame, how much ſoever the Motion be increaſed or diminiſhed: Thus a Stone that falls freely in the Air, has a certain Quantity of Motion, and at the ſame time; has alſo a certain Quantity of *Determination* of Motion downwards,

and if it had been thrown oblique from the ſame Place, ſo as to have come to the Ground in the ſame time, it would have had the ſame Quantity of *Determination*, but a greater of Motion.

*3. Another Proof.*

3. Another Proof that *Determination* differs from *Motion*, is, that it depends upon a different Cauſe from that of Motion, thus in a Ball ſtruck by a Racket, the Motion is owing to the Force with which the Racket is moved, but the Determination towards any Part, is owing to the Situation of the Racket,

*4. That a Body does not tend of it ſelf to go out of the way, but only to move on in a ſtreight Line.*

4. Since every Thing endeavours as much as it can to continue in the State in which it once is, it is evident, that a Body which has once begun to move with a certain *Determination*, ought always to keep the ſame, that is, it ought always to move in a ſtreight Line, for this is the only *Determination* that is [1] natural to a Body in Motion: Wherefore when it was ſaid above, that when any Body was moved in a ſtreight Line, other Bodies muſt neceſſarily be moved with a circular Motion, we are not to think that thoſe which thus turn out of a ſtreight Line, tend to do ſo themſelves, but that they are forced to do ſo, by meeting with, and being impelled by other Bodies.

*5. That every Body which moves in a Circle, is forced to do ſo.*

5. Therefore when we ſee a Body move in the Sides of a Square, we conclude, that in the Places where it changes its *Determination*, it is forced to turn out of the way, by meeting other Bodies, the Reſiſtance of which, it could not overcome. So likewiſe if a Body moves through the Sides of an Octagon, we can't but ſay, that

---

[1] *Natural to a Body in Motion*) Mr. *Perrault* in his *Tentam. Phyſ. Tom.* 1. *p.* 80. 88. contends, that Motion in a Circle is as natural as in a ſtreight Line; for terreſtrial Bodies turned round, endeavour to go off from the Center of their Motion, becauſe they are heavy; but if a Body that had no Weight at all were turned round, it would revolve about its Center freely without any Impulſe, and would not endeavour to go off from it: Thus if a Ball of Wax be ſo made hollow, as to equal in Weight an equal Bulk of Water, it will ſo comply with the Motion of the Water turned round in a Veſſel full of Water, that it will always deſcribe the ſame Circle, and never attempt to go off from the Center of its Motion. But (beſides that there is no ſuch Thing as a Body void of all heavineſs) this Aſſertion is contrary to all Reaſon, and this very Experiment proves nothing leſs, than what this eminent Perſon imagined: For what can be more evident, than that this Ball endeavours to go off from the Center of its Motion, but cannot get off, becauſe all the Parts of the Water endeavour at the ſame time to go off from the ſame Center, and with the ſame Force, becauſe equally ſolid; and therefore ſince the Sides off the Veſſel hinder them from going all of together, there is no reaſon why the Ball of Wax ſhould recede from the Center, and impel the Parts of the Water to the Center, any more than there is for the Parts of the Water to recede from the ſame Center, and drive the Ball thither.

it is eight times forced to turn out of the way; and ſince a Circle is equal to a Figure of an infinite Number of Sides; it follows, that a Body which moves in a Circle, is forced to turn out of the way every Moment, either by the continual Reſiſtance of Bodies which it every where meets with, or becauſe it is retained by ſomething which obliges it to keep always at the ſame Diſtance, and to run through the Circle deſcribed, otherwiſe it is certain it would not deſcribe a Curve Line at all.

*6. If that Force ceaſes, then it ought to move in the Tangent of that Circle which it deſcribed before.* Tab. II. Fig. 2.

6. For Example, if the Body A deſcribes by its Motion part of the Circle BCD, it muſt be continually turned out of its Courſe from one of the forementioned Cauſes: If, when it comes to the Point D, it ſhould be no longer forced; either becauſe the Bodies which it meets with, ſhould make no further Reſiſtance, or the Thread which connected it with the Center, and hindred it from flying off, ſhould break, it would not continue to deſcribe the Arch DEB, but it would deſcribe a ſtreight Line, which would run the moſt directly that is poſſible from the Arch CD, that is, it would deſcribe the Line DF, which is the Tangent of this Circle, and makes the leaſt Angle that can be with the Circumference, and which, as you ſee, grows more and more diſtant from the Center: This is confirmed by an infinite Number of Experiments.

*7. Bodies which move in a Circle, endeavour to go off from the Center of the Circle which they deſcribe, and make other Bodies approach to it.*

7. And ſince a Body in Motion, has always a Tendency to deſcribe that Line, which it would deſcribe if it were at liberty; and what was ſaid of the Body A, is to be underſtood in general of all other Bodies; we muſt conclude, that Bodies which move in a Circle, have a perpetual Tendency to recede from the Center of their Motion; and this they ought to do with a Force ſo much the greater, as their Motion is quick. Wherefore, if the greater part of the Space contained in the Circumference BCDE be full of Bodies which move round the Center G, *they* will puſh all the other Bodies with which they are encompaſſed, and drive them as far from the Center as they can: But if theſe Latter can find no Place to retire to, they will be forced, in order to give Place to the other, to go nearer the Center; in the ſame manner as when we dip our Hand into a Pail of Water, the Water is forced to give way to our Hand, and to remove from the Bottom, which it has a Tendency to by its own Weight.

*8. That a Body in Motion meeting with another Body which it cannot move, ought to be reflected.*

8. It is evident, that a Body loſes ſo much of its own Motion as it communicates to other Bodies: Now if it communicates no Motion at all to others, (we do not

here conſider what may be occaſioned by its Softneſs, Weight or Figure) we have no Reaſon to think that it ſhould at all abate of its Velocity. Wherefore if a Body in Motion ſtrikes upon another, which it cannot move at all, we ought to conclude, that it will continue to move on with the ſame Celerity as it did before; but becauſe the Body which it cannot move, hinders its *Determination*, it muſt neceſſarily alter this *Determination*, that is, it will be *reflected*.

*9. That there is not a Moment of Reſt in the Point of Reflexion.*

9. This *Second* Determination, may indeed be contrary to the *Firſt*: but becauſe the Notion we have of *reflected Motion* is not different from the Notion we have of *direct Motion*, we ought not to think that theſe Motions are contrary to each other, but that [1] the one is only a Continuation of the other, and conſequently, that there is not any Moment of Reſt in the point of Reflexion, as ſome Philiſophers have imagined.

*10. That Reflexion would be impoſſible, if there was a Moment of Reſt.*

10. Beſides, if a Body which was in Motion, comes to be but one Moment at Reſt, it will have wholly changed its manner of exiſting into the contrary, in which there will be as much Reaſon for its continuing, as if it had been at Reſt a whole Age; in the ſame manner, as if a Body which was once ſquare, was made round but one Moment, it will have as much reaſon as ever it had, to continue in this Figure.

*11. That a Body which falls perpendicularly upon another, ought to be reflected perpendicularly.*

11. When a Body falls perpendicularly upon another, which is hard and immoveable, it is evident, that the Reflexion ought to be made in the ſame Line, in which the Body moved before, there being no Reaſon why it ſhould incline one way rather than another: Wherefore there is no Difficulty in this Matter, except when the Line in which the Body begins to move makes oblique Angles with the Superficies of the Body againſt which it ſtrikes. But the Judgement we are to make of this, depends upon what we are going to ſay concerning the Compoſition of Motion, and of its Determination.

---

[1] *The one is only a Continuation of the other*) But it is not ſo. *For Bodies which are either abſolutely hard, or ſo ſoft, as to be void of Elaſticity, will not rebound from each other, Impenetrability only makes them ſtop. Newt. Optic. pag.* 373. See above, Chap. x. Artic. 13.

Further, there may be a Moment of Reſt, in the Point of Reflexion; becauſe the reflected Motion, is not a Continuation of the Direct; but a new Motion impreſſed by a new Force, *viz.* the Force of *Elaſticity*.

As to what our Author ſays; that if the Body reſted but one Moment, it ought as much to continue in that new State of Reſt, as if it had reſted a whole Age; it is indeed true, with regard to the former Motion; but ſince *Elaſticity* is the Cauſe of a new Motion, the Reaſon is very different.

# CHAP. XIV.

## *Of the Compoſition of Motion, and of its Determination.*

1. *What is meant by compound Motion.*

Tab. II. Fig. 3.

ALL Motion that depends upon two or more Cauſes, we call *Compound* Motion: Thus, if one Force acting upon the Body A, would cauſe it to move along the Line AB, and at the ſame time another Force acting upon the ſame Body A, would cauſe it to move along the Line AC, the Motion which will ariſe from the Action of theſe two Forces, or from theſe two Cauſes, will be a *compound* Motion.

2. *Two other Motions being given to find the compound Motion.*

Tab. II. Fig. 3.

2. In order to find out what Line the Motion, which depends thus upon two Cauſes, ought to be made in; let the two Lines be drawn, which the Body would move in, if each of theſe Cauſes produced their Effect ſeparately. For Example, if the firſt Cauſe would in a given Time, make the Body A move from its Place, as far as B; and if the Second Cauſe would in the ſame Time, make it move to C; let the Lines AB, AC, be drawn; then having divided the Time in which this Motion was made, into as many equal Parts as you will, divide the Line AB into as many, by the Points E, F, G, and the Line AC into as many alſo, by the Points H, I, L; ſo that, if the firſt Cauſe acted alone, the Body A, would come to the Point E, in the firſt Part of the Time, to the Point F, in the ſecond Part, to the Point G in the third Part, and to the Point B in the Fourth; and if the ſecond Cauſe, produced its Effect ſeparately, the Body A would come to the Point H, in the firſt Part of Time, to the Point I in the Second, to the Point L in the Third, and to the Point C in the Fourth: After this, draw the right Lines EM, FN, GO, BD, CD, parallel to the Line AC; and the Lines HP, IQ, LR, CD, parallel to the Line AB: This being done, the Points S, T, U, D, where theſe Lines interſect each other, will determine the Line in which the Compound Motion is made.

3. *A Demonſtration of compound Motion.*

3. For it is certain, that the firſt Cauſe is anſwered, by allowing the Body to move to the Line EM in the firſt Part of Time, and the Second is anſwered, if we allow it to be found in the Line HP in the ſame time; wherefore both theſe Cauſes are anſwered at once, if the Body comes to both the Lines EM, HP, at the ſame Time, which it cannot do, but at the common Point S. Again, it is evident, that the firſt Cauſe is anſwered, if we allow the Body to come to the Line EN in the ſecond Part of Time; and the ſecond Cauſe is anſwered, if it be allowed to come to the Line IQ in the ſame Time, and conſequently it is certain, that, in order to anſwer both theſe Cauſes together, it muſt be found in theſe two Lines at the ſame time, *viz.* in the Point T where they interſect each other. So alſo we may prove, that the Body ought to be found in the Point V, where the Lines, GO, LR, interſect each other, to anſwer the ſame two Cauſes, and at laſt in the Point D, where the Lines BD and CD interſect one another [1].

*4. In what Lines compound Motion may be made.*

4. Where [2] the ſimple Motions are equal, as in the firſt Figure, the compound Motion is in a *ſtreight Line:* But where the ſimple Motions are unequal, as in the Second Figure, the Motion will be made [3] in a *Line* differently *curved,* according to the different Inequalities of the ſimple Motions.

*5. How to determine a Motion compounded of more than two ſimple ones.*

5. If more than two Cauſes concur to produce a compound Motion, it may be determined in this manner: Firſt draw the Line in which the Body ought to be moved, ſo as to anſwer two Cauſes; then, taking the Motion in this Line, as if it aroſe from one Cauſe only, draw the Line which it ought to deſcribe, ſo as to anſwer this

---

[1] Such a kind of Motion as this, is that of an Arrow, in the famous Experiment of a Ship under full Sail; where an Arrow being ſhot perpendicular, falls down again upon the ſame Place on the Deck, whence it was ſhot: For the Arrow has a double Motion impreſſed upon it at the ſame time, one by the Bow or Hand which ſhoots it, and the other by the Ship moving along. Something like this was obſerved at *Florence,* where a Leaden Ball ſhot perpendicularly up out of a Musket fixed in a Wooden Carriage made to move very ſwiftly, fell about ſeven Foot on this ſide the Mouth of the Musket, which moved Sixty four Paces. See *Exper. Acad. del Cimento,* p. 145. Perhaps the Musket, was not erected exactly perpendicular, or was moved ſomewhat ſwifter after the Ball was ſhot out, than when it was ſhot: or if neither of theſe happened, yet the Reſiſtance of the Air, which could not but retard the Motion of the Ball, might perhaps be the ſole Cauſe why the Ball fell ſo much on this ſide the Musket.

[2] *The ſimple Motions are equal*) It is to be obſerved, that thoſe ſimple Motions which are here compared with each other, and are called equal or unequal, are not thoſe of different Determinations (ſuch as AB, AC,) but the Parts of the Motion of one and the ſame Determination (*viz.* AE, EF, *&c.* AH, HI, *&c.*) compared together. Fig. 3.

[3] *In a Line differently curved*) When one or both the ſimple Motions is altered gradually and every Moment; the Line which is deſcribed, may be conceived to be bent into an infinite Number of ſmall Lines which end in a Curve. Such is the Motion of *projected Bodies.* See *the Notes on Part* II. *ch.* 28. *Artic.* 16.

Cauſe, and a Third, and ſo on, if there be a Fourth or fifth Cauſe, producing its particular Effect.

*6. That the Motion of a Ball out of a Cannon, is a compound Motion.*

6. It is eaſy to ſee, that the Ball of a Cannon which ſeems to be driven by the Fire level with the Horizon, does, notwithſtanding move in a Curve like that deſcribed in the ſecond Figure; for there are two Cauſes which concur towards its Motion, the firſt of which, *viz.* that which cauſes the Ball to move upon the Level, ought continually to diminiſh, becauſe it communicates, by little and little, its Motion to the Air which it diſplaces; and the ſecond ought to increaſe, becauſe we find by Experience, that the Fall of a heavy Body is ſlower at the Beginning than afterwards.

*7. That the levelling it at the Mark, ſhows that the Ball deſcends.*

Tab. II. Fig. 4.

7. The Exactneſs of the Cannoneer in levelling the Cannon to the Mark which he looks at, ought not to make us alter our Opinion, and to think immediately that the Ball is carried in a ſtreight Line: For if we obſerve, that the Cannon is not every where of an equal Thickneſs, and that the Line AB by which the Mark is aimed at; is at firſt above, but goes afterwards below the Line of Direction CD; we ſhall conclude, that if the Ball hits the Mark, it has doubtleſs fallen a little, or elſe it would have gone a little above it.

*8. What is meant by compound Determination.*

Tab. II. Fig. 5.

8. As there are *Compound Motions*, ſo alſo are there *compound Determinations*, and, it may be, when the Motions are the moſt ſimple that can be: Thus we ſay, a *Determination* is compounded of two others, when a Body moving in a ſimple Line to a certain Place, is at the ſame time carried two different Ways; as if the Body A be moved with a ſimple Motion from A to B; becauſe at the ſame time, it continually approaches the Lines BC, BD, we ſay, that the *Determination*, by which it is carried from A to B, is compounded of two others, one of which would make it go towards D, and the other at the ſame time carry it from A to C; and theſe Diſtances are the Meaſure of its Progreſs towards theſe different Parts.

*9. That one and the ſame Determination may be compounded of many different ones.*

9. For the ſame Reaſon that we conſider any one *Determination* as compounded of two ſimple *Determinations*, we may as well conſider it as compounded of innumerable others. Thus the *Determination* from A to B may be conſidered as compounded of the *Determinations* from A to E, and from A to F; becauſe when the Body A moves from A to B, it continually approaches BE and BF

alſo, from which it was diſtant by the Length AE and AF [1].

---

[1] From this Principle, the Method of explaining the Forces of the *Mechanick Powers* (as they are called,) may excellently well be deduced.

For ſince a Body with two united Forces, always deſcribes the Diagonal of a Parallelogram, in the ſame Time, as it would do the Sides, if the Forces were ſeparate; it is evident, that any Force whatſoever, acting in a given Direction, may be looked upon as the Effect of two other Forces acting in Directions, which at the ſame Point, ſhall on each ſide, be any way inclined to the given Direction, provided they make an Angle leſs than two right ones: And this is abundantly confirmed in Mechanicks, for by ſuch a Reſolution of a given Force into two others, the known Properties of the Mechanick Powers, ſuch as *the Ballance*, *the inclined Plain*, &c. may eaſily be deduced.

### Of the *Ballance* or *Leaver*. Prop. I.

If two Forces, which act upon the Arms of a Ballance in given Directions that are in the ſame Plain with thoſe Arms, ballance one another; theſe Forces are to each other reciprocally, as Perpendiculars let fall from the Center of the Ballance, to their Directions.

DEM.---(*See Newt. Princ. pag.* 14.)

Tab. xx. Fig. 1.

Let C be the Center of the Ballance, C*p*, CP the Arms, E*p*, PA the Directions of the Forces acting upon the Arms C*p*, CP. Let CE be drawn perpendicular to *p*E, and CD to PA, meeting them in E and D. On the Center C, and with the Radius CE, *viz.* the longeſt of the Perpendiculars, let a Circle be deſcribed which ſhall interſect the Direction of the Force P in A, and let the Line CA be drawn. To which let AG be drawn perpendicular, and GF parallel, meeting DPA in F.

It is evident, that the Arms of the Ballance CP, C*p*, may be looked upon as Lines that will not bend, lying in the Plain moveable about the Center C; and the ſame may be underſtood of any other Lines drawn through the Center C, and lying in the ſame Plain. Now ſince it is manifeſt, that there is no difference in what Points of the Lines, in which the Forces P and *p* act, thoſe Forces are placed; ſince whereſoever they are in thoſe Lines, they will have exactly the ſame Power to turn the Plain CDA*p*E about its Center: the Forces P and *p* may be ſuppoſed to be in the Points A and E. Then the Force P, ſuppoſed to be in A, may be reſolved (as was before obſerved) into two other Forces: One of which may act according to the Line CA produced, and the other, according to the Line AG; and which may be to each other as FG to GA, but each of them ſingly to P, as FG and AG ſingly to AF, as will be evident, if the Triangle AGF be compleated in the Parallelogram AGF*g*. It is alſo manifeſt, that the Force, which is as FG, and which acts according to the Line CA paſſing through the Center of the Plain, does nothing at all towards turning that Plane about the Center C; but the Force which is as AG, and which draws the Line CA perpendicularly; ſince, by the Hypotheſis, it ballances the Force *p*, which draws the Line CE, equal to CA (*by Conſtruction*) perpendicularly alſo, it muſt neceſſarily be equal to it. Wherefore *p* will be to P as AG to AF; or as DC (*by reaſon of the ſimilar Triangles* FGA, ACD) to CA or CE: That is, the Forces *p* and P are to one another reciprocally as Perpendiculars let fall from the Center to the Lines in which they act.

### *Coroll.*

If the Arms lie in a ſtreight Line, and the Determinations of the Forces be parallel, it is evident, that the Forces are reciproacly as the Length of the Arms.

Tab. XX. Fig. 2.

2. Hence alſo, in the Angular Ballance PC*p*, which turns about the immoveable Center C; the Situation which it will be in, when any two given Bodies are fixed to the Ends P and *p*, may be determined. For if the Line P*p* which joins the Ends of the Ballance be divided in reciprocal Proportion to the Weights, and the Point of Diviſion

*10. That it is not neceſſary to conſider all the Determinations of which One may be compoſed.*

10. But it is not neceſſary to conſider all the ſimple *Determinations*, of which one may be compoſed: It is ſufficient

T be made in the Line CT drawn through the Center, parallel to the Direction of the Weights: I ſay it is done: For PD and pE being drawn parallel, and DCE perpendicular to CT; it is evident that DCE is divided in C, in the ſame Proportion that PTp is in T, and that the Weights may be ſuppoſed to be placed in the Points D and E. Wherefore this will be the Situation of the Points P and p, that is, of the Ballance it ſelf when the Weights are in *æquilibrio*.

Tab. XX. Fig. 1.

3. In the Ballance or Leaver, it is evident, that two Forces, ſuch as P and *p*, which, when the Ballance librates to and fro, are reciprocally as the Velocities of the Points D and E, reckoned according to the Directions of thoſe Forces, will ballance each other.

### Of the *inclined Plain*. Prop. II.

If a Force, with a given Direction, ſupports a Weight upon an inclined Plain; that Force is to the Weight, as the Sine of the Inclination of the Plain, to the Sine of the Angle which is made by the Line in which the Force acts, and the Line perpendicular to the Plain.

### *D E M.*

Tab. XX. Fig. 3.

Let AB be the inclined Plain, P the Weight ſupported, DPV the Direction of the Force which ſupports the Weight. Let PC be drawn perpendicular to AB; and from the Point C, let CB be drawn parallel to the Horizon, and perpendicular to the common Section of the Plain and the Horizon, meeting the Plain in B; and CA perpendicular to the Horizon and alſo to CB, meeting the Plain in A, and the Line in which the Force acts in V.

Now P may be conceived to be held unmoved by three Forces acting together: one of which is the Force of the Weight it ſelf tending downwards in a Line parallel to VC; the Second is the Force acting in the Line DPV; and the Third is the Reſiſtance of the Plain it ſelf, acting in the Line CP perpendicular to the Plain: But theſe three Forces are to each other (*from what was ſaid before*) as the Sides of the Triangle VPC; as will be evident, by drawing a Line through P parallel to VC, and compleating the Parallelogram. The Force therefore is to the Weight which it ſuſtains, as PV to VC; that is, as the Sign of the Angle VCP, or ABC, to the Sine of the Angle CPV or CPD. *Q. E. D.*

### *Coroll.*

1. If the Points V and A coincide, that is, if the Force acts according to the direction BA, the Angle CPD will be a right Angle; and therefore in that Caſe, the Force is to the Weight, as the Sine of the Inclination of the Plain, to the Radius, or as the Height of the Plain AC, to its Length AB. And in this Caſe, the Force which is required to ſupport a given Weight is leaſt of all; becauſe the Proportion of the Sine of the Inclination of the Plain, to the Radius; is leſs than its Proportion to any other Sine whatſoever.

2. If the Point V falls above A; the greater the Angle APV is, ſo much the more Force is neceſſary to ſupport the given Weight upon the Plain AB. Inſomuch, that by increaſing the Angle APV, the Proportion of the Sine of the Angle ABC, to the Sine of the Angle CPD, is alſo increaſed, 'till PV, AV, becoming parallel, and the Angles VCP, CPD for that Reaſon equal, the Force and the Weight will alſo become equal.

3. So likewiſe, if the Point V falls below A, as at *v*, the Force requiſite to ſupport the given Weight, is again increaſed; the Angle AP*v* being increaſed, till P*v*, *v* C become equal, the Force and the Weight will become equal again. Further, when the Lines P*v*, PC coincide, and the Angle *v*PC by that means vaniſhes the Sine of the Angle ABC will bear an infinite Proportion to the Sine of that; that is, no finite Force whatſoever, acting in a Line perpendicular to the Plain, will be able

to

ficient to conſider thoſe which we have occaſion for in the explaining any Difficulties; herein imitating Geometers,

to ſupport the Weight upon the Plain.

4. If the Line in which the Force acts be parallel to the Baſe of the Plain, the Weight is to the Force which ſupports it, as BC to CA, or as the Baſe of the Plain to the Height of it.

5. If from the Point P, PF be let fall perpendicular to BC, and from the Point C, CG perpendicular to VP; it will eaſily appear, that PV is to VC (that is, the Force is to the Weight) as CF to CG. Wherefore the Force and the Weight will then ſupport one another upon an inclined Plain, when they are to each other reciprocally as Perpendiculars drawn from the Point C to the Lines in which they act; (or, if GCF be looked upon as an angular Ballance moveable about the Center C) reciprocally as the Velocities of the Points G and F reckoned upon the Lines in which the Forces act. Tab. XX. Fig. 4.

### *Of the Wedge.* Prop. 3.

If three Forces acting togther upon an Iſoſceles Wedge, in Lines perpendicular to the three Plains of the Wedge; two of which Forces, *viz.* thoſe acting upon the Sides are equal to each other, and the Direction of the Third which acts upon the Baſe of the Wedge, paſſes through its Vertex; if, I ſay, theſe three Forces ſupport each other, the Force acting upon the Baſe, will be to the other Two, as the Baſe of the Wedge, to the Sum of its Sides.

### *D E M.*

Let ABC repreſent a Wedge; and let CG be perpendicular to AB, and GD, G*d* perpendicular to AC, BC; and theſe will be the Directions of the three Forces. Tab. XX. Fig. 5. In the Lines GD, G*d* produced, let DE and *de* be taken equal to each other, which may therefore repreſent the two equal Forces, which act upon the Sides, in the Directions ED, *ed.* Let EF, *ef* be drawn parallel to AB, and DF, *df*, parallel to GC, ſo as to form the Triangles DEF, *def.* Now each of the Forces ED, *ed*, may be imagined to be reſolved into two other Forces, which are to each other as EF to FD, and *ef* to *fd:* And to act in thoſe Lines: And thoſe two, which are as EF, *ef*, becauſe they are equal, and oppoſite, will deſtroy each other. But the Force which acts upon the Baſe AB, in the Line GC; becauſe it ſupports the two other Forces FD, *fd*, both which are the ſame way, and act in a contrary Direction to that Force upon the Baſe; is therefore equal to the Sum of them. The Force therefore acting upon the Baſe of the Wedge, is to the Sum of the Forces acting upon its Sides as DF + *df* to DE + *de* or (*by the ſimilar Triangles*) AG + GB that is AB to AC + CB.

### *Coroll.*

The Velocities of the Wedge, and of the Body reſiſting it, reckoned in the perpendicular Direction before explained, are to each other reciprocally as the Force acting upon the Baſe, to the Force acting upon the Sides of the Wedge, when theſe Forces are in *æquilibrio.*

For when the Wedge ABC is driven up to the Top, or is in the Situation *abc*, it is evident, that the Parts of the Body that is cleaved, Tab. XX. Fig. 6. have receded from each other, the Length *gd* or GD, in the Direction of the Line perpendicular to AC or *ac*; GC therefore is the Velocity of the Wedge, and GD the Velocity of the reſiſting Body. But (*by the ſimilar Triangles*) GC is to GD, as AC to AG, that is, as AC + CB to AB. And the Proportion will be evidently the ſame, whatever Situation the Wedge be in, between the Parts of the Body to be cleaved by it.

ters, who do not draw from one Point all the Lines that can

## Of the *Screw*.

### A Definition.

Tab. XX. Fig. 7.

If the Plain of the Triangle ABC (whoſe Hypothenuſe repreſents ſuch an inclined Plain, as was explained above in the 2d Propoſition) be conceived to be ſo fitted to the Concave Superficies of a hollow Cylinder (the Circumference of whoſe Baſe is equal to the Line BC) that, the Plane ABC coinciding with the Superficies of the Cylinder, the Line BC may be bent into the Periphery of a Circle equal and parallel to the Circumference of the Baſe; the Line BA will form a kind of Spiral, aſcending upon the Cylindrical Superficies, and ſurrounding it once: So likewiſe, if ſeveral Planes, ſuch as A *a c*, equal and ſimilar to the former, and whoſe right Angles are ſubtended by the Line BA produced, be imagined to be fitted in the ſame manner, to the ſame Superficies, diſtant from each other, by the Space AC or *a c* (their common Height) there will be many Spirals formed by the Lines A *a*, &c. all continued from one to another, and each of them once ſurrounding the Cylindrical Superficies. Further, if other Planes ſimilar and equal to ABC be conceived in the ſame manner to be fitted to the gibbous Superficies of another Cylinder, whoſe Baſe is equal to the Baſe of the Concave Superficies of the former Cylinder; there will by this means be Spirals formed in this gibbous Superficies, exactly like thoſe in the Concave one before. Now if the latter Cylinder, which may be turned about its Axis, by means of a Leaver paſſing through the Center of either of its Baſes, and lying in the Plane of that Baſe, be imagined to be ſo placed within the former Cylinder, which is fixed and immoveable, that, the Superficies agreeing, the Spirals formed in each Superficies, may agree with one another alſo; and if it be ſo contrived, that they ſhall always thus agree, when the internal Cylinder is turned about its Axis, and its Baſe recedes from or approaches to the Baſe of the external Cylinder; it is evident, that two Screws, the Male and the Female may be conceived to be thus generated.

### Prop. 4.

In the Screw, as the Altitude of one Spiral, is to the Circumference of the Circle, whoſe Radius is the Leaver by which the internal Cylinder is turned round; ſo is the Force perpendicularly applied to the End of that Leaver, to the Weight lifted up by the Screw, when the Force and the Weight are in *æquilibrio.*

### *D E M.*

Tab. XX. Fig. 8.

Let the Axis of the Screw be perpendicular to the Horizon; and the Poſition of the Leaver, by which the internal Cylinder is turned about its Axis, will be Horizontal. Let the Weight be placed any where in the Line of the Axis; and then that Weight, by means of the internal Cylinder, will preſs with equal Force (in Directions perpendicular to the Horizon) upon every individual Point of the Spirals of the external Cylinder; and the Sum of the Forces with which all thoſe Points are preſſed, will be the ſame as the whole Weight to be lifted up. But let us firſt conſider the Force, or that part of the whole Weight, which preſſes upon any one particular Point. Now it is eaſy to ſee, that the ſame Force, in a horizontal Direction, which is able to ſupport the Weight, which preſſes upon any one Point of the Spiral, upon the inclined Plain of which that Spiral is formed; that ſame Force with the ſame Direction, is alſo ſufficient, to ſupport the ſame Weight upon the Spiral; and that there is plainly no difference, whether this Force be immediately applied to the Point which is preſſed; or be in any other Line touching the Baſe of the internal Cylinder. Let BC therefore be the Circumference of that Baſe; AC the Radius; AG the Leaver by which the internal Cylinder is turned about its Axis; FGH the Circle deſcribed by the Radius AG. Theſe Things being ſuppoſed; from what has been ſaid, together with can be drawn from it, but ſuch only as they think may be of Uſe in their Demonſtrations.

the Definition of a Screw, and the 4th *Coroll.* of the 2d Prop. it follows, that, as the Height of one Spiral, to the Periphery BC, ſo is the Force applied to the Point C, in a Direction perpendicular to AC, to that part of the whole Weight, which that Force ſupports upon any one point of the Spiral. And (*by the Property of the Leaver*) as the Circumference BC, is to the Circumference FH; (that is, as AC to AG;) ſo is the Force exerciſed in G to the Force exerciſed in C, becauſe the Directions of theſe Forces being parallel, they have equal Power in the Leaver ACG, whoſe Center is A. Therefore (*equally by Perturbation*) as the Height of one Spiral to the Periphery FH; ſo is the Force which exerciſed in G, ſupports that part of the whole Weight, by which any one Point of the Spiral is preſſed; to that part of the Weight it ſelf: And as the Force which ſupports that one particular Part of the whole Weight, is to that one particular part of the Weight; ſo is the Force which, acting in the ſame Direction, ſupports all the Parts of the Weight, that is, the whole Weight; to all thoſe Parts together, that is to ſupport the whole Weight. Therefore, &c. Q. E. D.

### *Coroll.*

The Circular Velocity of that Force by which the Screw is turned round, and the Velocity of the Weight which is lifted up by means of the Screw, are to each other reciprocally as thoſe Forces when they are in *æquilibrio*. For it is evident, that in a whole Revolution of the Leaver, the Weight is raiſed juſt the Height of one Spiral, and that in every Part of the Revolution, the Weight is raiſed proportionably.

### Of *the Pulley or Windleſs*. Prop. 5.

It is evident, that the Pulley may be accounted for, in the ſame manner as the Ballance or Leaver, in which the Forces are imployed either on the ſame Side of the Center, or on both Sides: Which, when they are in *æquilibrio*, are to each other reciprocally as Perpendiculars, let fall from the Point which repreſents the Center of the Leaver, to their Directions. And hence the Forces of Engines, which conſiſt of many Pulleys, according as they are differently framed, may eaſily be explained. If the Compoſition of the Pullies, or the manner of framing the Windleſs be ſuch, that the Ropes which are fitted to the Pulleys, are parallel to one another; and the Weight be ſo ſuſpended in the midſt of the Ropes, as to draw every one of them with equal Force, it is ſelf evident, that the Force, is to the Weight which it ſupports; as One, to the Number of Ropes. For when that Force is applied to one of the Ropes only, it is directly oppoſed to that part only of the whole Weight, which draws that Rope; the Pin to which the Windleſs is fixed, ſupporting the other Parts of the whole Weight.

It is alſo evident, that in this Engine, the Force and the Weight, when they are in *æquilibrio*, are to each other reciprocally, as their Velocities, when the Force raiſes the Weight. For it is manifeſt, that theſe Velocities are to each other, as the Decreaſe of the Length of all the Ropes which ſupport the Weight taken together, to the Increaſe of the Length of the Rope to which the Force is applied, in the ſame time; and that juſt ſo much as is loſt in a given time in *all* the Length's of the Ropes which ſupport the Weight; the very ſame is gained, in the ſame time, in the *one* Length of that Rope to which the Force is applied.

## CHAP. XV.

### *Of Reflexion and Refraction.*

1. *What is meant by Reflexion and Refraction.*

THAT we may apply what has been ſaid to ſome Advantage, we ſhall, by the help of it, explain the Manner of *Reflexion* and *Refraction.* But to avoid the Error of the Antients, who confounded theſe two Things together, we obſerve; that by *Reflexion* is meant nothing elſe but the Bending, or Alteration of the *Determination*, when a Body in Motion, ſtrikes againſt another Body which it cannot penetrate; and by *Refraction* is meant the Bending or Alteration of the *Determination*, when a Body in Motion, paſſes out of one *Medium* into another, which receives it with more or leſs Difficulty.

2. *An Inſtance of Reflexion.* Tab. II. Fig. 6.

2. Suppoſe, for Example, that the Body A, which is perfectly hard, moves with a ſimple Motion, in the Line AB, and that it meets with the Body CDEF, which I ſuppoſe to be perfectly hard likewiſe, and not to be ſhaken: Then, from what has been ſaid, it follows, that the Body A [1] ought to continue in Motion, becauſe it does not communicate any part of its Motion, and it ought to be ſtruck back, becauſe it cannot go on in a ſtreight Line: But let us ſee how, and which way: And that we may not multiply Difficulties, we do not now conſider, what will ariſe from its Bigneſs, Figure or Gravity: Let us ſuppoſe likewiſe, that the Air makes no Reſiſtance to it, and that it moves with equal Velocity.

3. *That the Angle of Reflexion is equal to the Angle of Incidence.*

3. This being ſuppoſed, let a Circle be deſcribed on the Center A, and with the Diſtance BA; and for the ſame Reaſon that the Body A comes from the Circumference to the Center in a given Time, it ought to go from the ſame Center to ſome Point of the Circumference of this Circle in the ſame Time: Now to determine that particular Point, from the Points A and B, let the Lines AG, BH be drawn perpendicular to the Superficies CF, and the Line AHI, parallel to that Superficies: Now we may obſerve, that though the Body A is carried with a ſimple Motion, it is however true, that with reſpect to the Body CDEF, its Determination in the Line AB, is compounded of two others, the one of which makes it go towards the right Hand, by the Length of the Line AH,

---

[1] *Ought to continue in Motion*) See above, Chap. X. Art. 13.

or which is equal to it, GB; and the other makes it come downwards towards GB, by the Length of the Line AG. Now we may further obſerve, [1] that the Body CDEF reſiſts the Determination downwards, but that it does not at all reſiſt the Determination towards the right Hand, that is, that part of the Motion which is determined towards the right Hand, which conſequently [2] ought to continue as it began. So that the Body A having in a given Time with this Determination, paſſed through the Space contained between the Lines AG, HB, that is, moved the Length of the Line AH or GB, it ought in the ſame time to paſs through an equal Quantity again, or which amounts to the ſame Thing, it ought at the End of this Time, to be found in the Line IL, which I ſuppoſe to be perpendicular to the Superficies CF, and the ſame Diſtance from HB, as HB is from AG. So that, to ſatisfy that part of the Motion which is towards the Right, which does not alter at all, we find that the Body A at a certain Moment of Time, ought to be ſomewhere in the Line IL. But to ſatisfie the whole Motion, we have before ſhown, that it ought in the ſame Moment to be ſomewhere in the Circumference of the Circle: Therefore, that theſe two may be both ſatisfied together, we ought to conclude, that it will at the ſame Time, be in the Circumference of the Circle, and in the Line IL together, which can be no where elſe but in the Point I which is common to them both. Thus we ſee the Body A which began to move in the Line AB, is reflected in the Line BI, which makes with the Superficies C the Angle

Tab. II. Fig. 6.

---

1. *That the Body CDEF reſiſts the Determination*) If the incident Body A, and the Body CDEF upon which it ſtrikes, are void of all Elaſticity; the Body CDEF not only reſiſts this perpendicular Determiuation, but entirely deſtroys all the Motion that ariſes from that Determination (See *the Notes on Chap.* x. *Art.* 13.) ſo that the Body A, is afterwards moved, with the other part of its Motion only, along the Superficies BLF. But if either, or both theſe Bodies be perfectly elaſtick, then a new Motion will be impreſſed upon the Body A, equal to the Motion which was loſt, and with a *contrary* Determination; ſo that, when it comes to the Superficies GL, with the Determination AG, it will then recede from it with the Determination LI. This is carefully to be obſerved, becauſe it is neceſſary to the compleating this Demonſtration, by which it appears, that the Angles of Incidence and Reflexion are equal. For the Nature of this *Elaſtick Force* being rightly underſtood, the Demonſtration concerning the reflecting of Elaſtick Bodies, will hold in the ſame manner as in perfectly *hard* Bodies, according to the Author's Principles. See further, *the Notes on Chap.* xi. *Art.* 6. Tab. II. Fig. 6.

2. *Ought to continue as it began*) Hence it follows, that the Lines of Incidence and Repercuſſion are in a Plane perpendicular to the Superficies of the reflecting Body. See *the Notes on Chap. xxxiv. Art.* 2.

IBL, which is called the *Angle of Reflexion*, [1] which may eaſily be demonſtrated to be equal to the Angle ABG, which is called the *Angle of Incidence*.

4. *An Example of one Sort of Refraction.* Tab. III. Fig. 1.

4. Let us now come to *Refraction*, and that we may explain the Nature of it fully, I ſhall here make uſe of the Example of a Ball, as was before done in Reflexion. Suppoſe then the Ball A to be moved along the Line AB in the Air, but ſtriking obliquely upon the Water below CD, inſtead of going on directly towards E, it tends towards F, this Sort of bending, [2] meaſured by the Angle EBF is what we call *Refraction*.

5. *Another Sort of Refraction.* Tab. III. Fig. 1.

5. If the Body A, after it is arrived at B in the Line AB, inſtead of being turned towards F, is turned towards G; this is *Refraction* alſo, but of a different Sort from the other: Now in order to diſtinguiſh theſe two Sorts of *Refraction*, let the Line HB, be drawn through the Point B, where the Body A paſſes out of one Medium into the other, perpendicular to the Superficies CD, which divides the two Mediums, and the Kind of *Refraction* is determined, by the Approach to, or Receſs from this Perpendicular. For Example, if the Body which moves along the Line AB, when it is turned out of the way, afterwards moves along the Line BF, this is called *Refraction* from the *Perpendicular*; but if it afterwards moves along the Line BG, then it is called *Refraction* to the *perpendicular*.

6. *When a Body is turned out of its Courſe, we muſt think, that it meets with ſome Obſtacle on that part from which it turns.*

6. Theſe two Sorts of *Refraction* have been obſerved a long time, but the Cauſe of them was not at all known. And we may venture to ſay, that this is one of thoſe Things which the Antients were ignorant of, and the Diſcovery of which is owing to one of the principal Men of this Age; and agreeable to his Opinion, I thus explain this Matter: Since we are ſure, that every Thing, as much as it can, perſiſts in that State in which it is; after we find by Experience, that a Body quits the ſtreight Line in which it began to move, we muſt neceſſarily think, that it has met with ſome Obſtacle on that part from which it removes: Thus, if, when the Body A is come to the Point B, it is turned out of its Courſe towards the Point F, we ought to conclude, that it meets

Tab. II. Fig. 1.

---

[1] *Which may eaſily be demonſtrated*) For BL = GB by the Hypotheſis; and LI = GA, becauſe GL and AI are parallel, and the Angles L and G are right Angles, by the Hyp. Therefore the Triangles ILB, AGB are equal and ſimilar.

Tab. II. Fig. 6.

[2] Meaſured by the Angle EBF) *See the Notes upon Art.* 11. *of this Chap.*

with more Reſiſtance on the Side M, than on the Side N; and if it is turned toward G, we have Reaſon to think, on the contrary, that it has met with more Reſiſtance on the Side N, than on the Side M.

*7. That the Body in Motion, recedes from the Medium which makes the greateſt Reſiſtance to it.*

7. We may reaſon in the ſame manner, in order to determine on which Side, a Body moving out of one Medium into another, will be turned. For ſince we before knew, that the unequal Reſiſtance, which a Body in Motion meets with on different Sides, (according to the different Mediums through which it paſſes) would force the Body to turn out of its Courſe, and to remove from that Side where it finds the moſt Reſiſtance; when once we come to know, that there is more Reſiſtance on the one ſide than on the other; we conclude, that it will turn out of the way, by removing from the Medium where the Reſiſtance is greateſt. And thus when we once come to know that Water reſiſts the Motion of a Ball more than Air, we ought to think, that the Ball which moves in the Air from A to B, in paſſing into the Water which is below B, will turn towards F, and ſo will recede from the Perpendicular.

*8. The Way how to determine the particular ſort of Refraction.*

8. This may be applied [1] to all ſorts of Bodies, and to all ſorts of Mediums, and therefore we may lay it down for a general Maxim, that when a Body paſſes obliquely out of one Medium into another, which makes a greater Reſiſtance to it; it ought ſo to turn as to remove from the Perpendicular, and, on the contrary, when it paſſes out of one Medium into another, where it finds leſs Reſiſtance; it ought to be ſo turned, as to approach towards the Perpendicular.

*9. That a Body which falls perpendicularly upon another, ought not to be refracted at all in entring into it.*

9. I expreſsly added, that the Body which paſſes out of one Medium into another, muſt fall obliquely upon the Superficies which ſeparates the two Mediums, in order to be refracted; for if it falls perpendicularly upon this Superficies, as there is nothing to reſiſt its Motion more on the one ſide than on the other, ſo it ought not to be turned out of its courſe at all, [2] but to continue to move in the ſame Line.

10. The

---

[1] *To all Sorts of Bodies*) For this Reaſon the Rays of *Light* which paſs out of Air into Water, are reflected *towards the perpendicular*, contrary to what we ſee in a *Ball* thrown out of our Hand; becauſe Water which reſiſts the Motion of the *Ball* more than Air, on the contrary, reſiſts *Light* leſs. (*See Chap.* 27. *Art.* 38.) or to ſpeak more truly, it accelerates the Motion of Light more by attracting it; as will be ſhown afterwards.

[2] *But to continue to move in the ſame Line*) Yet ſome have thought, as *J. Voſſius, Willebrord Snell*, that they have ſeen a perpendicular Ray of Light, ſome way refracted and contracted

10. *An Example of the Motion of a refracted Body.* Tab. III. Fig. 1.

10. The exact Quantity of the Refraction of a Body paſſing obliquely out of one Medium into another, may be determined, provided we know how much the one Medium reſiſts its paſſing more than the other. Suppoſe, for Inſtance, the Line CD ſeparates the two Mediums, the upper one of which is Air, and the under one Water, and that the Water reſiſts the Motion of the Ball A twice as much as the Air; then let us imagine, that this Ball has run the Length of the Line AB with ſuch a Velocity, as takes up a Minute, and is then ready to enter the Water obliquely: and that the Thing may be the eaſier apprehended, we meddle not with what might happen on the account of the Bigneſs or Weight of the Ball. Let us imagine further, that its Motion in the Air has been all along uniform, and that after having loſt half its Velocity by meeting with the Superficies of the Water, it loſes no more, though it ſinks never ſo deep; for the Deviation [1] is made only in the Superficies, and the Water which reſiſts all its Parts equally, can only make the Ball take up more or leſs Time in moving through a given Line, and not cauſe it to move out of it.

11. *How Refraction is made.* Tab. III. Fig. 2.

11. This being ſuppoſed, having deſcribed a Circle on the Center B, and the Diſtance AB, let us conſider, that the Ball having taken up a Minute of Time in moving from the Circumference of the Circle to the Center, where it loſes half its Velocity, ought afterwards to take up two Minutes in moving from the Center to any Point in the Circumference: Now in order to determine where this Point ought to be, we obſerve, that though the Motion of this Ball was ſuppoſed to be a ſimple Motion, yet its Determination in the Line AB, with reſpect to the Superficies of the Water, is really compoſed of two Determinations, one of which cauſes it to move from the Left to the Right, the Length contained between the Lines AF and BG, which are perpendicular to the Superficies of the Water, that is, the Length of the Line AG or FB; the other Determination makes it deſcend downwards the Length contained between the two Parallels AG, CD, that is, the Length of the Line AF. We muſt further obſerve,

---

tracted into it ſelf; which is, becauſe when we look upon any Thing in the Water, it ſeems to be nearer us than it really is; ſo that herein they falſely aſcribed that to Refraction (of which there is none in the perpendicular) which was to be aſcribed to the diverging of oblique Rays after Refraction, from the Point neareſt to us. But for the real and manifeſt Refraction of perpendicular Rays, which is made in *Iſland Chryſtal*, See *Newt. Opt. pag.* 229.

2. *Is made only in the Superficies)* It is otherwiſe in the Reflexion and Refraction of *Light*. *See below, Chap.* xxvii. *Art.* 35. 37.

obſerve, that the Superficies of the Water reſiſts the Determination downwards, which conſequently muſt be altered; [1] but it makes no Reſiſtance at all to the Determination from Left to Right, wherefore this will not be at all altered, but the Ball which moved in this manner the Length FB during the Minute which it took up in going from the Circumference of the Circle to the Center, ought to move twice this Length in two Minutes, in going from the Center to the Circumference: Let BL therefore be taken equal to twice BF, and the Line ELM drawn perpendicular to CD, and the Ball ought to be found ſomewhere in this Line, two Minutes after it has parted from B; but it was before ſaid, that it ought at the ſame time to be in the Circumference of the Circle alſo; whence we conclude, that the Ball will be at the ſame time in this Line, and alſo in the Circumference of the Circle; that is, in the Point M, where they interſect each other. So that inſtead of continuing its Courſe in the Line AB produced to N, it will be carried along the Line BM, which is from the Perpendicular, [2] and the Refraction will be meaſured by the Angle MBN. From what has been ſaid, it is plain, that if the lower Medium had reſiſted the Ball *leſs* than the upper one, the Refraction ought to have been contrary, that is, to the Perpendicular.

12. *The difficulty there is when the Ball falls very oblique.*

12. Without altering any Thing before ſuppoſed as to the Difference of the Reſiſtance of the two Mediums, and the Velocity of the Ball, let us now ſuppoſe, that the Ball, in order to go to the Point B, comes from another Point more diſtant from the Point P than was ſuppoſed in the former Example, ſo that the Line FB which is the Meaſure of *the Determination towards the right Hand* be longer than half the Radius of the Circle, and conſequently the Line BL, which is twice as long, be longer than the whole Radius; it ought to follow, according to the foregoing Reaſoning, that the Line ELM will fall without the Circle, and not interſect it at all; And ſo our

---

[1] *But it makes no Reſiſtance*) But it does reſiſt that Determination alſo, as it enters; for the Ball in entring, ſtrikes or rubs againſt the farther part of the Hole which it enters into: for which reaſon, and becauſe the Motion of the Ball is afterwards perpetually retarded as it paſſes through the Water which reſiſts it, this Inſtance is not ſufficiently accommodated to explain accurately and mathematically the Nature of Refraction.

[2] *And the Refraction will be meaſured*) It is a right Obſervation of *Cartes* here, that Refraction *univerſally* and *in all Incidencies* is to be meaſured by the Proportion of the Lines AG and OM, and not by the Angles ABG, and HBM or NBM. *See Cartes's Dioptr. Chap. 2. Art. 7.* Tab. III. Fig. 2.

Argument ſeems to conclude, that the Ball ought to be in two different Places at the ſame time, *viz.* in this Line, and in the Circumference of the Circle; which is impoſſible.

*13. That a Body which falls too oblique upon another, ought not to penetrate it at all.*

13. It muſt be confeſſed, that here is ſome Miſtake, whenceſoever it ariſes; for every Argument that leads to an Impoſſibility, is defective either as to the Form or as to the Matter of it. But let us not imagine that there is any Fault in the Form of this Argument which ſeems to conclude in an Impoſſibility; let us rather ſay, that it being concluſive, it is a certain Sign, that the Fault was in ſome of the Suppoſitions that were made. And ſo indeed it was, for we ſuppoſed that the Ball, when it had loſt half of its Motion by meeting the Superficies of the Water, would enter into it, though it fell never ſo oblique, which is not ſo. For we ſee by Experience in a Sea-Fight, that Cannon-Balls which are ſhot too oblique upon the Water, are reflected by the Superficies of the Sea, and kill the Soldiers upon the Decks of the oppoſite Ships. And we obſerve the ſame Thing in Stones which Children make Ducks and Drakes with in the Water.

## CHAP. XVI.

## *Of hard Bodies put into Liquors.*

*1. That the Poſition of hard Bodies put into Liquors is an Effect of Motion.*

ALL that can be ſaid of the Place which a Body ought to poſſeſs in any Liquor according as it is more or leſs heavy, does properly belong to the Doctrine of Motion. For theſe Bodies are in Motion when they ſink in the Liquor, and they are in Motion alſo when they riſe from the Bottom, to the Superficies.

*2. That the Superficies of a heavy Liquor contained in a Veſſel ought to be level.*
Tab. III. Fig. 4.

2. That we may not paſs by any Thing therefore which may be of uſe afterwards, let ABCD be a Tub filled with Water, and ſuppoſe firſt, that this Water is upon the Level, that is, no one Part of the Surface AD higher than another; then imagining it to be divided into a great many Columns, perpendicular to the Bottom of the Tub, let us examine one of theſe Columns, as EFGH. And firſt it is obſervable, that though this whole Column endeavours to ſink down, yet it cannot, becauſe the ſmaller Columns, into which this may be ſubdivided, muſt bend at the Bottom of the Veſſel before they can return up-

upwards, but that they cannot do, becauſe they meet and ſupport each other, and are alſo ſupported by the little Columns on all Sides of them, which tend downwards likewiſe, and with equal Force. So that the Water in the Tub ought to continue [1] upon the Level, and to remain in perfect Reſt and *Æquilibrio*, if there be nothing elſe but its own Weight to move or ſhake it. Whence it is manifeſt, that if we ſuppoſe the Water in the Tub to be higher in one Place than in another, that it cannot continue ſo, becauſe thoſe little Columns of Water which are longer than the other, will have more Power to deſcend than they, and will never leave crouding them up, till the Surface of the Liquor is come to a Level, when they will all be in *æquilibrio* with each other. Therefore when a heavy Liquor is contained in any Veſſel, we are to think that its Weight diſpoſes the Surface of it to be upon the Level, and that it will continue ſo, unleſs altered by ſome foreign Cauſe.

*3. That a hard Body put into a Liquor of equal Gravity, ought to reſt in any part of it.*

3. Let us conſider further, that if there be put into the Water in this Tub any hard Body, ſuch as I, of equal Gravity with the Water; as its Weight would have neither more nor leſs Effect than the Water whoſe Place it poſſeſſes; there is no Reaſon why any Alteration ſhould be made in the Column EFGH, ſo that the Body I muſt continue where it was placed.

*4. With what Force a Body which is heavier than Water, ought to ſink to the Bottom.*

4. But if we imagine this Body to be heavier, by an Ounce, ſuppoſe, than a Quantity of Water of equal Bulk, it is manifeſt then, that all the Columns of Water will not be in *æquilibrio*, but the Body will go to the Bottom, not with its ordinary Weight, but only with the Difference betwixt that and the Weight of a Quantity of Water of equal Bulk, that is, with the Force of an Ounce weight.

*5. That we cannot feel the real Weight of any Body by our Senſes.*

5. But ſince Water was here taken only for an Example, and the Reaſoning holds the ſame, when applied to any other heavy Liquor; we may affirm in general, that in ſupporting a heavy Body, we ought only to feel the Exceſs of its Weight above that of an equal Bulk of the Liquor in which it is. Hence it is, that we are not ſurpriſed to find by Experience, that a pretty luſty young Man who weighs a Hundred and thirty eight Pound in the Air, does not weigh above eight Ounces in the Water. But we have before ſhown, by many Experiments,

---

[1] *Upon the Level*) That is, as to Senſe. But in reality it is part of the Sphærical Superficies of the Earth.

that the Air itſelf is heavy, wherefore we do not by our Senſes feel the true Weight of a Body in the Air, but only the Difference of the Weight of the Body and of the Air; and conſequently, unleſs we are under any particular Indiſpoſition, we ought never to feel our ſelves lighter, but only when the Air is heavier.

*6. That a Body which is lighter than the Liquor, ought to riſe up, and that with ſome Force.* Tab. III. Fig. 4.

6. It is evident, that if the Body I, juſt now mentioned, had been ſuppoſed lighter than that Bulk of Water, whoſe Place it poſſeſſes; the Column EFGH would not be heavy enough to be in *æquilibrio* with the reſt of the Water in the Tub; wherefore this Column will be forced to give way, till the Body I be got up to the Surface AD, beneath which, ſo much of it will remain, as poſſeſſes the Place of a Quantity of Water equal in Weight to the Body.

*7. How to find whether a hard Body weighs more or leſs than an equal Bulk of any Liquor.*

7. From what has been ſaid, we may draw two very important and uſeful Inferences. Firſt, *That if a Body put into any Liquor, ſinks to the Bottom, it is certain that Body is heavier, than an equal Bulk of the Liquor, but if it ſwims on the Top, it is an infallible Sign, that it is lighter.*

*8. The way to find which is the heavieſt of two Liquors.*

8. Secondly, If a hard Body be put into two Liquors, and riſes in the one, but ſinks in the other, the former muſt neceſſarily be heavier than the latter.*

9. This

---

* It is worth while to explain, a little more fully, and in better Order, the Hydroſtatick Propoſitions, which are urged too briefly and confuſedly in this Chapter.

1. Therefore. *All Water gravitates in every Place, even in Water it ſelf* (and the ſame is to be underſtood of any other Liquor) *and by reaſon of the equal Preſſure of its Parts on all Sides, its Superficies ought to be plain and level.* This is demonſtrated *in the ſecond Article of this Chapter,* and by the famous Mr. *Boyle in his Hydroſtaticks. Paradox* 1.

Tab. III. Fig. 4.

2. *A hard Body, ſuch as* I, *equal in Weight to a Quantity of Water of the ſame Bulk, put into Water, ought neither to ſink nor riſe, but to reſt in any Place.* For the Column EFGH gravitates neither more nor leſs than the Columns which ſurround it, and therefore it ought to keep in *æquilibrio.* See *Art.* 3. *of this Chap.*

3. *A Body, ſuch as* I, *heavier than VVater, ought to ſink in the VVater.* Becauſe then the Column EFGH is heavier than the Columns which ſurround it. See *Art.* 4. *of this Chap.*

4. *A Body, ſuch as* I, *heavier than VVater, ought to have juſt ſo much VVeight in VVater, as it exceeds in VVeight an equal Bulk of VVater.* For ſince the Body A poſſeſſes the Place of an equal Bulk of Water in the Column EFGH; it is manifeſt, that by how much that Body exceeds that equal Bulk of Water in Weight, by juſt ſo much is that Column heavier than it was before. See *Art.* 4. *of this Chapter, and Archimedes of Bodies put into Fluids. Prop.* 7.

Hence, ſince the Proportion of Weight betwixt Gold and Water is known, Gold may be proved and valued, by weighing it in Water. See *Boyle's Hydroſtatick Medicine.*

5. *Any Body ſuch as* I, *put into VVater, is not only preſſed downwards by the incumbent* Water, but is alſo preſſed upwards by the Water that is under it. This is evident *from the firſt Propoſition.* See alſo *Boyle's Hydroſtaticks, Paradox* 3.

6. The

9. This being ſo, if we examine the Opinion of ſome Philoſophers, *viz.* that there are certain Places natural to all Bodies where they of themſelves continue at reſt, and have no Tendency to go out of them, and that this is the Rea-

*9. A Miſtake in ſome Philoſophers.*

6. *The heavieſt Body of all, ſuch as* I, *a Cube of Gold, if it be put ſo deep into the VVater, that the Depth of the VVater from* EH *to the lower part of that Cube be twenty times as much as the Thickneſs of* I *is, that Cube will be ſo preſſed upwards by the VVater that is under it, that, if the incumbent VVater* EIH *were removed, it would not ſink.* For ſince the Cube I is juſt of the ſame Weight as the Water which reaches from EH to the Bottom of the Cube; all which Water we now ſuppoſe to be removed; it is evident, that the Column FIG in this Caſe, is in *equilibrio* with the Columns which ſurround it, and therefore the Cube I cannot ſink. See *Hydroſtatick Parad.* 11.

7. *A Body, ſuch as* I, *lighter than VVater, let it be preſſed never ſo much by the incumbent VVater, ought to riſe notwithſtanding.* For in this Caſe, the Column EFGH is lighter than the Columns of Water which ſurround it. See *Art* 6. *of this Chap.*

8. *VVhen a light Body is riſen to the Top of the VVater, ſo much of it ought to remain under the VVater, as is equal to a Bulk of VVater weighing as much as the whole Body.* This is the Fifth Propoſition of *Archimedes concerning Bodies put into Fluids,* and is eaſily demonſtrated from what has been already ſaid. For it is manifeſt, that when the lower Part of the Body ſwimming in the Water, is ſunk in this Proportion, the whole Column EFGH is in *æquilibrio* with the Columns that ſurround it; and if the ſame Body be ſunk deeper, this Column will be lighter than the reſt of the Columns; if not ſo deep, it will be heavier.

Tab. III. Fig. 4.

9. *In every Body that is lighter than VVater, the Proportion of its VVeight to the VVeight of VVater, is as that part of it under the VVater to the whole Body.* This Propoſition follows from the preceeding one, and is more at large demonſtrated by *Archimedes, Book* II. *Prop. of Bodies put into Fluids.*

10. *All VVater preſſes upon the Bodies under it, in proportion to its perpendicular Height, and not in proportion to its Breadth.* This noble Propoſition is at large demonſtrated in *my Notes upon Chap.* 10. *Art.* 11.

11. *This Preſſure acts upon Bodies immerſed in the VVater, not only on the Top, but on the Bottom and the Sides, every way equally.* This Propoſition follows from the foregoing one, and is demonſtrated from the Nature of Water, whereby every Preſſure is propagated equally and entire every way. See alſo *Boyl's Hydroſt. Paradox* 7.

12. Hence, *a wooden Trencher put under VVater, immediately riſes up; though there be a much greater Quantity of VVater lying above it, than is under it; neither is there any ſuch Thing in Nature as Levity, to lift it up.* This Propoſition you have demonſtrated in *my Notes on Chap.* X. *Art.* 11. *Coroll.* 3.

13. However, *If the wooden Trencher be exactly fitted to the VVidth of the Veſſel, ſo that no Water can get in between it and the Sides of the Veſſel, which by communicating its Weight to the Water beneath, might force the Trencher up; or if the Trencher goes ſo cloſe to the Bottom of the Veſſel, that no VVater can get in betwixt it and the Bottom, then the Trencher will not riſe at all.* Which is a manifeſt Proof, that there is no ſuch Thing as *Levity* in Nature. See *the ſame Place.*

It is very hard to prove this Propoſition by Experiments, becauſe Water is ſo apt to wet and run all about. But I have tried it with Quickſilver, which will not wet moſt Bodies; for after I had gently put a Piece of Money on the Bottom of a Veſſel full of Quickſilver; the Money did not riſe up; but if I ſhaked the Veſſel, or lifted up the Money ever ſo little with a Needle, that ſome of the Quickſilver might get betwixt the Money and the Bottom of the Veſſel, the Money was immediately raiſed up.

Reaſon why Water has no Weight in Water; we ſhall not ſcruple to affirm, that this is as groſs an Errour, as, it would be in a Man, who, ſeeing a large Cannon in one Scale, and Seven or eight thouſand Pound Weight in the other, ſhould affirm, that the Cannon did not weigh any Thing in this Place, becauſe he can eaſily lift it up or down: For this Opinion of theſe Philoſophers is founded upon this Experiment, that in drawing Water out of a Well, we do not begin to feel the Weight of that with which the Bucket is filled, till it comes into the Air; whereas they ought to think, that as the Cannon is always heavy, and we could not eaſily lift it, but for the Weight which keeps it in *æquilibrio*; ſo alſo the Water weighs always the ſame; and the Reaſon why we don't perceive its Weight when the Bucket is under Water in the Well, is, becauſe we are aſſiſted by the reſt of the Water in the Well, which is in *æquilibrio* with that in the Bucket.

Tab. I. Fig. 4.

14. *It is poſſible for Water to depreſs and ſink a Body lighter than it ſelf.* This may be done by gently putting the Syphon ABCD, filled with Oyl as high as ABC, into the Water till the ſhorter Arm AB be under Water; for then the Water preſſing upon the Superficies AB, will lift up the Oyl ſo much the higher towards D, as the Syphon is let down deeper into it. And from hence alſo it is as clear as the Sun at Noon-Day, that there is no ſuch Thing as *Levity* in Nature. But leſt the Experiment ſhould fail by the Oyl's mixing with the Water, it is more proper to uſe a Syphon with ſmaller Arms. See *Boyle's 8th Hydroſtatick Paradox.*

15. So likewiſe, *it may be, that Oyl having Water on each Side of it may not riſe up,* viz. thus, if, when the Syphon is filled with Water up to ABC, Oyl be poured upon the Water in each Arm, and Water be again poured upon that Oil to ballance the Preſſure of the lower Water upwards. See *Boyle's Hydroſtaticks, Paradox 9.*

# CHAP. XVII.

## *Of Accretion, Diminution, and Alteration.*

1. *What is meant by Accretion and Diminution.*

AS *Ariſtotle* in treating of *local Motion* conſiders alſo the other Changes that happen to natural Bodies, ſuch as *Accretion, Diminution and Alteration*, which he calls Motion likewiſe; ſo we after his Example, ſhall not wholly neglect theſe, but ſhow that it was not without Reaſon, that he brought them under this Head, ſince they are indeed the Effects of *local Motion*. All the World agree, that by *Accretion* and *Diminution* is meant the ſenſible Increaſe or Decreaſe of the proper Subſtance of a Body; Thus we are ſure, that the Trunk of a Tree is increaſed when we ſee it bigger than it was before.

2. *How Bodies are increaſed and diminiſhed.*

2. Since we obſerve, that Trees, and in general all Bodies ſtand in need of Nouriſhment, to make them increaſe, and that it is impoſſible to conceive how a Body ſhould increaſe and become bigger without ſome Parts being added to its former Bigneſs; this is a convincing Proof, that every Body which increaſes, receives ſome Augmentation of Matter. And as this is true of a Body which increaſes, ſo may we alſo affirm, that every Body which decreaſes, loſes ſome of the Matter which it had before.

3. *That Increaſe is different from Rarefaction.*

3. However this does not hinder us from making a difference betwixt *Increaſe* and *Rarefaction*; and betwixt *Decreaſe* and *Condenſation*: For the Matter which is added to a Body increaſing, and that which is taken from a Body decreaſing, is looked upon as belonging to it, and as part of its proper Subſtance; but, as was before obſerved, the Matter which enters into the Pores of a Body to rarify it, or that which gets out of its Pores, that it may be condenſed, is looked upon as Matter that does not belong to it.

4. *That there is a great deal of difference betwixt Accretion in a Body, and the local Motion of it.*

4. The Idea we have of the *Accretion* of a Tree, being different from the Idea we have of its being tranſplanted, it muſt be owned, that *Ariſtotle* had Reaſon to make a difference betwixt *Accretion* and *local Motion*. However, as a Tree cannot be tranſplanted, but by the local Motion of its whole Body, ſo we cannot conceive how it ſhould increaſe but by the local Motion and

Union of the ſmal Particles which contribute to the increaſing it.

*5. How Bodies are altered.*

5. When a Body neither increaſes nor decreaſes, but is ſomewhat changed; if this Change be not ſo great that we do not at all know it; we call it, as was ſaid before, *Alteration*; hence it is eaſy to ſee, that there can be no *Alteration* without *local Motion:* For how can there be any Change in a Body, if none of the Parts which compoſe it, and upon the particular Order of which its Nature depends, have changed their Situation? This being ſo, it is very evident, that there muſt be an *Alteration* in a Body, when the ſenſible or inſenſible Particles of which it is compoſed, are put out of their Order, or any great Change made in their Figure: Or it may alſo ſuffer an *Alteration,* by the Acquiſition of ſome new Particles, or by the Loſs of ſome of its old ones; all which cannot be without local Motion: Thus, when there is an *Alteration* in a bruiſed Apple, we can eaſily imagine that many of its Particles have been forced to change their Situation, and perhaps ſome of them have alſo changed their Figure. If after this, any one ſtill doubts whether there may not be ſome kind of *Alteration* in which there is ſomething elſe beſides what proceeds from local Motion, I think he cannot be ſatisfied better, than by what we are now going to ſay of *Forms.*

---

## CHAP. XVIII.

## *Of FORMS.*

*1. That Forms ought to be treated of by themſelves.*

FORMS are a Subject that we cannot hope to treat of, as we have done of *Matter*. For ſince *Matter* is a common *Subſtratum,* which, when once we underſtand what it is in Wood, we cannot at the ſame time but underſtand what it is in Fire, and in every Thing elſe; one ſingle Reflection is of it ſelf ſufficient to gain the Knowledge of it. But becauſe the *Form* of any Thing, is that which makes it to be that particular Thing, and diſtinguiſhes it from every Thing elſe; it does not follow, that if we know the Form of Wood, we therefore know the Form of Fire, or any Thing elſe. Wherefore if we would ſucceed herein, and ſay ſomething more than ordinary, we muſt deſcend to Particulars, notwithſtanding the Cu-

Cuſtom of Philoſophers, who ſeldom do ſo, but for the moſt part content themſelves with propoſing abundance of looſe Queſtions, which we may look upon as ſuperfluous, and from which we can gain no Advantage.

*2. Of Subſtantial Forms, and that the Inſtance of the rational Soul, does not prove that there are any others.*

2. However, I do not affirm, that it is an uſeleſs Enquiry, if it ſhould be asked here, as uſually it is, whether there be any ſuch Things as *Subſtantial Forms*, that is, *Forms* which are real *Subſtances*; and conſequently have a diſtinct Exiſtence from that of Matter. But thus much at leaſt, I may venture to affirm, that the Solution of this Difficulty, depends upon the particular Knowledge of the Things. The Inſtance of *the rational Soul* proves nothing here; for though we know that this is a Subſtance really diſtinct from the Body, to which it is united, and that it does not at all depend upon it for its Exiſtence, yet we can conclude nothing from hence as to the Forms of other Beings which are purely material.

*3. That the rational Soul is not the Form of the humane Body as a Body.*

3. But if we conſider this Matter more cloſely; though I acknowledge, as all the World do, that the *Soul* is that which particularly makes *a Man* to be *a Man*; and conſequently that it is truly the Form of *a humane Body* as *humane*; yet I can't agree, that it is, properly ſpeaking, the Form of all that which is ſenſible, and is called the *Body* and conſidered ſimply as a *Body*, any more than it is the Form of any of its Parts, conſidered as different from each other: For in this Senſe, every one of them has its particular Form ſo cloſely connected with the Matter of it, that it continues as long as the Part ſubſiſts, even after the Soul is ſeparated from the Body. And indeed after ſuch Separation, every part appears the ſame, as it did immediately before. For, that which was Fleſh, for Inſtance, is Fleſh ſtill, and that which was Bone, is Bone ſtill, and ſo of the reſt.

*4. An Error amongſt Philoſophers.*

4. The Cauſe of many People's Miſtake, who confound the Properties of the Body with thoſe of the Soul, is this; that a dead Body, when the Soul is ſeparated from it, is uncapable of many Functions which we obſerved in it before, ſuch as moving it ſelf, Reſpiration, Nouriſhment, *&c.* ſo that they perſwade themſelves that all theſe Things depend upon the Soul, and would not have ceaſed in the Body, if the Soul had not departed from it: Whereas we ought rather to think, that the continuing of the Soul in the Body, depends in ſome meaſure upon the Diſpoſition of the Body to perform theſe Functions, and that the Separation is a Conſequence of theſe Functions not being able to be performed. For every Day's

Experience ſhows us, that Death never comes, nor is the Soul ever ſeparated from the Body, till it is ſome way hurt, or by ſome Means ſpoiled and corrupted. And we have no Example of the Soul's being ſeparated from a ſound and perfect Body, and that this Body did not begin to be corrupted, till after, and becauſe the Soul was ſeparated from it.

*5. That there are eſſential Forms.*

5. It would therefore be unreaſonable, upon the ſingle Inſtance of the ***Rational Soul***, which is very different from the common Forms of Bodies, and without firſt knowing the particular Form of all Kinds of Bodies, to affirm here raſhly, that there are ***ſubſtantial Forms*** in Things merely corporeal; however we may venture ſafely and confidently to aſſert, that there are ſome Forms which are *eſſential*, that is, ſuch as belong neceſſarily to their Subjects: Thus ***to be liquid*** is eſſential to ***Water***, becauſe there is no Water which is not Liquid; we may alſo affirm, that there are other ***Forms*** which are only ***accidental***, becauſe they ſo belong to the Subject, that it can exiſt without them, and not ceaſe to be what it was. Thus *Coldneſs* is an *accidental* Form of Water, becauſe Water would ſtill be Water, if it was made hot.

*6. That it is not certain that* Ariſtotle *did allow of ſubſtantial Forms.*

6. It might very eaſily be, that *Ariſtotle* might acknowledge ***eſſential Forms*** and not ***ſubſtantial Forms***; for it is certain, that the ***Greek*** Word which he uſes, may as well or better ſignify the one than the other.

*7. That Artificial Forms are alſo natural.*

7. Forms are commonly diſtinguiſhed into *Natural* and *Artificial:* They call thoſe *Natural*, which belong to the Subject without the Aſſiſtance of Men; Thus a Portion of Matter receives the Form of Marble in the Bowels of the Earth. ***Artificial Forms*** are thoſe that proceed from Art; thus the Form of a Clock is called ***Artificial***, becauſe it is owing to the Labour of the Clock-maker. I agree, that if the Name had been given with regard only to the Cauſes by which they were produced, it would have been reaſonable to call the one *Natural*, and the other *Artificial*; but ſince it is inferred from thence, that the *Natural Forms* are different from the *Artificial Forms*, and that they act from internal Principles, which are very different from thoſe of *Artificial Forms*; there lies the Miſtake. For ***Artificial Forms*** are as natural as the ***Natural Forms*** themſelves, becauſe they proceed from Cauſes purely natural; and Art, as was ſaid before, does nothing elſe but apply active Things to paſſive Ones.

*8. The Diviſion of Forms into ſimple and compounded.*

8. It is much more reaſonable to divide Forms into *Simple* and *Compound. Simple* Forms are thoſe of ſimple Beings, that is, of Beings that are capable of but a few Properties; and *compound* Forms are thoſe of compound Beings, that is, Beings that are capable of a great many Properties. For Inſtance, the Form of a hard Body, whatever that Form may be, is a *ſimple* Form compared with the Form of Wood, which, with reſpect to the former, may be ſaid to be *compounded;* becauſe a hard Body, as *hard,* is not capable of ſo many Properties as Wood.

*9. That ſimple Forms ought to be underſtood firſt.*

9. This Obſervation is more remarkable than one would imagine. For it is evident, that *ſimple* Things may be known, when we don't at all know thoſe that are compounded of them: Whereas we cannot know thoſe that are *compounded,* but we muſt have a dinſtinct Knowledge of thoſe Things which go towards their Compoſition. Wherefore in order to underſtand particularly the Forms of Bodies, it is neceſſary that we firſt begin with thoſe that are *ſimple,* and afterwards come to thoſe that are *compounded.*

---

## CHAP. XIX.

## *Of Elements according to the Opinion of the Antients.*

*1. What Philoſophers mean by Elements.*

IF we once have a clear Notion of what Philoſophers mean by the Word *Element,* we cannot doubt, but that the Forms of Elements are the moſt ſimple of all. It is to be obſerved therefore, that the principal Deſign of Philoſophers is to explain how every Thing is generated, in ſuch a manner as to let us know the different States through which ſuch Things paſs from their firſt Principles till they are entirely compleat, and in that perfect State in which we ſee them. And in order to this, ſince they find by Experience, that every Thing is not made indifferently out of another, and that Stones, for Inſtance, and Marble are not proper to be converted into Fleſh, neither will they ſerve to nouriſh it and make it grow; ſo they judge by proportion, that all ſorts of Bodies are not compounded of Principles alone, connected together in the moſt ſimple manner poſſible; but ſome very ſimple

Things only, of the Mixture of which all other Things are afterwards compoſed. Theſe very ſimple Things, whatever they be, which thus ariſe from the firſt *Determination* and Connexion of Principles, are what Philoſophers call *Elements:* So that *Elements* differ from *Principles* in this, that a *Principle*, ſuch as Matter, for Example, is, as it were, an *incompleat and undetermined Thing*, whereas an *Element*, is a *compleat aud determined Thing.*

*2. That there ought to be more Elements than one, and what the Opinion of the Antients was concerning Elements.*

2. This being explained, there muſt, without doubt, be *more than one Element*, otherwiſe there would be but one uniform Simplicity in Nature, and no compounded Things. But Philoſophers have not agreed what is meant by *Element*, the Reaſon of which, is, becauſe they have not ſo much inquired into *the Nature of Things themſelves* as into *the Senſations which they are apt to raiſe in us.* Thus ſome Philoſophers who conſidered the Senſe of *Seeing* only, have aſſerted that *Light* and *Dark*, *Tranſparent* and *Opacous* were the Elements of Things. And others, who referred every Thing to *Feeling*, have pretended that *Hard* and *Liquid*, or *Hot* and *Cold* were the *Elements.*

*3. How Ariſtotle made Four Elements.*

3. *Ariſtotle* may be placed amongſt the Number of theſe laſt, though he went in a Way ſomewhat different from theirs. He conſidered firſt, the principal Qualities that come under the Senſe of *Feeling*, ſuch as *Heat*, *Cold*, *Dryneſs* or *Hardneſs*, and *Moiſtneſs* or *Liquidneſs:* And after he had obſerved that two of theſe Qualities might meet in the ſame Subject, and that the Four might be coupled four different Ways, he compoſed four Elements; of which the Firſt is *Cold* and *Dry*, the Second is *Cold* and *Moiſt*, the Third, *Hot* and *Moiſt*, and the Fourth, *Hot* and *Dry*.

*4. What Names he gave to them.*

4. Then, in order to give Names to them, he examined what thoſe Things in Nature were, in which one Element ſeemed to prevail, or in which its Qualities were moſt ſenſible. Thus, imagining the *Earth* to be both the coldeſt and drieſt Thing in the World, he called his *Firſt Element*, *Earth*. So likewiſe, becauſe he thought that Water was the coldeſt and moiſteſt Thing, he called his *Second Element*, *Water*. Further, imagining alſo, that there is nothing more moiſt and hot than Air, he called his *Third Element*, *Air*; And laſtly, not doubting, but that Fire is the hotteſt and dryeſt Thing in the World, he called his *Fourth Element*, *Fire*.

5. *That theſe have been miſunderſtood by ſome.*

5. *Ariſtotle*'s making uſe of Names which were before uſed to ſignify other Things, hath given occaſion to many, who did not rightly apprehend his Meaning, weakly to believe, that *This Earth which we inhabit, This Water which we drink, This Air which we breathe,* and *This Fire which we kindle,* are the *Four Elements*. But this will appear a very groſs Miſtake, to any one who conſiders, that the Name *Element* is given only to the *moſt ſimple Body*, whereas the four now mentioned are the moſt compounded of any we know.

6. *That the Elements eſtabliſhed by* Ariſtotle *and others, ought not to be received.*

6. But if we ſuppoſe the *Elements* of *Ariſtotle* to be as ſimple as he makes them, and if we compare them with thoſe which other Philoſophers have attempted to introduce; we do not find any Advantage they have, why we ſhould prefer them above others; becauſe in this Matter we have no more reaſon to conſider the Qualities of *Feeling*, than thoſe of *Seeing*, or any other Senſe. But neither the one nor the other ought to be allowed, and that for theſe two Reaſons, which ſeem to me very ſtrong. The Firſt is, That in order to eſtabliſh *Elements* throughly, it ought to be upon the *Determinations* which may happen to Matter abſolutely and in it ſelf, and not upon the *Relations* which the different Forms of which it is capable may have to our Faculties to raiſe Senſation. The Second is, that all theſe pretended Elements being determined by ſenſible Qualities, of which we have no clear Notion; it is impoſſible, but that there muſt remain ſome Obſcurity, into which no Philoſopher can ſo far penetrate as to be able to ſee what will ariſe from their Mixture; in the ſame manner as a Phyſician cannot tell what is the Vertue of a Medicine compoſed of many ſimple ones, of which he has only a confuſed Knowledge.

CHAP.

# CHAP. XX.

## *Of the Elements of the Chymiſts.*

*1. The Method of the Chymiſts, in finding out of Elements.*

I Cannot tell whether theſe or ſuch like Reaſons, induced the *Chymiſts* to reject thoſe Elements which the Antients would have introduced; thus much is certain, that they have propoſed others very different. And in order to eſtabliſh them, as they profeſs an Art which conſiſts principally in uſing Fire after different manners, to ſeparate as much as is poſſible, the different Parts of which different Bodies are compoſed, they have pretended, that this Reſolution is the only Way to find out what are the true Elements which Nature makes uſe of in the Compoſition of Bodies; as the taking a Machine to Pieces, is the only way to find out what it is compoſed of.

*2. What the Mercury of the Chymiſts is.*

2. Thus, in working upon certain Bodies, upon Wine, ſuppoſe, they put a large Quantity of it into an Alembick, and by means of Fire, make ſome of its Parts exhale, which being then condenſed by the Cold, fall down into another Veſſel in the Form of a ſtrong, ſubtil, and penetrating Liquor, to which they are pleaſed to give the Name of *Mercury, Spirit,* or *Aqua-vitæ*.

*3. What it is that they call Phlegm and Sulphur.*

3. After this, continuing the Alembick upon the Fire, they make it diſtill a Liquor which has no Taſte, and this they call *Phlegm*; and ſo they go on till there remains nothing in the Alembick, but a *glutinous Subſtance* like Honey. Then they put this glutinous Subſtance into a Retort, and with Fire they make it again diſtill a *Phlegm* like the former, and then an acid Liquor which they call Mercury alſo; and after that, another Liquor not quite ſo fluid, ſomewhat like Oil, and which is inflammable like it, to which they give the Name, *Sulphur*.

*4. What it is that they call* Caput Mortuum, *and Salt.*

4. Laſtly, They take that which remains in the Retort, and which preſently grows dry, and burn it, and put the Aſhes into an Earthern Pot or Pan, with a certain Quantity of Water, which in a ſhort time becomes Salt, then ſtraining it off clear into another Veſſel, there remains in the Pot a kind of duſty inſipid Earth, which they call *Caput mortuum* or *Terra damnata*; then with a gentle Fire, they make the clear Water which is in the other Veſſel to evaporate intirely, and after that, there remains at the

Bottom of the Veſſel, a hard brittle Body which is very like Salt, and therefore they call it *Salt*.

5. *That Mercury, Phlegm, Sulphur, Salt, and* Caput mortuum, *are the Elements of the Chymiſts.*

5. Hence they conclude, that theſe five Subſtances, *viz. Mercury, Phlegm, Sulphur, Salt* and *Caput mortuum*, are the Elements of Wine: And becauſe whatever they can extract out of any other Subject reſembles one or other of theſe, therefore they conclude in general, that theſe Things, are the only and the true *Elements* of all the mixed Bodies which are in the World, and that all the Variety that we ſee is owing to the different Mixture of theſe.

6. *How Chymiſtry may be uſeful to Philoſophers.*

6. I ſhould think it a great Piece of Injuſtice not to give the Chymiſts that Commendation which is due to their Induſtry and laborious Application. Without doubt the whole World, and the Philoſophers particularly, are very much obliged to them for the Pains they have taken, and which they continue to take, to make a great Number of Experiments, whereby they come to the Knowledge of diverſe Properties of many different Things. This gives them opportunity to find out and diſcover the Nature of Things, and at the ſame time, ſerves for a Rule to try the Truth of their Principles by, and to juſtify their Reaſoning and the Conſequences which they draw from thence. However I think their manner of treating of Philoſophy is not ſatisfactory, nor their *Elements* ſuch as ought to be allowed.

7. *The Errour of the Chymiſts.*

7. *Though* the exceſſive Commendations which they give themſelves, and with which their Books are filled, as if they were the only Philoſophers, and the Secrets of Nature depoſited in their Hands alone; and *though* the large Promiſes they make, which for the moſt are falſe and vain, have rendred them almoſt univerſally contemptible to the World; and the obſcure Terms, and almoſt perpetual Equivocations which they uſe, have made them ridiculous alſo to a great many: *Yet* I do not depart from their Opinions upon this Account. For as to theſe exceſſive Commendations, and vain Promiſes, they are only perſonal Faults which any one may eaſily lay aſide, and which ſome Chymiſts of my Acquaintance are entirely free from; who far from being vain and proud like others, are on the contrary, ſo modeſt, that if they had nothing elſe to recommend them, they ought upon this Account to be placed in the Rank of Gentlemen. And as to the Obſcurity of their Terms, ſome of which are authorized by Cuſtom, that is eaſily diſperſed, if we give but our ſelves the Trouble to explain them.

*8. That they cannot get together all the Parts of a mixed Body; and thoſe which they do get together are altered.*

8. That which makes me not to approve of the Method of the Chymiſts, is, firſt, becauſe it is defective; for it is certain, that let them take never ſo much Pains, they can only get together the ſenſible Parts of which a Body is compoſed: For as to thoſe which reſemble that ſubtil Matter, the Exiſtence of which, we demonſtrated above, and which go to the Compoſition of a great many Things, theſe eſcape all their Pains. But further, that which they give the Name of Principle to, cannot but be very much altered, and very different from what it was in the Mixture: For it is impoſſible, but that the different Parts which they extract, when they are put in Agitation by the Fire, and daſhed one againſt another, muſt be changed both in their Figure and in their Nature. And this is confirmed by Experience, for if all the Parts into which the Mixture is reſolved, be mixed together again, the Reſult will not be at all like the former Mixture.

*9. That, allowing of their Opinion, there ought to be more than five Elements.*

9. To this may be added, that the Chymiſts deceive themſelves, in ſaying, that there are but five Elements: For allowing of their Method, and the Manner upon which it is founded, we muſt ſay, that there is a great Number, yea ſo great, that it is impoſſible to know them all. Thus there are a great many Sorts of *Mercury*, *Sulphur*, *Salt*, &c. But to mention *Salt* only; we find almoſt as many different Salts, as there are different Mixtures. For Example, That which is extracted out of an Aſh-tree, is Cauſtick, that is, will corrode and burn the Fleſh, if applied to it; but that which is extracted from an Oak will not do ſo.

*10. That they have but a confuſed Notion of their own Elements.*

10. But that which ſhocks me moſt in the Reaſoning of the *Chymiſts*, is the Confuſion that they are unwilling to get out of, and the Averſion they have to clear and diſtinct Knowledge, which it is ſo natural to deſire. For Inſtance, if we ask them what they mean by *Sulphur*, they will anſwer indeed, that it is *a fat inflammable Subſtance*; but if we go on to ask what this fat inflammable Subſtance is, which they call Sulphur, and in what this Property of being Inflammable conſiſts, they will not only not give us any further Anſwer, which indeed is no great Matter, becauſe they have none to give; but they will be offended at our Curioſity, and that we ſhould have any Deſire to be ſatisfied herein: So that their Science extends no further than to give Names to Things whoſe Natures they underſtand not, and conſequently from the Mixture of which, it is impoſſible to foreſee what will ariſe, which

is one of the principal Conditions which we require in Elements.

11. *The pretended Uſe of the Elements of the Chymiſts and of the Antients.*

11. Perhaps it will be ſaid here in favour of the Elements of the *Chymiſts*, and in favour of thoſe of the *Ariſtotelians*, that though we do not know diſtinctly what they are in themſelves, yet we know at leaſt what they are capable of, that is, the Senſations they raiſe in us, or the Convenience or Inconvenience we receive from them, which they think ſufficient to determine what the Effect of their Mixture will be. For, ſay they, we may lay down two general Rules hereupon; Firſt, *That if two Things ſeparately, are capable of producing the ſame Effect, they will alſo be capable of producing it when they are mixed together.* Secondly, *That if Two Things ſeparately, are capable of producing two contrary Effects, when they are compounded together, they will produce ſome middle Thing between theſe two Effects.* And theſe cannot be denied to be of good Uſe.

12. *This pretended Uſe, may be the Occaſion of our making many falſe Judgements.*

12. Though theſe Rules are for the moſt part found to be true, yet it will be very wrong to truſt too much to them; and I doubt not but the Chymiſts themſelves will diſown them; for they know very well, that he who exactly follows them, will many times form a Judgement contrary to Experience.

13. *The firſt Inſtance.*

13. For Inſtance, if we follow theſe two Rules ſtrictly, we muſt affirm, that two Bodies which ſeparately are *cold*, ought together to make *one cold Body*.

14. II *Inſtance.*

14. We muſt affirm, that two *liquid Bodies* will compoſe *one liquid Body*.

15. III *Inſtance.*

15. That two *tranſparent Liquors* will compoſe *one tranſparent Liquor*.

16. IV *Inſtance.*

16. That two *red Liquors* mixed together, will make *one red Liquor*.

17. V *Inſtance.*

17. That a Body of a *Yellowiſh Colour*, mixed with a Body of a *Green Colour*, ought to compoſe a *Yellowiſh Green*.

18. VI *Inſtance.*

18. That two Things which may be ſeparately taken without any danger, may alſo be taken together without any.

19. *The firſt Experiment of the contrary.*

19. However, we know that every one of theſe are contradicted by the following Experiments. For Example, cold *Lime*, having cold *Water* ſprinkled upon it, grows ſo hot, as to be ready to burn. Further, If *Oil of Vitriol* and *Oil of Tartar*, each of which are cold, be mixed together, we ſhall perceive a ſudden Ebullition, and at the ſame time a very ſenſible Heat.

20. II. *Experiment.* 20. If *Spirit of Wine* and *Spirit of Urine*, each of which are very fluid, be mixed together, they will, in a Moment almoſt, unite into a Body not at all fluid, but pretty hard.

21. III. *Experiment.* 21. If about an Ounce of *Litharge of Silver* be put into a Pint of *diſtilled Vinegar*, and boiled half a Quarter of an Hour, and if a Piece of *unſlacked Lime* be ſteeped Four and twenty Hours in a ſufficient Quantity of Water (it muſt be in an Earthen Pot varniſhed, new and clean;) and afterwards each of theſe Liquors be ſtrained, they will be very tranſparent; but when they are mixed, they will become opacous and of a very brown Colour.

22. *Of Sympathetick Ink.* 22. In the Uſe of theſe two Liquors conſiſts the whole Secret of the Ink, which they call *Sympathetick Ink.* They write that which they would not have ſeen, with the firſt Water, and the Writing diſappears the Moment that it is dry: Then, he who receives the Letter, wipes over the Paper with a Sponge ever ſo little moiſtned with the other Water, and the Writing begins to appear of a reddiſh Colour, tending to a Black. If theſe Waters are freſh made, and Care be taken to cover the Pot in which the unſlacked Lime is infuſed, the Sponge that is moiſtned need not touch the Writing, in order to make it appear, it is ſufficient, if it paſs by it at a little diſtance: Nay I have often ſeen the Lime-Water ſo ſtrong, that when the Letter written with the firſt Water was laid upon a Table, and covered with a Quire of Paper, the upper Leaf of which only was moiſtned with the Second Water, the Writing grew black.

23. IV. *Experiment.* 23. If a Piece of *Braſil Wood* be boiled in Water over the Fire, we ſhall preſently have a Liquor pretty red; which if it be afterwards poured into a Glaſs in which there is ever ſo little Vinegar, this Colour will be changed into an Amber-Colour, and that ſo quick, that the firſt Colour will diſappear entirely, as ſoon as the Water touches the Bottom of the Glaſs.

24. V. *Experiment.* 24. It is certain, that *Nut-Galls* are of a Yellowiſh Colour, and that when they are reduced to Powder, there is no more Blackneſs in them, than in the Copperas which is green; and yet if theſe two be infuſed in common Water for a few Days, or if you would have it quicker, if the Water be boiled an Hour or two over the Fire, they will be of one black Colour, and not differ from Ink but only in this, that they want the Gum Arabick.

25. Phy-

25. VI. *Experiment.*

25. Phyſitians order ſometimes a few Drops of *Spirit of Nitre* or of *Oil of Vitriol* to be taken in Broth or ſome other Liquor, and theſe two Things taken ſeparately and in proper Caſes, are good Remedies, but if they be taken together, they are Poiſon. Now this Experiment, together with the foregoing ones, and many others that might have been added, do ſo evidently ſhow the Uncertainty of the two forementioned Rules, and conſequently the little Uſe of the *Elements of the Antients* and *of the Chymiſts*, that there is no need of adding any Thing more: That which now remains to be done, is to endeavour to diſcover what are *the true Elements of natural Things*.

---

## CHAP. XXI.

## *Of the Elements of natural Things.*

1. *That we cannot be miſtaken in aſcribing Figures to the Parts of Matter.*

THAT we may act here with all poſſible Caution, and eſtabliſh the Number of Elements, upon the Conſideration of Things as they are in themſelves, without any regard to the Manner of their affecting us; we obſerve, that the firſt Thing that we can conceive to happen to Matter, is, that it may be divided into a great Number of Parts, all which are of a certain Figure. This Conſideration is of great Importance; for if we attend ever ſo little to it, we ſhall be ſurprized at ſome Perſons, who are ready to laugh, when we obſerve to them, that the Parts of Matter are of a certain Figure, and yet can ſeriouſly hearken to thoſe who tell them of occult Qualities, which they cannot at all comprehend.

2. *That there are a Multitude of very ſmall Bodies.*

2. We obſerve further, that beſides thoſe groſs Bodies, ſuch as we can take notice of, with which we are ſurrounded; there are an infinite Number of others very ſmall, which eſcape our Sight, and which were not at all known to the Antients. Though even amongſt theſe, if we ſtrictly examine them, ſome may be made appear to us, ſuch as the *little Eels*, which ſpring up almoſt in a Moment, *in the beſt ſort of Vinegar ſet in the warm Sun*; but it is certain, we had not known of theſe ſmall Creatures to this very Day, were it not for the happy Invention of the Microſcope, in this Age. Thus, for Example, *Specks of Mould* upon the Covers of Books, have been long obſerved,

ſerved, and alſo, that a *Mite*, which is much leſs than a Grain of Sand, is an Animal, becauſe we can ſee it move along; but it is ſince the Invention of Microſcopes that we can with pleaſure ſee not only that they are ſo, but that every *Speck of Mould* is a little Garden covered with Plants, every one of which has its *Stalk*, *Leaves*, *Buds* and *Flowers*; and that a *Mite* has *its Back covered with Scales, that it has three Feet on each Side, and two black Spots in the Head*, which we ſuppoſe to be *Eyes*, becauſe if the Point of a Needle be put in its way, it will turn aſide.

*3. That theſe Bodies conſiſt of Parts ſtill ſmaller.*

3. Since ſuch ſmall Bodies are diſcovered and ſeen by the Microſcope, we may reaſonably judge that there are Parts incomparably leſs yet, which eſcape all our Senſes, all the Induſtry of Man, and exceed even our Imagination it ſelf. And that this may be clear by one Example; Since a *Mite* walks along, it muſt have *Legs*, and theſe Legs muſt neceſſarily have *Joints*. In order to move the Joints, there muſt be *Muſcles*, *Nerves* and *Tendons*, and in theſe Nerves *Fibres*, ſuch as we ſee in thoſe of larger Animals, or at leaſt, ſomething equivalent to them: And if we would carry this Conſideration yet further, and ſpeak of the *Heart, Blood, Brain, and Animal Spirits*, we ſhall be quite at a Loſs, and forced to confeſs, that our Imagination is unable to comprehend or repreſent the extreme Smallneſs of the leaſt Parts of which a Mite is compoſed. I deſire that theſe Things may be well conſidered, and I have purpoſely urged them, to avoid the Impertinence of thoſe Perſons, who ridicule every Thing propoſed to them, which does not agree with their groſs Notions; and who make a Jeſt of it, when we mention that ſubtle Matter to them, whoſe quick Motion and Smallneſs makes a Paſſage for it, and finds it a Place every where.

*4. That Elements ariſe from the firſt Diviſion that can be of Matter.*

4. Having laid down theſe Obſervations, ſince we are aſſured, that the ſmalleſt Bodies in the World, as well as the Larger, ariſe from the Mixture of Elements; and ſince it is certain, that a ſufficient Number of the ſmalleſt Parts, may compoſe as great a Body as we will; we muſt conclude, that there ought to be as many Elements, as there can be remarkable Differences in the inſenſible Parts of Matter upon their firſt Diviſion,

*5. That we do not here ſpeak of the Diviſion that was made at the Creation of the World.*

5. Now that my Mind may be the clearer underſtood, I muſt repeat the Advice which I before gave, *viz.* That I conſider Things in their mere natural State. And though I am very well aware, that the firſt Diviſion of Matter was made by God, and as he pleaſed, when he created

the World; yet that is not the Diviſion I am here ſpeaking of, becauſe I believe the Creation to be a Myſtery which I cannot ſearch to the Bottom of. So that I ſpeak of another Diviſion, which may be made agreeably to the Notions we have, and of which all the Things in the World are the Conſequences.

*6. What that Diviſion is which I ſuppoſe Elements to ariſe from.*

6. Thus, conſidering as far as I am able all Matter, I firſt divide it in my Mind into an infinite Number of Parts very near equal, not troubling my ſelf what Figure they are of, becauſe, there may be a great many other Figures, beſides Cubick which comes firſt into every one's Thought, that may produce the ſame Effect. After this, I ſuppoſe that God turns every one of theſe little Particles, in many different Manners, about their ſeveral Centers, in order that a true Diviſion of them from each other may begin to be made.

*7. That there muſt neceſſarily be three Elements.*

7. This being ſuppoſed, it cannot be but that all theſe Particles of Matter muſt be broken where-ever they are angular, or are intangled with thoſe that join to them; ſo that thoſe which were ſuppoſed before to be very ſmall, muſt become ſtill ſmaller and ſmaller, till they are got into a Spherical Figure. Thus we have two Sorts of Matter determined, which we ought to account the two firſt Elements. And of theſe two we here call that which conſiſts of the *very fine Duſt* which comes off from thoſe Particles, which are not quite ſo ſmall, when they are turned round, the *firſt Element*. And theſe Particles thus made round, we call the *Second Element*. And becauſe it may be, that ſome of the ſmall Parts of Matter, either ſingly or united together, may continue in *irregular and confuſed Figures*, not ſo proper for Motion, we take them for the *third Element*, and join them to the other two.

*8. The Properties of Elements.*

8. As to the chief Properties of theſe *three Elements*, it is to be obſerved, that it is no Contradiction to ſuppoſe them to be changed from one Sort to another: Thus the Particles of the *Third Element* may ſometimes be made round, and acquire the Form of the *Second*. And thoſe of the *Second* and *Third* may be broken, and ſo converted into the *Firſt*. But none of theſe three *Elements* will better preſerve their Form than the *Second*, becauſe it is more ſolid, and the Spherical Figure, which it is of, will allow it to move about it ſelf, without being intangled with the Particles about it. On the contrary, none are ſo eaſily changed as the *Firſt*, becauſe its Particles moving very quick and being very ſubtle, they cannot reſiſt the Shock of the Particles belonging to the other Elements, when they

meet with them, but are forced at all times to ſuit their Figures to thoſe of the Places through which they paſs, and where their Motion carries them.

9. *The Properties of the Firſt.*

9. The *Firſt Element* ought alſo to have more Motion than either of the other *Two*, for though all the three *Elements*, were at the Beginning equally moved by the Firſt Mover, yet it muſt afterwards happen, that the *firſt Element* having oftentimes met with other Bodies which reſiſted it, and which it could not move, will be reflected back, without loſing any of its own Motion; whereas the other *Elements* cannot meet this, but they will move it, and ſo increaſe its Motion by diminiſhing their own.

10. *How the Firſt Element acquires greater Velocity than the other Two.*

10. And ſince the *Firſt Element* is often forced to run into thoſe little Intervals which are between the ſmall Globes of the *Second Element*, it muſt neceſſarily be, that many of its Parts being compreſſed, will leave the Place where they are, and get forward; and ſo having a Motion compounded of their own Motion, and of that of the Parts which follow them and preſs upon them, they will acquire a greater Velocity than the Parts of the *Second Element* which force them on. In the ſame manner as the Air contained in a Pair of Bellows goes out with much greater Velocity, than the Sides of the Bellows approach each other, and which by their approaching, puſh it, and make it to go out.

11. *Why we do not give proper Names to theſe Elements.*

11. I would have it obſerved by the way, that I might, after the Example of *Ariſtotle*, give Names to the *three* forementioned *Elements*, from the Things which partake moſt of them: Thus, I might give the Name *Fire* to the *Firſt Element*, *Air* to the *Second*, and *Earth* to the *Third*. But beſides that this would be to act contrary to Order, becauſe I have not yet proved, that *Fire* is for the moſt part compoſed of the *Firſt Element*, *Air* of the *Second*, and *Earth* of the *Third*; there is yet another Reaſon that ought to hinder me from doing it, and that is, that I ſhould give Occaſion for abuſing them, and for having them underſtood in another Senſe than what I intend they ſhould be.

12 *That theſe three Elements are not imaginary.*

12. Perhaps it will be here ſaid, that Matter was not divided in the Beginning as I have ſuppoſed; But tho' I agree it may be ſo, this makes nothing againſt me; for it ſignifies very little how Matter was divided at the Beginning; and in what manner ſoever it was divided, there is no doubt but it is now divided into thoſe three Sorts of Matter which I have deſcribed; it being certain, that they neceſ-

ſarily follow from the Motion and the Diviſion of the Parts of Matter which Experience obliges us to acknowledge in the Univerſe. So that the *Three Elements* which I have eſtabliſhed, ought not to be looked upon as imaginary Things, but on the contrary, as they are very eaſy to conceive, and we ſee a neceſſity of their Exiſtence, [1] we cannot reſonably lay aſide the Uſe of them, in explaining Effects purely Material.

---

[1] *We cannot reaſonably lay aſide*) Theſe *three Elements* are to be looked upon as fictitious and imaginary, becauſe they depend upon a *Plenum* every where, which we have before rejected. But concerning the *true Elements* of Nature, the illuſtrious *Newton* thus explains himſelf.

*It ſeems probable to me, that God in the Beginning formed Matter in ſolid, maſſy, hard, impenetrable, moveable Particles, of ſuch Sizes and Figures, and with ſuch other Properties, and in ſuch Proportion to Space, as moſt conduced to the End for which he formed them; and that theſe Primitive Particles being Solids, are incomparably harder than any porous Bodies compounded of them; even ſo very hard, as never to wear or break in Pieces: No ordinary Power being able to divide what God himſelf made one in the firſt Creation. While the Particles continue entire, they may compoſe Bodies of one and the ſame Nature and Texture in all Ages: But ſhould they wear away or break in Pieces, the Nature of Things depending on them, would be changed. Water and Earth compoſed of old worn Particles and Fragments of Particles, would not be of the ſame Nature and Texture now, with Water and Earth compoſed of entire Particles in the Beginning. And therefore that Nature may be laſting, the Changes of corporeal Things are to be placed only in the various Separations and new Aſſociations and Motions of theſe permanent Particles; compound Bodies being apt to break, not in the midſt of ſolid Particles, but where thoſe Particles are laid together, and only touch in a few Points. Opticks pag.* 375.

Further, nothing can be more abſurd than to imagine, that all theſe ſurprizing Things in the Univerſe, ariſe and were formed out of thoſe three Elements of *Cartes*, and by the Motion impreſſed upon them in the Beginning, without any Interpoſition afterwards, either of God himſelf, or any other intelligent Cauſe. For according to that Hypotheſis, the Followers of *Cartes* have not ſo much as dared to attempt explaining how all Kind of *Plants* and *Animal Bodies* (which are the principal and moſt excellent Part of this Univerſe) were at firſt made, and by what Laws of Motion they were framed. How much better does the forementioned admirable Perſon expreſs himſelf.

*Now all material Things ſeem to have been compoſed of the hard and ſolid Particles abovementioned, variouſly aſſociated in the firſt Creation by the Counſel of an intelligent Agent. For it became him who created them to ſet them in order. And if he did ſo, 'tis unphiloſophical to ſeek for any other Origin of the World, or to pretend that it might ariſe out of a Chaos by the mere Laws of Nature; though being once formed, it may continue by thoſe Laws for many Ages. For while Comets move in very excentrick Orbs in all manner of Poſitions, blind Fate could never make all the Planets move one and the ſame way in Orbs concentrick, ſome inconſiderable Irregularities excepted, which may have riſen from the mutual Actions of Comets and Planets upon one another, and will be apt to increaſe, 'till this Syſtem wants a Reformation. Such a wonderful Uniformity in the Planetary Syſtem muſt be allowed the Effect of Choice. And ſo muſt the Uniformity in the Bodies of Animals, they having generally a right and a left Side ſhaped alike, and on either Side of their Bodies, two Legs behind, and either two Arms, or two Legs, or two Wings before upon their Shoulders, and between their Shoulders a Neck running down into a Back-bone, and a Head upon it; And in the*

## CHAP. XXII.

### *Of the Form of a Hard and of a Liquid Body, or of Hardneſs and Liquidity.*

*1. What is meant by hard and liquid Bodies.*

BECAUSE it is by means of our Senſes, that we find out the principal Differences obſerved in Things; I think we cannot do better, than to conſult them one after another, to find out in what Order the Forms of natural Bodies ought to be treated, beginning with thoſe which diſcover to us the feweſt Properties of their Objects. And ſince the Senſe of *Feeling* is the groſſeſt of all, and that which takes up the leaſt Compaſs of our Views, I will begin my Inquiry with that. Now when we make uſe of the Senſe of Feeling, to diſcover what Sort of Bodies they are which ſurround us, we obſerve that there are ſome which reſiſt the Motion of our Hands, and will not be divided without great Difficulty; on the contrary, there are others which do not reſiſt them at all, but are very eaſily divided all ways; the firſt of theſe we call *hard Bodies*, and the other *liquid Bodies*; and we ſay, that a Body is ſo much the harder, as there is greater Difficulty in dividing it, and another ſo much the ſofter, as it reſiſts leſs, and is divided with greater eaſe. And thoſe Bodies which are of a middle Sort, betwixt hard and liquid, and which reſiſt our Feeling, or the Motion of our Hand but a little, theſe we call *ſoft*.

---

*Head two Ears, two Eyes, a Noſe, a Mouth, and a Tongue, alike ſituated. Alſo the firſt Contrivance of thoſe very artificial Parts of Animals, the Eyes, Ears, Brain, Muſcles, Heart, Lungs, Midriff, Glands, Larynx, Hands, Wings, ſwimming Bladders, natural Spectacles, and other Organs of Senſe and Motion; and the Inſtinct of Brutes and Inſects can be the Effect of nothing elſe than the Wiſdom and Skill of a powerful everlaſting Agent, who being in all Places, is more able by his Will to move the Bodies within his boundleſs uniform* Senſorium, *and thereby to form and reform the Parts of the Univerſe, than we are by our Will to move the Parts of our own Bodies. And yet we are not to conſider the World as the Body of God, or the ſeveral Parts thereof as Parts of God. He is an uniform Being, void of Organs, Members or Parts, and they are his Creatures ſubordinate to him, and ſubſervient to his Will. And he is no more the Soul of them, than the Soul of a Man is the Soul of the Species of Things carried through the Organs of Senſe, into the place of his Senſation, where it perceives them by means of its immediate preſence without the Intervention of any Third Thing. The Organs of Senſe are not for enabling the Soul to perceive the Species of Things in its* Senſorium, *but only for conveying them thither; and God has no need of ſuch Organs, he being every where preſent to the Things themſelves.* Ibid. p. 378.

2. We obſerve alſo that a Body, which reſiſts the Touch and is with Difficulty divided, keeps it ſelf alſo within its proper Limits, and preſerves its Figure, without wanting a Veſſel to contain it; and on the other hand, that a Body which does not reſiſt the Touch, does not contain it ſelf within its Limits, but runs and ſpreads about, if it be not put into ſome Veſſel. Wherefore *Ariſtotle* having given the Name of *Dry* to a Body which is contained within its proper Limits, and that of *Moiſt*, to a Body which does not do ſo, but wants to be contained within the Limits of another; it follows, that the *hard* Body we are ſpeaking of, is the ſame as what *Ariſtotle* called *Dry*, or at leaſt a Species of it; and alſo that the *Liquid* is the ſame with the *Moiſt*, or at leaſt a Species of it.

*2. That hard and liquid Bodies are the ſame kind of Bodies as the dry and moiſt Bodies of the Ancients.*

3. As *Ariſtotle* has not explained what *Dryneſs* and *Moiſtneſs* conſiſt in, ſo neither has he explained the Nature of a *hard* and a *liquid* Body. But moſt of his Followers contend, that a Body is hard, becauſe it comprehends a great deal of Matter in a little Compaſs, and that a Body is liquid, becauſe it contains but a little Matter in a great Compaſs; ſo that they make *Hardneſs* to conſiſt in Condenſation, and *Liquidneſs* in Rarefaction.

*3. In what the Followers of* Ariſtotle, *make Hardneſs and Liquidneſs to conſiſt.*

4. It is to be obſerved, that they would be underſtood to ſpeak here of a Rarefaction, without the Addition of any Matter at all, not ſo much as of foreign Matter; and of a Condenſation which does not in the leaſt ſuppoſe any Sort of Matter to come out of the Pores of the condenſed Body; which Things are directly oppoſite to what has been before eſtabliſhed; wherefore it cannot be thought ſtrange, if we do not agree together as to the Nature of hard and liquid Bodies.

*4. That their Opinion goes upon a falſe Suppoſition.*

5. But if Rarefaction and Coudenſation were made as they pretend, yet it were eaſy to prove that they are miſtaken in their Notion of Hardneſs and Liquidneſs: For as the producing one Piece of white Marble, is ſufficient to ſhow, that the Nature of Marble does not conſiſt in Blackneſs, ſo it ſhall ſuffice to bring one Inſtance of a Body which dilates it ſelf when it grows hard, in order to ſhow that Hardneſs does not conſiſt in Condenſation: Thus we ſee that Water is dilated, when it is turned into Ice, for the Veſſels which contained it, and juſt

*4. A Confutation of the Opinion of the* Ariſtotelians, *and the Reaſon why Veſſels full of Water are broken by the Froſt.*

held it, cannot then contain it, [1] but are many times broken,

*6. A Miſtake of the* Ariſtotelians, *as to the Reaſon why Veſſels are broken by the Froſt.*

6. I know very well, that it will here be anſwered as uſual, that the Veſſels would not be broken, but for fear of a *Vacuum:* That is, becauſe their Sides approach one another, that there may not be any Space left between their Concave Superficies and the Convex Superficies of the Water which is condenſed. But if this were true, it would follow, that all the Glaſs Tubes which we uſed in the forementioned Experiments, ought alſo to be broken, when no Air got into the Place out of which the Quickſilver came, which did not come to paſs, as I have oftentimes tried.

*7. Another Proof that Ice is not condenſed VVater, and why it ſwims upon the VVater.*

7. Add to this, that if Ice were only condenſed Water; to make for Inſtance, a Cubick Foot of Ice, there muſt be more than a Cubick Foot of Water, and conſequently a Piece of Ice would weigh more than a Quantity of Water of the ſame Dimenſions. From whence it follows, according to what has been before demonſtrated, that Ice ought to ſink to the Bottom of the Water, and not ſwim at the Top, as we find it does.

*8. An ocular Demonſtration of the ſame Thing.*

8. But for the full Conviction of thoſe who ſeem to defy all Arguments, and truſt only to what they ſee, let them but take a Glaſs of the Shape of an inverted Cone or Pyramid, and after having filled it quite full of Water, expoſe it to a great Froſt, that the Water may become Ice, then if the Glaſs holds but half a Pint, we ſhall ſee the Ice riſe up about the ſixth Part of an Inch above the Mouth of the Glaſs, which is [2] a Dilatation ſenſible enough not to doubt of the Fact.

*9. VVhat the Nature of a hard Body conſiſts in.*

9. This then is a certain Truth, that every Body which becomes hard, is not condenſed; and therefore Hardneſs does not conſiſt in Condenſation, nor conſequently does Liquidneſs conſiſt in Rarefaction; for as Water is dilated by freezing, ſo is Ice condenſed by thawing. Having thus ſufficiently confuted an Opinion which has been ſo long received, and not thinking it worth while, to ſhow how little Foundation there is for other Opinions which have been received only by a few, I come now to eſtabliſh my own. And firſt I examine the Appearances of

---

[1] So great is the Force of freezing Water, that not only Bowls and Glaſs Cups, but alſo large Veſſels of Braſs and Silver are broken by it. See *Experim. Acad. del Cim. p.* 72.

[2] *A Dilatation ſenſible enough)* Yet it muſt not be diſſembled, that ſomething may poſſibly be here aſcribed to the Contraction of the Glaſs. See *the Notes on Chap.* 23, *Art.* 36.

a hard and of a Liquid Body, and find, that the one contains it ſelf within its proper Bounds, and the other does not: And becauſe to be contained within its proper Bounds, is the ſame Thing as not to be moved; I conclude, that *to be hard,* is *to be compoſed of Particles which are* [1] *ſo at reſt among themſelves, that their Connexion and Order, is not diſturbed by any Matter that moves between them.*

---

1. *So at reſt among themſelves*) Though all hard Bodies have Parts in ſome meaſure at reſt, and many liquid Bodies (*viz.* ſuch as are made liquid by Heat) are manifeſtly very much agitated; yet becauſe ſomething more than the bare Reſt of the Parts ſeems requiſite to conſtitute Hardneſs; (for a Heap of very ſmall Sand, whoſe Particles are all at reſt, is not a hard Body;) and becauſe Motion does not ſeem always neceſſary to conſtitute a liquid Body, (for ſome liquid Bodies are very cold;) I think it therefore worth while to add ſomething here, to explain this Matter more fully.

*Firſt* then, Let us hear what the famous *Newton* ſays, concerning that Force by which the primary and naturally indiviſible Corpuſcles of which the Particles of all Bodies are compoſed, are connected and cohere together.

*The Parts of all homogeneal hard Bodies which fully touch one another, ſtick together very ſtrongly. And for explaining how this may be, ſome have invented* hooked Atoms, *which is begging the Queſtion; and others tell us, that Bodies are glued together by* Reſt, *that is, by an occult Quality or rather by* Nothing; *and others that they ſtick together by* conſpiring Motions: *I had rather infer from their Cohæſion, that their Particles* attract *one another by ſome Force which in immediate Contact is exceeding ſtrong, at ſmall diſtances performs the Chymical Operations abovementioned, and reaches not far from the Particles with any ſenſible Effect---Now if compound Bodies are ſo very hard, as we find ſome of them to be, and yet are very porous, and conſiſt of Parts which are only laid together, the ſimple Particles which are void of Pores, and were never yet divided, muſt be much harder. For ſuch hard Particles being heaped up together, can ſcarce touch one another in more than a few Points, and therefore muſt be ſeparable by much leſs Force than is requiſite to break a ſolid Particle, whoſe Parts touch in all the Space between them, without any Pores or Interſtices to weaken their Cohæſion. And how ſuch very hard Particles which are only laid together, and touch only in a few Points, can ſtick together, and that ſo firmly as they do, without the Aſſiſtance of ſomething which cauſes them to be* attracted *or preſſed towards one another, is very difficult to conceive.---Now the ſmalleſt Particles of Matter, may cohere by the ſtrongeſt Attractions, and compoſe bigger Particles of weaker Virtue; and many of theſe may cohere, and compoſe bigger Particles whoſe Virtue is ſtill weaker: And ſo on,* &c. Opticks Ibid. p. 364. 370.

It is evident therefore, that the Particles of which the original and ſmalleſt Parts of Matter are compoſed, ſtick together and are united, not by *Reſt* (which is really *nothing* at all) but by mutual *Attraction.* (See the Notes above on *Chap.* xi. *Art.* 15.) And it is manifeſt, that all Bodies, *fluid* and *ſolid* are equally compounded of ſuch ſort of Particles entirely ſolid and *perfectly hard.* But that which is next to be enquired into, is, what the Figure and Compoſition of the larger Particles muſt be, in order that the Bodies compoſed of them, may be *hard* or *liquid.*

*Secondly* therefore. That Body, whoſe Particles are ſo fitted to each other, as to touch one another in *large Superficies's,* will, by the very ſtrong mutual Attraction of its Parts, be *a very hard Body;* and according as thoſe Parts afterwards either *touch* one another *only,* or are moreover intangled with each other, will the Body be more or leſs *brittle,* and capable of being made *liquid* by Heat, with more or leſs difficulty: As *Ice,* **Wax,** *Glaſs, Metals,* **Bones, Wood,** &c.

*Thirdly,*

*them.* Whence it follows, that a Body is ſo much the harder, as it has more Parts which immediately touch each other without moving.

10. *What the Nature of a liquid Body conſiſts in.*

10. On the other Hand; becauſe, not to contain it ſelf within its proper Bounds, is the ſame Thing as to move it ſelf; and becauſe we cannot conceive any more effectual Cauſe of that Motion which we ſee in a *liquid* Body, than the Motion of its inſenſible Parts; I therefore conclude, [2] that *Liquidneſs* conſiſts in *the perpetual Agitation of the inſenſible Parts of the liquid Body.* Thus for Example, when a Glaſs full of Water ſet upon a Table is at reſt, though we cannot perceive any ſenſible Agi-

---

*Thirdly*, That Body whoſe Particles touch one another in *leſs Superficies*, and therefore are not ſo *hard*, may yet be more *ſolid*; and therefore *Gold* is heavier than a *Diamond*: though *not ſo hard*.

*Fourthly*, That Body, whoſe Particles, when they are compreſſed, *approach* towards each other, but do not *ſlip under* one another, is an *elaſtick* Body, and returns to its Figure, by that Force which ariſes from the mutual Attraction of its Parts.

*Fifthly*, That Body, whoſe Particles *ſlip* under each other, is a *ſoft* Body, which yields to the Stroke of a Hammer.

*Sixthly*, That Body, whoſe Particles touch one another in *very ſmall Superficies*, is a *crumbling* Body, as *Snow*, or ſuch whoſe Parts may very eaſily be *ſeparated*; as *two well poliſhed Marbles*, which ſtick together in a *Vacuum*, but are pulled aſunder by the leaſt Shake.

*Seventhly*, If the Parts of a Body, either do *not touch* one another at all, or at leaſt will *very eaſily ſlip*, and are of ſuch a Bigneſs, as to be eaſily agitated by Heat; and the Heat be ſufficient to agitate them, though perhaps it be much leſs than is required to keep Water from freezing; or if they be not agitated by Motion, but are only ſmall, round, ſlippery, of ſuch a Figure, and Bigneſs, as make them very eaſily agitated and give way; that is, a fluid Body. And yet the Particles of ſuch ſort of Bodies which are *moſt fluid*, do in ſome meaſure cohere together; as is evident from hence, that *Quickſilver* very well cleared of all Air, will ſtand 60 or 70 Inches high in the Barometer (as was ſaid before). And Water will riſe in ſmall Tubes open at both Ends in a *Vacuum*. And Drops of Liquors hanging upon a hard Body, and juſt ready to fall, will gather themſelves into round Figures in a *Vacuum*: viz. by ſuch a mutual Attraction of their Particles, as that by which the *poliſhed Marbles* ſtick together. Further, Theſe fluid Bodies, if they have Particles which can eaſily be intangled with one another, as *Oil*, or ſuch as may be made ſtiff by Cold, and faſtned together, as if they had Wedges put between them, as *Water*, ſuch Bodies eaſily grow hard. But if they have ſuch ſort of Particles, as can neither be intangled with each other, as *Air*, nor made ſtiff by Cold, as *Quickſilver*, then they cannot by any means be made to congeal.

*Eighthly*, If the Parts of a Body be very ſmall, ſpherical, and exceeding denſe, ſuch a Body may alſo be *fluid*, and yet be much heavier, than harder Bodies, whoſe Particles are not ſo ſolid, but which touch one another in larger Superficies.

*Ninthly*, Thoſe Bodies, whoſe Particles are agitated with a very quick Motion all ways, whatever the Figure of them be, will be liquid, as *Metals that are melted*, &c. But ſuch Bodies grow hard, as ſoon as that violent Motion ceaſes.

*Laſtly*. Thoſe Bodies, ſome of whoſe Particles are intangled with each other, ſome of them touch one another in large Superficies, and ſome are looſe, and will eaſily ſlip under each other, theſe are *flexile* as *Leather*, or very *pliant* as *Twigs*, *Glue*, *Pitch*, &c.

2. *That Liquidneſs conſiſts*) See the Notes on the foregoing Artic.

tation in it, yet notwithſtanding, ſome of its Parts are in Motion downwards, and at the ſame time others of them are in Motion upwards, ſome of them move from the Right to the Left, and others from the Left to the Right, in a word, there are ſome parts of the Water which move in all manner of Determinations; whence it follows, that That Body is the moſt liquid, whoſe inſenſible Parts are the ſmalleſt, and the moſt agitated.

*11. What the Nature of a ſoft Body conſiſts in.*

11. If what I have now ſaid of Liquidneſs be joined to what was before ſaid concerning Hardneſs, we ſhall eaſily conceive that a *ſoft* Body, which ſeems to be of a middle Nature betwixt a hard and a liquid Body, and to partake of them both, is therefore ſoft, becauſe it is compoſed of two Sorts of Parts, the one in ſome meaſure *at reſt*, and connected with each other, while the other are *in Motion*, and thereby cauſe ſome ſmall Agitation in the former.

*12. Why a hard Body reſiſts the Touch.*

12. Now that which confirms me in my Opinion concerning the Nature of *hard* and *liquid* Bodies, is, that the chief Properties of them are neceſſarily deduced from thence. And Firſt, Suppoſe the Nature of a hard Body to conſiſt in what I have ſaid, it follows from thence, that *it muſt be with Difficulty divided:* For, for Inſtance, if I put my Finger to any of its Parts, I ought to feel the Reſiſtance, not only of thoſe Parts which I touch, but alſo of all thoſe Parts which are behind them; and many times it is much eaſier to move the whole hard Body, than to ſeparate one Part from it, becauſe the reſt of the Body has a ſtronger Connection with, and is more at reſt, with reſpect to this Part, than the neighbouring Bodies have with the whole Body.

*13. Why a liquid Body is eaſily divided.*

13. On the contrary, ſuppoſe the Nature of a liquid Body to conſiſt in what I have ſaid, it follows from thence, that a Liquid *muſt be very eaſily divided.* And indeed if I put my Finger to it any way, it meets with no Reſiſtance; for thoſe few inſenſible Parts which my Finger touch, being in Motion already, are very ready to quit their Place; neither are they ſupported nor hindred by the Reſiſtance of thoſe which are beyond, which are alſo in continual Motion, and therefore eaſily yield to them, and open a Paſſage for them all ways.

*14. Why many Bodies are preſerved uncorrupted, within the parts of a hard Body.*

14. What I have advanced concerning the Nature of a hard and of a liquid Body, is ſtill further confirmed from hence, that all the Conſequences that can be drawn from it, help to explain ſome Experiment, which perhaps it

would be impoſſible to explain without it. And firſt, if we conſider that ſome Bodies are eaſily altered, only by diſturbing the Order of their Parts, and that every Thing endeavours as much as it can to continue in that State in which it is, and conſequently that which is once at reſt, will never begin of it ſelf to move; it will not be difficult to find out a very eaſy way *to preſerve a hard Body a very long time*, viz. *by incloſing it in another hard Body*; whoſe Parts being at reſt among themſelves, can make no Impreſſion upon it, and are moreover a Guard upon it, againſt the Aſſault of any external Cauſes which might tend to corrupt it. And thus we ſee that Salt, Sugar, and Metals, are preſerved by being thus incloſed in hard Bodies.

*15. Of the Vertue of Liquors to diſſolve certain Bodies.*

15. On the other hand, it is eaſy to foreſee, that the contrary ought to happen, *if hard Bodies be put into Liquids*: For the Parts of Liquors being [1] in continual Agitation, they may eaſily ſo *ſhake* and *move* the Parts of hard Bodies, as to force them out of their Places, and carry them along with them. And thus we find it by Experience, in all hard Bodies that can be altered, as in Sugar and Salts, which are diſſipated and ſink to the Bottom of the Water almoſt in a Moment; inſomuch, that if we throw a Pound of Sugar into a great Tub of Water, it will intirely diſappear in a ſhort time; and the Parts of it, [2] will alſo be ſo diſſipated, and ſpread amongſt all the Drops of Water, that there will not be one of them but what is impregnated with it.

*16. VVhy a Liquor does not entirely diſſolve certain Bodies.*

16. And ſince hard Bodies may be compoſed of Parts of *different Bigneſſes*, as well as liquid Bodies, it is eaſy to conceive. that there may be ſuch a Liquor as *will car-*

---

[1] *In continual Agitation*) See the Notes upon Art. 9.

[2] *VVill alſo be diſſipated*) The illuſtrious *Newton* thus expreſſes himſelf upon this Subject in his Opticks, p. 362. *If a very ſmall Quantity of any Salt or Vitriol be diſſolved in a great Quantity of VVater; the Particles of the Salt or Vitriol will not ſink to the Bottom, though they be heavier in Specie than the VVater, but will evenly diffuſe themſelves into all the VVater, ſo as to make it as ſaline at the Top as at the Bottom. And does not this imply, that the Parts of the Salt or Vitriol recede from one another, and endeavour to expand themſelves, and get as far aſunder, as the Quantity of VVater in which they float, will allow. And does not this Endeavour imply, that they have a repulſive Force by which they fly from one another, or at leaſt, that they attract the VVater* (See the Notes on Chap. xi) *more ſtrongly than they do one another. For all Things aſcend in VVater, which are leſs attracted than VVater by the gravitating Power of the Earth; ſo all the Particles of Salt which float in VVater, and are leſs attracted than VVater by any one Particle of Salt, muſt recede from that Particle, and give way to the more attracted VVater.*

ry away with it only ſome certain Parts of a hard Body, and that others will not be diſplaced by it.* Thus Water will only waſh off the fineſt Parts of Liquoriſh, and leave the groſſer ones at reſt with each other.

17. *Of the diſſolving Power of* Aqua fortis.

17. It may alſo ſo happen in *hard Bodies, that the Parts of them which are pretty near equal,* may yet be ſo *ſolid*; and on the contrary, *all the Parts of a certain Liquor* may be ſo *ſmall,* that the Parts of the hard Body will not be at all moved by them, as they would be by the *groſſer* Parts of another Liquor; which doubtleſs is the Reaſon why *common Water,* will not diſſolve *Silver,* and why *Aqua Fortis,* which the *Chymiſts* call *Spirit of Nitre,* [1] will eaſily diſſolve *it,* but is too weak to diſſolve Gold.

18. *VVhy* Aqua regia *does not diſſolve Silver.*

18. However, it is not only the *Groſneſs of the Parts* of any Liquid, which renders it capable of ſeparating the Parts of a hard Body; the *Pores* which are between the Parts of a hard Body, do alſo contribute towards it: For they may be of ſuch a Figure, and alſo ſo ſmall, that the Parts of the Liquid cannot penetrate them; from whence we may conclude, that the Parts of the Salts of which *Aqua regia* is made, are put together in ſuch a manner, as to compoſe Bodies [2] too groſs to enter the Pores of Silver, and ſo only ſliding by them, they can neither go in, nor divide the Parts: Wherefore it is not to be wondred at, if this Water will not diſſolve *Gold.*

19. It

---

[1] *VVill eaſily diſſolve it*) Concerning the diſſolving of Metals the ſame celebrated Perſon ſays thus. *VVhen Aqua Fortis, or Spirit of Vitriol poured upon Filings of Iron, diſſolves the Filings with a great Heat and Ebullition, is not this Heat and Ebullition effected by a violent Motion of the Parts, and does not that Motion argue, that the acid Parts of the Liquor ruſh towards the Parts of the Metal with Violence, and run forcibly into its Pores, till they get between its outmoſt Particles, and the main Maſs of the Metal, and ſurrounding thoſe Particles, looſen them from the main Maſs and ſet them at liberty to float off into the VVater? And when the acid Particles, which alone would diſtil with an eaſy Heat, will not ſeparate from the Particles of the Metals, without a very violent Heat, does not this confirm the Attraction between them.* Opticks, p. 352. Now this ſame *Aqua fortis* which eaſily diſſolves *Iron* or *Silver,* will not diſſolve *Gold* at all, the Reaſon of which is, becauſe its Particles, which are more ſtrongly attracted by the Particles of *Iron* or *Silver* than by one another, are on the other hand more ſtrongly attracted by one another than by the Particles of Gold. The contrary to which we are to underſtand of that Force by which *Gold* is diſſolved in *Aqua regia.*

[2] *Too groſs to enter*) Mr. Clerc *in his Phyſicks, Book* II. *Chap.* iv. *Sect.* 24. contends on the contrary, *that the Parts of* Aqua regia, *are ſharper and ſmaller than thoſe of* Aqua fortis, *and therefore can enter the very ſmall Pores of Gold only, and ſeparate its Parts, which like VVedges, they drive from one another, whilſt the groſſer ones move about the Superficies of the Gold to no purpoſe, they not being able to diſſolve the continuity of it, becauſe they cannot enter*

*19. The Method of ſeparating Gold from Silver.*

19. It is from the Conſideration of the different Properties of the ſeveral Sorts of *Aqua fortis,* that the Refiners of Gold have lately found out a way of ſeparating *Gold* from *Silver* mixed with it: The whole Secret of which conſiſts in putting the Maſs compoſed of *Gold* and *Silver* into *Aqua fortis,* which will diſſolve the *Silver* only; for then its Parts will be brought out by thoſe of the Liquid, till the pure *Gold* will remain like Sand or Dregs at the Bottom of the Veſſel; ſo that by inclining it gently, and pouring the *Aqua fortis* into another Veſſel, it will carry the *Silver* along with it, and leave the *Gold* at the Bottom: After this, they ſeparate the *Silver* from the *Aqua fortis* in the following manner; they put a Quantity of common Water to the *Aqua fortis,* to make it leſs corroſive, and then put in a Piece of Copper, againſt which the Particles of *Silver* brought out by the Liquid ſtriking, they are ſtopped by it; in the ſame manner as Duſt flying about a Room is ſtopped by the Hangings or any other Furniture which is ſoft, or as a Stone ſticks, when it is caſt into Mortar. The *Gold* and the *Silver* being thus ſeparated from one another in Duſt, may each of them be melted in a Crucible, and then made diſtinct Maſſes of.

*20. Why the Parts of many Bodies which are heavier than Water, do not ſink in it.*

20. It may here be asked, why the ſmall Particles of Salts and Metals, ſwim thus in all the Parts of common Water or *Aqua fortis* indifferently, and whence it is, that they do not ſink to the Bottom of the Veſſels? For this ſhould

*ter its Pores.* And again, Sect. 28. He ſays, *That from the Mixture of many Salts, the Parts of the* Aqua regia *become ſmaller, and more fitted to enter the ſmalleſt Pores, and ſeparate the ſmalleſt Parts; between which they are driven like Wedges, by the Motion of the Liquid in which they ſwim; but when they enter into wider Pores, they have no Effect; in the ſame manner as the Force of Wedges to ſeparate Things joined together, is nothing unleſs they be driven into ſtreight Fiſſures. Since therefore the Pores of Gold are the ſmalleſt of any Metal, they will admit the Particles of* Aqua regia *only, and the groſſer Parts of* Aqua fortis *cannot enter into them. Now the ſame Parts of* Aqua regia *are too ſubtle to have Strength enough to remove the Sides of the Pores of other Metals; for they want the groſſer Parts of* Aqua fortis *which fill and divide the larger Pores.* Thus far he; but what he ſays, he does not confirm by any Arguments or Reaſons, unleſs it be this, that Silver ſeems to have larger Pores than Gold, becauſe it is lighter; but from the known Properties of Silver, irs hardneſs, ſmoothneſs, *&c.* we may with much greater Probability collect, that it conſiſts of ſmaller Particles, and therefore has ſmaller Pores, though more of them; But that Gold on the contrary, conſiſts of * larger Particles or Lumps, and ſo has larger Pores, but much fewer. And as to the Nature of the Liquids, I ſhould think, that the Parts of the *Aqua regia,* would become not ſmaller, but larger by the Mixture of many Salts. But all this depends, as was ſaid before, not ſo much upon the Bigneſs and Figure of the Pores, as upon the different Attraction of the Parts.

* See Part III. Chap. vi. Art. 13.

ſhould ſeem to follow from what was before demonſtrated concerning hard Bodies ſwimming in Liquids, becauſe every Particle of Salt or Metal is heavier than an equal Maſs of the Liquid in which it ſwims. However, it is to be obſerved, that when we reaſoned in that manner, we conſidered *only the Gravity of the hard Body* and *the eaſineſs of the Liquid to be divided*; we did not then know of *the* [1] *Motion of the Particles of the Liquid,* by which they carry up with them as many Particles of Salt or Metal, as would deſcend by their own Weight; in the ſame manner as the Bubbling up of new Wine, makes other Bodies which are heavier, ſwim, and not ſink to the Bottom of the Tub; where we ſee that they do at laſt ſubſide and compoſe the Lees, when this Motion, which is greater than the ordinary Motion of the Liquid, ceaſes. To which may be added, that the Particles of the diſſolved Body are in ſome meaſure intangled with thoſe of the Liquid, which they go along with; which ſhows us more particularly that this hinders them from being able to ſink.

*21. That a certain Quantity of Water will diſſolve only a certain Quantity of a hard Body.*

21. And that which is remarkable here, is, that as the Particles of the Liquid are finite, and the Force by which they are agitated is limited; it muſt neceſſarily follow, that when they have once laid hold of as many Particles as they can contain, they cannot after that ſeparate any more, nor overcome the Reſiſtance of the remaining Particles which are at reſt, wherefore the hard Body will be no farther diſſolved. And thus we find by Experience, in common Water and *Aqua fortis,* that they will diſſolve but a certain determinate Quantity of Salts or Metals. Thus, for Example, if, after a Pint of common Water has diſſolved a certain Quantity of Salt, one Grain only be put in, it will continue whole in the Water, as it would do in a dry Place.

*22. How the Chryſtalizati- of the Chymiſts is made.*

22. And from hence it follows, that if after a Liquid has ſeparated all that it can from a hard Body, it be evaporated to a certain Quantity, that which remains will not be able to contain all the Particles of the diſſolved Body, wherefore many of them will be forced to unite together, and to compoſe ſomething ſenſible; and thus it is, that if Water be boiled, having firſt been ſtrained like Lye, through Earth charged with Nitre as much as it can be, and then taken off from the Fire,

---

[1] *The Motion of Particles*) Not by their Motion, but by their Attraction. *See above on Art.* 15.

and permitted to ſettle a little, a great many Particles of the Salt-peter which are diſingaged from the Particles of the Water, will ceaſe to move, and ſtriking many of them together againſt the Concave Sides of the Veſſel, will at laſt compoſe [1] thoſe curious Bodies in the Form of Hexagons, which we ſee ſtick there. And in the ſame manner we may apprehend, how all the other *Chryſtalizations* of the Chymiſts are made.

*23. That the Water which will not diſſolve one certain Body any longer, will yet diſſolve a Body of another Sort.*

23. Though *a certain Quantity of any Liquid*, will diſſolve but a *determinate Quantity of a certain hard Body*, yet this does not hinder, but that other hard Bodies may be diſſolved by the ſame Liquid; becauſe their Particles may be of ſuch a Figure, as to ſuit with the Particles of the Body already diſſolved, in ſuch a manner, as may occaſion more diſſimilar Particles, to move with greater Eaſe, than the ſimilar Ones could move. And thus Experience ſhows us, that after Water has diſſolved as much Salt as it can, it will yet diſſolve a ſmall Quantity of Vitriol or Alum.

*24. How the Precipitation of the Chymiſts is made.*

24. If a Body be put into a Liquor, to whoſe Particles it will more eaſily unite it ſelf, than to thoſe of another Body which it had before diſſolved; and ſuppoſing alſo that it cannot comprehend theſe two Sorts of Particles together, [2] it muſt be forced to let go the Particles which it had before embraced, which will conſequently ſubſide to the Bottom of the Veſſel. Thus if a little of that diſſolved Salt, which Chymiſts call *Oil of Tartar*, be poured upon *Aqua fortis* which before had diſſolved Silver, the Metal will be forced to ſubſide to the Bottom of the Veſſel. And this Inſtance ſhows us the Reaſon of all the *Precipitates* of the *Chymiſts*.

---

[1] *Thoſe curious Bodies*) Concerning which the admirable Perſon before cited, ſays thus. *VVhen any ſaline Liquor is evaporated to a Cuticle, and let cool, the Salt concretes into regular Figures; which argues, that the Particles of the Salt before they concreted, floated in the Liquor at equal Diſtances in Rank and File, and by conſequence, that they acted upon one another by ſome Power, which at equal Diſtances is equal, at unequal Diſtances, unequal. For by ſuch a Power they will range themſelves uniformly, and without it, they will float irregularly, and come together irregularly.* Opticks, p. 363.

[2] *It muſt be forced to let go*) If ſuch a Body be put into ſuch a Sort of Liquor, that the Particles of the Liquor will be more ſtrongly attracted by the Particles of this Body, than by the Particles of that Body which was diſſolved in it before, the Particles of the Liquor being by this ſtronger Attraction removed from the firſt Body to this Other, will ſuffer the Particles of the firſt Body to ſink to the Bottom, in the ſame manner as Iron is ſeparated from a Loadſtone, by putting a ſtronger Loadſtone to it.

25. We

*25. How two Liquors mixed together, may compoſe one hard Body.*

25. We muſt not here omit another Circumſtance very conſiderable, and that is, that the Particles of *two Liquors* may be of ſuch a Bigneſs and Figure, as to intangle one another when they meet together, and ſo move with more difficulty; whence it follows, that they will compoſe *One Body which is not ſo liquid:* So likewiſe, if the Particles of the two Liquors adjuſt themſelves to each other, ſo that the greateſt Part of them are hindred from moving, then all the Particles together will form a Body *pretty hard.* Thus we ſee, that if an equal Quantity of Spirits of Wine and Spirits of Urine, each of which Liquors are very fluid, be mixed together, they will unite into *a pretty hard Body.*

*26. How a hard Body may ariſe out of a liquid one only.*

26. We may add to what has been ſaid about the Mixture of different Liquors, that there may be found *one,* which is compoſed of ſuch ſort of Particles, that ſome of them being much larger than others, they cannot continue their Motion, but by means of the ſmaller ones; ſo that if theſe be any way diſingaged, the Weight of the other alone, or the Irregularity of their Figure, will make them continue at reſt with each other, and according as they are more or leſs cloſely united together, they will compoſe a *Body* more or leſs *hard:* And this is the Reaſon why ſome of the Particles of Milk or Blood curdle, while others which are more proper to continue their Motion, being diſingaged from theſe, compoſe a *Serum,* which remains *liquid.* And this is alſo the Reaſon why, in ſubterraneous Caves, which they call *dropping Caves,* certain *liquid Drops* which diſtill from the Roofs harden into Stone, after they have been a little while in the open Air.

*27. Of the Cauſes of Liquidneſs.*

27. Having ſufficiently ſhown by theſe Experiments, that the Particles of liquid Bodies are in continual Agitation, we are to enquire next, what the *efficient Cauſe* of this Motion is, firſt, in Water and other ſuch like Liquids, which ſeldom grow hard, but more particularly in Air, which never hardens, but always remains liquid. Wherefore in the firſt Place it is reaſonable to think, that the † Figures of the Particles of Liquids are not altered, ſo long as we cannot perceive any kind of Alteration in them: But further, becauſe they cannot move with regard to each other, as they ought to do, to compoſe a Liquid, without leaving a great many Interſtices round them; which there being [1] no Reaſon to think empty, they muſt neceſſarily be ſurrounded by ſome Mat-

†. For if their Figures were continually altered, there would be no need of ſubtil Matter to fill up their Interſtices

---

[1] *No reaſon to think empty*) See the Notes on Chap. viii. Art. 2.

ter which is very ſubtle, ſuch as that which we before called the Firſt or Second Element. And as the Particles of hard Bodies diſſolved in any Liquid, are kept in Motion by the Particles of this Liquid; ſo we ought to think, that the Particles of Water, and of all Bodies which do not congeal, but always remain liquid, are in perpetual Agitation, becauſe they ſwim in the *Matter of the Firſt and Second Element.*

*28. How Liquors are evaporated.*

28. If this Matter be very much agitated, it is eaſy to conceive, that it may move the Particles of the Liquid in ſuch a manner, as to diſſipate them from each other, and make them fly into the Air, and this is called *Evaporation.*

*29. How they are congealed.*

29. On the other Hand, if its Motion be very faint, or if it be more than ordinarily ſubtil, it will follow, that it will not be capable of preſerving the Liquidneſs of ſome groſſer Bodies; in the ſame manner as we ſee the Water running amongſt Bulruſhes, keeps them in Motion, and diſtinct from each other, whereas in the Air, they are confuſed and mixed together, without any Motion; [1] and thus the Water is *frozen* in Winter, and *turned into Ice.* But we cannot ſhow a Reaſon why this happens at one Time of the Year, rather than at another, till we come to know ſomething more of the Syſtem of the World.

*30. Why ſome Bodies grow ſoft before they become liquid.*

30. If the Diſpoſition of the Particles of a Body be ſuch, as to leave Pores between them large enough to receive the groſſer Matter of the Firſt and Second Elements, this Matter may ſhake the Particles a little, before it quite ſeparates them, and moves them from each other, and conſequently the Body *ought to grow ſoft, before it becomes liquid*; as we ſee *Wax* does.

*31. Why other Bodies become liquid without growing ſoft.*

31. But if the Pores of a hard Body are ſo ſmall, that only the moſt ſubtil Matter of all can paſs through them, in this Caſe, that which is more groſs, and which is alone able to ſhake thoſe Particles which make the leaſt Reſiſtance to it, can only apply it ſelf to the Superficies of the Body; whence it follows, that it will have diſſolved

---

[1] *And thus the Water*) Since neither the Force it freezes with, is always proportioned to the Cold, but ſeems to have ſome Dependance upon other Changes in the Heavens; nor is the Cold, unleſs ſo far as it is merely comparative (*See the Notes on Chap. xxiii. Art. 54.*) owing to the Particles being at Reſt; nor can Hardneſs it ſelf (*See the Notes on Art. 9. of this Chap.*) ariſe from the mere Reſt of the Particles. Congealing muſt neceſſarily be aſcribed either to nitrous Particles; or to the Particles of ſome other Salts, which like Wedges fixed between the Particles of Water, join them together and make them cohere: However there is hitherto nothing certain found out concerning theſe Particles.

all the external Parts of the Body, before it makes any Alteration within it. And ſo *ſuch a Body will be entirely diſſolved without being made ſoft*, as we find *Ice* does. *

*32. How Water hardens Plaiſter of Paris.*

32. It is not at all ſurprizing, that Water, which is liquid, ſhould *ſoften* a great many hard Bodies which it penetrates and diſſolves, and that, when it is mixed with Plaiſter of Paris, for Example, there ſhould ariſe a Compoſition pretty liquid: But it is very ſurprizing, that afterwards it ſhould acquire a *Hardneſs* which it would never have had without mixing Water with it, which one would think, ſhould rather help to ſoften, than to harden it. Nor can we think, that this ariſes from a ſudden Evaporation of the Parts of the Water; for if it be weighed when it is liquid, and weighed again when it is grown hard, we canot perceive that it has loſt any of its Weight. My Opinion concerning the Matter is this, that the Fire has formed a great many Pores in the Plaiſter, of ſuch a Bigneſs, as the groſſer Particles of the Air cannot penetrate, becauſe they are not ſolid enough to remove the Obſtacles they meet with, which the Particles of the Water, which are more ſolid and penetrating, are able to do. Wherefore, when the Plaiſter is moiſtned with, or put into ſuch a Quantity of Water only, as is ſufficient to ſurround every Grain or Lump of it; and after that they come to be ſtirred up together, then the Particles of the Water which force themſelves into the Pores, like ſo many ſmall Wedges opening and ſplitting them, divide theſe Grains into ſtill ſmaller Parcels. And becauſe theſe Parcels have a larger Surface than the Grains had before, of which they are but the Duſt, it is more than the Water is able to ſurround. Inſomuch, that the greateſt part of them touching one another cloſe, and continuing at reſt, it is no wonder [1] if they compoſe a hard Body.

---

* The true Cauſe why ſome Bodies grow ſoft before they melt, and others not, ſeems to be this; that thoſe Bodies which grow ſoft, are compoſed of diſſimilar Parts, ſome of which melt ſooner than thoſe they are mixed with.

[1] *If they compoſe a hard Body*) Mr. *Le Clerc* attacks our Author here with three Arguments in his *Phyſicks*, *Book* V. *Chap.* xiv. *Sect.* 25. *Firſt*, ſays he, *This Anſwer does not agree with a Maſs made up of Meal and Water kneaded together, and baked; and other ſuch like Things that might be inſtanced in.* But can any Thing be more evident, than that the Evaporation of the Water produces the ſame Effect in Bread, as the Diſſolution of the Lumps in Plaiſter of Paris? For though not all, yet certainly ſome of the Water is diſſolved into Vapours, in proportion to the Heat, wherefore the external Part of the Bread is much harder than the Internal. *Secondly*, He ſays, *He does not ſhow why the Particles of Water ſo divided touch one another cloſe.*

33. *That too great a Quantity of Water hinders the Plaiſter from growing hard.*

33. From hence we draw this Conſequence, that if the Plaiſter be put into ſuch a Quantity of Water as is ſufficient to ſurround all the ſmall Parcels which the Lumps are divided into, they will be hindred from reſting, and ſo the Plaiſter will not grow hard at all; and thus the *Maſons* find it by Experience, and this is what they mean, when they ſay their Plaiſter is *drowned*.

34. *Why Water does not harden Lime.*

34. Notwithſtanding this, it is not to be wondered at, if there be ſome Bodies which the Water will divide, and yet not at all help to unite and harden their Parts into one Maſs, as it does thoſe of Plaiſter of Paris; for the Particles of theſe Bodies may be of ſuch a Figure, as ſcarce to touch one another at all. and ſo cannot unite together to compoſe one Whole: To which it may be further added, that the Water has ſo quick a Motion within ſome Bodies, that it further ſeparates the Particles already diſunited; and by this means the Pores or Intervals, which are between them, become ſo large, that the Air has Power to get in, and hinder ſuch Particles from touching one another. And this is the Reaſon why *Lime*, which is divided by Water, does not yet become hard like Plaiſter of Paris: For if a Piece of Lime, which has been wetted with a little Water, be divided without meddling with

---

But he does expreſsly ſhow this in theſe Words. *And becauſe theſe Particles have a larger Surface than the Grains had before, of which they are but the Duſt, it is more than the Water is able to ſurround; Inſomuch, that the greateſt Part of them touching one another cloſe*, &c. What could have been ſaid more expreſs. But (I ſuppoſe) this learned Gentleman, when he tranſlated this Place into *Latin*, being not very attentive, overlook'd the connective Particle, *tellement que*. *Thirdly*, He ſays, *That he ſuppoſes Hardneſs to ariſe from immediate Contact and Reſt, which we have before confuted.* Concerning this, See *the Notes on Art. the 9th of this Chap.* Having thus confuted the Opinion of our Author, the learned Gentleman conjectures, " *That the Particles of Water which* " *diſſolve the groſſer Lumps of the* " *Plaiſter, are ſo fixed into the leſſer Particles, as, like Wedges, to* " *join many of them together, and ſo* " *compoſe a more ſolid Maſs.* But, if the Parts of the Plaiſter muſt be kept together by Wedges, it ſeems much more probable, that the burnt Parts (for the Plaiſter is made of Stone half burnt) growing a little hot, by the Water being poured on it, draw the volatile Salts out of the Parts which are not burnt, which Particles of the Salts being fixed in the Pores of the Plaiſter, keep its Parts together: For the ſtiff Particles of Salt, ſeem much more proper to perform the Office of Wedges, than the limber and flexible Parts of Water. But indeed, Plaiſter of Paris, Clay, and ſuch kind of Bodies, do therefore grow hard in this manner, becauſe the Water in exaporating, ſo attracts their Parts to each other, which before did not touch one another, that afterwards touching one another in larger Superficies, they cohere together by that mutual Attraction, which depends upon immediate Contact. *See the Notes on Art. the 9th of this Chap.*

it, the Duſt into which it diſſolves it ſelf, is of two or three times as much Bulk as it was before.

35. *That the Matter of the Firſt and Second Element does not ſtop in the Pores of hard Bodies.*

35. When the Water penetrates the Pores of certain Bodies which it cannot entirely divide; it is evident, that it will ſtop for ſome time; becauſe it muſt loſe its Motion, by ſtriking againſt the Particles which it touches: But it is otherwiſe with *the Matter of the Firſt and Second Element*, when it paſſes through the Pores of hard Bodies: For as theſe Pores, as ſmall as they are, are formed by its continual paſſing through them, ſo it leaves them big enough always to find a Paſſage through, without ever being ſtopped.

36. *What the Conſequence of the Matter of the Second Element paſſing through very ſmall Pores ought to be.*

36. However, it is to be obſerved, that by bending a hard Body, ſuch, for Example, as the Blade of a Sword, the Particles will be made to expand themſelves on the Convex Side, and to contract themſelves on the Concave Side. So that its Pores will become ſmaller and ſtreighter on this Side; but this ought not to hinder the Matter of the Firſt or Second Element from entring in, becauſe being very fine, and moving very quick, it ought rather to alter its own Figure and become longer, or to wear in pieces the Matter which ſtreightens it, than to be hindred in its Paſſage; and ſo the Pores will not be ſtopped up by it.

37. *What the Force of ſpringing back conſiſts in.*

37. But becauſe the ſubtil Matter which paſſes through the Pores which are ſo very ſmall, cannot endeavour to wear the Particles of the hard Body through which it paſſes, but it muſt at the ſame time endeavour to reſtore the ſame Particles to the State they were in before the Body was bent; it follows, that this ought to make the Body grow ſtreight again. And thus we experience the Property which is called *Stiffneſs*, and which Workmen call [1] *the Power of Springing.*

38. *Why it is not found in all hard Bodies.*

38. However, this Property ought not to be found in all Sorts of hard Bodies indifferently, becauſe there are ſome, whoſe Pores are ſo large, that though they be ſtreightened by bending the Bodes, yet they will be ſtill

---

[1] *The Power of Springing*) Since this ſubtil Matter, as was before proved, is only fictitious, it is much more probable, that if a Body be compounded of ſuch Sort of Particles, that it be *compact, and bends or yields inward to Preſſion without any ſliding of its Parts, it is hard and elaſtick, returning to its Figure with a Force ariſing from the mutual Attraction of its Parts.* Newt. Opt. pag. 370. But if the Parts of the Body ſlip under one another, then the Body is of that Sort, which will yield to the Stroke of a Hammer; But concerning the Laws of the Communication of Motion, in ſuch Bodies as have *a Power of ſpringing back*, or are *Elaſtick*, as they call it, when they meet other with certain Forces. *See the Notes on Chap.* xi. *Art.* 6.

wide enough to give a free Paſſage to the ſubtle Matter. Thus we can perceive by our Senſes, that the Parts of Steel which is not tempered, are larger, and conſequently the Pores wider, than thoſe of tempered Steel; whence it is eaſy to apprehend that the Pores may be ſtreightned, without hindring a free Paſſage of the ſubtle Matter through them; whence it follows, that when it is bent, it will not ſpring back again.

39. *Why a Plate of Iron becomes Elaſtick, by being beaten, when it is cold.*

39. Now to ſhow, that the *Power of Springing* conſiſts intirely in the Smallneſs of the Pores of a hard Body, let us conſider, that if a Plate of untempered Steel, be beaten upon an Anvil when it is cold, it will acquire a Power of Springing which it had not before. But it is manifeſt, that this Beating does nothing elſe but make the Parts approach nearer one another, and by this Means ſtreightens the Pores; whence it follows, that herein conſiſts this Power.

40. *How this Power may be loſt.*

40. It may be further obſerved, that if a Spring be held bent a long time, without being allowed to recover it ſelf, the ſubtil Matter will be forced to alter its Figure by growing longer, if it be *not able* to wear in pieces the Matter of the hard Body; or if it *be*, the Pores will grow bigger and bigger, ſo as that the Matter of the Firſt and Second Element may paſs freely through them; and this is the Reaſon why the Body ought to loſe the Power of recovering it ſelf, in proportion as it is capable of being worn, which agrees with Experience.

41. *Whence the Force with which a Spring unbends it ſelf, ariſes.*

41. The Force with which a Body unbends it ſelf, depends partly upon *the Swiftneſs of the Motion of the ſubtil Matter,* and partly upon *the great Number of Pores through which it paſſes at a Time:* But it depends chiefly upon *the Diſpoſition of theſe Pores as they become inſenſibly ſtreighter and ſtreighter.* For by this means, that which gets into them ought to have the ſame Force, and to produce the ſame Effect, as a Body which paſſes between two others, whoſe Superficies are almoſt parallel. Now according to the Laws of Mechanicks, though the Body which thus paſſes between two others be very ſmall, and moves but ſlowly, it will notwithſtanding, have an incredible Force to ſeparate thoſe two from each other.

42. *Why ſome Bodies break in reſtoring themſelves.*

42. When the ſubtil Matter begins to remove the Parts of the Body which are in its way, it has their whole Reſiſtance to overcome, and alſo ſome of the Reſiſtance of the ſurrounding Bodies: Now becauſe every Thing endeavours of itſelf to continue in that State in which it once is, and therefore the Bodies which have received a

certain Motion, continue of themſelves in that Motion; this ſubtil Matter cannot continue to impell them, but it muſt increaſe their Motion; and it may ſo happen, that by its impelling and moving them in this manner, it may ſo far divide the Particles of the Body, through which it paſſes, from each other, as intirely to ſeparate and break them; eſpecially if the Body be brittle.

*43. What the Limberneſs or Brittleneſs of a Body conſiſts in.*

43. Now in order to underſtand how it is, that ſome Bodies will *bend* without breaking, and that on the contrary, others will very eaſily break; it is to be obſerved, that the Texture of ſome may be ſuch, that their Particles may be intermixed with each other, like the Rings of a Chain, or the Threads of which a Cord is compoſed. Now it is eaſy to conceive, that theſe Bodies may be wound ſeveral times round without breaking, becauſe their Particles are ſo hooked together, that they may be bent any way. On the other hand, there may be Bodies which are not of ſuch a complicated Texture, which are hard only, becauſe their Particles touch one another in a few Places: Whence it follows, that one cannot ſeparate them ever ſo little, but their whole Continuity will be deſtroyed; and theſe are what we call brittle Bodies.

*44. Why the Place in which a limber Body breaks, is very unequal; and that of a brittle Body very ſmooth.*

44. Leather may ſerve for an Inſtance of a *limber* Body, that is, of a Body that will bend without breaking; and Glaſs, on the other hand, for an Inſtance of a *brittle* Body; that is, one that will break before it will bend: And there will be no doubt, but that the *Limberneſs* of the one, and the *Brittleneſs* of the other, conſiſts in what I have ſaid; if we conſider the Place where a Piece of dry Leather is pulled aſunder, and the Place where a Piece of Glaſs is broken: For the Leather appears unequal, and as it were untwiſted, which is an evident Sign, that the Particles which are at the End of one Part, entered in between the Particles which are at the End of the other Part; and on the contrary, the Breach of the Glaſs appears very well poliſhed, which is a Sign, that the Particles of one of its Pieces, touched the Particles of the other Piece only, without entring in between them.

*45. Why Glaſſes newly made, are apt to break, without being meddled with.*

45. If Glaſs, which is very brittle, have very large Pores on one Side of its Superficies, and which grow leſs and leſs towards the other Side, there cannot enter into theſe large Pores, ſubtil Matter enough to fill them, but that by continuing its Motion very quick towards the ſtreighter Parts of the Pores, it muſt wholly diſunite the Parts. Now when a Drinking-glaſs, which is juſt made,

grows cold on a ſudden; it is impoſſible but that the Pores muſt be larger where the Glaſs is thickeſt, becauſe the Heat, which dilates Bodies, continues longer here than in the other Parts: Wherefore the ſubtil Matter which enters into theſe large Pores, going on ſwiftly, and with great Force, [1] muſt break the Glaſs in the Places where the Pores are ſenſibly leſs. And this ſo commonly happens, that it is ſomething ſtrange, if a hundred Glaſſes be expoſed to the Air as ſoon as they are made, if one of them eſcape without breaking.

*46. To hinder Glaſſes from thus breaking.*

46. The Glaſs-makers have a Way to prevent this Inconvenience, by putting the new-made Glaſſes into the Arch of the Furnace, where they are removed by little and little out of the Flame, ſo as not to get above the Space of nine or ten Foot, in ſix Hours time, and then they are expoſed to the open Air; and ſo all the Parts growing inſenſibly Cold, the one as well as the other, the Pores are equally ſtreight every where, and the ſubtil Matter which can enter into one of them, can run from thence freely, through all other Parts of the Glaſs where the Paſſages are equally open.

*47. A ſurprizing Property of a Glaſs Drop.*

Tab. III. Fig. 5.

47. What we have now ſaid concerning the Cauſe of Glaſſes being broken as it were of themſelves, opens a Way for us to explain a kind of a Miracle in Nature, which was lately diſcovered and brought hither from *Holland*, and which has travelled through all the Univerſities of *Europe*, where it has raiſed the Curioſity, and confounded the Reaſon of the greateſt Part of the Philoſophers. It is a kind of a *Drop* of thick Glaſs, and ſuch as the Glaſs-Windows are made of, near the ſame Shape and Bigneſs as deſcribed in the Figure. It is entirely Solid, except perhaps we may ſometimes ſee a few ſmall Bubbles of Air in the thickeſt Part of it, as at D, where it will bear pretty hard Blows of a Hammer without breaking. And yet, if the little End of it be broken off any where near B, the whole Body will burſt in Pieces with a Noiſe; and we ſhall ſee it ſcatter it ſelf all round,

---

[1] *Muſt break the Glaſs*) But it may be (and it is more likely) that the Cold, by ſtopping the Motion of ſome of the Parts on a ſudden, whilſt the reſt are in great Motion, breaks Veſſels made of Glaſs. For thus almoſt all Bodies are broken by the unequal Motion of their Parts: Hence a Tile by one Blow burſts aſunder many times into ſix hundred Pieces. Hence the Chymiſts Veſſels are often broke. Hence they who cut Drinking-Glaſſes into Spirals, firſt put a red hot Iron near them, and then pour cold Water on the Part of the Glaſs which is heated. And hence Drinking-Glaſſes are reported to be broken only by the Voice bending them.

and to a good diſtance, in a Powder, which though very ſmall, has its Parts cracked in ſo many Places, that it is eaſy to divide them by preſſing them between ones Fingers, which may be done without any Danger of pricking them, as there is, if we ſhould handle a piece of Glaſs ſo, after it is powdered in a Mortar.

*48. Of the external Cauſe of the Motion of the Parts of the Drop.*

48. To ſay the Truth, this *Phænomenon* is ſo ſingular, that it is no wonder it ſhould at firſt Sight ſurprize us. But if we conſider it more cloſely, it is eaſy to obſerve, that there is nothing elſe appears, but only the *local Motion* of the Parts of the Body, which are carried from the Center to the Circumference: Now as we cannot conceive how a Body ſhould begin to move of it ſelf, without being put in Motion by another Body which was in Motion before; ſo it is eaſy to imagine, that the ſcattering about of the Particles of the *Glaſs-drop*, is owing to ſome Matter which getting into its Pores, preſſes upon them and divides them, in the ſame manner as we ſee a Wedge when it is driven into a Body with great Force and Velocity, ſplits it, and ſeparates the Parts from each other. And there is no Doubt at all, but that this is the ſame Matter which breaks the Glaſſes in the Glaſs-Houſe, when they are ſuffered to cool too ſoon.

*49. VVhat the particular Diſpoſition of the Parts of the Drop ought to be.*

49. Now in order to underſtand how this *Drop* could acquire a Diſpoſition proper to produce this Effect, there is Reaſon to gueſs, that the Workman, who makes a Secret of it, has a Way of cooling it all at once, by dipping it when it is very hot into ſome Sort of Liquor, which hinders it from breaking in pieces: For we ſee by Experience, that Glaſs which is ſo cooled in Water, breaks into ſmall Pieces. But be this Liquor what it will, it is certain, that the Parts of the *Drop*, which are neareſt the Surface, cool firſt, and by communicating their Motion to this Liquor, loſe what they had before, which kept them at a little diſtance from each other; and ſo they are condenſed, and contract their Pores, and fit them to the fineſt Parts of the ſubtil Matter, which preſerves its Paſſage through them. But this is not the Caſe of the internal Parts of the *Drop*, which not being cooled till after the other, cannot contract themſelves ſo, becauſe thoſe other being grown hard, and diſpoſed like an Arch, do not at all preſs upon them; ſo that the Pores which are amongſt the Parts neareſt the Middle, are large, and grow leſs and leſs as they come towards the Superficies. And this being allowed, there is a plain Reaſon for what cauſes ſo great Admiration.

*50. That it ought to bear the Blows of a Hammer.*

50. It is no wonder that the *Drop* will bear the Blows of a Hammer, becauſe it is thick enough for that: For other Pieces of Glaſs of the ſame Bigneſs will do the like.

*51. That they ought not to break of themſelves.*

51. It is alſo manifeſt, that they ought not to break of themſelves, as the forementioned Glaſſes do, becauſe the ſubtil Matter which paſſes through them, finds as free a Paſſage to come out, as to enter in.

*52. How it flies in pieces.*

52. But when the little End is broken off near the place marked B, we can there ſee very large Pores into which the larger Particles of the ſubtil Matter entring in a great Quantity, and continuing to move from thence very ſwiftly, towards every part of the Superficies, where the Pores grow ſtreighter, they cannot but [1] ſeparate every way the Parts of the Glaſs, and ſo divide them into that Powder which we ſee.

*53. Why it does not break in pieces when the very End of all is broken off.*
Tab. III. Fig. 5.

53. This Truth is confirmed by obſerving, Firſt, That the Extremity of all, which is at A, is ſo ſmall, that there could be no ſenſible difference in cooling between the inſide and the outſide, ſo that the Pores there are of an equal Bigneſs throughout. Wherefore if the End be broken off thereabouts, this will not give leave to the ſubtil Matter to let in its groſſer Particles, any more than if it were not broken at all, and conſequently the *Drop* ought not to burſt in Pieces; as by Experience we find it does not.

*54. That the Drop, when heated again, ought to loſe its Vertue of burſting aſunder.*

54. Further, if one of theſe Glaſs *Drops* be made red hot in the Fire, and then ſuffered to cool ſlowly, its Pores will then become very near equal, in like manner, as Workmen neal Steel. After which, if the End of the *Drop* be broken off any where, becauſe there can no ſubtil Matter enter in, but ſuch as can go out on all Sides with as great Eaſe as it entred in, therefore the *Drop* [2] ought not to burſt in Pieces at all; which alſo we find true by Experience.

---

[1] *Separate every way*) Becauſe Glaſs is a Body which has a Power of Springing, it is probable, that this Glaſs Drop is broke in the ſame manner, as a Steel Bow burſts in pieces ſometimes, when it is looſned on a ſudden; *viz.* by the too great Celerity and Force of that Motion which ariſes from the mutual Attraction of its Parts. For its Parts from the Center to the Circumference, ſeem to be like ſo many Bows bent. And hence perhaps it is, that after it is burſt in Pieces, its Fiſſures are diſpoſed like ſo many Radii drawn from the Axis to the Superficies, as Mr. *Hook* obſerved in a Glaſs Drop covered over with Glue. See *Hook's Micrography Obſerv. 7th.*

[2] *Ought not to burſt in pieces*) For the ſame Reaſon, that there is no danger of breaking a Bow when it is gradually looſned.

55. Laſtly,

*55. Some curious Experiments of Lapidaries.*
Tab. III. Fig. 5.

55. Laſtly, To confirm what has been ſaid of the Inequality of the Pores which are in the Middle, and thoſe near the Superficies in theſe Sort of *Drops*, I carried three of them to three different Lapidaries: The firſt of them I ordered to cut the *Drop* which I gave him, with Powder of Diamond about the Place C. I ordered the Second to drill a Hole in his, with the ſame Powder about D, and I ordered the Third to put his upon the Wheel, and grind it plain at E, with Powder of Emery: Now after theſe three Workmen began ſeparately to work upon them with as much Caution as they do upon Pearls or Stones of a great Value, and had ground with theſe Powders as much off from the *Drops* as amounted to the Thickneſs of a *French* Two-pence, which I reckon is as far as the ſmall Pores reach, I ſaw each of them burſt in pieces as uſual, to the great ſurprize of the Workmen, who did not at all expect any ſuch Thing.

*56. Of two principal differences in Liquors.*

56. But to return now to the Conſideration of Liquids. I obſerve firſt, That if they be all reduced to two Species, the one comprehending all thoſe which we call *thin*, and the other, all thoſe which we call *fat*, it will not be difficult to determine what their principal Difference conſiſts in. For ſince the Former is very eaſy to evaporate, but the Latter evaporates with great Difficulty, we cannot but think, that the Particles of the one, muſt be of very ſimple Figures to be able to diſingage themſelves from each other, and the Particles of the other, of more entangling Figures, ſomething like Branches of Trees, by which they hold each other together.

*57. Why Water, when poured down, is diſperſed in Drops.*

57. And this is confirmed from hence, that if a Veſſel full of *thin Liquor* be ſo inclined, as to pour it out ſlowly, the Liquor will run about and divide itſelf into a great many diſtinct Drops; whereas if it be a *fat Liquor*, it will go on in a long Thread, whoſe Parts are uninterrupted.

*58. Why ſome Liquors will not mix together.*

58. This being ſuppoſed, we ſhall not think it at all ſtrange; that Oil or Air is ſo hard to mix with Water: the Reaſon of which is, becauſe the Particles of theſe Liquors unite together much eaſier than they do with the Particles of the other: Whence it is, that if Water and Oil put into the ſame Veſſel, be ſo ſhaked up together, that they ſeem to compoſe but one Liquor, they cannot continue ſo long, before the Particles of the Oil which meet each other, will entangle themſelves ſo as to compoſe ſeveral Drops, which becauſe of their Lightneſs, riſe up, at the ſame time that the Particles of the Water, whoſe

Motion cauſes them alſo to meet, join together likewiſe, and compoſe other Drops which ſink downwards: And this is the Reaſon why theſe two Liquors entirely clear themſelves of each other, and become diſtinct, the one at the Top, and the other at the Bottom.

*59. That the Drops of one Liquor which ſwim in another Liquor, are round.*

59. It is worth obſerving, that *the Drops of Liquors, which ſwim in a large Quantity of other Liquors which they will not mix with, are all round like Balls.* This cannot be perceived in Drops of Rain as they fall in the Air, by reaſon of the Swiftneſs of their Fall; on the contrary, they ought rather to appear long, ſo, as we ſhould take them for ſmall Columns; for the ſame Reaſon that a lighted Torch moved quick, appears like a long Train of Fire. A better Way then for us to take, in order to ſee if the Drops of Water which ſwim in the Air be round, is to put a little Water into the Hollow of one's Hand, and to throw it up into the Air, about the Height of our Eyes; for then it will divide it ſelf into a great many ſmall Drops, which beginning to deſcend very ſlowly, give the Spectator an Opportunity of obſerving their Figure.

*60. The Opinion of the* Ariſtotelians *concerning the Roundneſs of theſe Drops.*

60. This *Phæmenon* has always been obſerved, and a Reaſon for it attempted to be given, by ſaying, that the Parts of the ſame Liquor have *a mutual Affection for each other*; whence follows *a Deſire of uniting together*, which cannot be done perfectly, but by compoſing a Ball, for if they compoſed any other Figure, thoſe Parts which were moſt diſtant from the Center, would tend towards it with a greater Force than thoſe which are nearer it, and conſequently make them give way, and remove back till they are all equally placed about the Center, and ſo become round.

*61. A Confutation of the Opinion of the* Ariſtotelians.

61. But becauſe theſe Words, *Affection* and *Deſire* have no Meaning, that we can apprehend, unleſs they be aſcribed to Subjects which are capable of Knowledge, therefore we cannot apply them to the Parts of Water, without ſpeaking very improperly and obſcurely. Wherefore, theſe are ſo far from explaining a Thing which ought to be very eaſy, (for we are only inquiring into the Figure of a Body;) that they perplex it with Terms which have no clear and diſtinct Signification when applied to ſuch Subjects. Further, let this *Deſire of uniting* be explained how it will, it is very abſurd to aſcribe it to Subjects which ſeem naturally to be fitted to *diſunite from each other*, becauſe Nature has made them ſo capable of diſuniting.

*62. That Bodies which are compelled out of the way, tend rather to deſcribe the Circumference of a Circle than a ſtreight Line, and the Circumference of a larger Circle rather than of a ſmaller.*

Tab. III. Fig. 6.

62. In order then to find out the Cauſe why the Drops of Liquors which ſwim in others, are round, we muſt keep this Truth in our Minds: *That every Thing endeavours, as much as it can, to continue in that State, in which it once is,* and conſequently, that which is in Motion, would continue to move with the ſame *Determination* with which it began, that is, according to what was before ſaid, in the ſame ſtreight Line. Thus, if the Body A, for Example, is moved along the Line AB, it is determined at the Beginning of this Motion to go towards C, and it will never of its ſelf tend to go towards E or towards D. However, if when the Body is come to B, it meets with any Obſtacle there, it may turn out of the Line BC and go in ſome other Line. But becauſe it is forced out, it follows, that it will go as little out as it can, that is, when it quits the Line AB at the Point B, it will tend to move in a Line which will make the leaſt Angle that can be conceived with the Line BC. And becauſe the Line BD does not make ſo ſmall an Angle with the Line BC as BE does, we cannot but think, that the Body A tends rather to move in the Line BE than in the Line BD. And becauſe the Circumference of a Circle, of which BC is the Tangent, makes a leſs Angle with BC than any Angle comprehended betwixt two ſtreight Lines. We muſt conclude, that the Body A, when it is arrived at the Point B, will reſiſt turning into the Circumference of a Circle leſs than into any ſtreight Line. Laſtly, Becauſe it is certain, that the Circumference of a great Circle makes a leſs Angle with its Tangent, than the Circumference of a ſmall Circle does with its Tangent, we muſt alſo conclude, that the Body A, when it is arrived at the Point B, where it is forced to turn out of its Way, will reſiſt ſtill leſs, the deſcribing the larger Circumference BG, than the ſmaller one BF.

*63. Why the Drops of Liquors are round.*

63. This being ſo, if the Particles which compoſe a Drop of Liquor, and which are hindred from going on in their Motion, by the Liquor which ſurrounds them, be compared to the Body A; and all that has been ſaid of the Body which made Reſiſtance to it at B, be applied to the Particles of the ſurrounding Liquor, which do not make ſo great Reſiſtance, but that they can retire back a little; we conclude, that the Particles of the Drop, do gradually remove thoſe ſurrounding Particles which get within the Sphærical Superficies which the Drop may be

comprehended under. And becauſe [1] the World is full, and the Particles which are removed out of their Place, have no where to go, without removing as many others, they muſt neceſſarily be driven to thoſe angular Parts of the Drop which are without that ſphærical Superficies; and ſo the Drop will of it ſelf become of a round Figure, though the ſurrounding Liquor contributed nothing elſe to it, but only not reſiſting it at all: But becauſe the Particles of this Liquor, are more hindred from continuing their Motion in a ſtreight Line, by the angular Parts of the Drop, than by the others which are nearer the Center, it is evident, that they muſt force them towards the Center, and at the ſame time make theſe other remove further off from it. [2] And in this manner the ſurrounding Liquor contributes as an efficient Cauſe, towards making the Drop round. Nay, we may affirm, that it does the greateſt Part towards it, if, all other Things being alike, this bem oved with the greateſt Celerity.

*6. That Drops, any way ſupported, ought to be a little flat.*

64. But it is to be obſerved, that there are two Things required in order to make Experience agree with this Demonſtration: The Firſt is, That the ſurrounding Liquor be not more than uſually agitated by any external Force; and Secondly, That the Drops be not any way ſupported, at leaſt, when they are of any conſiderable Bigneſs, for then their Weight, which is ſuperior to the Cauſe which makes them round, will make them a little flat, ſo that they will be round only in that Part which is parallel to the Horizon. As we ſee by Experience in Drops of Water

---

[1] *The VVorld is full*) See the Notes on Chap. viii.

[2] *And in this manner*) A Portion of any Liquor, incloſed in another Liquor, which it does not mix with, will preſerve its Figure, whatever it be, without any Alteration, if the Parts of the ſurrounding Liquor be at reſt, with reſpect to each other. See *Newt. Princip. Book* II. *Prop.* 20. *Cor. 9th.* But if the Parts of the ſurrounding Liquor be agitated, the incloſed Drop muſt neceſſarily be compreſſed into a globular Figure. For ſince the Superficies of any other Figure is greater than that of a Globe, and therefore expoſed to more Attacks from the Parts with which it does not mix coming upon it on all Sides; and becauſe whatever is preſſed upon on all Sides, retires thither where it may be leaſt preſſed upon; it is evident, that the Parts of the incloſed Drop, muſt gather themſelves into the Form of a Globe, when they will be leaſt preſſed upon. And this they will do, if there were no ſuch Thing as Attraction. But ſince the Drops of Water and of other Liquors, gather themſelves into a round Figure, in a *Vacuum*, as well as when incloſed in any Liquor, the Cauſe of this ought by all means to be aſcribed to the mutual Attraction which there is betwixt the Parts of one and the ſame Liquor. (*See the Notes on Chap.* xi. *Art.* 15.) For *the Drops of every Fluid affect a round Figure, by the mutual Attraction of their Parts: In the ſame manner as the Globe of the Earth and the Sea affects a round Figure, by the mutual Attraction of its Parts by Gravity.* Newt. Opticks, pag. 370.

which reſt upon ſuch Leaves of Herbs as they will not wet, and in thoſe put upon a duſty Table, as alſo in Drops of Oil or melted Greaſe ſwimming on Water, which indeed are not round, but only on that Part which is level with the Horizon, for on the other Sides, they are flatter in proportion to their Bigneſs and Weight.

*65. Why Drops of Quickſilver are more round than Drops of Water.*

65. This laſt Obſervation ought to be underſtood only upon Suppoſition, that all Things elſe are alike. For it is not at all impoſſible, but that of two Drops of different Liquors, that which is the moſt heavy, may be the roundeſt, provided it be alſo the ſmalleſt: The Reaſon of which is, that all the Particles of the Liquor which ſurrounds the Drop, do not help to make it round, but thoſe only which are applied to the Surface of it; the reſt, which enter into the Pores, ſerve rather to diſſipate it. Wherefore a Drop, which is ſmaller and heavier, having its Pores leſs, and perhaps a leſs Quantity of them than the other, which is larger and lighter, has alſo its Surface more continued, and conſequently gives more Opportunity to the Cauſe, which makes it round, to work upon it, and leſs to that which would diſſipate it. Thus we ſee, that a Drop of Quickſilver is always more round than a Drop of Water a little lighter.

*66. Whence it is that Drops of Spirit of VVine don't make themſelves round.*

66. On the contrary, Spirits of Wine, being very light, muſt have ſo many Pores, and the Superficies of it muſt be ſo interrupted, that there can be but a very few Particles of the Air applied to it to make it round, the greateſt part of them paſs through it, and tend to diſſipate it; alſo this is a Liquor, which it is very difficult to diſtinguiſh into Drops, as may be tried, by putting a little of it into our Hand and throwing it up into the Air; for if it be well *rectified*, it will not fall down in Drops, as Water does, but it will be ſo diſſipated by the Air, that none of it will appear ſenſibly on the Ground. So alſo if it be thrown upon a duſty Table, it will not gather into round Drops, but ſpread it ſelf about, and mix with the other Bodies which it meets with, nay even with Soot it ſelf, which Water will not moiſten.

*67. VVhy a Liquor will moiſten ſome Bodies and not others.*

67. Having thus ſhown what kind of Superficies that which is common to two Liquors, the one incloſed in the other, is; it may not be amiſs to ſtop a little, and examine what ſort of Superficies that ought to be, which is between two Liquors, the one contained in a Veſſel, and the other not: But becauſe there may be ſome Difference in this, according as the Veſſel will be wetted or not wetted by the Liquor contained in it; it is to be obſerved, that a Liquor therefore

fore wets a hard Body, becauſe it immediately touches its Superficies, and that another Liquor does not wet it, becauſe it does not immediately touch its Superficies; but there is room left for the ſubtil Matter to paſs between the concave Superficies of the one, and the convex Superficies of the other.

68. *That the Superficies of the Water in a clean Glaſs exactly full, is quite flat.*

68. This being ſuppoſed; we conclude firſt, that if a very clean Glaſs, whoſe upper Edge is of an equal Height all round, be *exactly filled* with Water, the Surface of the Water will be perfectly level and plain, becauſe the Air which touches it, does not preſs more upon one Part than upon another.

69. *That the Superficies of a Liquor which will wet a Glaſs, ought to be Concave, if the Glaſs is not full.* Tab. III. Fig. 7.

69. But if the Glaſs be not full of Water, the Superficies ought to be Concave, [1] becauſe the Air which comes in at the Mouth of the Glaſs, and circulates about the Glaſs and the Water, as if they were one continued Thing, cannot ſo eaſily turn to move along the internal Superficies of the Glaſs, as continue its Motion in the Middle: From whence, being to go out again at the Mouth of the Glaſs, it deſcribes a Curve in a contrary Poſition, to what it did when it entered in, much the ſame as is deſcribed in the Figure; ſo that the Water is preſſed more in the Middle than on the Sides, and conſequently muſt riſe towards the Sides.

70. *Why the Concave Superficies is not ſpherical.*

70. Experience would perfectly agree with this Reaſoning, were it not that as the moſt convenient Motion for the Air is in a Circle, it ſhould ſeem, that it ought to bend the Surface of the Water into the Form of a Concave Sphere, which yet it does not do; For the Surface of the Water is curved only towards the Sides, and is perfectly level in the Middle. But the Reaſon is plain; for if the Glaſs be large, a great Quantity of Water muſt be raiſed up to make the Curvature ſo convenient, as the Water requires, which it is certain is reſiſted by its Weight.

71. *That the hollow Surface of the Water in a ſmaller Tube not full, is ſpherical.* Tab. III. Fig. 8.

71. And for Proof of this; If into a ſmaller Tube of Glaſs, in which a ſmall Quantity of Water riſing at the Sides makes its Surface ſpherical, ſome Water be poured, ſo as not to fill it, we may obſerve, that it will continue in *the ſame manner Spherical,* though the Tube be inclined as you ſee in the Figure; where the Curvature

---

[1] *Becauſe the Air*) Since all theſe Phænomena are the ſame in a *Vacuum* as in the open Air; we muſt aſſert, that the Superficies of any Liquor contained in any Veſſel is Gibbous or Concave, according as the Particles of the Liquor are more or leſs mutually attracted by each other, than they are by the Matter of which the Veſſel is made.

ABC repreſents the Surface of the Water, which is therefore above the Level, and manifeſtly higher at A than at C, becauſe that Poſition of the Water agrees better with the Motion of the Air, which would be more turned back, and with greater Force in the Place D, if the Water were more upon the Level DBE.

72. *Why a Bottle with a ſmall Neck, when filled full of Water, and turned with the Bottom upwards, will not empty itſelf.*

Tab. III. Fig. 9.

72. The ſame Cauſe, which hinders the Water from growing level in an inclined Tube, hinders a Bottle alſo which has a very ſtreight Neck from emptying it ſelf, when it is near inverted, and the unequal Height of the two Parts of the Water which endeavour to come out at the ſame time, ſhould ſeem to deſtroy the *æquilibrium* of the Air's Preſſure, which repels and ſupports it by its Weight. For Example; Though in the Bottle here deſcribed, the Height of the Water which endeavours to come out of the Bottle at C, is greater than of that at A, and therefore ſhould ſeem to be able to force the Air to deſcend at C, and to riſe again by A, and get into its Place; yet this does not happen, becauſe the Parts of the Air now deſcribe the Curve ABC; and the Difference of the Weight of the Water at A, above that at C, is ſo very ſmall, that it is not able to make the Air to deſcribe a Line that is more curved, as it muſt do, if the Water which deſcends by C, took up part of the Width of the Neck.

73. *That the Superficies of a Liquor, when the Glaſs is heaping full, ought to be convex.*

73. If a little more Water be poured into a Glaſs of the common Shape, than will fill it exactly full; as that which would run over the Sides, is more expoſed to the Power of the Air than any other Part is, it follows, that the Air ought to puſh it back towards the Middle, where it ought to be higher, in order to its more convenient Motion. And thus we ſee that a Glaſs may *be filled heaping full*, and that the leſs the Glaſs is, the nearer does the Superficies of the Liquors it contains approach to a Sphere; becauſe it does not ſuſtain the Weight of ſo great a Quantity of Water, and the Force of the Air is ſufficient to bend it in this.

74. *That the Superficies of Water, in a Glaſs not full, and which will not be wetted, ought alſo to be convex.*

74. If the Glaſs be *greaſy*, or for any other Reaſon will not be *made wet*, whatever Quantity of Water be put into it, [1] the Superficies ought always to be convex, becauſe its Figure does not ſo much depend upon the external Air, as upon the Air that flows between the inter-

---

[1] *The Superficies ought always*) Thus the Superficies of Quickſilver in Glaſs Tubes, is always gibbous, becauſe it does not wet the Glaſs, but in Veſſels of Gold that are not full, its Superficies is concave, as that of Water is in Glaſs. *See the Notes on Art. 69. above.*

nal Parts of the Glaſs, and the external Parts of the Liquor which it contains; which by its continual moving round, blunts the external angular Parts which reſiſt its Motion, and forces them towards the Middle, or elſe forces them inwards, and ſo cauſes the Water to raiſe it ſelf up towards the Middle, where the Air oppoſes its Paſſage leſs, becauſe it cannot get thither, but by altering and bending its Courſe.

*75. Why ſome Bodies floating on the Top of the Water, are carried from the Middle to the Sides.*

75. From what has been ſaid in the two foregoing Articles, we infer, that the Air which depreſſes the Middle of the Superficies of the Water in a Glaſs not full, ought from the ſame Cauſe, to drive light Bodies which ſwim upon it, and touch it immediately, *towards the Sides*: This I have experienced in ſmall Globules of Glaſs full of Air and cloſed up, which an Enameller made as light for me as he could; for theſe being put towards the Middle of the concave Superficies of the Water in a ſtrait Glaſs not very full, it was very pleaſant to ſee them driven from thence to that Side of the Glaſs which was neareſt to them.

*76. That this Motion is not cauſed by Attraction.*

76. Becauſe I made uſe of a ſmall Globule of Glaſs, and a Veſſel of the ſame, in this Experiment; ſome Perſons perhaps, may imagine, that this Globule moved towards the Side, becauſe it was attracted by the Glaſs: But it is very eaſy to confute this Imagination; for not to mention the Obſcurity of that Word, the ſame Thing will happen in a Veſſel of Wood, or of any other Matter whatſoever, [1] which we cannot ſuppoſe to have any Sympathy with the Globule.

*77. That the ſame Bodies ought to go from the Sides towards the Middle in a Glaſs heaping full.*

77. But that which evidently overthrows this Opinion, and confirms that which I have advanced, is, that if Attraction had any Thing to do here, the Globule ought to move ſwiftly from the Middle to the Side of a convex Superficies of the Water in a Glaſs heaping full; for beſides the Attraction, the Declivity ought to help its Motion. Which yet is not ſo; but on the contrary, it moves from the Side towards the Middle, as it ought to do, if what I have affirmed be true; becauſe, as was ſaid before, it is the Sides which are moſt expoſed to the Force of the Air, and the ſame Cauſe which drives the Water from the Sides to the Middle, ought alſo to drive the ſmall Globule.

---

[1] *Which we cannot ſuppoſe*) See the Notes on Chap. xi. Art. 15.

*78. VVhy a Body that is heavier than Water, when ſwimming on the Top of the Water, does the contrary to a ſmall Globule of Glaſs.*

78. But it is to be obſerved in theſe Experiments, that the Body which floats on the Top of the Water, muſt immediately touch it, or which is the ſame Thing, muſt be wetted by it, that the Air may be forced to move round them both, as if they were one continued Body. But if the Body which floats on the Water does not immediately touch it, or is not wetted by it, we experience the contrary; that is, the Body will deſcend *from the Sides towards the Middle*, when the Superficies of the Water is *concave*, and *from the Middle towards the Sides* when the *Superficies* is convex, becauſe the Parts of the Air which paſs under the Body depreſs the Liquor all round, which produces the ſame Effect, as if, when a large heavy ſpherical Body was fixed upon the Declivity of a Mountain, we ſhould take away the Earth equally all round it, and put Leavers under it to ſupport it; for it is evident, it would by that means be diſpoſed to deſcend to the Bottom of the Mountain.

*79. How ſuch Bodies as theſe, may float upon the Water.*

79. It is to be obſerved further, that when a Body which weighs more than an equal Bulk of Water ſwims upon the Water, as a Needle made of Steel will do, the Reaſon of it is this; that the Air which preſerves it ſelf a Paſſage between the Body and the Water, ſupports it and hinders it from ſinking: For we ought not to think that it proceeds from hence, that the Parts of the Water are harder to be ſeparated near the Superficies, than deeper in, as we may be apt to imagine; for having cauſed ſome ſmall Needles to be made of Glaſs, which were lighter than the Steel Needles of equal Bigneſs, and laid them gently upon the Water, they always ſunk down to the Bottom.

*80. VVhy Liquors ſometimes riſe up on the Sides of ſome Bodies that are dipped in them a little way.*

80. From hence, *viz.* that the Body dipped in the Water will be *moiſtned*, or not *moiſtned*, it follows, that the Water will *riſe up* on the Sides of ſome Bodies higher than it is any where elſe, or that it will be *depreſſed* lower; The Reaſon of the Firſt is, becauſe the Air which moves from one Side of the Veſſel to the other, and paſſes over the Body, permits the Liquor to riſe in that Hollow which the Air cannot without great Difficulty turn into: whereas when it paſſes under, as in the Second Caſe, it depreſſes the Liquor all round. And of this a Multitude of Experiments may be made, and an infinite Number of them are made without any Notice being taken of them; for every time we dip our Pen into the Ink, we may obſerve, that if it be moiſtned, the Ink will

riſe; and on the contrary, that the Ink is depreſſed about the Pen if it is not moiſt.

*81. Why the Water will riſe conſiderably in the Part where two Pieces of Glaſs are fitted to each other, when they are dipped a little into it.*

81. If two plain Bodies which the Water will wet, ſuch as two Pieces of clean Glaſs, be put very near one another, and dipped a little way into a Veſſel of Water; [1] the Air which moves from one Side of the Veſſel to the other, in order to get over the Obſtacle that lies in its way, ought rather to paſs over the Top of the two Glaſſes, than to deſcend into that ſtreight Place which is between them: So that the Water is not ſo much preſſed here as it is in other Places, where the Air can go without bending its Courſe ſo much, and ſo it ought to riſe to a conſiderable Height above the Level of the Water contained in the Veſſel; and thus we ſee by Experience that it does.

*82. Why the Water is ſeen to riſe of it ſelf in ſmall Glaſs Tubes.*

82. And there is no Doubt but that the Water would riſe ſtill higher, if the two Pieces of Glaſs were cloſed on both Sides, for by that means almoſt all the Air which moves croſs, without bending its Courſe, would be hindred from entring in. Or, which is the ſame Thing, we may take a very ſmall Glaſs Tube open at both Ends, and dip it in the Water, for then the Air cannot enter in by the Sides; ſo that the Water muſt riſe very high in ſuch ſort of Tubes, if they be very ſlender: And indeed I have made the Water riſe a Foot high in a Glaſs Tube ſo ſmall, that one could ſcace get a Horſe-hair into it.

*83. Why it does not riſe on without End.*

83. However, we muſt not conclude from hence, that it ought to riſe on without End in theſe ſmall Tubes; for it is eaſy to ſee, that the Water muſt ſtop, when the Weight of that which is riſen, tends downwards with greater Force than the Preſſure of the external Air has to thruſt it up.

*84. That a greater Quantity of Water ought to riſe in an inclined Tube.*

84. If the Tube be inclined, a greater Quantity of Water will get in, becauſe, being ſome way ſupported by the Glaſs, it does not tend downwards with ſo great Force. Which is confirmed by Experience, according to the moſt exact Laws of Mechanicks.

*85. Why the Water riſes ſometimes higher in the ſmaller, than in the larger Arm of one inverted Syphon.*

Tab. I. Fig. 4.

85. Having now explained the Force of the Air as a Liquid to impel Bodies which are cloſe to it, we may ſay with more Aſſurance and Certainty than we could before, what the Situation of a Liquor in an inverted Syphon, whoſe Branches are of an unequal Thickneſs, as is here repreſented, will be. For Example, if we conſider only its Weight, we may confidently affirm, that

---

[1] *The Air which moves*) *See the Notes on Art.* 85, *of this Chap.*

if the Water in the larger Branch, reaches up to the Height AB, it ought to riſe to the Height C in the little Tube, to be upon the Level with the other: But we may add, that if this Branch be ſo ſmall, [1] that the Parts of the Air cannot turn in it but with Difficulty, the Water will riſe conſiderably higher than in the larger Branch, ſo as to reach to D, according to what was now proved.

*86. An imaginary perpetual Motion.*

86. There are few of thoſe who enquire after *a perpetual Motion*, but when they ſee this Experiment, for want of rightly underſtanding the Cauſe of it, think they have found out ſuch a Motion. And indeed it looks at firſt Sight very probable, that if we take one of theſe Syphons, in the ſmaller Branch of which the Water riſes very high, and bend this Branch a little lower than the Height which the Water riſes to, it might be ſo ordered, that the Liquor with which it is filled might run out into the larger Branch, in order to riſe up again in the ſmaller one, and ſo produce a perpetual Motion: But it is certain, that [2] they are deceived who make this Conjecture; for beſides that, the Branch of the Syphon, out of which the Water is to run, ought to be longer than the other, (which is not ſo here, where the bent Branch is in the Room of a whole Syphon) it is eaſy to ſee, that the Water, the Moment it endeavours to come out at the End of this ſmall crooked Branch, is more expoſed to the Force of the Air, than that which is contained in the larger Branch; whence it follows, that its Paſſage out muſt be ſtopped.

*87. That in a Syphon the Tube of which is very ſmall, the Water will not always run out through the longer Branch.*

87. This will appear more evident, if we conſider, that when the End of the ſmall Tube of a bent Syphon, whoſe Height does not exceed that, to which the Water will commonly riſe, be dipped into the Water, it will immediately be filled; but if the End of the longer Branch

---

[1] *The Parts of the Air*) It looks very probable, at firſt Sight, as if the ſtiff Particles of the Air, either paſſed over the Mouth of the little Tube CD; or elſe ſticking in it, like little Pieces of Wood a-croſs it, ſupported the Column of incumbent Air, ſo as it ſhould not preſs upon the Water under it, with its uſual Weight: But by often repeated Experiments, it is found, that the Water will riſe as high in ſmall Tubes, though the groſs Air be exhauſted. See *The Exper. of the Academ. del Cimento, p.* 55. It is evident therefore, that all theſe Phænomena's are to be aſcribed to Attraction. See *the Notes above on Art.* 69.

[2] *They are deceived*) It is manifeſt, from Calculation upon Mechanick Principles, That all Queſtions about *a perpetual Motion* end in this. To find out a Weight heavier than it ſelf, or an elaſtick Force ſtronger than it ſelf. Which is abſurd.

be not depreſſed lower than uſual beneath the Level of the Water in the Veſſel, it will not run out into the Air, as it ordinarily does; whence we ſee, that the Air puſhes it back with greater Force than it has to come out.

88. *A curious Experiment of the Preſſure of the Air.*

88. For a further Confirmation of a Thing which has been ſufficiently proved, I may add, that ſo far is the Water from coming eaſily out at the End of a ſmall Tube, that ſometimes it will be forced to enter and aſcend into it, when it was entirely without before: Which may be tried, by holding a very clean ſmall Tube open at both Ends perpendicular, and putting a Drop of Water upon the external Superficies, which may entirely ſtop the Hole at the lower End, when it is got down thither; for then you will with pleaſure ſee the Tube filled in the ſame manner as if the End of it was dipped in a Veſſel of Water.

89. *What the Cauſe of Filtration is.*

89. After what has been ſaid in the foregoing Articles, it is eaſy to underſtand what is the Cauſe of the *Filtration* of the Chymiſts: For the Piece of Woollen Cloth which they put upon the Side of the Veſſel, in ſuch a manner, as that one End of it is dipped into the Liquor, and the other End hangs down on the Outſide lower in the Air, reſembles a bent Tube, in which the Water runs as in a Glaſs-Tube: And it matters not, if this Cloth or Woollen Tube be full of Holes on all Sides, for the Air which moves round it, preſſes in the Water which endeavours to come out at them, ſo that it is like one continued Covering.

90. *That the Forms of hard and liquid Bodies as ſuch, are not ſubſtantial Forms.*

90. Since our Thoughts, or, if you will, our Conjectures concerning *hard* and *liquid Bodies* are confirmed by ſo many Experiments, I think it ſuperfluous to add any Thing more. Wherefore I ſhall finiſh this Chapter, in only remarking two Things: The Firſt is, That if *Hardneſs* and *Liquidneſs* conſiſt in Reſt and Motion, which have their Dependence upon ſomething elſe; then theſe Forms are not *Subſtantial*, but only *Qualities* or *Modes* of Exiſtence in the Bodies to which they belong.

91. *What Dryneſs and Moiſtneſs is.*

91. Secondly, That having explained the Nature of *Hardneſs* and *Softneſs*, I have at the ſame time explained wherein *Dryneſs* and *Moiſtneſs* conſiſt. This is evident, if we underſtand the Word *Dry* and *Moiſt* in the Senſe of the Antients, who did not diſtinguiſh them from *hard* and *liquid*: As we may ſee from hence, that ſpeaking of *Moiſt*, they uſe the ſame *Greek* Word as all Interpreters render *humid* or *liquid* indifferently. It appears further,

that I have explained what the Nature of *Dryneſs* and *Moiſtneſs* is, according to that Senſe which we now uſe thoſe Words in; becauſe by *Dry*, we underſtand that which will not wet any Thing; and by *Moiſt*, that which will wet a Thing, which are two Properties which have been fully and expreſsly handled above.

---

## CHAP. XXIII.

### *Of Heat and Cold.*

*1. That the VVords, Heat, and Cold, have two different Meanings.*

THESE Two Words have each of them two different Meanings: For Firſt, by ***Heat and Cold***, we underſtand *two particular Senſations in us*, which in ſome Meaſure reſemble thoſe, which we call Pain and Pleaſure, ſuch as we feel, when we touch Ice, or when we go near a Fire. Secondly, by ***Heat and Cold***, we underſtand alſo the Power which Bodies have to raiſe the forementioned Senſation in us.

*2. In what Senſe it is, that we propoſe to treat of Heat and Cold.*

2. I think we cannot underſtand what ***Heat*** and ***Cold***, in the former Senſe of the Words, is, but only by Experience; wherefore our Curioſity will be ſatisfied, and our Pains imployed only in enquiring what that Power conſiſts in, which certain Bodies have to *warm* us, and alſo what that Power conſiſts in, which we obſerve other Bodies have to *cool* us.

*3. How Ariſtotle deſcribes Heat and Cold.*

3. *Ariſtotle* ſays, that ***Heat*** is that which collects together homogeneous Things, or Things of the ſame Nature, and diſſipates heterogeneous Things, or Things of a different Nature; and ***Cold***, he ſays, is that which collects together, Things homogeneous and heterogeneous indifferently. The common Inſtances made uſe of to prove this, are ***Fire***, by the ***Heat*** of which, a great many Parts of Gold may be collected into one Maſs, or two or more Metals which are mixed together, may be ſeparated: And *Ice*, which by its *Coldneſs*, unites together, Water, Stones, Wood, Straw, ſo as to compoſe one Body of all theſe together.

*4. That Heat collects together Things of a different Nature, as well as thoſe of the ſame Nature.*

4. But it is to be obſerved, that the Inſtance here given, is ſometimes faulty; for if a Maſs, compoſed of Gold, Silver, and Copper, be put upon the Fire in a Crucible, it is not true, that theſe Metals will always clear themſelves of each other, ſo as to be ſeparated and placed in

their proper Order, one upon another, according to their different Weight. On the contrary, if ſeveral diſtinct Pieces of Gold, Silver, and Copper be put together into a Crucible, the Fire will not fail to mix them all together.

*5. That the Property of Fire, is rather to diſſipate than to collect together.*

5. It is true, that if the Fire acts a very long time upon a Maſs, compoſed of Gold, Silver and Copper; the Silver and Copper will go all away in Smoak, and ſo leave the Gold alone in the Crucible. But we ought not for this Reaſon to ſay, that the *Fire has a Property* of collecting Things together, becauſe this perhaps is only accidental, that is to ſay, by diſſipating the Firſt, which reſiſts its Force leſs, the Gold remains alone, or laſt, becauſe it reſiſts its Force more. In the ſame manner, as if Saw-Duſt, and the Filings of Lead were mixed together in a Plate, we can with our Mouths blow away the Saw-Duſt, and leave the Lead-Filings alone in the Plate. For it is evident, that it is only the Reſiſtance of the Pieces of Gold, which is the Cauſe of that Metal's being thus ſeparated from the Silver or Copper. For if it be left after this upon the Fire, it will continually diminiſh by little and little, till it intirely vaniſhes, as Refiners have tried; and this is what they mean when they ſay, there is no Gold of 24 Carats, that is, none that can be refined ſo pure.

*6. That* Ariſtotle *has only ſaid what Heat and Cold do, but not what they are.*

6. But if it was true, that Heat always collected together homogeneous Things, and diſſipated heterogeneous ones, and that Cold collected together all ſort of Bodies indifferently, this would indeed teach us *what* Heat and Cold *do*, but not at all tell us *what they are*: But *Ariſtotle* has been excuſed in this, by ſaying, that in defining Heat and Cold as he has done, he did not ſo much follow his own Opinion, as that of others.

*7. What the Opinion of his Interpreters concerning Heat and Cold is.*

7. I don't know whether his Interpreters have hit right, when they pretend, that his Opinion was; *that Heat, in the Fire*, for Inſtance, is ſomething in the Fire like that Senſation which is raiſed in us, when we approach the Fire. And ſo likewiſe, that *Cold* in Ice, is ſomething in Ice very like that Senſation in us, which ariſes from touching it. [1] Becauſe in his II. Book *of the Soul*, Chap. xii. after he had ſhown that *Senſation* is a *Paſſion*, he ſays, that the Moment any Senſation is rais'd in us, we become like the Object that raiſes it.

---

[1] *Becauſe in his* II. *Book*) This Place is not in that Chapter, but in the vth Chap. of the ſame Book, he ſays, πάσχει μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἀνόμοιον ὄν, πεπονθὸς δ᾽ ὅμοιόν ἐστιν.

8. But

8. *That they have no Foundation for their Opinion.*

8. But whether *Ariſtotle* were of this Opinion or no, thus much is certain, that they have no Proof of what they affirm; for it is no Proof to ſay as they do, that the Fire cannot give that which it has not; becauſe taking the Word *give*, in the Senſe here uſed, there is no doubt but that the Needle, when it pricks us, *gives* us Pain, and yet there is no reaſon to believe from hence, that the Needle has in it any Pain like that which it cauſes in us.

9. *That it is abſolutely falſe.*

9. Further, the Heat of the Fire, and the Cold of Ice being Properties or Qualities belonging to Bodies which every one acknowledges to be inanimate, they cannot be like the Senſations which we feel by their Means, becauſe theſe Senſations belong to us as animate Creatures. And becauſe the ſame Thing may ſometimes happen to raiſe in us two different Senſations at the ſame time, it will follow from their Opinion, that the ſame Thing may be hot and cold at the ſame time, which is impoſſible; yet the Air which we breathe out of our Mouths, may at the ſame time feel hot or cold according as it is differently applied to our Hands in blowing upon them.

10. *In what the Heat of hot Bodies conſiſts.*

10. By reflecting upon this Experiment, which ſhows us, that the ſame Air feels hot or cold, not only from its being applied in a different manner to our Hands, but alſo from the different manner of making it come out of our Mouths; it is eaſy to conjecture, that the *Heat* of a Body conſiſts in a peculiar Motion of its Particles. And becauſe the nearer we put our Lips together, and make the Air come out quicker and ſtronger, the leſs we feel the Heat, hence we conclude, that the Heat of a Body does not conſiſt in the direct Motion of its Parts. Now whatever is in Motion, either moves on directly, or elſe has an unequal and different Motion, as it were about its own Center; from whence we may infer, that the Air which comes out of our Mouth, beſides that direct Motion, by which the Whole of it is removed from one Place to another, it has alſo a great many of its Particles moved round with a circular Motion about their own Centers: By which means thoſe which are applied to our Hands, with this ſort of Motion, excite in us a kind of Tickling. And becauſe it is this kind of Motion which raiſes in us the Senſation of Heat, we ought alſo to conclude, *that the Heat of Bodies conſiſts in this Sort of Motion of their ſmall Parts.*

11. *The Reſemblance there is betwixt Heat and Pain.*

11. So that what is in the Object is very different from the Senſation which it raiſes. And this ought not to be thought more ſtrange, than the Difference there is betwixt the Figure and Motion of a Needle, which pricks us, and the Pain which it cauſes. For as it is evident from the Inſtance of Pain, that the Soul being united to the Body, it is the Appointment of Nature, that certain Perceptions of the Soul ſhould follow from certain Motions or Diviſions which the *Needle* cauſes in the Body: So alſo we ought to think, that Nature has appointed that from that particular Manner in which our Body is moved by the Fire, there ſhould ariſe a particular Perception, and this is what we call Heat, taking it in the former Senſe of the Word.

12. *That Bodies may become hot, to which it is certain, nothing has happened but Motion.*

12. This is confirmed by Experience, which teaches us, that many Bodies are made capable of warming us, to which we cannot ſuſpect any Thing has happened but only Motion. It is to no purpoſe to inſtance in them all: I ſhall content my ſelf with the following Example.

13. *The* I. *Example.*

13. And, Firſt, It is certain that when *our Hands are very cold,* we find by Experience, *that if they be rubbed a little while together,* we ſhall feel a conſiderable Heat.

14. *The* II. *Example.*

14. *Secondly,* As was before obſerved, *Lime having cold Water poured upon it,* though it was before cold, will acquire ſuch a Motion of its Parts, that they will be all diſunited in a ſhort time, and by that Means will become capable of heating us in ſuch a manner, that it will be very painful to hold it in one's Hand.

15. *The* III. *Example.*

15. *Rotten Dung,* that is, ſuch as diſſipates it ſelf by little and little, becomes ſo hot, as to ſerve inſtead of a moderate Fire in many Chymical Operations. And Chymiſtry furniſhes us with many other Examples not ſo common, which ought to be more known to the World than they are.

16. *The* IV. *Example.*

16. For Inſtance, if a few *Filings of Braſs* be thrown into a large Veſſel in which is a little *Aqua-fortis,* it will immediately raiſe ſuch a Fermentation, that the Bottle will ſeem quite full, and at the ſame time will be ſo hot, that we cannot touch it without being burnt.

17. *The* V. *Example.*

17. Further, If, as was before ſaid, *Oil of Vitriol* and *Oil of Tartar* be mixed together, though ſeparately neither of them are combuſtible, they will immediately acquire an incredible Fermentation on a ſudden, and at the ſame time a very ſenſible degree of Heat.

18. *The* VI. *Example.*

18. It is true, that in theſe Sort of Examples, it may with ſome Reaſon be ſaid, there is ſomething that we do not throughly underſtand, wherefore I ſhall ſtay a little, before I ſay what the Cauſe of theſe ſurprizing Motions may be: To come therefore to ſome more familiar Inſtances, we obſerve, *that two hard Bodies rubbed againſt one another*, do ſo agitate the Parts of each other, as not only to burn us when we touch them, but their Motion will increaſe to ſuch a Degree, as to ſet each other on Fire. Thus in very dry Weather, the *Wheel* and the *Axle-Tree* of a Chariot, when it goes very quick, and in general, all Sorts of Engines which are made of Matter that will burn, and which move very quick, are apt to take Fire. Nothing is more common, than to ſee a *Wimble* grow hot in boring a Hole in a hard thick Piece of Wood. So likewiſe, if we *file* or *ſharp* a Piece of Iron or Steel it will grow ſo hot ſometimes as to loſe its Temper. And a *Saw*, which the Wood will not eaſily yield to, acquires a very notable Heat. But nothing ſooner takes Fire than a ſmall Piece of *Flint* or of *Steel*, which is ſtruck off, and put into a violent Motion by ſtriking theſe two againſt each other. Now in all theſe Inſtances, there is nothing added to theſe Bodies but Motion.

19. *An Explication of the Opinion of the Antients concerning Heat.*

19. All the Antients who have conſidered the greateſt Part of theſe Experiments, have aſſerted that *Motion* is the *Principle of Heat*; which I acknowledge with them to be true; if by *Motion* they mean *the Motion of the whole Bodies*, which is the Cauſe of the two Bodies rubbing againſt each other; but if by *Motion* they mean *the Motion of their inſenſible Parts*, I think they have not ſaid enough: For the *Motion* of theſe Parts, is *the very Heat it ſelf* of thoſe Bodies.

20. *Why a Cannon Ball which moves very quick, does not grow hot nor burn.*

20. I ſee no Objection that can be made againſt this: For when they object, in order to ſhow, that Motion is not [1] the Principle or Cauſe, of Heat, that a Ball out of a Cannon which moves very quick, does not burn the Wood which it enters into; or that a Musket Bullet does not burn the Wood which it penetrates, though it be very dry; this contradicts the Opinion of thoſe only who pretend that Heat conſiſts in the Swiftneſs of the Motion of all ſorts of Bodies how groſs ſoever. But this Objection makes nothing againſt us, who affirm, that Heat conſiſts in the different and violent Agitation of the inſenſible

---

[1] *The Principle or Cauſe of Heat*) Is not the Heat it ſelf.

Parts of Bodies. But when a great Bullet moves very quick, its Parts may be at reſt with reſpect to each other, and therefore it is no wonder that they don't burn the Bodies which they touch.

*21. Why the Nave of a Wheel grows hot, and not the Fellows.*

21. If we reflect upon what has been ſaid, we ſhall not at all wonder, that the Bands of Iron which are about a Wheel do not grow hot as it does in the Middle; for though they deſcribe larger Spaces by their Motion, yet notwithſtanding this, their Parts are not agitated with reſpect to each other, as thoſe in the Middle are, which continually rub againſt the Axle-Tree.

*22. Why a Piece of Iron when filed, grows hot, but not the File.*

22. We may very eaſily anſwer a great many Queſtions which may be put to us by thoſe who will not allow, that the Form of a hot Body conſiſts only in the Motion of its ſmalleſt Parts: Thus when they ask, how it is poſſible, that when a Piece of Iron fixed in a Vice, is filed, the *Iron* grows conſiderably hot, but the *File* which moves upon it is ſcarce warm at all: It is eaſy to anſwer, that the Parts of the File moving upon the Iron, and continually grating it, not only with its own Parts, but alſo with ſome of the Parts of the Iron which it has rubbed off, and which remain ſometime between its Teeth, muſt neceſſarily excite a very great Agitation of the Parts of the Iron which is filed, and conſequently heat it very ſenſibly. But this is not the Caſe of the File; for though its Parts are grated as much as thoſe of the Iron, yet becauſe it is longer, the ſame Teeth do not twice together touch the Body which it grates, but there is always ſome ſmall diſtance of Time, between the two Rubs of the Parts of the File, during which Time, that Place which may have begun to acquire ſome ſmall Heat, may loſe it again.

*23. Why Iron when it is filed grows hotter than other Metals.*

23. There are ſo many Things to be conſidered in this Experiment, that a ſmall Difference alters all the Circumſtances. Whence it is, that a Piece of Copper or Lead, when it is filed, ought not to grow ſo hot as Iron, both becauſe Copper and Lead are not ſo ſtiff, and becauſe it is eaſier to ſeparate their Parts than the Parts of Iron, ſo that the File being never applied twice together to the ſame Part of the Body which it grates, it cannot ſhake its Particles ſo much: And this is ſo true, that if we try to file a Piece of Copper, with an old worn File, which will ſhave off but a little at a time, the Heat will be as great as that produced in the Iron.

24. Now

*24. Why a Saw grows hot, and not the Wood.*

24. Now if any one asks, why, in ſawing a Plank of Wood, the *Saw* grows hot and not the *Wood*: I anſwer, that the Plate of the Saw, ſticking in the Slit of the Wood, and being rubbed againſt each Side, the Parts of it muſt be ſenſibly ſhaken: Whereas it is evident, that the Plank ought not to grow hot in the Place againſt which the Teeth of the Saw go, for the Reaſon juſt now given, *viz.* becauſe it cuts the Parts off; neither ought it to grow hot on the Sides, eſpecially if the Wood be eaſy to ſaw, becauſe the Saw advances further and further into the Slit, and ſo does ſcarce twice together touch the ſame Part of the Wood.

*25. How the Wood when ſawn may grow hot.*

25. It is true, that if the Wood be very hard, and difficult to ſaw, and if the Saw ſticks in the Slit which it makes, the Plank will then become pretty hot; but we ſhall not be able to perceive it by our Touch, becauſe the Parts of the Wood being large, loſe their Motion in a Moment, and it will take ſome time to pull out the Saw, and to open the Slit ſo wide as to put our Hand in to feel. But though we cannot perceive it by our Touch, we may ſee it with our Eyes; for the Places againſt which the Saw for ſome time grated look burnt, as if they had been in the Fire. And it happened ſome time ago, that deſignedly ſawing a Piece of hard Wood, fixed in a Vice, in a Smith's Shop, with a Saw which ſtuck in the Slit it made, I at firſt perceived a Smell like burnt Wood, and continuing to ſaw the Wood with greater Force, ſeveral Sparks came out of it.

*26. Why a Nail driven into a Piece of Wood with a Hammer does not grow hot.*

26. The Experiment which ſeems to be the moſt contrary to the Principle we have laid down, is, that if we drive with a Hammer a large Nail into a piece of hard Wood, we ſhall not find it grow warm while it is driving in, but after it is in, and the Hammer does nothing elſe but beat the Head flat, then it will begin to acquire ſome Heat: Yet is there nothing in this, but what perfectly agrees with our Notion of Heat. For as we make it to conſiſt wholly in the Agitation of the ſmall Parts of the Body; it is certain, that the Nail ought not to grow hot, while it is moved all together in entring into the Piece of Wood; but that it ought then to begin to grow hot, when it ceaſes to move ſo, and its Head begins to be made flat; for it is then only that the ſmall Parts begin to be in Motion, and acquire an Agitation ſufficient to Heat. And indeed, when the Head of a Nail is made flat, all that is done, is, that there are by that Means fewer Parts placed one upon another, and more by each

other's Sides, which cannot be, but by the Motion and Agitation of theſe Parts, which by their beating againſt each other, cauſe that trembling in which Heat conſiſts.

*27. That Flame ought to be very hot.*

27. Having thus endeavoured to anſwer the Objections that might be made againſt us; we come now to draw ſome Conſequences from what we have laid down; becauſe if theſe agree with Experience, they will help to confirm us in this, that we are not far from the Truth. In the firſt Place then, let us conſider, that ſeeing Heat conſiſts in a certain Motion, or a certain Agitation of the ſmall Parts of a Body, it is certain, that the more the Parts of the Body are thus moved or agitated, the greater will the Heat be. Now it is evident, that [1] *Flame* is more agitated than any other Body which comes under our Senſes. For, for Example, it is this violent Agitation of the Parts of the Wood which nouriſh the Flame, that makes the greateſt Part of them fly away, and that of all the Wood that can be burnt in a Day, ſo very little remains in Aſhes; which we do not find in the forementioned Inſtances, where there is only a moderate trembling of the Parts of the Bodies which is not ſufficient to diſunite them entirely. And this is the Reaſon why *Flame* ought to be the hotteſt Thing in the World, as every Body knows it is.

*28. How a Body that is not ſo much agitated as Flame may yet be hotter.*

28. However, this muſt be underſtood with ſome Reſtriction, that is, if they agree in all other Particulars; for it is not inconſiſtent herewith, that there ſhould be ſome Bodies hotter, and more capable of heating than Flame, if they conſiſt of more ſolid Particles, and conſequently ſuch as are more capable of Agitation; wherefore *Iron*, tho' it be not red hot, will burn more, if we touch it, than the *Flame of Straw, or Spirit of Wine* will do.

*29. Why Sea-Coal will burn more than any other.*

29. The Difference that there is betwixt the Groſſneſs of the Particles into which the Bodies that are burnt are reſolved, is the Cauſe of ſo much Difference in the *Flames*. Thus, *Oak* being more ſolid than *Straw*, but not ſo ſolid as *Sea-Coal*; their *Flames* are alſo proportionably more or leſs burning or ſtrong one than another: And the Uſe that *Smiths* make of them, according as they have occaſion, ſhows plainly, that *Sea-Coal*, acts more ſtrongly than all other, becauſe when they would heat a

---

[1] *Flame is more agitated*) Concerning the Nature of Flame and Fire, See *Part the* IIId. *and the whole* ix *Chap. with the Notes*.

Piece of Iron very much, they prefer this Coal to all others.

30. *How Heat deals with Bodies, and diminiſhes the Bulk of them.*

30. When a Body melts, and liquifies, as I may call it, by little and little into Flame, it is impoſſible but that the Particles which ſlip and rub one againſt another, muſt be diminiſhed and broken into a thouſand Pieces, and ſo make a very fine Duſt, which, that it may continue to move with that violent Agitation which it has acquired, gets off from that Maſs of which it was before a Part, and flies into the Air; which is what we call exhaling or evaporating: And hence it is, that the Fire has the Property of *diminiſhing* all Bodies which it acts upon.

31. *Why Heat hardens Clay and ſoftens Wax.*

31. This being allowed, there is no Difficulty in reſolving that Queſtion commonly asked, *viz.* How it is poſſible that Heat ſhould produce at the ſame time two ſeemingly contrary Effects: Such as *hardning of Clay*, and *ſoftning of Wax*. In order to this, we need only obſerve, that Clay is compoſed of two Things that are very different from each other, *viz.* Earth and Water; the Latter of which may very eaſily be evaporated, before the Particles of the Former are conſiderably ſhaken; and ſince the Clay is ſoft for no other Reaſon, but becauſe the Particles of the Water are in ſome ſort of Agitation, amongſt the Particles of the Earth, to which they belong; it muſt needs be, that when the Water is all evaporated, and the Particles of the Earth remain alone, they will reſt againſt each other, by their own Weight, and ſo by that means compoſe a hard Body. On the contrary, the *Parts* of Wax are pretty near equal; ſo that the groſſer Particles are agitated before any conſiderable Quantity of the ſmaller ones can fly away. And therefore all the Particles of a Piece of Wax being a little in Motion at the ſame time, compoſe together a ſoft Body.

32. *That the Heat needs not be very great, to harden Bodies.*

32. It may be obſerved alſo, that the *Heat* muſt be but moderate, *to harden Bodies*: For if it be very violent, it will make them *liquid*. And thus we ſee, that Flame melts not only Metals, but alſo Aſhes, Sand, Stones, and Flints, of a Compoſition of which all Sorts of Glaſs are made.

33. *How Heat rarifies ſome Bodies.*

33. From the different Degrees of Heat, and the various Texture of the Parts of which a Body is compoſed, we may conclude, that very different Effects will be produced: For firſt; If a Body, *whoſe Particles are very cloſe to one another*, be conſiderably hot, whatever the

Figure of theſe Particles be, ſo they be not exactly round, when they are agitated or turned round their Centers, their angular Points, or the Parts which are moſt diſtant from the Center, muſt neceſſarily meet one another, and turn one another out of the Way; whence it follows, that the Heat will cauſe a Rarefaction in this Body, as we ſee in Milk, and all other Lipuors; and alſo in moſt hard Bodies, in which few or none of their Particles fly off when they are hot: Thus red-hot Iron is ſomething bigger than when it is cold.

34. *How it condenſes others.*

34. But if *the Particles of a Body be very ſmooth, and eaſy to be put in Motion, and yet are ſo placed with reſpect to each other, as ſcarce to touch one another, ſo that the Compoſition is very rare*; a very little Heat coming upon it, and ſhaking the Particles, may cauſe them to approach nearer one another, and *the whole Body* may be by this means *condenſed.* And thus we experience, that Heat when it melts Snow, reduces it into a leſs compaſs.

35. *VVhy VVater, when it is very near freezing, is rarer than when it is not ſo cold.*

35. And becauſe the Particles of almoſt all liquid Bodies muſt every Moment bend themſelves, or ſome way alter their Figure, in order whereunto, they muſt be moved with ſufficient Force; therefore if the Heat, or that which forces them to move, or ſo agitates them as to make them Liquid as uſual, does almoſt wholly ceaſe, all that the Particles can do, with that little which they have remaining, will be to move themſelves without bending ſo much, as to join as near as they can together: And then the Liquor will be rarified a little, and after it is ſo rarified, the Addition of the leaſt degree of Heat, will cauſe its Parts to approach nearer one another again. Thus *Water is a little rarified before it freezes,* and is condenſed again by the leaſt Heat that can be. But becauſe ſome Skill and Pains is requiſite to prove this by Experience; I will ſet down the Means I made uſe of to make it appear ſenſibly.

36. *An Experiment to ſhow that VVater, when it is extremely cold, is rarified.*
Tab. III. Fig. 10.

36. I cauſed a Glaſs Veſſel to be made like that in the Figure, the largeſt Mouth of which is at A, and the other at B, the End of the ſmall Tube BC, which is very ſlender: I poured Water into the Hole A, 'till the Veſſel was full, and conſequently 'till it aroſe up to D, in the ſmall Tube, then I ſtopped up the Mouth A cloſe with ſoft Wax, and a Hog's-Bladder tied on: Having thus prepared it, if the Heat of the Air be ſo diminiſhed,

that the Water be very near freezing, * it will ſwell, and riſe up to the Mouth B, where it will ſometimes run over a little: Then, if we put our Hands or any other Thing that is warm, to the Veſſel, we ſhall ſee the Water condenſe it ſelf, and ſink in the ſmall Tube almoſt down to the Bottom C. It is true indeed, that if we continue to heat the Veſſel, the Water contained in it, will begin to dilate itſelf again, the Reaſon of which, is that which I have now given.

*37. That the Quantity of Heat, may be determined by the Rarefaction of the Air.*

37. Becauſe we can move our ſelves with greater Eaſe in the Air than in the Water, this is a Proof that the Parts of the Air are much finer than thoſe of Water. Wherefore the leaſt Heat that can be, muſt dilate the Air; and conſequently, *The Quantity of the Rarefaction of the Air, will very exactly ſhow the Quantity of Heat here on the Earth*; that is to ſay, we can judge that it is hotter, one Day of the Year than another, by obſerving in which of theſe two Days, the Rarefaction of the Air is greateſt.

38. *A Deſcription of a Thermometer.* Tab. IV. Fig. 1.

38. Now in order to make this Rarefaction ſenſible, there has been invented in our Days an Inſtrument called a *Thermometer*, pretty like that in the Figure: DE is a very ſmall Tube of Glaſs about two Foot long, like a Neck belonging to the Bottle A, which is Glaſs alſo, and about as big as a Tennis-Ball. The lower End is bent and made large, ſo as to form another Bottle marked F, which needs not be ſo big as the Bottle A, and has a ſmall Hole made in it at B.

39. *The Manner of preparing, and the Uſe of the Thermometer.*

39. The *Thermometer* is at firſt entirely empty, that is, full of Air only, part of which is forced out, by heating the Bottle A, at the ſame Time that the other Bottle F is dipped into a Veſſel of *Aqua-fortis*, tinctured of a Green Colour, by diſſolving a Piece of Copper in it. We chooſe *Aqua fortis* rather than common Water, becauſe it is not ſo ſubject to freeze, and does not ſo eaſily evaporate. As the Air remaining in the *Thermometer* grows cool, it has not Force enough to preſerve that Bulk which it had before, and ſo is obliged to retire up into the Glaſs, and leave Room for the *Aqua-fortis*, which by its own

---

Tab. III. Fig. 10.

* *It will ſwell*) Becauſe its Parts are made ſtiff, by the Mixture of *Nitrous* Particles, and of other Salts. (*See the Notes on Art.* 54.) However it muſt be acknowledged, that ſomething ought to be allowed for the Contraction of the Glaſs. For as Heat, by encreaſing the Motion of the Parts, dilates and extends Glaſs and other Bodies, ſo cold by ſtopping the Motion of their Parts contracts and condenſes Glaſs and other Bodies. *See the Experiments of the Acad. del Cimento*, p. 109, &c. The Water therefore a little before it freezes, riſes in the Tube CB, partly becauſe it is a little rarified, and partly becauſe the Glaſs AC is a little condenſed by the Cold.

Weight, aſſiſted by that of the external Air, gets into the Bottle F, and from thence riſes up in the Tube towards C. After this, the Inſtrument is taken out of the Veſſel in which it was dipped, and without doing any Thing more than fixing it in a Wooden Frame, marked with ſeveral Diviſions, it ſhows how much hotter it is at one time than another.

Tab. IV. Fig. 1.

40. *The Reaſon of this Uſe.*

40. For the more the Green Liquor is forced to deſcend by the Rarefaction of the Air in the upper Part of the Tube, the hotter it is in the Place where the *Thermometer* is fixed: And on the contrary, it is a Sign of greater Cold, when this Liquor riſes higher, becauſe this ſhows that the ſame Air has not Force ſufficient to preſerve its Bulk, but is obliged to give way to the *Aqua-fortis*, which the Weight of the external Air that preſſes upon the Hole B, continually forces to riſe up as high as it can in the Tube DF.

41. *That this Thermometer does not exactly diſtinguiſh all the Differences of the Heat.*

41. However, we muſt take care not to be deceived in the Judgement we make of the Heat, by barely looking on the *Thermometer*; becauſe the Weight of the Air being not always equal, it may be, that the Air will preſs more upon the Liquor contained in the Bottle F, at ſome Times than at others, and conſequently force it to riſe higher in the Tube FD, and may occaſion us to think that it is colder than it was before: when perhaps the Heat of the Air was neither greater nor leſs.

42. *A Deſcription of another Thermometer.* Tab. IV. Fig. 2.

42. This occaſioned the making another Sort of *Thermometer* not long ſince, which has but one Bottle of Glaſs only, and has a long ſlender Neck as is here repreſented. At the Hole A is put in as much Spirits of Wine as will fill the Bottle quite full, and the Neck alſo as high as the Place marked B, and then putting the End A into the Flame of a common Lamp ſuch as Workmen uſe, ſtop up the Mouth there, and then the Thermometer is finiſhed.

43. *Why the Heat condenſes the Air in this Thermometer.* Tab. IV. Fig. 2.

43. When the Heat of the Air increaſes, the Spirits of Wine dilate and riſe above B, and ſo force the Air in the Part of the Neck BA to condenſe. Which it may eaſily do, becauſe when it was incloſed here, it was very much dilated by the Flame which melted the Glaſs, in order to ſtop the Hole A. On the contrary, when the Weather grows cold, the Spirits of Wine contract into a leſs compaſs, and deſcend below the Place marked B, and permit the Air to extend it ſelf beyond its Limits. By this *Thermometer* therefore we judge whether it be more or leſs hot, by the riſing and falling of the Spirirs of Wine; and we need not fear

the Inequality of the Weight of the Air, becauſe it cannot get in, to make any Alteration in our Obſervations.

*44. A Defect in this Thermometer.*

44. Though the Fault in the foregoing *Thermometer* is remedied in this, yet has this another of as ill Conſequence, *viz.* that becauſe the Spirits of Wine dilate and condenſe but very ſlowly, we cannot ſoon enough perceive the Alteration that is made in the Heat or Coldneſs of the Air. And there is another Fault ſtill, (if it be not made larger than they uſually are) which is, that the Spirits of Wine, being not capable of a very great Rarefaction, its Riſing and Falling in the Neck of the Bottle will not be of ſo great Length, as to diſtinguiſh the ſmall Changes that happen in the Heat of the Air. But one Remedy of this, is, as I ſaid, [1] to make the *Thermometer* very large. I have one in which the Difference betwixt the greateſt and leaſt Height of the Spirits of Wine is above three Foot.

*45. Why Lime grows hot by having Water poured upon it.*

45. After what has been ſaid concerning Heat, there remains nothing more to be explained, but that which we experience in *Lime, when either Water is poured upon it, or it is put into Water*: And this may ſerve to explain why other hard Bodies grow hot as ſoon as certain Liquors enter into their Pores. In order to our Satisfaction in this Matter, we need only conſider, that the Stone of which Lime is made, has ſo very ſmall Pores that the Water can ſcarce enter into them; but after it is put into the Kiln, the Fire which penetrates it, carries away ſome of the internal Particles, and by that Means enlarges the Pores ſo much, that afterwards the Particles of the Water can eaſily enter, being only ſurrounded by the [2] Matter of the firſt Element: Wherefore being freed from the Matter of the Second Element, when they enter into the Pores, they can eaſily acquire all the Force of the Firſt Element in which they ſwim; ſo that moving them very quick, and being alſo pretty groſs, they have Force ſufficient to diſunite the Parts of the Lime, and to carry the ſmall Duſt of it along with them: And it is principally in the Agitation of this Duſt that the Heat of the Lime conſiſts.

---

[1] *To make the Thermometer*) This Inconvenience may be remedied by bending the Neck of the Thermometer into a Spiral; for by that means the Spirits of Wine will riſe eaſier and quicker, and the Difference of the Degrees of Heat may be more eaſily obſerved.

[2] *Matter of the Firſt Element*) See the Notes below on Art. 48.

*46. How a Cock of moiſt Hay grows hot.*

46. There is no need of wetting Hay in order to have it grow hot of it ſelf, it is ſufficient, *if it be heaped up whilſt it is green*; for every Spire of Graſs contains in it ſelf enough of the Moiſture which it ſucks out of the Earth; the Particles of which go and come out of one Spire into another, and ſwim at firſt in the Matter of the Firſt and Second Element, where conſequently they have only the Velocity of the Second Element. But afterwards when the Graſs grows dry, their Fibres ſhrink, and their Pores grow ſo ſmall, that the earthy Juice which runs out of one into another, ſwims in the Matter of the Firſt Element only, whoſe Velocity it then obeys, and ſo has a Force ſufficient to move the groſſer Parts of the Hay, and to heat them by that Means.

*47. Why Hay when it is ſcattered does not heat.*

47. I ſaid expreſsly, that the Hay muſt be heaped; that the Particles of the earthy Juice which come out of one Spire of Graſs may enter into another with all their Motion; becauſe if the Hay be ſcattered in the Meadow, the Juice which comes out of the Spires of Graſs, is diſſipated in the Air, and does not enter again into others, to cauſe that Agitation which is neceſſary to produce Heat.

*48. How two Liquors that are cold, grow hot when mixed together.*

48. As to the Heat which ariſes from the Mixture of two different Liquors, we need only imagine [1] that their Particles are of ſuch a Figure, that they can more cloſely unite when they are mixed together, than when they are

---

[1] *That their Particles*) Since there is no ſuch thing as this *Firſt Element*, by all theſe Experiments, *it appears, that in Fermentations, the Particles of Bodies, which almoſt reſt, are put into new Motions by a very potent Principle* (namely Attraction) *which acts upon them only when they approach one another; and cauſes them to meet and claſh with great Violence, and to grow hot with the Motion.* Newt. Opt. pag. 355. But becauſe Heat does not conſiſt in every Motion, but in a peculiar Motion (and of certain Particles perhaps) of the ſmall Particles of all Bodies; if the Fermentation or Ebullition ariſes from the Mixture of ſuch Sort of Salts as produce Cold. (*See the Notes on Art.* 54 *below*) the Fermentation may not only be attended with no Heat, but with a ſenſible Cold. Thus *Salt-petre* mixed with *Spirit of Vitriol* or other *acid Spirits*; alſo *volatile Salt of Urine* with *diſtilled Vinegar* or *Spirit of Vitriol*; alſo *Sal-Armoniac* and *Corroſive Snblimate* reduced to a Powder ſeparately, and then mixed together; if *diſtilled Vinegar* be poured upon them, they will be very cold during the Fermentation. (See *the Philoſoph. Tranſactions* N°. 274.) Alſo Sal Armoniac mixed with a double Quantity of Oil of Vitriol will bubble up and ſwell very much, and yet the Liquor at the ſame time feel very cold. See *the Exper. of the Acad. del Cimento, p.* 153. Nay further, from the Motion of ſome Salts which are naturally in all Water, it is, that Water it ſelf incloſed in a Glaſs, and put into a larger Veſſel full of Water, if red-hot Coals be thrown into the Water in this larger Veſſel, will firſt grow cold (as appears by applying a Thermometer to it) before it receives the Heat communicated by the Water which ſurrounds it.

ſeparate; and when they are ſo mixed, they ſwim in the Matter of the firſt Element only, at leaſt, during that little Time we ſee them ferment: Which is confirmed from hence, that after the Fermentation ceaſes, we find many Particles united together, and that they compoſe a great many ſmall hard Bodies.

*49. How to find out the Nature of Cold.*

49. Having thus explained the Form of a *hot Body*, it will be eaſy to determine that of a *cold Body*, which is the direct contrary: For if we conſider, that *Cold* extinguiſhes, or rather diminiſhes Heat, there will be no Doubt, but that thoſe are *cold Bodies*, which cauſe that particular Motion in which Heat conſiſts to ceaſe: Now we know that this Property belongs to three Sorts of Bodies: Firſt, to ſuch as have their Particles at Reſt with reſpect to each other. Secondly, to ſuch whoſe Particles may be in ſome Agitation, but leſs than thoſe of the hot Body to which they are applied; and Laſtly, Such whoſe Particles may be ſufficiently agitated with a Motion proper to excite in us the Senſation of Heat, but is attended with a different *Determination* which changes and ſtops the Motion which the Parts of our Body are in, and therefore cool it. The whole Difficulty therefore is, whether *Cold* conſiſts in one of theſe Modes only, or in each of the Three.

*50. That there are three Sorts of cold Bodies.*

50. Now ſince there are Three Sorts of cold Bodies, we may affirm, that *Cold* conſiſts in each of theſe three Modes. For, Firſt, The *Cold* which is common to all hard Bodies, cannot conſiſt in any Thing but what is common to them all, *viz.* in the Reſt of their Particles: Further, the *Cold* which we feel in Summer-time, when we go into the Water, eſpecially when we are up to the Middle, ariſes from hence, that the Particles of the Water having leſs Motion, than our Bodies have in all thoſe Parts which are near the Heart, they receive ſome Motion from us, and at the ſame time we loſe it. And of this we have a very convincing Proof, becauſe the ſame Water feels many times warm when we dip our Hands into it, becauſe they are not ſo hot as our Breaſt. Laſtly, It is evident, that the Breath which comes out of our Mouths, when we contract our Lips, or the Air which we put into Motion with a Fan, in the Heat of Summer, ought to cool us; if we conſider that the direct Motion of them diminiſhes or alters *a little* the Determination and Agitation of that Motion which is in the Part of the Body where we feel it cool.

*51. VVhy a cold Body, when it cools another, warms it ſelf.*

51. For a Confirmation of this, we may obſerve, that cold Bodies cannot make any Alteration in the Motion of hot Bodies, without as much altering that Mode in which their own Coldneſs conſiſts; that is, *a cold Body cannot cool another, without growing warm it ſelf*, and ſo we find by Experience.

*52. VVhy ſome Bodies are colder than others.*

52. We may obſerve further, that the more Particles a cold Body has at Reſt, the more thoſe of a hot Body to which they are applied, ought to loſe of their Motion, in order to communicate of their Heat to the other. Thus Marble having more Particles at reſt then Wood which has more Pores, and is full of a Liquid Matter which is in continual Motion, ought to feel colder than Wood.

*53. VVhy the Air near a cold Body is colder than in other Places.*

53. This alſo may ſerve to explain to us, *why the Air which is near Marble, or other Bodies, which have very ſmall Pores, ought not to be quite ſo warm, or ought to be a little cooler, than that which is in Places where ſuch Bodies are not.* For the groſſer Parts of the Firſt and Second Element, which cannot enter into the ſmall Pores of theſe Bodies, muſt neceſſarily be reflected back from them, and for the moſt part there is only the moſt ſubtil Matter about them, which is ready to enter in to them, or which cannot but come out of them, and conſequently this is not able to agitate the groſs Particles of the Air, which are proper to raiſe in us the Senſation of Heat.

*54. Why Snow feels colder than Marble.*

54. When I ſay that Bodies which have more Particles at reſt, ought to feel colder than others which have fewer, I ſuppoſe that the Particles of each of theſe Bodies are equally ſuſceptible of Motion; for if we ſuppoſe that the Particles of a Body are very eaſily to be put in Motion, and to loſe their Reſt, this Body, though very porous, ought much rather to receive within it ſelf the Agitation of a hot Body, and by that means cool it, than another Body which has fewer Pores and more Parts at reſt, but ſuch as are not ſo eaſie to be moved. And hence it is, that when we touch *Snow*, which is very rare, it cools us much more than when we touch *Marble*, whoſe Particles are much leſs capable of being put into Motion. [1]

55. The

---

[1] It is much more probable that Cold (which is not merely *comparative*, as that of *ſimply* Hard or Liquid Bodies is; but produces real Effects, ſuch as Freezing, Breaking in Pieces, Rarefaction, *&c.*) is owing to ſome Particles of *Nitre* and other *Salts* which

*55. How both Heat and Cold are drying.*

55. The Nature of Heat and Cold being ſuch as I have now deſcribed, if you call to mind what was before ſaid concerning the Form of moiſt or liquid Bodies; it will be eaſy to underſtand how ***Heat*** and ***Cold***, which are direct contrary Qualities, may yet, though by quite different and oppoſite Ways, produce one and ***the ſame Effect***, viz. ***Drying or Hardning***: As we experience in this, that the ſame Things, as *Clay*, for Inſtance, are made as *dry* by the *Cold* in the Winter, as they are by the greateſt *Heat* in the Summer: In order to underſtand the Reaſon hereof, we need only conſider, that the Parts of moiſt or liquid Bodies, ſuch as Water, loſe all their Motion when it is very cold; wherefore ſince ſuch Bodies by this Means acquire the Form of hard or dry Bodies, it is not at all ſurprizing, that Clay which is compoſed of Water and Earth, ſhould grow hard and dry, when the Weather is very cold, ſeeing the Water alone, to which all the Softneſs of the Clay is owing, freezes and grows hard. On the contrary, Heat cauſing the Parts of the Water, by whoſe Means the Matter of the Firſt and Second Element kept. the terreſtrial Parts of the Clay in ſome ſort of Motion, to evaporate; theſe terreſtrial Particles, by their own Gravity, will be at reſt with reſpect to each other, and by that Means compoſe a dry or hard Body.

*56. Why Heat and Moiſture are Principles of Corruption.*

56. Hence we may alſo ſee the Reaſon of a Maxim founded upon a Multitude of Experiments, *viz.* ***That Heat and Moiſture are Principles of Corruption.*** For a Body is corrupted when there is a very remarkable Change in it, which doubtleſs may be effected by ſuch a Motion as this. Now theſe two Qualities conſiſt in this Motion.

*57. Why Cold hinders Corruption.*

57. On the contrary, by Reſt, the Parts of Bodies are kept in the ſame Situation, and Cold cauſes them to be at Reſt; wherefore we may lay this down for a Maxim, ***That Cold hinders Corruption.***

*58. Why a great Cold crumbles Stones.*

58. However we muſt not affirm this to be a general Maxim. For if a Body has Pores large enough to contain a good deal of Liquor, and theſe Pores be filled with Water; becauſe Water cannot freeze without dilating it ſelf, it may ſo happen, that in freezing it may break

---

which are of certain Figures proper to excite that Senſation, and to produce thoſe Effects. And hence it is, that *Sal Armoniac* or *Salt-Petre*, or *Salt of Urine*, and many other *Volatile Alkalizate Salts*, make the Water with which they are mixed very cold. See above on Art. 48.

the Body, which contains it, in Pieces. And thus we ſee that ſoft Stones, which are expoſed to the Froſt, crumble and are reduced almoſt to Powder, before the Water which they have ſucked in, can get out.

*59. Why Froſt is hurtful to Plants.* 59. This perhaps is the Reaſon of what is ſaid by ſome of the Antients, *That a hard and penetrating Froſt has a Power of Burning.* However, it very often happens, that we aſcribe that Effect to Froſt, of which it is only a very diſtant Cauſe, and which is immediately produced by Heat. For Example, when we ſay, that Froſt corrupts Fruits and the Buds of Plants, we ought rather to ſay, 1 that the Heat corrupts them whilſt the Froſt is diſſolving, becauſe it cannot get into the Pores of the frozen Fruits, nor make the internal Parts ſo ſoft as they were before they were frozen, without having firſt intirely deſtroyed the Connexion and Order of the other Parts, nor conſequently without having altered the whole Compoſition of the Parts.

*60. Why Cold does not hurt ſome Parts of the Plants.* 60. For Proof of this we may obſerve, that it is the extreme Parts of the Plants, which always contain in them more Moiſture than the other Parts, that are almoſt the only ones corrupted by the Cold, and alſo that the Cold does not hurt them till after they are budded, for before they bud, the Cold does not hurt them; for which we can give 2 no other Reaſon but this, that Plants before they put forth their Buds, are not ſo full of Watry Juices, and their Pores are large enough to ſuffer the ſubtil Matter, to put thoſe Parts which may have loſt their Motion into Motion again, without neceſſarily deſtroying the Connexion of thoſe it firſt acts upon, and which are more external, before it comes to apply it ſelf to the other which are more internal.

*61. A Confirmation of this.* 61. For a Confirmation of the Truth of this *foregoing Art.* we may add, that in Northern Countries, where the Cold is ſo great, that a Man cannot go into the Air without running the hazard of having the extreme Parts of his Body frozen; *if their Noſes or Fingers be frozen, they do not loſe them, if they keep from the Fire, and rub them with handfuls of Snow.*

---

1. *That the Heat corrupts them*) However for the moſt part, the Particles of the Juice being dilated and made ſtiff by the Cold, break in Pieces, and ſpoil the tender Parts of the Buds, as is obſerved by Mr. *Le Clerc in his Phyſicks, Book* V. *Chap.* xiii. *Sect.* 65. Though this Defect does not appear till the following Heat ſhows it.

2. *No other Reaſon*) See *the Notes on the foregoing Art.*

*62. That the Qualities of Roughneſs and Smoothneſs have no Difficulty in them.*

62. Having thus explained the Four principal Qualities that come under the Senſe of Feeling, *viz.* *Hardneſs*, *Liquidneſs*, *Heat*, and *Cold*; there is no Difficulty in any other which may come under the ſame Senſe, ſuch as *Rough* and *Poliſhed.* For all theſe Qualities do ſo clearly follow from the Diſpoſition of the Parts of Matter only, that there is no need of any Explication of them; wherefore I ſhall paſs on to enquire into the Nature of *Taſtes*.

---

## CHAP. XXIV.

## *Of TASTES.*

*1. The Meaning of the Word Taſte.*

THE Word *Taſte* is uſed in Two Senſes. For Firſt, it ſignifies that Senſation which we commonly have when we drink or eat. Secondly, we underſtand by this Word ſomething, I know not what, in the Meat and Drink in which the Power of raiſing this Senſation of Taſte in us, conſiſts.

*2. That all Men do not perceive the ſame Taſte in the ſame Meat.*

2. Though *Taſte* in the former Senſe of the Word, cannot be exactly deſcribed, nor particularly known but by Experience, yet we may make this Obſervation, that all Men have not the ſame *Taſte* when they eat the ſame Meat, as appears from hence, that ſome Men can eat with Pleaſure thoſe Things which others have an Averſion to: Whence we may conclude: that it is the ſame with *Taſting* as with *Feeling*: For if we touch in the ſame Part, two Perſons, the one in perfect Health, the other juſt recovered of a Diſtemper, they will be very differently affected, *viz.* the one with an agreeable Tickling, and the other with an intollerable Pain; in like manner the ſame Meat may cauſe different Senſations in different Perſons.

*3. Ariſtotle's Opinion concerning Taſtes.*

3. As to *Taſte* in the other Senſe of the Word, which we are principally to inſiſt upon, *Ariſtotle*'s Opinion is, *That it is a Quality or Property of a moiſt Body ariſing from an earthy Dryneſs, and a Heat on being freſh boiled.* This Definition contains Three Things, every one of which have ſome Reſemblance of Truth. And firſt, I think *Ariſtotle* had Reaſon to ſay, that *Taſte* is a Property of a moiſt or liquid Body, becauſe thoſe that are perfectly dry or hard, have no Taſte 'till they are mixed with our Spittle. Further, if we conſider that Water has ſcarce any

ny Taſte, and Air none at all, though they be both moiſt Bodies, we muſt confeſs, that he had Reaſon to add ſomething more groſs, and of an earthy Nature. Laſtly, he ought to bring in Heat, becauſe we find by Experience, that in many Fruits it cauſes certain Taſtes which we did not perceive in them before they were prepared.

4. *That* Ariſtotle *has not explained what Taſte is.*

4. The Followers of *Ariſtotle* will readily agree to that Explication which I have given of his Definition of *Taſte*; but it muſt be owned, that though he has ſaid nothing but what is true, yet has he given us no Information at all; becauſe he has not explained what that Affection or Property of Body is which cauſes Taſte, nor wherein it conſiſts.

5. *A Miſtake in the Commentators upon* Ariſtotle.

5. Some have attempted to ſupply this Defect, by ſaying, that it is a Quality very like that Senſation which it raiſes in us; but they are not at all aware what Inconvenience this brings us into: For beſides that this gives to inanimate Bodies a Mode of Exiſtence, which does by no Means belong to them; it would follow from this Opinion, that two Men could never have different Taſtes of the ſame Meat or of the ſame Drink, contrary to what we have before proved.

6. *That Taſte conſiſts in the Groſneſs, Figure and Motion of the Parts of the Body which we taſte.*

6. On the contrary, ſince we are already aſſured, that when the ſame Meat cauſes different Senſations in two different Perſons, one of them muſt neceſſarily have a Senſation different from that in the Thing which raiſes the Senſation, we have Reaſon to think the ſame of the other likewiſe. It is probable therefore, that *the Faculty of Taſting in us*, is very like *the Faculty of feeling Pain*; that is to ſay, in order to bring this Power into Act, nothing more is required on the Part of thoſe Bodies which cauſe Taſte, but that they move [1] the ſmall Fibres of the Nerves of the Tongue in ſuch a manner as they ought to be moved, and as Nature has appointed, in order to the Perception of Taſte; the ſame as in order to feel Pain, nothing more is requiſite but to move in a certain manner the Nerves which are the Inſtruments of *Feeling*: And becauſe nothing can move another, unleſs it be in Motion it ſelf, and nothing can be applied to the Nerves of the Tongue, ſo as to have any Effect upon them, unleſs it be of a certain Bigneſs, and of a certain Figure:

---

[1] *The ſmall Fibres*) Concerning the Organ of Taſte, and its Deſcription. See *Regis's Phyſ. Book* VIII. *Part* II. *Chap.* iv. *and the famous* Lewenhook's *Epiſt.*

I therefore think, that the Form of a Body which cauſes Taſte, conſiſts in *the* [1] *Bigneſs, Figure and Motion of its Particles*, and that from the Difference which there may be in theſe Three Things, there may ariſe different Taſtes.

*7. Why ſome Bodies have no Taſte.*

7. And this is confirmed by a Truth, which follows from what I have ſuppoſed, namely, that if the Particles of a Body be ſo ſubtil, that they will ſcarcely or not at all move the Organ of Taſte, that Body will have no Taſte. And thus we find by Experience, that Water has ſcarce any Taſte, and Air none at all.

*8. A particular Reaſon why Air has no Taſte.*

8. We may alſo give a particular Reaſon why Air has no Taſte, *viz.* becauſe it ſwims upon our Spittle without mixing with it, ſo as to make any Impreſſion upon the Nerves of the Tongue; by which we may alſo underſtand why fat Liquors have not ſo ſharp a Taſte as thin Liquors have.

*9. Why hard Bodies for the moſt part have no Taſte.*

9. Further, if a Body be of ſuch a Nature, as that none of thoſe Parts are ſeparated from it, which are capable of penetrating the Pores of the Tongue, in order to move the Fibres of the Nerves, that Body ought to have no Taſte. And ſo we find, in moſt Metals, and alſo in Glaſs and Flint Stones.

*10. How Metals may acquire a very ſtrong Taſte.*

10. Nor are we to think that there is any Thing in theſe Bodies, that cauſes them to have no Taſte, but only, the not being divided; for the Salts which belong to the Compoſition of Glaſs, taſted very ſtrongly before they were concreted; and Metals which are reduced to a very fine Powder by the Chymiſts, are of ſo ſtrong a Taſte as not to be born.

*11. Why warm Meats have a ſtronger Taſte than thoſe that are cold.*

11. Since Heat always increaſes the Motion of a Body; and ſince it is alſo very certain, that the more a Body is in Motion, the more capable it is of moving others to which it is applied; it follows, that when Meat is hot, it muſt neceſſarily have a ſtronger Taſte, than when it is cold; as every Day's Experience ſhows us.

*12. Why Meat, when it is made ready, has a different Taſte from what it had when raw.*

12. It is alſo very eaſy to ſee, that the Heat, in making Meat ready, cauſes the Particles to ſtrike one againſt another, ſo that the Corners of many of them muſt be

---

[1] *The Bigneſs, Figure and Motion*) Others contend, that not all the Particles, but the Salts mixed with the Particles of all Bodies, are the Cauſes of all Taſtes; which is handled at large by Mr. *Le Clerc in his Phyſ. Book* V. *Chap.* xii. And indeed this is a very probable Opinion; but whether the Particles of the Salt only, or any other Particles, be the Cauſe of Taſtes, it comes to the ſame Thing; for we muſt neceſſarily at laſt have recourſe to the Bigneſs, Motion and Figure of thoſe Particles. *See the Notes on Art.* 38.

broken off, and they by this Means divided into ſmaller Particles than they were before, and alſo of a different Figure; and this is the Reaſon, why Meat, when it is made ready, has a different Taſte from what it had when raw.

*13. That there ought to be a great many very different Taſtes.*

13. As to the Difference that there is in Taſtes; ſince we have made them to conſiſt chiefly in the Difference of the Figures of the Bodies ſo taſting; of which Figures there may be infinite Variety; this agrees with Experience, which diſcovers to us new Taſtes every Day.

*14. A Miſtake of thoſe who think that all Taſtes ariſe from a Mixture of two Extremes.*

14. This being ſo, I cannot approve of their Opinion, who contend for two extreme Taſtes, from a Compoſition of which they imagine all others to ariſe. Beſides, that it would follow from thence, that all Taſtes would differ only in degree; which is contrary to Experience, which ſhows us, that there is a greater Difference than ſo.

*15. That Sweet ought not to be oppoſed to Bitter.*

15. I do not ſay that there can be no Inſtances given of ſuch extreme Taſtes, which raiſe in us the moſt different Senſations; but if any ſuch are to be allowed, I ſhould rather oppoſe a *ſharp* or *acid* Taſte, to a *bitter* Taſte, and not a *Sweet* to a *Bitter*, as is commonly done; becauſe we do not find that a *ſharp* Taſte ariſes from the Mixture of *Sweet* and *Bitter*; but on the contrary, *Sweet* ſeems rather to ariſe from the Mixture of the other Two, as we experience in Fruits, the *Sweetneſs* of which ſeems to be a Medium, betwixt an *Acid* and a *Bitter*.

*16. What Acidneſs conſiſts in.*

16. To attempt to treat of every particular Taſte, would be to undertake a Thing impoſſible, and there are many Things wanting in order to ſpeak with Certainty of the principal and moſt common ones. However amongſt theſe, ſome ſeem more eaſy to be underſtood than others, ſuch as *Acid* or *Soure* like *Citron-Juice*. For as this Taſte pricks the Tongue, we may from thence conclude, that Bodies which affect us in that manner, conſiſt of a great Number of *long and ſtiff Particles, which in ſome meaſure reſemble ſmall Needles.*

*17. Why all Fruits before they are ripe are ſoure.*

17. This will ſeem the more probable, if we conſider, that this *ſoure* Taſte is common to all Fruits before they are ripe; for this is a Sign that *Soureneſs* conſiſts in ſomething which is common to them all; but we cannot conceive any Thing elſe common to them all, but this Diſpoſition of their Parts, for they are all compoſed of the Juice of the Earth, which ſtops in the long ſtreight Pores of the Stock and Branches which bear the Fruits.

*18. What the ſweet acid Taſte of Fruits conſiſts in.*

18. That we may underſtand ſomething of other Taſtes, we may conſider the Progreſs of Fruits 'till they come to Maturity; for if we can but once know what Figure the Particles are of, when we experience a certain Taſte, it will be eaſy to conclude, that this Taſte conſiſts in this Sort of Figure. Firſt then, ſince all Fruits are ripened by the Heat of the Earth and Air: (whether this Heat be cauſed by the Rays of the Sun, as commonly happens in Fruits that grow in Gardens, or whether it be produced by Fires kindled under or upon the Earth, as when Fruits are made to grow in Houſes, in the midſt of Winter;) we cannot help thinking, that a great many Particles of theſe Fruits are put into ſo great Motion, as to ſtrike againſt each other in different Manners, ſo that ſome of the longeſt of them are broken into ſhort ones, others have their Points only beaten off, and others are made entirely round. And then it is, that the Fruits have a *ſweet acid* Taſte. Whence it is reaſonable to conclude, that *the ſweet acid Taſte of Fruits conſiſts in this, that ſome of their Particles are long and ſtiff, and prick the Tongue, at the ſame time that a great many other of them are leſs penetrating, and ſo ſlip over the Fibres of the Nerves, without producing any thing more than a kind of Tickling.*

*19. How they become entirely ſweet.*

19. We may obſerve further, that the riper Fruits grow, the more their Particles are broken, blunted and made ſmall; wherefore ſince the Fruits are then *ſweeter*, we ought to conclude, that the great *Sweetneſs* of Fruits ariſes from hence, that they have a far greater Number of thoſe Particles which can only tickle, than of thoſe which prick.

*20. What Bitterneſs conſiſts in.*

20. But if Fruit continues ripening too long; there is no doubt, but that all its Particles will be ſo bruiſed, that none of them will be able to prick the Tongue agreeably, but they will only tickle it in a diſagreeable manner: Now Fruits when they are too ripe, become *bitter*; whence it is reaſonable to preſume, that *Bitterneſs conſiſts in this, that all the Particles are ſo broken, blunted, and made ſmall to that Degree, that there remains no long and ſtiff ones amongſt them.*

*21. Why Meats when they are overmade ready, become bitter.*

21. And this is confirmed from hence, that in thoſe Things which are made ready by Art, the Parts of them which are burnt, and whoſe Particles are beaten one againſt another, and have their Corners broken off, are always *bitter*, as we experience in *Cruſts of Bread*, and in *Roaſt-meat when laid too near the Fire.*

*22. Why ſweet Things may be reſolved into two other, the one acid, and the other bitter.*

22. The Nature of *Soure, Sweet and Bitter* being thus explained, we ſhall no longer be ſurprized, that ſweet Things, ſuch as Wine, ſuppoſe, may be reſolved into two other, the one of which is *ſoure*, or *acid*, the other *bitter*; for that which makes any Thing ſweet, (with ſuch a Sweetneſs as is agreeable to the Taſte) is compoſed of two Sorts of Particles, in the *one* of which *Acidneſs* conſiſts, and in the other, *Bitterneſs*.

*23. Why bitter Things are heating, and acid Things cooling.*

23. Neither ſhall we any longer be ſurprized, that *Orange-Peal, Treacle*, and many purging Medicines have a heating Quality, and that *acid* Things, ſuch as the *Juice of Orange* and *Verjuice*, are commonly cooling; ſince we are aſſured, that Heat conſiſts in ſuch a Sort of Motion, as the ſubtil, round and blunt Particles of *bitter* Things, are capable of exciting and continuing; and that on the contrary, the long Particles, of which *acid* Things are compoſed, being ſomething of the Nature of Water, are more proper to hinder Motion, that is, to quench Fire, than to kindle it; wherefore they ought to be reckoned amongſt cold Things.

*24. How a bitter Thing may be cooling.*

24. Neither is it inconſiſtent with what has been ſaid, that we ſometimes find our ſelves cooler than we were before, upon eating *bitter* Things; for there are ſome of them ſo eaſy to be corrupted, that they can produce but a very ſmall Heat, ſuch as is ſcarce to be perceived; but yet this Heat may be enough to cauſe ſuch an Agitation in the Particles of our Blood, as to carry off ſome noxious Matter which made it move too quick before, and by this Means it will be put into a more quiet State; and thus we may feel the Heat abated, and our ſelves cooler than we were before.

*25. That the Alteration of Taſtes ariſes from the Alteration of the Figure of the Particles of the Body which we taſte.*

25. I ſhall not inſiſt any longer upon the Explication of particular Taſtes. It would be very tedious to go through them all, and require a great Number of very exact Experiments, which I have not made, nor perhaps ever ſhall. But to confirm my own Opinion as much as I can, *that their Difference conſiſts in the different Figures of the Particles of the Body which we taſte*; I will examine one particularly, and make it appear, that as often as our Reaſon ſhews us, that there is any Alteration in the Figure of the Particles, Experience ſhews us alſo that there is ſome Alteration in the Taſte.

*26. An Inſtance in Wine, and that the Wood of the Vine ought not to have any Taſte.*

26. Let us take *Wine* for an Example, and conſider it from the very Beginning, 'till it degenerates into ſomething that is not at all like Wine. I obſerve in the firſt place, that the *Moiſture* of the Earth, becauſe it is com-

poſed of the moſt minute Particles of it, has ſcarce any Taſte, and though in the Pores of the Wood of the Vine it grows in groſſer Particles, and ſuch as are able to move the Nerves of the Tongue; yet becauſe it ſticks among the Parts of the Wood, and is not eaſily diſingaged from it; therefore it excites but a very ſmall Senſation in thoſe who chew the Wood.

27. *That a Bunch of Grapes, when it is firſt formed, ought to have very little Taſte.*

27. Further, ſince the Particles of the Juice which get into the Air and diſtill through the Stalk of the Bunch, in order to form the Grapes, ſtick together, and cannot eaſily be ſeparated; it follows, that they can apply themſelves to the Superficies of the Tongue only, and conſequently that they can raiſe but a ſmall Senſation ſcarce to be perceived. And ſo we find by Experience.

28. *Whence ariſes the very ſharp Taſte of Verjuice.*

28. But ſome time after, when the Particles, of which the ſmall Grapes are compoſed, are ſeparated from each other, either by the Heat of the Air which agitates them gently, or by the Acceſſion of more ſimilar Particles which thruſt themſelves in to increaſe the Bulk of them; it is manifeſt, that they ought then to act ſeparately, and to raiſe the Senſation of a very ſharp Taſte, ſuch as we experience in Verjuice.

29. *How Grapes grow ſweet.*

29. And the Heat of the Air, which increaſes as the Fruit ripens, continuing to move the Particles of the *Grapes*, it is evident, that they muſt be more and more blunted thereby, and ſome of them made ſo very ſmall, as only to tickle the Tongue agreeably, and to excite that Senſation of *Sweetneſs* which we feel in chewing the *ripe Grapes*.

30. *Whence it is that the Wine is ſharp if it rains during the Vintage.*

30. We ſee alſo, and it is an Obſervation worth taking Notice of, that if it be wet Weather about the Time of gathering the Grapes, the Water which ſinks into the Earth, will afford too much Nouriſhment to the Grapes: Wherefore as there are too great a Number of long Particles, which there is not time for breaking or blunting, it follows, that the Grapes will not be ſo ſweet as they would otherwiſe have been. And this is often found by Experience: For if it rains a little before the Vintage, the Wine is ſharper, or, as they call it, harſher. This the People of *Languedoc* ſeem to be aware of, who are at the Trouble, a little before the Seaſon of gathering the *muſcadine Grapes*, to twiſt the Stalks of all the Bunches, that ſo they may ripen, and not receive any more new Nouriſhment.

31. *The Reaſon why new VVine is ſweet.*

31. For a further Confirmation of what I have ſaid, it is worth obſerving, that if we taſte of the Juice of the Grapes *juſt after they are preſſed*, there ought to be very little Difference from the Taſte of the Grapes themſelves; and it ought alſo to continue its Sweetneſs for ſome time after it is put into the Veſſel, provided the Veſſel be well ſtopped. For though, while it is working, many of the long Particles which are intangled in one another, have an Opportunity of getting clear, and ſo are capable of pricking; yet however they cannot cauſe any ſharp Senſation, becauſe they act in Company with a great many others which have had ſufficient time to be broken and made ſmall, having been preſerved in the Veſſel carefully ſtopped up: And this agrees very well with the ſweet Taſte which we find in *New Wine before it is fined.*

32. *VVhy VVine grows ſharper by working.*

32. If while the Wine is working in the Preſs or Vat, and while it continued to work in the Veſſel, the moſt ſubtil Particles, which have moſt Motion, and which by reaſon of their Smallneſs were leſs ingaged with the other, be permitted to fly away, and evaporate into the Air through the Bung-hole, which is left open for that Purpoſe, there muſt neceſſarily remain fewer of thoſe Particles which tickle the Tongue, and more of thoſe which prick it. And this is the Reaſon why we ought then to find the Taſte ſharper, that is, ſuch as we experience in *Wine not quite fit to drink.*

33. *How it loſes this Sharpneſs.*

33. After this, we may conſider the Wine in two Conditions: Firſt, let us ſuppoſe it ſtopped up in the Veſſel ſo cloſe, that it has not the leaſt Communication with the external Air; in which Caſe ſome of its Particles will be broken and blunted, and a great many of thoſe which remain whole, will loſe their Stiffneſs, and become plyable, by rubbing againſt one another, and bending in that ſtrait Place in which they are incloſed; and by this Means they will be leſs capable of ſhaking the Nerves of the Tongue: Wherefore the Wine will no longer taſte *Sharp*, but attain that Sweetneſs which we experience in it when it is *fit to drink.*

34. *How it may become very ſweet.*

34. And without doubt the Sweetneſs would increaſe continually, if the Wood of the Veſſel did not change the Liquor a little, and permit the more ſubtil Parts of it to evaporate through its Pores. For a Proof of which, we may remember, that Wine kept many Years in earthen Bottles, well ſtopped, and put into Sand in the Bottom of

the Cellar, will in length of Time become as ſweet as Honey.

*35. How it may grow ſharp.*

35. Suppoſe now, that the Veſſel be not ſtopped; the long Particles which ſlip by one another, may be ſo worn as to be a little diminiſhed, but there is no Neceſſity that they ſhould become limber and pliable: For thoſe of them that are moſt limber, are at liberty to evaporate through the Hole of the Veſſel, and thoſe which remain have the more room to move in without being forced to bend themſelves. So that all the Alteration that will happen to the long Particles which remain, is, that they will become more ſharp, and the Wine will be converted into a Liquor which will prick the Tongue more ſharply, that is, it will be turned into *Vinegar*.

*36. How Vinegar may be turned into a Liquor that may have no Taſte.*

36. If the Particles ſtill continue to be thus moved for a conſiderable time, they will at laſt be ſo worn, and become ſo very ſlender, as to be extremely pliable, inſomuch, that they will have no Power at all to move the Nerves of the Tongue; and then the Liquor compoſed of them can have no Taſte, and be very little different from Water; as we find by Experience.

*37. A remarkable Experiment.*

37. For a final Confirmation of what I have ſaid concerning Taſtes, I will relate an Experiment which I made my ſelf: I took a Pewter Pot, and having made a Hole in the Bottom of it, I ſtopped it with a Piece of Cloth, and then filled it about half full of very fine Sand, ſo well waſhed, as not in the leaſt to tincture the Water which drain'd through, and afterwards well dried: After this, I put in a Quart of full-bodied Red-Wine, which diſtilling through the Hole below, there came out about a Pint of clear Liquor like Water, which had no Taſte: Then perceiving that the Drops began to be tinged with Red, I took away the Veſſel which I had ſet under, and put another in its Room, into which there ran pretty near the other Pint; and this laſt was much leſs red, and had a much fainter Taſte than the Wine it ſelf before it paſſed through the Sand. Laſtly, mixing this Liquor with the other, which was very clear, the Reſult was a Liquor of a very faint Colour, and ſcarce any Taſte.

*38. The Concluſion of this Chapter.*

38. I think no Body that knows what Sand is, can find out any other Reaſon for the Alteration of the Taſte of the Wine by paſſing through it but this, that the Particles of the Wine being forced to go through very narrow winding Paſſages, are bent a great many times all

Ways, and [1] have the Figure and Condition of them changed: From whence we may conclude, that [2] *the Form of all Bodies that have any Taſte conſiſts in the Diſpoſition and Figure of their Particles.*

1. *Have the Figure*, &c.) The Figure of them is not altered, but only the Parts which have no Colour or Taſte, are ſeparated from the red Parts which have a Taſte.

2. *The Form of all Bodies*, &c.) That Taſte conſiſts wholly in the Figure and Compoſition of the Parts is clearly demonſtrated by the famous Mr. *Boyle*, from the ſurprizing Alteration of Taſtes, by variouſly compounding of Bodies. I think it worth while briefly to propoſe the Experiments made by that excellent Perſon, becauſe they ought to be kept in Memory.

Firſt, *From two Bodies, one of which is very acid and corroſive, the other alkalious aud fiery, may ariſe a Body without almoſt any Taſte.* This is done by a certain Compoſition of *Spirit of Nitre* and *Nitre fixed* per deliquium.

Secondly, *A Body that has ſcarce any Taſte may be ſeparated into two Bodies of a very ſharp Taſte, yet very different from each other.* This is done by diſtilling the moſt refined *Salt of Nitre by Inflammation*, or with a Mixture of Clay which has it ſelf no Taſte.

Thirdly, *From two Bodies, one of which is very bitter, and the other very ſalt, may ariſe a Body which has no Taſte.* This is done by ſprinkling *Cryſtals of Silver* diſſolved in *Aqua-fortis* with *Brine* or *Salt Water*, and then melting and preparing them on the Fire till they come to a *Luna cornea* as the Chymiſts call it.

Fourthly, *From two Bodies mixed together, one of which is very ſweet, and the other very ſalt, may ariſe alſo a Body which has no Taſte.* This is done by pouring a certain Quantity of Spirit of *Sal Ammoniac* or *Salt of Urine* upon *red Lead* diſſolved in Vinegar, or *Sugar of Lead* diſſolved in a proper *Menſtruum*.

Fifthly, *From two Bodies, one of which is acid, and the other has no Taſte, may ariſe a Body very bitter.* This is done by ſtraining *Aqua-fortis* ſaturated with diſſolved *Silver*: For it will afford very bitter *Cryſtals*.

Sixthly, *From two Bodies mixed together, one of which is inſipid, and the other very corroſive, may ariſe a Body ſweeter than Sugar.* This is done by pouring the beſt *Aqua-fortis* upon *red Lead*, and then putting it over a moderate Fire till it is ſaturated.

Seventhly, *From the ſweeteſt Bodies of all, without mixing any other Bodies with them, may be extracted very corroſive Liquors, ſuch as will diſſolve certain Bodies.* Thus a Spirit that will diſſolve *Copper* may be extracted from *Sugar* or *Honey*.

Eighthly, *A Body as bitter as can be, may be ſeparated into two Bodies, one of which is very acid, and the other without any Taſte.* Thus a very acid *Spirit* may be extracted from *Cryſtals of Silver* diſtilled over a very hot Fire, and a *Body without any Taſte* will remain at the Bottom.

Laſtly, *The ſame Body diſſolved in different Liquors, as* Aqua fortis, Aqua regia, *Spirit of Salt, diſtilled Vinegar, Spirit of Urine*, &c. *will have a different Taſte in each of them.* So alſo, *the ſame Liquor as* Aqua-fortis, *mixed with different Bodies, will have different Taſtes*, thus with Silver it will be *bitter*, with Lead it will be *ſweet*, with Copper it will be *intollerable*. See *Boyle of the Production of Taſtes*.

# CHAP. XXV.

## Of SMELLS.

*1. What is meant by the Word Smel.,*

BY the Word *Smell*, we may firſt underſtand that particular Sort of Senſation which is raiſed in us by the Impreſſion of certain Bodies upon [1] the Nerves of the internal Parts of the Noſe: And we may alſo underſtand by it, *that* in the Body which ſmells, in which the Power of exciting the Senſation of Smell in us, conſiſts.

*2. That the Senſation of Smell is not alike in all Perſons.*

2. Every Body knows by their own Experience what Smell is in the former Senſe of the Word, but it is impoſſible to deſcribe and make ſuch Perception known to others. All that we can ſay, is, that the ſame Object does not raiſe the ſame Senſation in all Perſons, a great many finding certain Perfumes agreeable to them, which others cannot bear.

3. *That* Ariſtotle *has not defined what Smell is.*

3. This being ſo, we ſhall only endeavour to find out what *Smell* is with reſpect to the Body ſmelling. *Ariſtotle* has not defined it at all in that Chapter where he treats expreſly of Smells, and [2] where he makes this Excuſe, that Men have not their Smell ſo perfect as other Creatures.

4. *The Opinion of the* Ariſtotelians.

4. Some of his Followers think they underſtand what he means [3] from that Place where he ſays, that the Inſtant we perceive any Thing, we become like the Object which acts upon us to cauſe that Senſation: And upon this Foundation it is, that they contend that Smell in the Object is ſomething very like that Senſation which it raiſes in us. To which they add, that Smell ariſes from the Mixture of hot and cold, dry and moiſt, but ſo that the hot and the dry prevail moſt.

*5. A Confutation of this Opinion.*

5. But beſides, that this Opinion aſcribes to inanimate Bodies, a manner of Exiſtence which agrees to thoſe only that are animated, which cannot be; it would follow, that the ſame Smells muſt be equally agreeable to all Perſons, contrary to what was obſerved before. To which we may add, that it is wholly inconceivable, (ſup-

---

[1] *The Nerves of the internal Parts*) For the Organ of Smelling, and the Deſcription of it. See *Regis Phyſ.* B.8. *Part* II. *Chap.* v.

[2] *VVhere he makes this Excuſe*) *It is not ſo evident what Smell is, as what Darkneſs or Light or Colour are. The Reaſon is, becauſe we have not this Senſation very perfect, but worſe than many other Animals; For Man's Smell is very bad.* Ariſt. de Anima. lib. 2. cap. 9.

[3] *From that Place*) See the Notes on Chap. xxiii. Art. 7.

poſing the Idea's which the *Ariſtotelians* give us of the four principal Qualities that come under the Senſe of Touching to be true) that the Mixture of them ſhould produce any Thing elſe but Warmneſs, which will be more or leſs dry or moiſt, according as it has more or leſs of thoſe Qualities mixed with it, which has no Similitude at all to that Idea which they give us of Smell. Laſtly, If this Mixture were Smell, as we perceive it by Touch, it ought to raiſe a Senſation like to it ſelf in all Places where the *Organ* of Touch is; and then we ought to ſmell with our Hands as well as with our Noſes; which is contrary to Experience.

*6. What the Nature of Smells conſiſts in.*

6. If to this it be anſwered; that That which cauſes the Senſation of Warmneſs, when it acts upon the Hand, may alſo excite the Senſation of Smell, when it acts upon the Noſe, Nature having ſo ordered it: I agree with them. But becauſe I know nothing elſe in Bodies but ***Magnitude, Figure*** and ***Motion,*** I cannot think there is need of ſuppoſing any Thing elſe to make them capable of impreſſing Smell upon the *Organ of Smelling:* Wherefore I am of Opinion, that the ſame Particles which raiſe the Senſation of Taſte, when applied to the Tongue, may alſo raiſe the Senſation of Smell, when being ſo very ſmall to fly about like Vapours or Exhalations, they come to tickle thoſe two extended Parts of the Brain which anſwer to the moſt inward Receſs of the Noſe.

*7. Why Smells are more perceived when it is hot, than when it is cold.*

7. This may be proved from hence: Firſt, That we experience, that the greater the Heat is, and conſequently the more capable of making a greater Number of ſuch Particles as cauſe Smell, to fly off; the further do Bodies extend their Smell: And on the contrary, as the Cold keeps their Particles at reſt, and hinders them from exhaling, ſo it is the Cauſe of their Smell's being leſs perceived.

*8. Why certain Bodies ceaſe to ſmell.*

8. Further, we obſerve, that a great many Bodies ſmell no longer than whilſt they are moiſt, that is, ſo long as ſome of their Particles are in Motion; and that they ceaſe to ſmell when they are quite dry, or have all their Particles at reſt.

*9. How Bodies which ſeem to have no Smell, may ſend forth ſome Smell.*

9. Laſtly, One of the moſt evident Proofs that we have to ſhow that Smells conſiſt in the Evaporation of certain Particles, is this; that moſt hard Bodies, which do not of themſelves, as we ſay, raiſe the Senſation of Smell, when they come to be burned, or only to be rubbed one againſt another, appear to have a Smell; becauſe by theſe Means ſome of their Particles are made to evaporate.

Thus *Sealing-Wax*, when it is lighted, raiſes a Smell, which was not perceived before. And thus Iron rubbed againſt Iron, and one Flint againſt another, raiſe a Smell alſo which was not perceived before.

*10. Why ſome Bodies have never any Smell.*

10. I do not however pretend to affirm, that all Sorts of Particles which are carried off from all Sorts of Bodies, ought indifferently to raiſe the Senſation of Smell; For in order thereto, there ought to be a certain Motion of the *Organ* of Smell, and a certain Force to ſhake it; and there may be alſo Particles ſo very ſmall as not to be able to ſhake it the leaſt that is poſſible: Thus, the Air which we breathe, and the Vapours which riſe out of Water, have no Smell at all; and, on the contrary, there may be others ſo large as that they may not come to the *Organ* at all, or if they do come to it, are rather capable of quite ruining it, than of ſhaking it in ſuch a manner as may raiſe the Senſation of Smell.

*11. Wherein the Difference of Smells conſiſts.*

11. The Difference of *Smells* depends upon the ſame Cauſe as the Difference of Taſtes does, that is, [1] *upon the Difference there is in the Bigneſs and Figure of the Par-*

---

[1] *Upon the Difference*) That Smell, in the ſame manner as Taſtes, conſiſts entirely in the Compoſition and Figure of the Parts, is very evident from the following Experiments made by the famous Mr. *Boyle.*

Firſt, *From two Bodies mixt together, each of which is without any Smell, may be raiſed a very ſtromg urinous Smell.* This will be, if *unſlacked Lime* and *Sal Ammoniac* be beaten together.

Secondly, *By a Mixture of common Water, which has no Smell, a Body which has alſo no Smell, may be made to ſend forth preſently a ſtrong Smell.* Thus *Camphire* diſſolved in *Oil of Vitriol* has no Smell, but mixed with *Water*, it immediately ſends forth a ſtrong Smell.

Thirdly, *Componnd Bodies may ſend forth Smells which are not at all like the Smells of the Bodies ſeparate.* Thus *Oil of Turpentine* mixed with double the Quantity of *Oil of Vitriol*, after it is diſtilled, will not ſmell of Turpentine but of Brimſtone; and that which remains in the Retort, if it be forced with a ſtronger Fire, will reſemble the Smell of diſtilled Oil of Wax.

Fourthly, *A great many Smells may be raiſed only by Motion and Agitation.* Thus a Multitude of Bodies, as *Glaſs*, *Stones*, &c. which, though heated, ſend forth no Smell, yet if agitated and bruiſed with a particular Motion, ſend forth a very ſtrong Smell; and there comes a Smell like that of a Roſe, out of *Beech-wood* while it is turning.

Fifthly, *A Body that has a ſtrong Smell, mixed with another Body that has no Smell, may loſe all its own Smell.* Thus if *Aqua fortis* not too well dephlegmated be poured upon *Salt of Tartar*, till it ceaſes fermenting; that Liquor, after evaporation, will afford Cryſtals without any Smell, like Salt of Nitre; but if they be burnt, they ſmell as bad as can be.

Sixthly, *Ont of two Bodies mixed together, one of which has the worſt of Smells, and the other not a very good one, may ariſe a pleaſant aromatick Smell.* This is done by a certain Mixture of *Aqua fortis* or *Spirit of Nitre* with *inflammable Spirit of Wine.*

Seventhly, *Spirit of Wine mixed with a Body that has ſcarce any Smell, may produce a pleaſant aromatick Smell.* Thus an equal Quantity of *inflammable Spirit of Wine* and *Oyl of Dantzick Vitriol*, mixed *ticles which are exhaled from the Body that ſmells.* As will be evident to any one who conſiders that thoſe Things which have the ſame Taſte, have alſo the ſame Smell: Thus all ſharp Bodies have a ſharp Smell, and all bitter Bodies have a Smell that has ſomething of Bitterneſs in it.

12. *How the ſame Body may ſend forth different Smells one after another.*

12. And this is ſo true, that when we are once aſſured that the Particles of certain Bodies have changed their Figures, we always find by Experience, that they have changed their Smell alſo. Thus, *the Matter gendred in the Abſceſs of a Land Beaver,* expoſed for ſome Days together in the Sun, in a hot Country (which without doubt daſhes the Parts one againſt another, and alters their Figure) ſenſibly alters its Smell, and as ſtrong as it was, it becomes firſt tolerable, and at laſt is turned into that valuable Perfume, which we call *Musk.*

13. *How the Bulk of ſmelling Bodies diminiſhes by little and little.*

13. From what we have ſaid concerning the Nature of ſmelling Bodies, we may conclude, that both their Bulk and their Weight diminiſh by little and little. Thus we find by Experience thoſe Smells to be quickly over which are raiſed by burning: But as to thoſe which we perceive without heating the Bodies, ſuch as thoſe of *Musk* and *Civet,* [1] it is a long time before they are ſenſibly diminiſhed, becauſe the Motion of their Particles is very ſlow, and but a few of them are exhaled at a time. And as but a few of them are exhaled at once, they could not move the Senſe, without meeting and mixing with a great many others, which were ſometime before evaporated, and flew about the ſmelling Body.

---

together, and digeſted, and then diſtilled, will afford a penetrating Spirit of a very pleaſant Smell.

Eighthly, *A Body of the moſt pleaſant Smell, without mixing any other Body with it, may degenerate into the worſt ſtink.* Thus *the Spirit mentioned in the foregoing Experiment,* if it be kept ſtopped up in a Bottle, will in a ſhort time degenerate into the ſtrong Smell of Garlick.

Laſtly, *Out of two Bodies, one of which has no Smell, the other a bad Smell, may ariſe a pleaſant Smell like that of Musk.* This is done by putting *Pearls* into *Spirit of Vitriol.* For while they are diſſolving, they ſend forth a pleaſant Smell. See *Boyle of the Production of Smells.*

[1] *It is a long time,* &c.) Whoever conſiders the infinite Diviſibility of Matter, and the inconceivable Smallneſs of the Parts of Light which always find an eaſy and open Paſſage through Glaſs and Diamonds on all Sides, and every Way, will, I believe, have no doubt, but that it is wholly owing to the *Smallneſs* only of the Particles emitted, though they may be very much larger than the Particles of Light, that Bodies which have a Smell, are yet a very long time before they are ſenſibly diminiſh'd.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVI.

## *Of SOUND.*

*1. The Word Sound has two Meanings.*

THE Word *Sound* was intended to ſignify in the firſt Place, that particular Senſation which is raiſed in us, by the Impreſſion made upon the Ears by what we call ſounding Bodies. And the ſame Word is alſo uſed to ſignify *That* in the ſounding Bodies, as in a *Bell* or in the *Air* which ſurrounds it, which cauſes in us the Senſation of Sound.

*2. In what Senſe we are here to underſtand the Word.*

2. After what has been obſerved when we ſpoke of Taſtes and Smells, it is needleſs to ſay, that *Sound,* taken in the former Senſe of the Word, cannot be deſcribed, nor known any other Way but by Experience. Wherefore we ſhall treat of it here only as *That* in the *ſounding Bodies* or in the *Air,* which we call *Sound.*

3. Ariſtotle's *Notion of Sound.*

3. *Ariſtotle* has [1] a Chapter particularly upon this Subject, wherein he aſſerts, *that Sound is nothing elſe but the local Motion of certain Bodies, and of the Medium applied to the Ear*; and that we may be ſure that this is his Notion, he repeats it above twenty times.

*4. The Notion of ſome of his Followers.*

4. I take particular Notice of that extraordinary Care which *Ariſtotle* took, to make us underſtand the Notion he had of the Nature of Sound. For though he repeated it ſo often, that it may ſeem troubleſome to ſome Readers; yet I find, he has not ſaid it often enough for ſome others, who profeſſing to follow his Opinions in other Things, do notwithſtanding believe that *Sound* is a Quality different from local Motion.

*5. What Reaſon they give for it.*

5. There are ſome, who, to maintain this Opinion, and confute that of *Ariſtotle*, ſay, that if *Sound* be nothing elſe but *local Motion,* it would follow; that in moving our Hand, for Inſtance, we ought to perceive ſome Sound; and there are others who aſſert, that according to this Notion, it muſt follow, that a Bell which is heard two Leagues every Way, muſt move the Air ſo far all round, which they think abſurd.

*6. That they are miſtaken in differing from* Ariſtotle.

6. However, theſe Objections are of no Weight; for as to the firſt, it proves no more than this; that Sound

---

[1] *A Chapter particularly upon this Subject*) Chap. viii. Book. 2. Concerning *the Soul.*

does not conſiſt in all Sorts of Motion, and eſpecially not in ſuch a Motion as is given to the Hand when it is moved; which indeed is very true. And as to thoſe who think it abſurd, that a *Bell* ſhould move the Air for two Leagues round, they judge of Nature only by their own Prejudices, which are no Proofs.

*7. That the ſounding Body does not cauſe all that Motion which is requiſite to produce Sound.*

7. I confeſs indeed, that ſome Force is required to put a Maſs of Matter, which is extended two Leagues round in Motion; But the Effect produced by the *Bell* is not ſo great as we may imagine: For when it moves the Air in this manner, [1] it only acts upon a Body, which was in Motion before as it is a liquid Body. So that it does not ſo much act upon it to give it Motion, as to determine that Motion which it had before, in ſuch a Manner as is proper to produce in us the Senſation of Sound.

*8. That it is not at all difficult to put ſome Bodies in Motion, which ſeem hard to be moved.*

8. I ſay further, that it is not ſo difficult as is imagined, to cauſe ſuch Sort of Trembling in a Body which is every way ſurrounded with a Liquid: Experience ſhows us this in a large Anvil, (which doubtleſs is one of thoſe Bodies which are not apt to be put in Motion;) for we ſee it trembles upon the leaſt Blow given it by the Hammer; and we may obſerve, that if a few Grains of Millet be put upon it, and it be ſtruck on the Side with a moderate Key; according as the Sound is more or leſs, the Grains of Millet will jump higher or lower, and change their Place on the Anvil. Now it could not cauſe this Motion in the Grains, if it was not moved it ſelf.

*9. That Sound conſiſts in a certain ſort of Motion only.*

9. And to ſhow that *Sound conſiſts in a particular Sort of Motion,* we need only conſider, that it is always produced when we ſtrike our Fingers over the Strings of a Lute, or when we ſtrike againſt any hard Body. Now to ſtrike the String of a Lute, or to ſtrike any hard Body, is nothing elſe but to move the String out of its Place, or to put the Body in Motion. And it is very abſurd to think, as the *Ariſtotelians* do, that the Conſtitution of them is altered, and that we make them to acquire ſome Heat or Cold, ſome Dryneſs or Moiſture which they had not before.

---

[1] *It only acts upon a Body.*) The Motion which is in the Air before it is moved by the Sounding Body, contributes nothing at all towards producing Sound. For as many Particles of Air as there are, tending the ſame way as they are impelled by the ſounding Body, and therefore more eaſily yielding to it than if they were at reſt; juſt ſo many ought we always to think are moved the contrary way, and for that Reaſon reſiſt the Body in Motion more than they would do if they were at reſt.

*10. A Proof of the Truth of this.*

10. And this is confirmed from hence, that if the Ear be tickled in the inſide ſo as to make any Impreſſion upon what [1] the Phyſicians call the *auditory Nerves*, we find a certain Tingling. Whence it is evident, that it is the ſame with the Senſation of Sound as with that of Pain; and both the one and the other ſhows, that by the Appointment of the Author of Nature we are made ſo, that when certain Nerves are moved, after a particular Manner, we ſhould have a particular Senſation.

*11. Another Proof.*

11. I can't omit here an Experiment which is often made uſe of to divert Children, and which wonderfully confirms this Opinion. They put a long Thread through a pair of Tongs, and wind each End of the Thread about their Fore-fingers, and then ſtop both Ears with thoſe Fingers; then moving their Bodies backward and forward, they toſs the Tongs in the Air, and hit them againſt the Andirons, or any other hard Body. Now though thoſe that ſtand by, hear but a moderate Sound, yet the other hear a Sound as loud as that of a large Church-Bell. It is impoſſible to ſolve this any other way, but by ſaying, that the Motion of the Tongs ſhakes the String, which gives its Impreſſion to the Fingers, and theſe move the Parts of the Ear, to which they are applied, and by this Means the Nerves of the Organ of the Ear are alſo moved.

*12. A Miſtake of* Ariſtotle's *upon this Subject of Sound.*

12. Being aſſured that Sound conſiſts only in *ſome Sort of Motion*, all that remains, is to determine *what Sort of Motion that is*: And here I cannot agree with *Ariſtotle*, who would have Sound to be *the Motion of a Body that is hard, poliſhed and concave*; for it is certain, that there are a great many ſounding Bodies which theſe Qualities do not belong to, and alſo, that there are none of them in Gunpowder when it takes Fire in a Cannon, which yet makes ſuch a prodigious Noiſe.

*13. The weak Defence of ſome of his Followers. And of* Aurum Fulminans.

13. Some perhaps, out of Zeal to this Philoſopher, may attempt to defend his Opinion, by ſaying, that if thoſe Qualities required by him in a ſounding Body, are not to be found in the kindled Powder, nor in the Air which is ſhaken; yet they are in the Cannon, upon which he would make the Whole of the Sound to depend. But without amuſing one's ſelf to find out Reaſons to confute this Opinion; it ſhall ſuffice to alledge the Experiment of what the Chymiſts call *Aurum Fulminans*. What they call ſo, is only a Compoſition of three Parts

---

[1] *The Phyſicians call the auditory Nerves*) Concerning the Organ of Hearing and its Deſcription, See *Regis Phyſ. Book* VIII. *Part* II. *Chap*. vi.

of Salt-Petre, two of Flowers of Sulphur, and one of Salt of Tartar, beaten ſeparately in a Mortar, and then mixed together. We muſt take about as much of this Mixture as we do of Gun-powder to prime a Musket, and lay it upon an Iron-Plate, or a flat Tile, and put it upon a Chafingdiſh of Fire; then the Powder will grow hot gradually, and be at once [1] turned into a Flame, which dilating it ſelf every way, cauſes a Sound almoſt as loud as the Report of a Musket well charged. In this Experiment, the Iron Plate or the Tile, ſerves only to hinder the Powder from taking Fire, 'till it is equally heated all over; and ſince the Sound depends upon the Flame and the Air, which are neither hard, nor poliſhed, nor concave, without doubt this Opinion of *Ariſtotle's* cannot be ſupported.

*14. That Sound conſiſts in a particular ſort of Motion.*

14. We chooſe rather to ſay, that Sound conſiſts in *a particular Sort of Motion of Bodies*, than to ſay with *Ariſtotle*, that it conſiſts in the *Motion of a particular Sort of Bodies*. For a more diſtinct Explication whereof, we may obſerve, that the Bodies which we call ſounding Bodies, are not applied immediately to our Ears, in order to excite the Senſation of Sound, but for the moſt part act by the Interpoſition of the Air which they put in Motion; wherefore we ought to find out what the Motions of each of theſe are, when they produce this Senſation in us.

*15. That this Motion may be conſidered in the ſounding Body, and in the* Medium.

15. There are ſome Inſtances in which it is eaſier to find out the Manner in which *the ſounding Body* is moved; and there are others in which it is eaſier to find out the Motion of the *Air*. The former of theſe we will firſt explain as far as we are able, *viz.* the Manner in which *ſounding Bodies* are moved.

*16. What the Sound of the String of a Lute conſiſts in.*

16. And to begin with *the Lute*, or any ſuch kind of Inſtrument that is plaid upon with the Fingers, it is to be obſerved, that the Strings being ſtretched, are as ſtreight as is poſſible, and that in playing upon them they are put out of their Poſition, and bent a little by the Fingers; but as ſoon as they are let go, they return again to the Place out of which they are moved, and the Velocity which they acquire in returning, makes them go a little beyond it; then they come back, and go a little beyond the Place of Reſt again; and thus they go and come ſeveral times, or have ſeveral Vibrations, and in this *trembling Motion* conſiſts their Sound.

---

[1] *Turned into a Flame*) See this Phænomenon explained in the *Notes on Part* III. *Chap.* ix. *Art.* 13.

17. The

*17. What the Sound of the String of a Violin conſiſts in.*

17. The Sound of the Strings of a Violin conſiſts in the Agitation they are put into by the moving of the Hair of the Bow over them which is made rough and jagged, almoſt like a Saw, by being rubbed with Roſin. Which is ſo true, that if the Hair of the Bow be rubbed with Tallow or Oil, the Strings will have no Sound, becauſe they ſlip under it, and are not ſhaked by it.

*18. What the Sound of a drinking-Glaſs conſiſts in.*

18. The Sound which a Drinking-Glaſs makes when the Finger preſſing hard upon it moves round the upper Edge of it, conſiſts in the Vibrations like thoſe of the Strings of a Violin, it being evident, that the Finger here ſupplies the Place of a Bow.

*19. What the Sound of a Bell conſiſts in.*

19. The Sound of a Bell conſiſts in a Trembling, pretty much like that of the String of a Lute: For it is certain, that the Blow given it by the Clapper alters its Figure a little, ſo that from being round, it becomes oval: And becauſe it is made of Metal very ſtiff and ſpringy, that Part which is moſt diſtant from the Center, returns towards it, and ſomewhat nearer than it was at firſt, ſo that the Places which were at the Extremities of the longer Diameter, are at the Extremities of the ſhorter one; and thus the Circumference of the Bell changes its Figure by Turns, all the time it is ſounding.

*20. A Proof of ſuch Trembling.*

20. It will be very eaſy for any one to believe what is now ſaid, if he obſerves, that in laying his Hand upon a large *Bell* juſt when the Clapper ſtrikes againſt it, he will feel a manifeſt Numneſs.

*21. Why a ſmall Bell, when touched, ceaſes to ſound.*

21. If the Bell be very ſmall, as the Trembling is eaſily ſtopt by putting our Hand to it, ſo ought the Sound to ceaſe alſo. And indeed there are very ſmall Bells, which if they be but very lightly ſtruck, will ſound for a long time; but if we lay our Hand upon them as ſoon as they are ſtruck, their Sound will immediately ceaſe.

*22. Why the Sound of a great Bell is not ſo eaſily ſtopped.*

22. But the Sound of a great Bell is not ſo eaſily ſtopped by laying our Hand upon it, becauſe it has more Motion, and becauſe it can transfer ſuch a ſmall Part of its Motion to the Hand, and reſerve enough to make it be heard.

*23. Why a Body ſounds when it is ſtruck.*

23. The Sound raiſed by ſtriking a Piece of Wood, or in general, any hard ſounding Body, conſiſts in a Trembling, like that of a *Bell*, which is owing to its Springineſs.

*24. Why ſome Bodies have but little Sound.*

24. Wherefore Bodies which have not this Property of Springineſs have only a very low and imperfect Sound:

And this is the Reaſon why *Lead and Clay*, when they are ſtruck againſt, have ſcarce any Sound.

*25. VVhat ſort of Motion of the Air it is in which Sound conſiſts.*

25. After what has been ſaid, it will not be very difficult to determine what ſort of Motion it is in the Air which produces in us the Senſation of Sound; for it is evident, that [1] this Motion of the *Air* muſt neceſſarily be ſuch, as the Trembling of the Sounding Bodies is capable of producing in it; that is, the Air ought to tremble, and bubble, and alſo by riſing and falling, to divide it ſelf into an infinite number of very ſmall Particles, which by trembling and ſtriking againſt one another, muſt have a very quick Motion; ſo that the Air muſt be ſomething like a Liquor that ſimpers and does not quite boil. This is confirmed by what we ſee of a Motion very like this in a large Tub of Water, by moving a Stick backwards and forwards in it very quick; for this Motion of the Stick is very like that of the Strings of a Lute, only theſe are much larger and the other ſlower.

*26. A viſible Demonſtration of this Motion.*

26. We may be certain of this Motion or Trembling of the Air, if we conſider that the ſounding Body ought to impreſs the ſame ſort of Motion upon it, that it does upon other Liquors. Thus, if a Glaſs be half full of Water, and we make it ſound in the Manner beforementioned, by moving our Finger along the upper Edge of it; it muſt without doubt ſhake the Air as it does the Water; [2] now we ſee the Water tremble and boil, and alſo by jumping out batter and break it ſelf in ſuch a manner, that a great many ſmall Drops fly a good way out of the Glaſs. Whence we muſt conclude, that the Air has the ſame Sort of Trembling or Boiling.

[1] *This Motion of the Air*) For the Parts of the ſounding Body going and coming by Turns, thruſt and drive forward as they go thoſe Parts of the Air which are next them, and by preſſing upon them, condenſe them; then by returning, they permit the Parts thus compreſſed, to ſpread and dilate themſelves again. Thoſe Parts of the Air therefore which are next to the ſounding Body, go and come by Turns agreeably to the tremulous Agitation of the Parts of the ſounding Body; and in the ſame manner as the Parts of that Body agitate theſe Parts of the Air, do theſe, being agitated with the ſame Sort of Tremblings, agitate thoſe Parts that are next them; and theſe in like manner agitate thoſe beyond them, *&c.* This being allowed, the manner how the Pulſes are propagated along, and all the other Phænomena of Sounds, are very advantageouſly explained. See *Newt. Philoſoph. Princip. Mathemat. Book* II. *Prop.* 43, *&c.*

[2] *Now we ſee the VVater tremble*) You may ſee a Caſe of this Experiment very well worth obſerving in *the Notes on the 45th Art. of this Chapter.*

27. After

*27. VVhence that VVhiſtling ariſes, which is made by blowing into the Hole of a Key.*

27. After having ſufficiently ſhown the Motion of the Air, which is neceſſary to make us hear any Sound: It is eaſy to conceive that the Air in paſſing by ſome hard and immoveable Bodies, may move it ſelf ſometimes in ſuch a manner. Thus, when we whiſtle, by blowing into the *Hollow of a Key*, it happens, that the Air which enters in, fills one half of the Hole, and the Air which comes out fills the other half; and theſe two Parcels of Air ſliding by one another with contrary Motions; a great many of their Parts muſt neceſſarily be made to turn round and to tremble, and the whole Air which is betwixt him that whiſtles and him that hears muſt alſo be made to turn round and to tremble.

*28. How the Sound of an Organ Pipe or Bagpipe is made.*

28. We may obſerve here, that there are Bodies, which are opened by Fits to let the Air through, and which by this means cauſe us to hear a particular Sound, which is alſo a very conſiderable one. Of this Sort are the Rows of Pipes which compoſe an Organ, or the ſingle Pipe of a Bag-pipe. Theſe Bodies themſelves are not moved in order to produce Sound; but the Air being firſt put into Motion, endeavours to paſs through them, but is forced to go out trembling, and ſo impreſſes on the reſt of the Air the ſame Sort of Tremblings as the Strings of a Violin do, and ſo cauſes us to hear a Harmony, the Motions of which are Trembling.

*29. How the Voice of Animals is formed.*

29. And in the ſame manner is the *Voice of Animals* formed: For there is a ſmall Valve at the End of the Trachea, which performs the Office of the Valves of the Tubes which compoſe an Organ; which Valve we can contract as we pleaſe, and let the Air out of the Lungs by Fits. And becauſe this Valve for the moſt part continues open, therefore the Air in Reſpiration comes out commonly without any trembling, and conſequently without making any Noiſe.

*30. VVhy a Cannon makes a Noiſe when it is diſcharged.*

30. It would be too tedious to explain particularly all the different Manners in which Sound is produced. But becauſe there is ſomething ſingular in the Sound of a *Cannon* when it is diſcharged, becauſe the Flame ſeems to give but one and not a repeated Shake to the Air, therefore it may be worth while to explain how ſuch a prodigious Noiſe is made. It is to be obſerved then, that the Gun-powder, when it takes Fire, [1] is ſo extraordinarily dilated, as to take up above a Thouſand times the Space

---

[1] *Is ſo extraordinarily dilated)* For the true Reaſon of this Dilatation, See the *Notes on Part.* III. *Chap.* 9. *Art.* 13.

that it did before; ſo that it drives before it every Way all the Parts of the groſſer Air which was in this Space, and theſe Parts can find no where to go, but by preſſing upon other Parts, and driving them on likewiſe; and at the ſame time they ſqueeze out the ſubtile Matter which mixing with the Powder, compoſe that ſenſible Maſs which we call Flame. Hence it follows, that there is in the Air two contrary Motions; the one of which gathers together and unites the moſt ſubtile Parts, and the other diſperſes the groſſer ones. And this would be done in a Moment, but that the groſſer Air which is condenſed all round, has a Tendency to return into that Place out of which it was driven, and towards which, after the Violence of the Flame is over, its own Weight forces it, and that with ſuch an Impetus, that it becomes more denſe than it ordinarily is; whence it will be reflected again all round, or condenſed anew; becauſe being rarefyed again, it returns to the Place which it had quitted; and thus it quits and takes again the ſame Place ſeveral times ſucceſſively; and this is the Reaſon of that ſhort Continuance of the Noiſe of a Cannon when it is diſcharged.

*31. That the Senſation of the Sound continues longer ſometimes than the Sound it ſelf.*

31. However it is to be obſerved, that the Ear may ſometimes be ſo ſtrongly moved, that it may continue to tremble ſome ſhort time after the Air has done trembling; and for this Reaſon, the Senſation of Sound may ſometimes continue after the Agitation without is ceaſed.

*32. VVhy the Flaſh of a Cannon is ſeen before the Sound is heard.*

32. Becauſe the trembling Motion of the Air in which Sound conſiſts, is communicated gradually, ſo that it affects thoſe Parts which are near the ſounding Body ſooner than thoſe that are further off, the Sound muſt neceſſarily take up ſome time in going along: And ſo we find by Experience, that if a Cannon be diſcharged at two or three Miles diſtance from us, we ſee the Flaſh ſome time before we hear the Noiſe.

*33. VVhy the Sound grows weaker, the further we are diſtant from the ſounding Body.*

33. And becauſe the Motion which is impreſſed by the ſounding Body upon the Air cloſe by it, is transferred from one Part of the Air to another ſucceſſively, and always paſſes from a leſs Quantity to a greater, in proportion to its Diſtance from the ſounding Body; therefore near the ſounding Body, there muſt always be more Motion in a given Quantity of Air, than there is at a greater Diſtance; ſo that the Sound ought to grow weaker as it is further from the ſounding Body.

*34. That Sound going along with the Wind, ought to be heard ſooner than when againſt it.*

34. The Propagation of Sound may very well be [1] compared with Circles made in the Water, by throwing a Stone into it. And as thoſe which are made in a running Stream, extend themſelves further towards the lower than towards the upper Part of the River, becauſe the whole Water in which they are formed carries them intire that Way: So likewiſe may we conceive, that if the Wind carries the Air towards one certain Place, the trembling Motion in which Sound conſiſts, will ſooner go this Way than the contrary. Thus we find by Experience, that we hear the Sound of a Cannon, and in general all other Sounds, [2] ſooner with the Wind than againſt it. And it may happen, that the Air may be moved ſo quick, that its Parts may flee from us as faſt as the Sound goes, and ſo we may not hear it at all.

*35. How an Echo is made.*

35. Becauſe Sound is propagated every Way, as it were from the Center to the Superficies of a Sphere, it may ſo happen, that the Parts of the Air which would communicate their Motion to ſuch as are at a greater Diſtance, may meet ſome hard Body which they cannot ſhake; and this may cauſe them ſome Way to be reflected back again, and make them communicate their Motion again to thoſe Parts from which they received it, and theſe to others; ſo that there will be a new Trembling of the Air inſtead of that which began firſt, and hath already ceaſed for ſome Time: Conſequently we may hear again the ſame Sound which we heard at firſt; aud this redoubled Sound is what we call an *Echo*.

*36. How an Echo may repeat Words ſpoken ſeveral times.*

36. If the Sound meets with ſeveral Bodies at different Diſtances, which are capable of reflecting it back again; if that which returns from the moſt diſtant Place ſtrikes upon the Ear, after the Impreſſion of the former is

---

[1] *Compared with Circles made in the Water*) If the Water be put in Motion, by throwing in a Stone, or by moving our Finger or a Stick backward and forward in it, the Waves will immediately ſurround our Finger; and if during the Agitation it be carried ſtreight forward towards any Part without bending, yet theſe Waves, as if they were concentrick Circles, will be equally propagated every Way; which Compariſon does very properly ſhow us, that the tremulous Motion of the Air ought to be propagated not only the ſame way that every one of the Particles of the ſounding Body, ſuch as the Strings of a Violin, are agitated; but alſo to be propagated in a Circle all Ways from the ſounding Body as the common Center.

[2] *Sooner with the Wind than againſt it*) The Gentlemen at *Florence* thought they had found by certain Experiments, that Sound is propagated with the ſame Celerity againſt the Wind, as with it, though much more faint. *Exper. Acad. del Cimento, p.* 140. But the induſtrious Mr. *Derham* found it otherwiſe in Experiments made at a much greater diſtance. See *the Philoſophical Tranſactions, Numb.* 313.

quite gone off, it muſt in its Turn produce a new Senſation of Sound. Whence it is evident, that we may meet with *Echo's* which repeat the ſame Word ſeveral times over.

*37. Why he which ſpeaks, does not always hear the Sound of the Echo,*

37. According to the Inclination with which the Air ſtrikes upon the Bodies which reflect the Sound, ought the Reflection to be on the one Side or on the other, which is the Reaſon why there are ſome *Echo's* where he who ſpeaks does not hear the Words that are repeated, when others who are at ſome Diſtance from him can hear them repeated diſtinctly.

*38. What the different Species of Sound conſiſt in.*

38. As to the Difference of Sounds that we meet with, which conſtitutes the different Species of them, as *Flats* and *Sharps*; the muſical Inſtruments ſufficiently ſhow us, that they conſiſt in the different Motion both of the ſounding Body, and of the Air which is agitated by it. For the more the Strings of a Lute are *ſtrained*, the *ſharper* the Sound is; and on the contrary, the *looſer* the Strings are, the more *flat* is the Sound. Now it is certain, that the more a String is ſtretched, the ſwifter and more frequent is the Motion which it impreſſes on the Air: whence it follows, that a *ſharp Sound* conſiſts in the *Quickneſs and in the ſudden Reiteration of the Motion upon which the Sound depends*, and a *flat Sound* conſiſts in the *Slowneſs*.

*39. How ſeveral Sounds may be heard together.*

39. When two ſounding Bodies ſtrike upon the Air at the ſame time, they muſt impreſs ſuch a Motion upon it, as is compounded of the two Motions which would be cauſed, if they acted upon it ſeparately; and conſequently the Air ought to put the *Organ* of Hearing into ſuch a Sort of trembling Motion, as may raiſe a Senſation compoſed of each of the Senſations which the Bodies would raiſe ſeparately.

*40. What Concords conſiſt in.*

40. And if the Motions of theſe two ſounding Bodies do ſo exactly agree, that the Tremblings which they cauſe in the Air in a given Time are commenſurable, that is, at the ſame time that the one ſtrikes the Air, the other ſtrikes it alſo, or at leaſt, that they ſtrike together every ſecond or third Stroke; then the Ear will be ſo uniformly ſtruck upon, and in ſuch meaſure, that it will perceive the Diſtance, and be pleaſed with the Cadence; and in the Strokes being thus commenſurable very probably conſiſts thoſe *Concords* which Muſicians call *an Uniſon and Octave, a Fifth and a Third.*

*41. Why ſome Sounds are Diſcords.*

41. On the contrary, if the Tremblings impreſſed on the Air by the Sounding Bodies be incommenſurable, that is, if they do not agree in Time nor ſtrike together; we muſt perceive the Inequality of the Sound; and becauſe they do not move the Ear uniformly, they cannot produce any Harmony; and in the Strokes being thus incommenſurable, conſiſts very probably the *Tones* which Muſicians call *Diſcords*.

*42. That the laſt Vibrations of the String of a Lute do not take up more Time than the firſt.*

42. From what has been ſaid concerning the Motion impreſſed on the Air by ſounding Bodies, ſome Perſons perhaps may be apt to think that thoſe impreſſed by the Strings of a Lute are not equal, but quicker at firſt, and ſlower as the Motion ceaſes; but it is not very difficult to ſhow that the contrary is true, if we obſerve, that the Motion of the String when it almoſt ceaſes to be agitated, may be made up by the Shortneſs of the Way that it has to go: So that it takes up neither more nor leſs Time in making its firſt and longeſt Vibrations, than it does in making its laſt and ſhorteſt.

*43. Of the Motion of Pendulums.*

43. There muſt indeed be ſome Pains requiſite to prove the Truth of this by Experiments: For it is impoſſible to do it by the Strings of a Lute, becauſe of the ſmall Time that they take to make ſeveral hundred Vibrations in. But becauſe the Motion we are ſpeaking of is very like *that of a Weight hanging in the Air at the End of a String*, we may imagine, that what we obſerve of the Motion of the one, may be equally applied to the other: Now we find by Experience, that if this Weight be drawn from the Perpendicular, and then let go, ſo as it may ſwing freely, all the Vibrations till it ceaſes to move at all, will be made in the ſame Time. For if we will be at the Trouble to count how many Pulſes of the Artery there are in the firſt twenty Vibrations, ſuppoſe, we ſhall find as many in the twenty following Ones, or in any other Twenty, which you will: Now from this ſingle Experiment we may conclude that every Vibration of the String of an Inſtrument is made in the ſame Time, and that the Laſt take up no more than the Firſt. And becauſe this Experiment is very eaſy to make, and is a curious one, and may ſerve as a Principle from whence many important Concluſions in *Muſick* may be drawn; it is worth any one's while to be at the Pains to obſerve the Motions of theſe Pendulums, and to put ſeveral of them in Motion together. For we ſhall then ſee, that thoſe which are of an equal Length, and alike in every other reſpect, will perform their Vibrations in the ſame Time; and that thoſe which are of different Lengths, require different Times, *viz.* the Shorter,

the leſs Time, ſo that their Vibrations will be to each other [1] in a reciprocal Proportion of the Square Root of their Lengths; and thus what we have ſaid of the commenſurability of Sounds, and the Concords of Muſick, is confirmed.

*44. VVhence different Sorts of Voices ariſe, and why the Voices of Children are generally ſharper than thoſe of grown People.*

44. From hence we may alſo clearly apprehend how different Sorts of Voices are made, and why the ſame Mouth may cauſe by turns a ſharp and a flat Sound. The Reaſon of which is, that the *Epiglottis* which is placed at the End of the Pipe through which we breathe, and which opens to give a Paſſage for the Air in order to form the Voice, may be lifted up and let down at pleaſure, that is, ſo as to be ſometimes to be altogether and from its Roots open, or ſhut, and ſometimes in Part only. Now that which can be lifted up in ſuch a manner as this, by Turns, and as it were with a trembling Motion, to let the Air out with the ſame ſort of Motion, reſembles a *Pendulum*; whence it follows, that the Tremblings of the Voice muſt be ſo much the quicker, the leſs the *Epiglottis* which regulates the Motion, is lifted up, and on the contrary, they are the ſloweſt that can be, when the Epiglottis is at liberty to lift it ſelf quite up. Upon this Flexileneſs of the *Epiglottis* depends all the Variety of Tones of the Voice; for the Air which comes out of the Lungs being differently agitated according to the different Poſition of the Epiglottis, impreſſes the Motion it received as it came out, upon the external Air, which ſtriking the Ear differently is the Cauſe of all that Diverſity which we obſerve in Sounds. And becauſe Children have generally all the Parts of their Bodies proportioned

---

[1] *In a reciprocal Proportion*) Here the *Number* of Vibrations in a given Time are compared with each other. But if the *Times* of the Vibrations be compared together (which is the better Way) then we muſt ſay, that the Vibrations are to each other, as the ſquare Roots of their Lengths *directly*. As may be thus demonſtrated. We ſuppoſe that the Acceleration of heavy Bodies in falling is ſuch, that the Spaces they run through, are as the Squares of their Times (which ſhall be demonſtrated in its proper Place. *See the Notes on Part* II. *Chap.* xxviii. *Art.* 16.) then if we imagine ſimilar Arcs of unequal Circles to conſiſt of an infinite Number of Sides of ſimilar Polygons, and that they are in the ſame Poſition with reſpect to the Earth; then it is evident, that the Square Roots of the Arches, or of the Spaces run through, and for the ſame Reaſon, their Radius's or the Length of the Strings, will repreſent the Times of the Deſcent of Pendulums, and becauſe the *impetus* or Velocity in aſcending, is evidently deſtroyed equally in the ſame manner, and in the ſame time as it was acquired in deſcending; therefore the whole Vibrations of theſe Bodies muſt neceſſarily have the ſame Proportion to each other, as the Square Roots of the Lengths of the Strings. *See the Notes on Part* II. *Chap.* xxviii. *Art.* 16.

to their Bigneſs, and conſequently their Epiglottis, leſs than in grown Perſons, therefore the Voice is generally ſharper.

*45. The Reaſon of the Sympathy of Strings that are Concords.*

45. And altogether as eaſy is it to account for an Experiment which at firſt Sight has ſurprized a great many Perſons; which is, that if two Strings of the ſame Lute, or of different Lutes that are near one another, be *Uniſons*, we cannot move the one, [1] but the other will ſound alſo, at leaſt it will tremble; whereas it will not tremble at all, if we move any other String near it, which is not a *Concord*. Now the Reaſon of this Experiment is, that the Strings which are *Concords*, are capable of the ſame Vibrations; ſo that the Air which is put in Motion by the one, can very conveniently communicate its Vibrations to the other; which cannot be in two Strings that are not *Uniſons*; for there is no Agreement in them, becauſe the Air which is put in Motion by the one, does not find the other at all diſpoſed to receive its Motion, and every Stroke except the Firſt, is out of Time, ſo that by not agreeing they deſtroy each other's Motion.

*46. The ſame Sympathy is to be found in other Bodies.*

46. This Experiment has raiſed the Admiration of many Perſons for a long time, and ſome have undertaken to account for it, by ſaying, that there is a Sympathy between the two Strings; but, beſide that this is only a Way of ſpeaking, we may obſerve, that the Diſpoſition which a Body has to move, when the Air is ſhaken by another Body, [2] is to be found in other Things as well as in the Strings of a Lute, or other Muſical Inſtrument: This I have experienced in the late Wars, when I have obſerved the Glaſs-Windows to tremble very ſenſibly upon the beating of a certain Drum, and at the ſame time would not tremble at all upon the beating of others which were much louder.

---

[1] *But the other will ſound alſo*) So likewiſe if two Glaſſes, by putting in a proper Quantity of Water, be made Uniſons; the preſſing our Finger hard upon the Edge and moving it round either of them, will make the Water in the other curl, and dance about.

[2] *Is to be found in other Things*) Thus Mr. *Boyle* relates concerning a ſick Man that had his Left Hand cut off; upon the diſcharging of Cannons, he thought himſelf almoſt ſhattered and torn to pieces; and of another, that upon ſcraping a piece of Iron with a Knife, he could not hold his Water; and of a Third, that upon tearing thick Paper his Gums would bleed. *See his Effect of languid Motion.*

47. *What is the Cauſe of that ſhivering which we feel upon hearing a Trumpet.*

47. To theſe Sort of Motions, I conceive we may aſcribe the Cauſe of a certain *Shivering*, which we ſometimes feel all over our Body, and which reaches even to our very Heart, when we hear the Sound of a Trumpet, or ſuch kind of Inſtrument; For it may be that the Blood is ſo diſpoſed, as to yield eaſily to the trembling of the Air.

48. *How we do render our ſelves attentive, ſo as to hear Sounds diſtinctly.*

48. And becauſe the Membrane of the Ear, which is moved by the Agitation of the external Air, and the different ſhaking of which cauſes different Motions in the Capillaments of the Nerves of the Ear, is ſomething like the Parchment of a Drum (and is therefore by ſome called the *Drum* of the Ear) I am of Opinion, that it is capable of being more or leſs ſhaked, according as it is more or leſs ſtretched. Wherefore I can eaſily perſuade my ſelf, that we ſometimes ſtretch or looſen it, in order to receive the Impreſſion of the Sound more ſenſibly, and to make it the better agree with the Motion of the external Air: ſo that Attention conſiſts in nothing elſe but in a due ſtretching or looſening this Membrane; and keeping it in that Poſition in which it will beſt receive the Impreſſion and Motion which the Sound gives to the external Air.

---

## CHAP. XXVII.

### *Of Light and Colours, and of Tranſparency, and Opakeneſs.*

1. *The firſt Senſe of the Words Light and Colours.*

IF in any Thing Exactneſs be required in the Meaning of Words, in order not to be ſurprized by any Equivocation, it is principally in this of *Light* and *Colours*, which are commonly uſed to ſignify very different Things, and generally confounded by moſt Men. Firſt then it is to be obſerved; that as we have given the Name *Pain* to the Senſation, which is raiſed in us by a Needle when it pricks us; ſo likewiſe have we given the Name *Light* to that Senſation which we have, upon looking on the Sun or a Flame, and that of *Colour* to the Senſation raiſed in us by diverſe Objects which we call coloured; thus in particular, we give the Names of a *White Colour* and a *Green Colour* to the Senſations which *Snow* or *Graſs* uſuſually produce in us.

2. Se-

*2. Another Senſe of the Words Light and Colour.*

2. Secondly, By theſe Words *Light* and *Colour*, we alſo underſtand, *that* on the Part of the external Objects which is the Cauſe of exciting in us the forementioned Senſations: Thus by the *Light* of the Flame, we mean ſomething, I know not what, which occaſions the Senſation of *Light* to be excited in us; and by the *Whiteneſs* of the Snow, we underſtand ſome other Thing, I know not what, that is the Occaſion of our having the Senſation of *Whiteneſs*.

*3. A third Senſe of the Word Light.*

3. And becauſe the Objects which we call luminous, ſuch as the Sun or a Flame, do not affect our Eyes immediately, but act by the Interpoſition of ſome intervening Bodies, ſuch as Air or Water or Glaſs; yet that which is impreſſed on theſe Mediums, whatever it be, is called *Light* alſo, but *Secondary* or *Derivative*, to diſtinguiſh it from that which is in the luminous Objects which is called *original* or *innate*.

*4. The Meaning of the Words Tranſparent and Opake.*

4. We call thoſe Bodies *Tranſparent*, through which luminous Bodies act upon our Eyes to raiſe the Senſation of Light, and through which we can alſo ſee Colours. And we call thoſe Bodies *Opake* which interrupt the Action of luminous or coloured Bodies, or through which we cannot ſee either Light or Colours.

*5. That the Senſation of Light or Colour cannot be deſcribed.*

5. I do not pretend to declare what *Light* and *Colours* are in the firſt Senſe of the Words, but leave it to every one to make them clear to himſelf by his own Experience; for I think it as impoſſible to give another Perſon a true Notion of that particular Senſation that we have of Colours, as it is to give it to one that is born blind.

*6. That one and the ſame viſible Object does not neceſſarily raiſe the ſame Senſation in two different Perſons.*

6. However, I may venture to affirm, that as it often happens that the ſame Food may at the ſame time raiſe different Taſtes in two different Perſons, ſo it may alſo happen, that two Perſons looking in the ſame manner upon the ſame Object, may have very different Senſations; and I am the more perſwaded of this, becauſe I have experienced it in a particular manner my ſelf. For when I had once quite tired and weakned my right Eye by looking intently for above twelve Hours together through a perſpective Glaſs on a Battle betwixt two Armies, within a League of me; I found my Sight ſo affected afterwards, that when I looked upon Yellow Objects with my right Eye, they did not appear to me as they uſed to do, nor as they now do to my left Eye: And, which is very remarkable, I do not find the ſame Difference in all Colours but only in ſome; as for in-

ſtance in Green, which appears to me to come near to a Blue, when I look on it with my right Eye. This Experience makes me believe, that there may be ſome Men born with that Diſpoſition, which I at preſent have in one of my Eyes, and which may continue all their Lives, and perhaps there are others whoſe Eyes are of the ſame Diſpoſition with my other Eye. However, it is impoſſible, either for themſelves or any other Perſons to perceive it, becauſe every Body accuſtom themſelves to call the Senſation which a certain Object produces in him, by that Name which it uſually goes by; which yet being common to the different Senſations that every one may poſſibly have, is not the leſs ambiguous.

7. Ariſtotle's *Opinion about Light.*

7. Before I come to that Enquiry which I deſign, *viz.* what Light is, and what the *Colour* of Objects is, which is the principal Deſign of this Diſcourſe; I obſerve, that *Ariſtotle* has treated of the ſame Subject, in the 7th Chapter of his Second Book *Concerning the Soul*; where, after having ſaid, that *Colours* depend upon *Light* in order to their being ſeen, he concludes, that theſe two Qualities ought to be explained together. And in order to determine what *Light* is, he ſuppoſes that ſome Bodies are *tranſparent*, ſuch as Air, Water, Ice, Glaſs, and ſuch like. And becauſe we cannot ſee through any of theſe Bodies in the Night, he ſays, that then *they are in Power only tranſparent*, and that in the Day-time *they become actually tranſparent:* And becauſe it is *Light* alone that can *bring this Power into Act*, he concludes, that *Light is the Act of a tranſparent Body as tranſparent.*

8. *His Opinion about Colours.*

8. As to *Colour*, he obſerves, that ſince the Object in which it is, does not apply it ſelf immediately to our Eyes, in order to raiſe any Senſation in us, it muſt firſt move the *Medium* which is betwixt that and us; and becauſe it cannot be perceived through Opake Bodies, nor can it be ſeen through thoſe that are *only tranſparent in Power*, he concludes, that *Colour is that which moves Bodies which are actually tranſparent.*

9. *That he has not ſufficiently explained what Light and Colours are.*

9. Though *Ariſtotle* in the forecited Chapter, has not ſearched this Matter to the Bottom, yet he affirms, that he has ſufficiently explained what *Light*, and *Colour*, and *Tranſparency* are, and imploys almoſt all the remaining Part of his Diſcourſe, in refuting the Opinions of ſome Philoſophers that were before him. However he adds, that *Light* is not Fire, nor a Body proceeding from a Luminous Body, and paſſing through a tranſparent one; but only the *Preſence of Fire, or any other luminous Body*

*with the tranſparent Body.* But upon conſidering this Opinion, I ſee no reaſon to be fully ſatisfied with it, as if it could not be carried any further than *Ariſtotle* has done, or at leaſt, that it cannot be more diſtinctly explained. For it is certain, we are ſtill at a loſs to find out more particularly what the Nature of tranſparent Bodies, and alſo what the Nature of luminous Bodies is, and further how the *Preſence of the Latter operates on the other, to bring its Power into Act,* and laſt of all, what *that* is which moves a Body that is *actually tranſparent.*

*10. What the Opinion of his Followers is concerning Light and Colours.*

10. This ſome of the Commentators upon *Ariſtotle* have acknowledged; and though they might have had ſome Light from what he has ſaid in his Problems, and particularly from [1] the 61ſt of the *Eleventh Section,* yet they have either overlook'd what he has ſaid in this Place, or at leaſt not rightly underſtanding him, they have advanced ſomething which it does not appear that *Ariſtotle* ever thought of, *viz.* that *Light* and *Colours* in the Objects which we call luminous or coloured, are Qualities exactly like thoſe Senſations which they occaſion in us, and (as ſome of them contend) they ariſe alſo from a Mixture of Hot and Cold, of Dry and Moiſt. And for Proof of this (beſides their thinking, that they have *Arſtotle* on their Side) they affirm, that it would be impoſſible for luminous or coloured Bodies to cauſe thoſe Senſations in us which we feel, if there were not in them ſomething very like what they cauſe us to feel, for, ſay they, nothing can give what it has not.

*11. That they have not proved what they aſſert.*

11. But, beſides that *Ariſtotle* has ſaid nothing poſitively concerning what they have advanced, Authority ſtands for nothing, when we are inquiring after Reaſons only. And as to what they alledge, it will appear to be only a mere Sophiſm, if we reflect ever ſo little upon the Pain which we feel when we are pricked by a Needle; for this ſhows us, that it is not at all impoſſible for an Object to be able to excite in us a Senſation which it ſelf has nothing of. And this is ſtill further confirmed from hence, that two Men may ſee the ſame Object differently, as was before obſerved, I my ſelf ſeeing Yellow differently with my two Eyes.

---

[1] *The 61ſt of the Eleventh Section*) Where, after having propoſed this Queſtion. *Why we cannot ſee through an Opake Body.* He argues very much for the Propagation of Light in ſtreight Lines. See *the Notes on the latter Part of the* 15 *Art. of this Chapter.*

12. *That it is not true.*

12. But that which moſt evidently ſhows, that it is not at all neceſſary there ſhould be any Reſemblance between the Quality of the Object, and the Senſation it excites, is this; that we certainly have very ſtrong Senſations of Red, and Yellow, and Blue, and all other Sorts of Colours, upon looking through a Triangular Glaſs *Priſm*, in which no one ever ſuſpected that there was any Thing like the Senſation which it raiſes in us.

13. *The Abſurdity of the Opinion of ſome of the* Ariſtotelians.

13. That which others of them ſay concerning the Original of Colours is ſtill more abſurd. For what Connexion is there betwixt the *Idea's* we have of Hot and Cold, Dry and Moiſt, and thoſe which they ſuppoſe us to have of Colours: If what they ſay were true, it would from hence follow, that the ſame Object ought to have as much Variety of Appearances to the Eyes, as it raiſes different Senſations to the Touch; which does not agree with Experience: On the contrary, there are ſome Bodies, ſuch as poliſhed Steel, and Lobſters, which when heated by the Fire, acquire a certain Colour; but when made cold by dipping them in Water, they do not alter their Colour.

14. *A Compariſon of the Senſation of Light with that of Pain.*

14. Leaving therefore the Opinion of *Ariſtotle* and his Followers, concerning Light and Colours, let us now conſider what Part we are to take upon this Subject. And Firſt, Since we have no Reaſon to ſay, that the *Light* of luminous Bodies is any Thing elſe but *the Power which they have to produce in us that very clear and bright Senſation which we have when they are before us*; Why may we not compare this Power with that which a Needle has to cauſe Pain in us? Since then the Senſation which a Needle raiſes in us ſuppoſes only that we are ſenſitive Creatures, and nothing more is required in the Needle but its Figure and Hardneſs, which are alone ſufficient to cauſe a Diviſion in the Part to which it is applied: So likewiſe it is reaſonable to think, that the Senſation of Light depends upon this, that we are by Nature made capable of this Sort of Senſation; and that there is in the Pores of tranſparent Bodies, a Matter fine enough to penetrate even Glaſs, and yet at the ſame time ſtrong enough to ſhake the ſmall Capillaments of the Nerves which are at the Bottom of the Eye. Further, as there muſt be ſome Agent to puſh the Needle into us, ſo likewiſe muſt we think, that this Matter is puſhed by the luminous Bodies, before it can make any Impreſſion on the *Organ* of Light.

15. Thus

15. *What our Opinion of Light and Tranſparency, and Opakeneſs is.*

15. Thus [1] *Original Light* conſiſts *in a certain Motion of the Parts of luminous Bodies* whereby they are capable of puſhing every Way the ſubtil Matter which fills the Pores of tranſparent Bodies; and *the Eſſence of ſecondary or derived Light* conſiſts *in the Diſpoſition or Tendency of this Matter to recede from the Center of the luminous Body in a ſtreight Line.* Whence it is eaſy to infer, that the Form

[1] *Original Light----Secondary or derived Light*) *Original* Light conſiſts intirely in a particular Motion of the Particles of the luminous Body; not whereby they puſh forward that fictitious Matter which *Cartes* imagined the Pores of tranſparent Bodies to be filled with; but whereby they ſhake off ſome very ſmall Particles from the luminous Body, which are ſent forth all Ways with a very great Force: And *Secondary* or *Derivative* Light conſiſts, not in the Diſpoſition, but in the real Motion of thoſe Particles receding every way from the luminous Body in ſtreight Lines with incredible Swiftneſs. For if Light conſiſted only in *Preſſure*, it ought to be propagated to all Diſtances in a *Moment of Time*; which it certainly is not (See *the Notes on Art.* 30. *below.*) And it would not be propagated in ſtreight Lines, but it would perpetually run in upon the Shadow. *For Preſſion or Motion cannot be propagated in a Fluid in right Lines beyond an Obſtacle, which ſtops part of the Motion, but will bend and ſpread every Way into the quieſcent Medium, which lies beyond the Obſtacle. Gravity tends downwards, but the Preſſure of Water ariſing from Gravity, tends every way with equal Focre, and is propagated as readily, and with as much Force ſideways as downwards, and through crooked Paſſages as through ſtreight ones. The Waves on the Surface of ſtagnating Water, paſſing by the ſides of a broad Obſtacle which ſtops part of them, bend afterwards, and dilate themſelves gradually into the quiet Water behind the Obſtacle. The Waves, Pulſes or Vibrations of the Air, wherein Sounds conſiſt, bend manifeſtly, though not ſo much as the Waves of VVater---And Sounds are propagated as readily through crooked Pipes as through ſtreight ones. But Light is never known to follow crooked Paſſages, nor to bend into the Shadow.* Newt. Opticks pag. 337. Rays of Light therefore muſt be ſmall Corpuſcles ſent forth from luminous Bodies with a very great celerity. For ſuch ſort of Corpuſcles (contrary to the Preſſion of Motion propagated in a Fluid) ought to be tranſmitted through uniform Mediums or void Spaces in ſtreight Lines, without bending into the Shadow; as we ſee the Rays of Light are tranſmitted.

Concerning that Force by which theſe Corpuſcles are ſent forth with ſuch incredible celerity, that they are carried above 7000000 of Miles in a Minute (See *the Notes on Art.* 30. *below.*) the admirable Perſon before-cited ſpeaks thus. *Thoſe Bodies which are of the ſame kind and have the ſame Vertue, the ſmaller they are, the ſtronger is their attractive Force in Proportion to their Bigneſs.* (See the Notes on Chap. xi. Art. 15.) *VVe find this Force ſtronger in proportion to their VVeight in ſmall Magnets than in larger ones; for the Particles of ſmall Magnets, becauſe they are nearer one another, can the more eaſily unite their Forces together. VVherefore it is reaſonable to expect, that the Rays of Light, ſince they are the ſmalleſt of all Bodies (that we know of) ſhould be found to have the ſtrongeſt attractive Force of all. How ſtrong this Force is, may be gathered from the following Rule. The Attraction of a Ray of Light, in proportion to the Quantity of Matter it contains, is to the Gravity which any projected Body has, in proportion to the Quantity of Matter contained in it, in a Ratio compounded of the Velocity of the Ray of Light, to the Velocity of the projected Body, and of the Bending or Curvature of the Line which the Ray deſcribes in the Place of Refraction, to the Bending or Curvature of the Line which the projected Body deſcribes; viz. if the Inclination of the Ray to the refracting Superficies*

Form of a *Tranſparent Body* conſiſts [1] *in the Streightneſs of its Pores*, or rather, *that they croſs each other all ways without any Interruption*, and on the other hand, a Body is opake, becauſe *none of its Pores are ſtreight, or if they be, they are not penetrable quite through, and all ways.*

16. I

*perficies, be the ſame as that of the projected Body to the Horizon. And from this Proportion I collect, that the Attraction of the Rays of Light is more than* 1000000000000000 *times greater than the Gravity of Bodies on the Superficies of the Earth, in proportion to the quantity of Matter contained in them*; viz. *if Light takes up about ſeven or eight Minutes in coming from the Sun to the Earth*---Now, *as in Algebra, where affirmative Quantities vaniſh and ceaſe, there Negative ones begin*; *ſo in Mechanicks, where Attraction ceaſes, there a repulſive Vertue ought to ſucceed.*----Therefore *a Ray, as ſoon as it is ſhaken off from a ſhining Body, by the vibrating Motion of the Parts of the Body, and gets beyond the Reach of Attraction, is driven away with exceeding great Velocity.* Opticks pag. 370.

1. *In the ſtreightneſs of its Pores*) Thus *Ariſtotle* clearly expreſſes himſelf. *The Sight will not penetrate ſolid Bodies, becauſe it can go only through a ſtreight Paſſage (this the Rays of Sun are an Evidence of, and alſo our not ſeeing any Objects but what are right before us) when therefore the direct Progreſs of the Sight is hindred by the Pores not being all ſtreight, it cannot paſs through. But the Sight will paſs through fluid Bodies, becauſe the Pores are ſmall and ſtreight; ſo that it is not hindred from going through them. Wherefore Glaſs is tranſparent though it be very thick; but a piece of Wood is not tranſparent, though it be very thin, becauſe the Pores of the former are regular, and thoſe of the latter irregular. Nor does their being large ſignify any thing if they be not ſtreight; neither are rarer Bodies the more tranſparent, unleſs their Pores are ſo diſpoſed as to admit of a Paſſage.* Prob. 61. Sect. 11. And indeed that ſtreight Pores, or rather ſuch as croſs one another every way from all Sides, are neceſſary to a Body's being tranſparent cannot be doubted: But how it can be, that not only Glaſs and Diamonds, but alſo Water, whoſe Parts are ſo eaſy to be moved ſhould have its Pores ſtreight, and eaſy to paſs through from all Sides, and all Ways, and yet at the ſame time, the thinneſt Paper or even Leaf-Gold, *for want* of ſuch Pores, ſhould exclude the Rays of Light; is not eaſy to be conceived. Wherefore we muſt ſeek for another Cauſe of *Opakeneſs*.

We muſt know then, that all Bodies whatſoever, have in them much fewer Parts, and much more Pores or void Spaces, than is requiſite for the greateſt Number of Rays of Light to find a free and open Paſſage in ſtreight Lines all ways without running upon the Parts. For ſince Water is nineteen times lighter, that is rarer than Gold; and Gold it ſelf is ſo rare, that it will very eaſily, without making any Reſiſtance, ſuffer the Magnetick Effluvia to paſs through it, and will eaſily admit Quickſilver into its Pores, and will alſo let Water go through it, that is, it has more Pores than ſolid Parts; conſequently Water will have above forty times as many Pores as ſolid Parts. And indeed you may think, Gold and Water, and all other Bodies (with great Probability) as much rarer ſtill as you pleaſe. *For if we conceive the Particles of Bodies to be ſo diſpoſed amongſt themſelves, that the Intervals, or empty Spaces between them, may be equal in Magnitude to them all; and that theſe Particles may be compoſed of other Particles much ſmaller, which have as much empty Space between them, as equals all the Magnitudes of theſe ſmaller Particles: And that in like manner, theſe ſmaller Particles are again compoſed of others much ſmaller; all which together, are equal to all the Pores or empty Spaces between them, and ſo on perpetually, till you come to ſolid Particles, ſuch as have no Pores or empty Spaces within them. And if in any groſs Body there be, for inſtance, three ſuch degrees of Particles, the leaſt of which are ſolid; this Body will have* ſeven times *more Pores than ſolid Parts. But if there be*

*four*

16. *A Confirmation of this Conjecture.*

16. I doubt not but that this Opinion will be eſteemed a Conjecture only. But if it ſhall afterwards be made appear to have in it all the Marks of Truth, and that all the Properties of Light can be deduced from it: I hope that *That* which at firſt looks like a Conjecture will be then received for a very certain and manifeſt Truth.

17. *That we are fitted to perceive Light.*

17. And firſt, that we are fitted by Nature to perceive what we call Light, though there were nothing that bore any Reſemblance to it without us, we have a very convincing Experience: For if, when it is the Darkeſt that can be, we rub our Eyes in one particular manner, or if by chance we receive a very hard Blow upon them, ſo that the internal Parts of the Eyes are very much ſhaken by the Blow, we ſee Light, and very bright Sparks, which ceaſe as ſoon as the Motion ceaſes.

*four ſuch degrees of Particles, the leaſt of which are ſolid, the Body will have* fifteen times *more Pores than ſolid Parts. If there be five Degrees the Body will have* one and thirty times *more Pores than Parts. If ſix Degrees, the Body will have* Sixty and three times *more Pores than ſolid Parts, and ſo on perpertually.* Newt. Opt. p. 243.

The Reaſon therefore why ſome Bodies are *Opake*, is not the want of Pores which are paſſable on every Side in ſtreight Lines; but either the unequal Denſity of the Parts, or the Largeneſs of the Pores, either filled with other ſort of Matter, or elſe empty; by which means the Rays of Light in paſſing through, are perpetually bent backward and forward by innumerable Reflections and Refractions, till at laſt they hit upon the Parts themſelves of the Body (*See the Notes below on Art.* 35.) and ſo are wholly extinguiſhed and loſt. Hence it is, that Cork, Paper, Wood, &c. are Opake; and Glaſs Diamonds, &c. tranſparent. For in the Confines of Parts that are alike, and of equal Denſity, as the Parts of Glaſs, Water, and Diamonds are, by reaſon of the equal Attraction on all Sides, there is no Reflexion or Refraction; and therefore the Rays of Light which enter the firſt Superficies of theſe Bodies eaſily go on (except ſuch as chance to fall upon the ſolid Parts, and are extinguiſhed. *See the Notes on Art.* 35. *below*) in a right Line through the whole Body. But in the Confines of Parts which are very unequal in Denſity, ſuch as the Parts of Wood or Paper, compared with each other, or with the Air, or empty Space in the larger Pores of them, the greateſt Reflexions or Refractions are made, becauſe of the unequal Attraction; therefore the Rays can by no means paſs through ſuch Bodies; but are perpetually bent backward and forward, and at laſt loſt. *That this Diſcontinuity of Parts is the principal Cauſe of the Opacity of Bodies, will appear by conſidering that Opake Subſtances become tranſparent, by filling up their Pores with any Subſtance of equal, or almoſt equal Denſity with their Parts. Thus Paper dipp'd in Water or Oil, the* Oculus Mundi Stone *ſteeped in Water, Linnen-Cloth oiled or varniſhed, and many other Subſtances ſoaked in ſuch Liquors as will intimately pervade their little Pores, become by that means more tranſparent than otherwiſe; ſo, on the contrary, the moſt tranſparent Subſtances may by evacuating their Pores, or ſeparating their Parts be rendered ſufficiently opake, as Salts or wet Paper, or the* Oculus Mundi *Stone, by being dried, Horn by being ſcraped, Glaſs by being reduced to Powder, or otherwiſe flawed;--and Water by being formed into many ſmall Bubbles--become Opake.* Newt. Opt. p. 224.

18. Fur-

*18. That there is ſuch a Thing as ſubtil Matter, was proved before.*

18. Further, That there is ſuch a Thing as ſubtil Matter which penetrates the Pores of tranſparent Bodies, the Diſpoſition of which to recede from the Center of the luminous Body in ſtreight Lines, may here be called ſecundary or derived Light, has been ſufficiently proved before, when we ſhewed the Neceſſity of the ſecond Element; and we may venture to affirm, that none of thoſe Things would come to paſs without it, which we have before obſerved to come to paſs, when we explained thoſe Motions which are uſually aſcribed to the *Fear of a Vacuum*.

*19. That luminous Bodies puſh this Matter all Ways; and what it is that Flame conſiſts in.*

19. Nothing further remains, but to ſhow that luminous Bodies do actually puſh this Matter every Way; which they will be found to do, if it be true, that the Parts are very ſmall, and very much agitated. Let us then examine all the luminous Bodies that we know, and ſee if the Parts of which they are compoſed, be not as ſmall, and as much agitated as we ſuppoſe. And to begin with *Flame*. It has been already ſo plainly demonſtrated, that it is compoſed of Parts very ſmall, and which move with the greateſt Celerity, that it is ſuperfluous to ſay any more about it.

*20. Whence it is that Sparks ariſe, upon ſtriking or rubbing two hard Bodies againſt each other.*

20. We ſee alſo, that there ariſes very bright Sparks upon ſtriking a *Flint* againſt *Steel*, or *two Flints* againſt each other, or an *Indian Cane* againſt a *common one*, or by ſtrokeing the *Back of a Cat* in the Dark, when the Weather is dry and cold, [1] and in a Multitude of other Things. The Cauſe of all which, is only this, that ſome of the Particles of theſe Bodies being entangled between others when they are ſtruck, acquire in flying off, a Motion like that of Flame, by which they in like manner puſh forward the ſmall Globules of the ſecond Element.

*21. The Cauſe of the ſhining of rotten Wood, and of ſome Fiſhes that are corrupted.*

21. There is ſome ſort of *rotten Wood*, and of *Fiſhes, when they begin to be corrupted*, which ſhine very bright. Now a Body cannot putrify or be corrupted, but by the Motion of its Parts, ſome of which fly off (as is evident in rotten Wood, from the Largeneſs of its Pores, and from its Lightneſs, which render it different from what it was before, as a Coal, and the Wood out of which it is made differ from each other.) We muſt own therefore,

---

[1] *And in a Multitude of other Things*) Thus likewiſe *Amber* rubbed very hard in the Dark; *Quickſilver* ſhaken in a *Vacuum*; and a *Glaſs* out of which the Air is exhauſted, if it be turned round very quick and rubbed, will ſhine bright, not by impelling or preſſing upon the Particles of the ſecond Element, for there is no ſuch Thing; but by ſending forth ſmall Particles which are the very Light it ſelf.

that the Motion of the Parts which we ſuppoſe in luminous Bodies, [1] is to be found here alſo.

*22. Of the Light of Glow-worms.*

22. It is not ſo eaſy to tell certainly, what ſort of Motion that is, which makes ſome *Worms* and *Flies* to ſhine in the Dark: However it is very probable, that ſome ſort of Matter is exhaled out of theſe Inſects, like the Sweat of other Animals, and that this puſhes the Matter of the ſecond Element; and this is confirmed from hence, that they ceaſe to ſhine as ſoon as they are dead.

*23. Of the Light of the Sun and Stars.*

23. The *Sun* and the *Stars* are the moſt luminous Bodies of any that we know; but by reaſon of their great Diſtance, it is impoſſible to make appear by any Experiments taken near them, that all their Parts are in Motion; all that we can affirm, is only this, that we do not obſerve any Thing to the contrary: And ſince they produce the ſame Effects in us, that Flame does, we ought to think, that they reſemble it in that by which theſe Effects are produced, *viz.* in the Motion of their Parts.

*24. That Naturaliſts are deceived in what they relate of a Carbuncle and a Diamond.*

24. If it were true, what they ſay of a *Carbuncle* and a *Diamond*, *viz.* that they ſhine in the Dark; I ſhould freely own, that I am miſtaken in all that I have ſaid about Light; for there is no Probability, that Bodies ſo hard, ſhould be compoſed of Parts which ſeparately are in any Sort of Agitation. But it is certain, that theſe are only idle Stories, told without any Proof, and received by credulous Perſons, for I have often times experienced the contrary my ſelf.

*25. What the Brightneſs of a Diamond conſiſts in.*

25. 'Tis true indeed, That a Diamond ſhines very bright in a darkiſh Place; but the Reaſon of this is, becauſe it is ſo cut, that the Sides reflect all the Light which they receive towards the ſame Part, as ſhall be more fully explained * afterwards, when we come to treat of the Refraction of Light.

* *Sect.* 46.

*26. Of the Light of a Diamond, when it is rubbed.*

26. We have lately had an Account from *England*, that [2] ſome Diamonds rubbed in the Dark, have ſhined ſo bright for a ſhort time, that a Word or two might be read by Light of them. I have not obſerved this in any

---

[1] *Is to be found here alſo.*) The famous Mr. *Boyle* made an Experiment of this Matter, which is very well worth taking notice of. He put a piece of rotten Wood into the Air Pump, which was in a manner extinguiſhed and ceaſed to ſhine, when the Air was exhauſted; but upon letting the Air in again, it ſeemed to be new lighted, and ſhined as before. See the *Philoſophical Tranſact. Numb.* 31. For this was true Flame, and like all other Flame cannot be preſerved without Air.

[2] *Some Diamonds rubbed in the Dark*) See Art. 20. above.

Diamonds that I have tried; however it may be true, without contradicting any Thing that I have hitherto wrote. For the Rubbing may raiſe ſome Agitation, if not in the Parts of the Diamond, yet at leaſt in ſome Matter contained in the Pores of it, which continuing in Motion in the ſame manner as the Flame in the Pores of a burning Coal, may for ſome time puſh the ſecond Element which is all round it, and diſpoſe it to raiſe a ſmall Senſation of Light.

27. *Of the* Boulogn-*Stone.*

27. Though we have no Jewels which ſhine in the Dark, yet we have a Stone that is truly luminous: This Stone was accidentally found by an *Italian Chymiſt* near *Boulogn* in a hollow Place cauſed by a Torrent. After having put it into a Fire for ſix Hours, he took it out, and let it cool; and when it had been expoſed to the Light of the Air for ſome time, upon carrying it afterwards into the Dark, he firſt perceived it to look like a Fire-Coal covered over with a few Aſhes. I have ſeen ſome ſhine near half a quarter of an Hour, after which their Light vaniſhed, but by expoſing them to the Light of the Air for a ſhort time, we could make them ſhine again when we pleaſed.

28. *The Reaſon of this Stone's ſhining.*

28. The Reaſon hereof very probably is, that the Fire has made this Stone extremely porous, ſo that among the Parts which are almoſt wholly disjoined from each other, there may be ſome [1] ſo eaſy to be put in Motion, that the Light of the Air alone is capable of agitating them, and they may be ſo diſpoſed to retain this Motion, that they may keep it after they are removed from amongſt the luminous Bodies, which put them in Motion; and this is confirmed from hence, that when this Experiment is often repeated, theſe Parts exhale, and the Stone quite loſes its ſhining Quality; which Quality cannot be preſerved above four or five Years, though the Stone be carefully ſhut up in a Box, where no Light can come at it.

29. *A Confirmation hereof.*

29. For a further Confirmation of what has been ſaid, we may obſerve, that if this Stone be kept too long in the Fire, or though it be kept in it but ſix Hours, yet

---

[1] *So eaſy to be put in Motion*) In much the ſame manner may the *Phoſphorus* be accounted for; (the manner of preparing it, is at large explained by the famous Mr. *Boyle*, to whom I refer you,) for it is very probable, that ſome ſulphureous Parts of the Urine, prepared over a very hot Fire, are ſo volatile and eaſy to be put in Motion, that they are turned into a kind of Flame, by the Agitation of the groſſer, or perhaps of the finer Air.

if the Fire be very hot, all the Parts of it which cannot reſiſt the Fire, may be carried off, and then the remaining Parts may be ſo heavy, as not to be ſhaked by the Light; in which caſe the Stone ought not to ſhine, and ſo we find by Experience.

30. *That Light ought to be propagated in a Moment to all Diſtances.*

30. Having thus ſhown the Truth of thoſe three Things which comprehend the Whole of our Conjecture, about *Primitive* or *Original Light*, concerning what they call *ſecondary* or *derivative Light*, we obſerve firſt; that becauſe it does not conſiſt in the actual Motion of the ſubtle Matter which fills the Pores of tranſparent Bodies, but only in the Tendency or Diſpoſition which this Matter has to Motion; it neceſſarily follows, that luminous Bodies, be they never ſo diſtant, ought to propagate their Force, and [1] to affect our Senſes in a Moment of Time; becauſe the Matter which is puſhed, being extended every way without Interruption, like a very long Stick; the luminous Body cannot puſh forward the neareſt Part of it, but at the ſame time it muſt impell the furtheſt Part likewiſe.

31. *A Difficulty about the Action of the Rays of Light.*

31. But perhaps ſome may think, that this Train of Matter which is extended from one Point of the luminous Body, to a Point of the Object which it illuminates, and which is called *a Ray of Light*, may more properly be compared to a Thread than to a Stick, becauſe its Parts are not ſo firmly connected together, as thoſe of a Stick are; and ſo it may be conceived, that as we can move one end of a Thread, without moving in the leaſt the other End, ſo the luminous Body may impel the Matter of the ſecond Element to which it is applied, without neceſſarily continuing that Impreſſion to any great diſtance. However, if we conſider, that the World is full of Matter, and that a Ray of Light is always ſurrounded by a great many others, which hinder it from bending, as a Thread does which is not ſurrounded by others, we ſhall be of Opinion, that every Ray of

---

[1] *To affect our Senſes in a Moment*) It appears now from the Phenomena of *Jupiter*'s Satellites, which get into the Shadow of *Jupiter* a little ſooner than they ought to do, when the Earth approaches towards *Jupiter*; and on the other hand, come out of the Shadow a little later than they ought to do, when the Earth departs from *Jupiter* (as many eminent Aſtronomers have obſerved) that Light (which is a real Body) is not propagated in a Moment of Time, but takes up about ſeven Minutes in coming from the Sun to the Earth, which is about 50000000 of Miles (See *Newt. Opt. p.* 252.) What ſurpriſing Things follow from Lights not being propagated in a Moment, but in a certain Space of Time. *You may ſee in the Notes on Part* II. *Ch.* XXV. *Art.* 3.

Light[1] ought to propagate the Force of the luminous Body in the ſame manner, as if it were as ſtiff as a Stick.

*32. That a Body may propagate its Action thro' an intermediate Liquor.*

32. In order to explain what is difficult in this Matter, let us compare this Action of the ſecond Element which tranſmits Light, to the Action of Water contained in a long thick Tube ſtopped at the lower End; and then let us conſider, that all the ſmall Threads of which this groſs Column of Water is compoſed, do every one in particular preſs with its whole Weight upon the Bottom; and that if we pour in never ſo little Oil, it will preſs upon the Bottom in the ſame manner as if we had poured it upon a ſtiff Stick.

*33. That to propagate this Action it is not neceſſary the Liquor ſhould be contained in any Veſſel.*

33. If this Compariſon does not ſeem juſt, becauſe in this Inſtance the Water is contained in a Veſſel; take another: Suppoſe the Surface of the Earth, inſtead of being unequal and rough as it is now, were round and ſmooth, and imagine it to be covered all over with Water to a certain Height; then would every Point of the Earth's Surface be preſſed upon by the whole Weight of the Thread of Water which correſpends to it; now compare the Action of the Rays of Light to the Action of this Water, and you will find, that they are capable of acting in the ſame manner, as if they were as ſtiff as a Stick.

*34. Why the Action of Light grows weaker, the more diſtant the luminous Body is.*

34. It is true however, and muſt be granted, that there is ſome Difference between theſe two Things: For the Threads of the Water approach nearer and nearer to each other, and tend to the ſame Center, whereas the Rays of Light go from the Center and ſpread themſelves towards the ſpherical Superficies which we may conceive all round them: But this Difference will only be of uſe, to ſhow us the Reaſon of a very remarkable Property of Light; which is, that the Impreſſion of the luminous Body does not come entire to the Object; but is weakened and diminiſhed a little, according as it ſpreads it ſelf, and proportionably to its Diſtance from the Center of Action. In order to explain this, let us ſuppoſe the Tube ABC, which grows wider towards the Top, to be filled with Water as high as DE, and that afterwards with a Syringe we put as much Water in at the End A of this Tube, as will fill the Space AFG, which is of a conſiderable Height, but of a ſmall Breadth. It is certain, that this Addition of Water, will raiſe up the Water at HI a

Tab. IV. Fig. 3.

---

[1] *Ought to propagate the Force*) To propagate it indeed, but not in ſtraight Lines; as Light is really propagated. *See the Notes on Art.* 15. *above.*

little, but that it will be ſcarce ſenſibly raiſed at DE. Now this explains the Nature of Light perfectly well. For as we cannot ſay that the Water at DE is not raiſed at all, but only that it is raiſed but a very little: So we may conclude, that the further the Rays of Light are diſtant from the luminous Body, the weaker they are; which agrees with Experience.

*35. Why Light meeting with certain Bodies ought to be reflected.*

35. Now as we are certain, that a Body in Motion alters its *Determination* when it meets with another Body that reſiſts it: So likewiſe we may conclude, that Light, when it falls [1] upon the Surface of a ſolid Body ought to be *turned back* or reflected. Thus for Example, if the ſmall Globules which are in the Line CD repreſent the Parts of the ſecond Element compoſing a Ray of Light, which falls upon the ſolid Body AB, its Action ought to be continued towards E, along the Line DE, in ſuch a manner, as that the Angle of *Reflexion* BDE ought to be equal to the Angle of *Incidence* ADC, that is, this Action ought to be propagated in the ſame Lines that the Globule C would deſcribe, if it were alone, and moved in the Line CD: For

Tab. IV. Fig. 4.

---

[1] *Upon the Surface of a ſolid Body*) The Reflexion of the Rays of Light is cauſed, not by falling upon the Parts themſelves of the reflecting Body, but by a certain Power equally diffuſed all over the Surface of the Body, whereby it acts upon the Ray to attract or repel it, *without immediate Contact*; by which ſame Power in other Circumſtances the Ray is refracted; and by which ſame Power it is at firſt ſent forth from the lucid Body; as the fore-cited admirable Perſon has demonſtrated by many Arguments.

I. Though thoſe Glaſſes which we call plain and poliſhed, do indeed appear to the Eye to have a ſmooth uniform Surface; yet in reality, (ſince poliſhing is nothing elſe but wearing away and breaking the Protuberances of the Glaſs, with Sand, Putty, or Tripoly) their Surfaces are very far from being plain and ſmooth: Now if the Rays of Light were reflected by impinging on the ſolid Parts of the Glaſs, their Reflexions could not be ſo exact and regular, as we find they are; nay, the Rays ought to be diſperſed all Ways, almoſt as much by the beſt poliſhed Glaſs, as by the rougheſt. *See Newt. Opt. p.* 240.

II. If the red and blue Rays which are ſeparated by a Priſm (*the manner of doing which, See in the Notes on Art.* 65. *below.*) be all of them caſt on a ſecond Priſm, in ſuch manner, that they are all alike incident upon it; the ſecond Priſm may be ſo inclined to the incident Rays, that thoſe which are of a blue Colour, ſhall be all reflected by it, and yet thoſe of a red Colour (though falling with the ſame Obliquity) pretty copiouſly tranſmitted. Now if the Reflexion be cauſed by the impinging of the Rays upon the Parts of the Glaſs; how comes it to paſs, that when all the Rays fall with the ſame Obliquity, the Blue ſhould wholly impinge on the ſolid Parts, ſo as to be all reflected, and yet the red find Pores enough in the ſame Place to be in a great meaſure tranſmitted? Pag. 239.

III. Where two Glaſſes touch one another, there is no ſenſible Reflexion, and yet there is no Reaſon why the Rays ſhould not impinge on the Parts of Glaſs as much when contiguous to other Glaſs, as when contiguous to Air. *Ibid.*

IV. When the Top of a Water-bubble, made by the working up of Soap and Water, by the continual ſub-

For it is evident, that the Globule D ought to have a Tendency, and to be diſpoſed to go where it would really go, *if its Power were put into act.* And ſince this Globule, upon meeting with the Body AB, would neither go towards G, nor towards H, but only towards F, it muſt be allowed, that it is the Globule F only which is impelled

ſubſiding and exhaling of the Water grows very thin; there is no manifeſt Reflexion, not only at the leaſt Thickneſſes, but alſo at many other Thickneſſes of the Bubble continually greater and greater; and yet in the Superficies of the thinned Body, where it is of any one Thickneſs, there are as many ſolid Parts for the Rays to impinge on as where it is of any other Thickneſs. *Ibid.*

V. If the red and blue Rays ſeparated by a Priſm (*the manner of doing which, as was ſaid before, you may ſee in the Notes on Art. 65. below*) be afterwards caſt diſtinctly and ſucceſſively upon a thin Plate of any tranſparent Matter, whoſe Thickneſſes grow continually greater and greater (ſuch as a Plate of Air contained between a plain Glaſs, and a Glaſs that is a little gibbous, ſuch as the Object-Glaſs of a long Teleſcope) this Plate in the *very ſame* Part of it will reflect all the Rays that are of one Colour, and tranſmit all thoſe that are of another Colour; in *different* Parts of it, it will tranſmit Rays of the ſame Colour at one Thickneſs, and reflect them at another, and this by innumerable Fitts. Now it is not any way to be imagined or conceived, that it can ſo happen by chance, that in the *very ſame* Part of the Plate, and with the very ſame Obliquity of the Rays, all the Rays that are of one Colour ſhould impinge upon the ſolid Parts, and all the Rays that are of another Colour ſhould hit upon the Pores only; and that in *different* Parts of the Plate, in one Place the blue Rays ſhould all impinge upon the Parts of the Body, and the red Rays run all into the Pores, and in another Place where the Plate is a little thicker or a little thinner, on the contrary the blue Rays only ſhould run all into the Pores, and all the red Rays impinge upon the Parts. *Pag.* 240.

VI. In the Paſſage of Light out of Glaſs into Air there is a Reflexion as ſtrong as in its Paſſage out of Air into Glaſs, or rather a little ſtronger, and by many degrees ſtronger than in its Paſſage out of Glaſs into Water. And it ſeems not probable, that Air ſhould have more reflecting Parts than Water or Glaſs. But if that ſhould poſſibly be ſuppoſed, yet it will avail nothing, for the Reflexion is as ſtrong or ſtronger when all the Air is removed from the further Surface of the Glaſs, as when it is adjacent to it. *p.*237. Now if any one ſhould imagine according to the Opinion of *Cartes*, that the ſubtle Matter at the further Surface of the Glaſs is denſer than any other Matter whatſoever, and upon that Account more ſtrong to reflect Light than any other Bodies; beſides that we have before demonſtrated, that that Matter is only a fictitious Thing; and that if we ſhould allow this Matter, and its Power to reflect Light, the Light could not be propagated by it at the Beginning, but muſt immediately be all reflected back upon the lucid Body as ſoon as it is ſent forth from it; beſides theſe I ſay, he will be convinced of the Falſity of this Fiction by the following Experiment.

VIII. If Light in its Paſſage out of Glaſs into Air be incident more obliquely than at an Angle of 40 or 41 Degrees, it is wholly reflected, if leſs obliquely, it is in great meaſure tranſmitted. Now it is not to be imagined, that Light, at one Degree of Obliquity, ſhould meet with Pores enough in the Air to tranſmit the greater Part of it; and at another degree of Obliquity, ſhould meet with nothing but Parts to reflect it wholly; eſpecially, conſidering, that in its Paſſage out of Air into Glaſs, how oblique ſoever be its Incidence, it finds Pores enough in the Glaſs, to tranſmit a great Part of it. If any Man ſuppoſe, that it is not reflected by the Air, but by the outmoſt ſuperficial Parts of the Glaſs, that will appear to be falſe, by applying led by it, and which receives its Action. And this is confirmed by Experience. For when the Light falls upon the Surface of any Opake and ſolid Body, as Gold or Steel, we ſee its Rays are reflected, and the Angle of this *Reflexion* is equal to the Angle of *Incidence*.

*36. That there are no tranſparent Bodies but reflect ſome Rays of Light.*

36. Now this being ſo in one ſolid Body, ſuch as Gold or any other Metal; as it is a general Truth, it ought to extend to all Sorts of ſolid Bodies, and the Light ought to be reflected in Angles equal to thoſe of their Incidence. Wherefore ſince the Pores of two tranſparent Bodies which touch each other, cannot exactly anſwer to one another;

---

plying Water or Oil behind ſome part of the Glaſs inſtead of Air. For ſo in a convenient Obliquity of the Rays ſuppoſe of 45 or 46 Degrees, at which they are all reflected where the Air is adjacent to the Glaſs, they will be in great meaſure tranſmitted where the Water is adjacent to it; which argues, that their Reflexion or Tranſmiſſion depends on the Conſtitution of the Air and Water, or Oil behind the Glaſs, and not on the ſtriking of the Rays upon the Parts of the Glaſs, *viz.* that the Rays are not reflected till they get to the further Surface of the Glaſs, and begin to go out of it. For if when they are going out of it, they fall upon Oil or Water, they go on, becauſe the Attraction of the Glaſs is almoſt ballanced and rendred ineffectual, by the contrary Attraction of the Liquor that ſticks to it. But if the Rays, which go out of the further Superficies, go into a *Vacuum*, which has no attractive Force, or into Air which has very little, and therefore cannot ballance the Attraction of the Glaſs, and render it ineffectual, then the Attraction of the Glaſs reflects them, by drawing and bringing them back. And this is ſtill more evident, by laying together two Priſms of Glaſs, or two Object-Glaſſes of very long Teleſcopes, the one plain, the other a little convex, and ſo compreſſing them, that they do not fully touch, nor are too far aſunder. For the Light which falls upon the farther Surface of the firſt Glaſs, where the Interval between the Glaſſes, is not above the Ten hundred thouſandth part of an Inch, will go through that Surface, and through the Air or *Vacuum* between the Glaſſes, and enter into the ſecond Glaſs. But if the ſecond Glaſs be taken away, the Light which goes out of the ſecond Surface of the firſt Glaſs into the Air or *Vacuum* that is between the Glaſſes, will not go on forwards, but turns back into the firſt Glaſs, and is reflected. From whence it is evident, that the Rays are drawn back by the Power of the firſt Glaſs, there being nothing elſe to turn them back. *p.* 238, and 347. And hence it is alſo manifeſt, as was before obſerved, that the Rays are not reflected by any ſubtle Matter or Æther, becauſe that Matter ought to reflect them not at all the leſs, when the ſecond Glaſs is ſo placed as not quite to touch the firſt, than when it is quite taken away.

*Laſtly*, If any one ſhould ask; becauſe we have aſcribed the Reflexion of Rays to the Action of the whole Superficies of Bodies, without immediately touching them; how it comes to paſs, that all Rays are not reflected by all Superficies: but while ſome are reflected, others are refracted and enter in: This excellent Perſon ſhows, that there are certain Vibrations (or ſome ſuch kind of Property) both in the Bodies themſelves, and in the Rays of Light, impreſſed upon the Rays, either by the Action of the Body which emits them, or by the Action of ſome other Bodies; whence it comes to paſs, that thoſe Rays which are in that Part of their Vibration which conſpires with the Motion of the Parts of the Body, enter into the Body, and are tranſmitted by Refraction; and thoſe which are on the other Part of their Vibration, are reflected. *See Newt. Opt. p.* 255.

and therefore many of the Pores, of Air for inſtance, may meet with the ſolid Parts of Water, Glaſs, or Chryſtal; it is impoſſible, but that tranſparent Bodies muſt reflect ſome part of the Light which falls upon their Surface; and they muſt reflect ſo much the more, as the Rays fall more oblique, becauſe in that Poſition they meet with more of the ſolid Parts of the tranſparent Body upon which they fall.

37. *How the Rays of Light are refracted as they paſs out of one tranſparent* Medium *into another.*

37. Let us now conſider, what will happen to Rays that paſs out of one tranſparent Medium into another, upon whoſe Surface they fall obliquely. We foreſee [1] that they ought to be *refracted* agreeably to what was ſaid before concerning Refraction, becauſe theſe tranſparent Bodies being of a different Nature, the one may afford an eaſier Paſſage to the Light than the other, and ſo the Rays ought to be leſs inclined, or nearer to the Perpendicular on that Side which more eaſily admits them.

38. *The harder a tranſparent Body, ſo much the eaſier will the Light paſs through it.*

38. Nor are we to think, that a tranſparent Body will afford ſo much the eaſier Paſſage to Light, by how much the eaſier it yields to other groſſer Bodies which make Way for themſelves, by removing its Parts: Juſt the contrary: For as the Paſſages for Light are already made,

[1] *That they ought to be refracted*) The Rays are refracted, not by falling upon the very Superficies of Bodies, but without immediate contact, by that very ſame Power by which they are emitted or reflected, exerting it ſelf differently in different Circumſtances, as may be demonſtrated by the ſame Arguments as were before made uſe of about Reflexion without Contact, and alſo by the following ones.

1. *Becauſe when Light goes out of Glaſs into Air, as obliquely as it can poſſibly do, if its Incidence be made ſtill more oblique, it becomes totally reflected. For the Power of the Glaſs, after it has refracted the Light as obliquely as is poſſible, if the Incidence be made ſtill more oblique, becomes too ſtrong to let any of its Rays go through, and by conſequence cauſes total Reflexions.*

2. *Becauſe Light is alternately reflected and tranſmitted by thin Plates of Glaſs for many Succeſſions accordingly as the Thickneſs of the Plate increaſes in an arithmetical Progreſſion. For here the Thickneſs of the Glaſs determines, whether that Power by which Glaſs acts upon Light ſhall cauſe it to be reflected, or ſuffer it to be tranſmitted.*

3. *Becauſe theſe Surfaces of tranſparent Bodies which have the greateſt refracting Power, reflect the greateſt quantity of Light.* Newt. Opt. p. 244.

4. Becauſe, although the Forces of Bodies to reflect and refract Light, are very nearly proportional to the Denſities of the ſame Bodies; yet unctuous and ſulphureous Bodies refract more than others of the ſame Denſity. For the Rays act with greater Force upon thoſe Bodies to ſet them on Fire, than they do upon others; and theſe Bodies act upon the Rays again with greater Force by mutual Attraction to refract them. *p.* 245. *&c.*

*Laſtly.* Becauſe, not only the Rays which are tranſmitted through Glaſs are reflected; but alſo thoſe which are near the Extremities of it in Air or in a *Vacuum*, or even thoſe which are near the extreme Parts of any opake Bodies (as the Edges of Knives, *&c.*) are bent by the Attraction of the Body. *p.* 293, *&c.*

it can move ſo much the eaſier as the Parts of the Body through which it paſſes, are more difficult to be put out of their Places; becauſe it is the leſs liable to loſe its Motion in paſſing, in the ſame manner as a Bowl will run eaſier upon the firm hard Ground, than upon ſoft Ground, or upon the Graſs. And thus as Water is in ſome Senſe harder than Air, and Glaſs harder than Water, and Chryſtal harder than Glaſs, it follows, [1] That Light ought to paſs more eaſily through Water, Glaſs and Chryſtal, than through Air; and its Rays ought to be leſs inclined, or to approach nearer to the Perpendicular in theſe Bodies than in Air.

39. *An Experiment of the Refraction of Light in paſſing out of Air into Water.* Tab. IV. Fig. 5.

39. This may be tried many Ways; I will ſhow you one that ſeems to me very evident. I cauſed a Braſs Box ABCD to be made, with a Cover to it of the ſame Metal. The Bottom BC was a Piece of *Venice* Chryſtal, under which I glued a piece of Paper, with ſeveral Marks made upon it at Pleaſure. I expoſed this Box to the Rays of the Sun, that a Ray, ſuch as FE might paſs the Cover at the Hole E, and looking underneath, I obſerved the Point G, which the Ray came to; then without altering the Situation of the Box, which was full of Air only, I filled it with Water, which I poured in at the Hole M; then I obſerved, that the Ray did not come ſo far as G, but only to L, ſo that it was *nearer the Perpendicular* HI, than it was before.

40. *An Experiment of the Refraction of Light paſſing out of Water into Air.* Tab. IV. Fig. 6.

40. Now to find whether a Ray paſſing out of Water into Air be turned *from the Perpendicular*, we may make uſe of a very common Experiment. We may put any Body, a piece of Money ſuppoſe, at the Bottom of a hollow Veſſel, which contains nothing but Air; then we may move our Eye B back, till the Edge of the Veſſel juſt hides the Object A; then let the Veſſel be filled with Water: after which, the Object without having changed its Place, will begin to appear by the Ray CB, which coming from A by C, will be bent, and removed *from the Perpendicular* ECF, whereas otherwiſe the Ray would have gone ſtreight on to D.

---

[1] *That Light ought to paſs more eaſily*) Mr. *Le Clerc* has committed a ſurprizing Miſtake here. *Therefore,* ſays he, *the greater the Reſiſtance of the Body is upon which the Ray falls, ſo much the more does it recede from the Perpendicular, and the leſs the Reſiſtance, the leſs does it recede. Wherefore a Ray falling upon Water out of Air, goes further from the Perpendicular; on the contrary, a Ray coming out of Water into Air approaches nearer to the Perpendicular; becauſe Air reſiſts it leſs than Water. Phyſ. Book* V. *Chap.* viii. *Sect.* 17. Contrary to all Experience.

41. Be-

41. *Of the Refraction of Light paſſing through a Glaſs Priſm.* Tab. IV. Fig. 7.

41. Becauſe Refraction will be of great Uſe hereafter, it is worth while to explain the Nature of it fully, by conſidering how it is made, when Light paſſes out of Air into Glaſſes of various ſorts of Figures. Suppoſe then, in the firſt Place [1] *a triangular Priſm* ABC, upon one Side of which, ſuppoſe AB the Ray DE falls obliquely. From what was ſaid before concerning the Rays paſſing out of Air into Glaſs, it follows, that it ought not to go on in a ſtreight Line to F, but to G, in order to approach nearer the Line HEI, which is ſuppoſed to be drawn through the Point E, upon which the Ray falls, and to be perpendicular to the Surface AB. After which, the Ray EG paſſing obliquely out of Glaſs into Air, ought not to go directly to L, but to M, becauſe it is turned from the Perpendicular NGO.

42. *Of the Refraction of Light paſſing through a Convex Light.* Tab. IV. Fig. 8.

42. Suppoſe now a Lens or a Glaſs convex on both Sides, ſuch as is repreſented by the Figure 2B3K, and imagine a great many parallel Rays, ſuch as AB, CD, EF, to fall upon its Surface; now in order to find out how theſe Rays ought to be refracted, we muſt firſt draw through the Points B, D, F, Lines perpendicular to the Glaſs, that is, the Lines ABK, HDI, LFM, tending towards the Point G, which I ſuppoſe to be the Center of the Superficies 2B3. This being done, we may conſider, that the Ray AB, being in the Perpendicular it ſelf, ought not be at all refracted as it paſſes out of Air into Glaſs, but to go on directly towards K, where it falls again perpendicular upon the Superficies of the Air 2K3 (becauſe it comes from the Point R, which is the Center of this Superficies) and therefore it will continue to go ſtrait on ſtill towards G, without any Refraction. But as to the other Rays, ſuch as CD, and EF, becauſe they do not fall perpendicularly, it is evident, that they will not go directly to O and N, but will approach nearer to the Perpendiculars HI, LM, and go to Q and P, and by this means they will tend towards the Ray ABK; and becauſe, having drawn the Lines TQI, SPM perpendicular through the Points P and Q, that is, the Lines which tend to the Point R, we find that the Rays DQ, FP fall obliquely on the Surface of the Air, we conclude, that they will be refracted, and go from the Perpendicular. So that DQ will not go directly to X but to G, and FP alſo will not go directly to V, but to

---

[1] *A Triangular Priſm*) See the Notes on Art. 65, below.

the ſame Point G. The ſame may be demonſtrated of the Rays, that fall on the other Side of AB, which will be bent ſo, as to interſect the firſt, [1] ſomewhere near the Point G; thus we ſee, that *it is the Property of a Convex-Glaſs, to collect together the Rays of Light which fall parallel upon it.*

*43. Of the Refraction of the Rays which come from different Placec.*

43. If whilſt the Glaſs remains in the ſame Situation, parallel Rays fall upon it from ſome other Place, we ſhall find that they will meet together in ſome other Point, and not in G; thus if they come from the right Side of thoſe before drawn, they will meet on the left Side, *viz.* near Y; and on the contrary, if they come from the left Side, they will meet on the right Side ſomewhere near Z.

*44. Of the Refraction of Light paſſing through a Concave-Glaſs.* Tab. IV. Fig. 9.

44. Let us conſider in the Third Place, A Glaſs that is thinner in the Middle than at the Edges, that is, a Glaſs concave on both Sides, ſuch as is repreſented by GBHIMK, and ſuppoſe the parallel Rays, AB, CD, EF, to fall upon it. Now in order to ſee how they ought to be refracted, let us erect Perpendiculars at the Points B, D, F, where they enter the Glaſs: This being done; ſince the Ray AB coincides with the Perpendicular, it will enter the Glaſs as far as M without any Refraction, where becauſe it falls perpendicularly upon the Superficies of the Air, it will no more be refracted at going out, than it was at entring into the Glaſs, and conſequently it will go directly to L. But becauſe the Ray CD falls obliquely upon the Surface of the Glaſs, it will not go directly to P, but will turn to Q, becauſe it tends towards the Perpendicular NDO; and becauſe the Ray DQ falls obliquely upon the Surface of the Air alſo, it will not go directly to T, but will be refracted towards V, becauſe it goes from the Perpendicular RQS. So likewiſe if we examine the Ray EF, we ſhall find by the like Way of Reaſoning, that it will go to Y, and from thence to Z. Whence we ſee, that *it is the Property of a Concave-Glaſs* [2] *to diſperſe the Rays which fall parallel upon it.*

---

[1] *Somewhere near the Point G*) For the Rays are not collected together exactly into the ſame Place, and the Focus is not in a Point, but in a ſmall Line, that is, in part of the Line KG, ſo that ſome of the Rays meet with each other nearer the Point K than others of them. Thus for Inſtance, if the Glaſs be equally gibbous on both Sides that Line will be $\frac{7}{6}$ of the whole Thickneſs BK. See *Hugen's Diopt.* Prop. 27. p. 94. and *Barrow, Sect.* V. Tab. IV. Fig. 8.

[2] *To diſperſe the Rays*) In ſuch a manner that they may ſeem to come from a ſmall Line, or ſuch Part of the Line AB as the forementioned ſmall Line was, into which they were gathered in paſſing through a Convex-Glaſs. Tab. IV. Fig. 9.

*45. How the Light is refracted in paſſing thro' a Glaſs that has a great many Superficies.*
Tab. V. Fig. 1.

45. Let us conſider in the Fourth Place, a Glaſs cut with ſeveral Surfaces on the one Side, but plain on the other, ſuch as is repreſented by the Figure ABCDETS, and ſuppoſe the Rays FG, HI to fall parallel upon it: Draw Perpendiculars in the Points G and I; then becauſe, from what was before ſaid, theſe Rays ought to go towards the Perpendiculars, we are ſure that they will bend towards K and Q; and becauſe they again fall obliquely upon the Surface of the Air ST, we conclude that they will be refracted a ſecond Time; ſo that GK will tend towards L, and IQ towards M; and becauſe all the parallel Rays that fall upon the ſame plain Superficies, are equally inclined to it, they will be equally refracted, and conſequently will be parallel when they come out, ſo that thoſe which fall upon the Superficies BC will go along with the Ray KL, and thoſe which fall upon AB, CD, DE, will go along with the Rays QM, PN, and RO.

*46. Wherein the Luſtre of precious Stones conſiſts.*

46. So that if the Surface TS were covered with an opake Body which receives all the Rays of Light that fall upon the Superficies AB, BC, CD, DE, it is evident, that none of them will come upon the Parts SQ and RT, and conſequently they will look darker; whereas the Part QR receiving all the Light which falls upon every one of the Surfaces ought to appear very bright; and herein conſiſts the Luſtre of a Diamond and other precious Stones which are any way tranſparent. For they will not ſhine, unleſs they be cut with a great many Superficies in ſuch a Manner as to turn the Rays of Light towards one Place at the Bottom, where is a ſmall Plate of Gold or Silver to receive the Light, and reflect it back to our Eyes.

*47. Of the Refraction of Light paſſing thro' a plain Glaſs.*
Tab. V. Fig. 2.

47. Laſtly, Let us ſuppoſe *a plain Glaſs of equal Thickneſs every where*, ſuch as ABCD, upon which the parallel Rays, EF, GH, IL, if they fall obliquely, fall with equal Obliquity, ſo that they are equally refracted, by approaching every one of them towards the Perpendicular, and therefore go to M, O, and Q, being ſtill parallel, and conſequently equally inclined to the Surface BC; whence it follows, that in paſſing into Air, they recede equally from their Perpendiculars, and ſo continue always parallel. But we muſt obſerve here, that the Rays EF, GH, IL, which incline towards the Right, when they firſt enter into the Glaſs, are inclined as much towards the Left, when they come out of it: So that we may ſay, the Glaſs

[1] undoes that by the ſecond Refraction, which it did by the Firſt. [2]

*48. That all Sorts of Light are capable of producing Heat.*

48. Since Light not only ſhines, but heats alſo, we may here add; that though we cannot perceive any Inequality in the Action of luminous Bodies, but that they ſeem to impell uniformly the ſecond Element which ſurrounds them, towards thoſe Bodies which terminate their Action; yet Reaſon ſhows us, that they act more ſtrongly at ſome times than at others; not only becauſe their Parts are not all equal, nor are they always the ſame which are applied to the ſame ſurrounding Matter to impell it; but alſo becauſe this Action is at firſt communicated to a tranſparent and liquid Medium, the Parts of which continually move out of their Places. And this cauſes the ſmall Globules of the ſecond Element to impreſs a kind of Trembling upon the Parts of the Bodies to which they are impelled by the luminous Bodies; and becauſe Heat conſiſts in ſuch a kind of Agitation, it follows, that all luminous Bodies ought to produce ſome Heat.

*49. Why we do not feel the Heat of ſome luminous Bodies.*

49. However, it may happen that this Heat may not be at all perceivable, either becauſe of the Weakneſs of the luminous Body, or becauſe the *Organ* upon which it acts is hotter than it. Thus if coming from a Fire we expoſe our ſelves in a cold Night to the Rays of the Moon, we ſhall find it very cold; becauſe in ſuch Circumſtances, we give more Heat to the Air which ſurrounds us, than that does to us.

*50. The ſurpriſing Power of the Sun's Heat.*

50. And as the Sun is very bright, ſo ought it to raiſe the moſt ſenſible Heat in us; and ſo we find by Experience every Day that it does; nay to that Degree, that when its Rays are collected by a concave-Glaſs, they will not only ſet combuſtible Bodies on which they fall, on Fire, but will melt Metals, Stones, and Flints,

---

[1] *Undoes that by the ſecond Refraction)* We muſt have a Care of thinking, that the ſecond Refraction ſo undoes the firſt, that the Object is ſeen in its true Place; for the Ray BQ extended backwards will not coincide with the Ray LI, but fall to the right Hand of it, and that ſo much the more, the thicker the Glaſs is. But as to Colours, the ſecond Refraction does indeed undo the firſt. *See the Notes on Art. 65.* Tab. V. Fig. 2.

[2] That double and irregular Refraction of *Iſland Chryſtal*, whereby not only the oblique Rays are ſeparated into two Parts on the ſame Superficies by a double Refraction; but alſo thoſe that fall perpendicularly are half of them refracted likewiſe, is very different from all thoſe hitherto explained: The Explication of this you may ſee in *Newt. Opt. p.* 331.

which are very difficult to melt with Fire; as I my ſelf have ſeen.

*51. That the coloured Body is not the immediate Cauſe of the Senſation of Colour.*

51. Having ſufficiently explained the Nature of Light, and the common Properties of it; the firſt Thing that we obſerve concerning Colours, is, that they are not perceived by the immediate Application of the coloured Object to the *Organ* of Senſation: From whence it follows, that it does not of it ſelf excite in us that Senſation of Colour which we have upon looking on it; for we certainly know, that one Body cannot act upon another without immediate Contact; but whatever there may be in the coloured Object, in which its Colour conſiſts, we muſt think, that it acts thereby upon ſome Medium which it finds, and by that Means acts afterwards upon our *Organ* of Senſation.

*52. That it is the different Modification of the Rays of Light that cauſes the different Senſation of Colours in us.*

52. If the coloured Object only had been conſidered, which generally is at reſt, when it affects the Senſes, I doubt the manner of its acting upon the *Medium* would never have been diſcovered, and conſequently we ſhould never have known diſtinctly what Colour conſiſts in. But if we obſerve, that ſuch Bodies are not to be perceived in the Dark; and that in order for them to appear coloured, it is neceſſary for them to have ſome Light, the Nature of which is to be reflected, when it meets with a Body which it cannot penetrate; it is eaſy to conclude, that it is the Light which acts upon our *Organ* of Senſation to make us perceive any Colour, and that the whole Action of the *coloured Body* conſiſts in giving it [1] *ſome Modification which it had not before.*

53. This

---

[1] *Some Modification which it had not before.*) In order to explain the Nature of Colours we muſt obſerve,

(1.) That it is found by Experience, that the Rays of Light are compounded of Particles different from one another: that is, which are (as is highly probable) ſome larger and ſome ſmaller.

Tab. IV. Fig. 5.

(2.) That a Ray, ſuch as FE, falling upon a refracting Superficies in a dark Room, is not refracted whole to L, but as it were ſplit into a great many ſmaller Rays, ſome of which are refracted to L, others of them to ſome other Points betwixt L and G: That is, (as is very probable likewiſe) thoſe Particles of Light which are ſmalleſt, are the eaſieſt of all, and the moſt turned out of a ſtraight Line towards L, by the Action of the refracting Superficies; and the reſt of them, according as they exceed each other in Bigneſs, are more difficultly, and leſs turned out of a right Line, to the Points betwixt G and L.

(3.) Thoſe Particles of Light which are moſt refracted, make a ſmall Ray of a Violet Colour; that is (as is very likely) the ſmalleſt Particles of Light, ſeparated from the reſt in this manner, excite the ſhorteſt Vibrations in the *Tunica Retina*, to be propagated from thence along the ſolid Fibres of the optick Nerves into the Brain, there to excite the Senſation of Violet Colour, the darkeſt and the fainteſt of all Colours. And thoſe Particles which are

*53. That the Roughneſs of the Superficies of a Body does alone modify the Action of Light.*

53. This being ſuppoſed, there cannot be an eaſier Way to come at the certain Knowledge of the Nature of Colours. For ſince Light is nothing elſe but a particular Motion of the ſmall Globules of the ſecond Element, or at leaſt a Diſpoſition to a particular Sort of Motion; nothing more is requiſite for the underſtanding of Colours, but only to examine the different Modifications which this Motion is capable of, and to find out what there is in the Bodies which we call coloured, to cauſe theſe Modifications. Now the firſt Thing which offers it ſelf, and which is the moſt ſimple Modification, is this, *viz.* That this Motion cannot but be weak, if all the Rays

---

are refracted leaſt, they make a ſmall Ray of a red Colour; that is, the biggeſt Particles of Light, excite the longeſt Vibrations in the *Tunica Retina*, in order to raiſe the Senſation of a red Colour, the brighteſt of all Colours; and the other Particles are alſo every one ſeparated into ſmall Rays, according to their Bigneſs and Refrangibility, in order to excite intermediate Vibrations, which raiſe the Senſations of intermediate Colours. Much in the ſame manner, as the Vibrations of Air, according to their different Bigneſſes, cauſe Senſations of different Sounds.

(4.) The Colours therefore of thoſe ſmall Rays, ſince they are not accidental Modifications of them, but connate, original, and neceſſary Properties of them, conſiſting (as is highly probable) in the different Magnitudes of them, are permanent and unchangeable; that is, ſuch as cannot be altered by any future Refraction, Reflexion, or any other Modification.

(5.) As the Rays of different Colours begin in this manner to be ſeparated by the *ſingle* Refraction of *one* Superficies; ſo that Separation is much more compleated (ſo as very eaſily to be perceived by our Senſes) by that *double* Refraction (the Firſt being increaſed by the Second) which is made in the two *Sides* of a Triangular-Glaſs Priſm, (the Phænomena of which are fully explained in the *Notes on Art.* 65. below) and in the double Refraction made in the Superficies of Glaſſes of other Figures, according as their Superficies are further from being parallel to each other, ſuch as the Object Glaſſes of Teleſcopes, *&c.* (and this is the Reaſon why they cannot be made perfect, *viz.* becauſe of the Separation of the coloured Rays. *See the Notes on Chap.* xxxiii. *Art.* 28.)

(6.) As the Rays of different Colours are ſeparated by the Refractions of Priſms, and other thick Bodies, ſo are they likewiſe ſeparated in another manner, in very thin Plates of any tranſparent Matter. For all Plates, which are thinner than a certain determinate Thickneſs, tranſmit the Rays of all Colours and reflect none; but as their Thickneſs increaſes in an Arithmetical Progreſſion, they begin to reflect, firſt, Rays that are *intirely* Blue; then Green, Yellow, Red, in order; and again, Blue, Green, Yellow, Red; *but more and more faint and mixed;* till at laſt, when they come to a certain Thickneſs, they reflect the Rays of all Colours throughly mixed together, juſt as they fell upon them, and theſe make White. And in that Part of the thin Plate where it reflects any Colour, for Inſtance, Blue, it always tranſmits the contrary Colour, *viz.* Red, or Yellow: For the Truth of all which Phænomena, found out by numberleſs Experiments, and for the Calculation of what Thickneſs the Plate ought to be, to reflect particular Colours, and for the Reaſons why Plates of particular Thickneſſes reflect particular Colours in this manner. See the eminent Sir *Iſaac Newton* moſt clearly diſcourſing in his *Opt. Book* II.

(7.) All natural Bodies are made up of very thin tranſparent ſmall Plates; which, if they be ſo regularly diſpoſed, with regard to each other, that there is no Reflexions or

Rays of Light which fall upon an Object in a certain Order, and in a certain Quantity, be not reflected back in the ſame Order, nor in the ſame Quantity towards one determinate Place of the Medium where the Eye is fixed: And we are ſure, that this muſt neceſſarily happen, if the very ſmall Particles of the illuminated Body are ſo diſpoſed, as to make a rough and uneven Superficies; for then the Rays which come as it were parallel from the luminous Body, fall upon ſuch a Superficies with all ſorts of Obliquities, and therefore are ſcattered and reflected all Ways; and this is the Reaſon why the Eye does not receive the Light with its full Force; but only a certain ſmall Number of Rays are determined by this Superficies to come to the Place where the Eye is fixed; and hence we may conclude, that there is ſome particular Colour which conſiſts only *in the Roughneſs of the Surface of the coloured Body, and which gives no other Modification to the Light, but only this, that it reflects it all ways indifferently in the ſame manner as it received it.*

*54. VVhat the Nature of VVhiteneſs conſiſts in.*

54. Now as this is the leaſt Modification of Light that can be; ſo the Body which cauſes it ought to reſemble the luminous Body as much as poſſible, that is, it ought to excite in us the Senſation of *Whiteneſs*, which comes the neareſt to Light of any Colour. And this is confirmed by Experience; for the white Colour of *Eſtamps* Sand is found ro conſiſt in this, that every Grain does thus reflect any Ray of Light all Ways. For when we look upon any of the Grains with a *Microſcope*, they have no Colour at all, but are tranſparent, like ſmall Pieces of Chryſtal of all Shapes, or like little Diamonds which af-

---

or Refractions in their Interſtices, then they conſtitute a *tranſparent* Body. But if their Interſtices be ſo large, and filled with ſuch Matter, or ſo empty (proportionably to the Denſity of the Parts themſelves) that there are ſeveral Reflexions and Refractions made within the Body, then that Body is *Opake*. (*See Art. 5. above*) Further, thoſe opake Bodies which are made up of the thinneſt ſmall Plates of all, are *Black*; and thoſe that are made up of the thickeſt ſmall Plates, or of ſuch as are of very different Thickneſſes, and are therefore fitted to reflect all Colours; ſuch as the Froth of Water, theſe are *VVhite*; and thoſe which are made up of ſmall Plates, the moſt of which are of ſome intermediate Thickneſs, are therefore *Blue, Green, Yellow, or Red, viz.* by reflecting not all the Rays of that Colour, but more of thoſe than of any other Colours, the greateſt Part of which other, they either ſuffocate, and by intercepting them, extinguiſh them quite, or elſe they tranſmit them; whence it is, that ſome Liquors (for Inſtance, an Infuſion of Lignum Nephriticum) appeared Red or Yellow by a reflected Light, and Blue by a tranſmitted Light; and Leaf-Gold appears Yellow when looked upon, but Green or Blue when looked through.

ford ſuch a Paſſage to the Light, that they reflect it all Ways in the ſame manner as they received it.

55. That Roughneſs is ſufficient to cauſe Whiteneſs.

55. We may further conjecture, nay, we may be aſſured, that *the Eſſence of Whiteneſs conſiſts in nothing elſe but the Roughneſs of the white Body,* if we conſider, that we cannot make ſome Bodies *rough,* but they will alſo become *white* at the ſame Time, nor take away their *Roughneſs,* but we muſt likewiſe take away their *Whiteneſs.* Thus Goldſmiths make Silver *white,* by putting it firſt into the Fire, to take off all the Droſs and Dirt which ſoils it; and then dipping it in boyling Water, into which they caſt a certain Quantity of *Tartar* and *common Salt* (which are corroſive Bodies, and proper to make the Superficies of Silver rough and uneven.) And to take off the *Whiteneſs,* they do nothing more but rub the Silver with what they call a Blood-ſtone, which is very hard and ſmooth; which by preſſing upon the Part it is applied to, muſt neceſſarily depreſs the Parts which ſtick up, and raiſe the Parts which ſink in, that is, take off the Roughneſs.

56. Why a white Body looks ſo, when viewed every Way.

56. As we take it for granted, that a white Body does not abſorb any of the Rays, but that its Superficies reflects them all Ways indifferently, it follows, that we cannot place the Eye any where, but that it will receive pretty near the ſame Number of Rays as if it were placed any where elſe; and conſequently the Body ought to appear white from what Side ſoever it is viewed. But the Caſe of plain poliſhed Bodies, ſuch as Looking-Glaſſes, is different; for when they receive the parallel Rays of Light from one Side only, they can reflect them to the other Side only, where they may dazzle the Eye, but they will not reflect Rays to any other Part.

57. Of the Nature of Blackneſs.

57. As *Black* is contrary to *White,* there is no doubt but that the Eſſence of *Blackneſs* conſiſts in the contrary to that of *Whiteneſs.* Wherefore, as it is neceſſary, in order for a Body to look *White,* that it ſhould reflect the Light which falls upon it towards all Parts in the ſame manner as it receives it, ſo that there can be no Place, but that a ſufficient Quantity of Rays muſt affect our Eye: So likewiſe ought we to think, that in order to perceive *Blackneſs,* there muſt come no Rays at all to the Eye; and conſequently the Bodies which we call *Black,* and which appear ſo to our Senſes, abſorb all the Rays in ſuch a manner, that they reflect none of them to make any Impreſſion upon the Eye: And becauſe a Body cannot deſtroy the Motion of another Body, but by gaining

it it ſelf, it is eaſy to conceive, that *the Parts of Black Bodies are very fine and broken, ſo as to be eaſily ſhaken.*

*58. Why a great many Bodies that are not Black, do yet appear ſo.*

58. And this is confirmed from hence. Firſt, That *Darkneſs*, that is, thoſe Places where Bodies having no Light falling upon them, can reflect no Rays to the Eyes, [1] appears *Black*. Secondly, *Shadows*, or thoſe Places, which, by reaſon of the Interpoſition of ſome opake Body, do not receive the Rays of Light from the luminous Body, or receive but a few of them, appear *Black*. Laſtly, *A well-poliſhed Body*, which does receive a great many Rays of Light, but reflects them to the Side oppoſite to us, appears *Black*.

*59. Why Wood when it is burnt to a Coal, turns Black.*

59. Theſe Things being allowed, it will not ſeem ſtrange, that Flame which is ſo bright, ſhould convert White Wood into a *Black* Coal. For it is manifeſt, that the Wood has loſt a great many of its Particles, which ſerved to nouriſh the Flame; wherefore the greateſt Part of the remaining ones are ſo [2] diſunited, and eaſily ſhaken, that they abſorb almoſt all the Light that falls upon them.

*60. That all the Parts rf a Coal are not Black.*

60. I ſay, the greateſt Part only are diſunited and eaſy to be put in Motion, and not all of them; for it may happen, that the fineſt Particles which are on the Outſide of the Coal, may be like Down to cover the more ſolid Parts, and ſuch as are capable of reflecting a ſufficient Quantity of Rays of Light: And thus we ſee, that after the Fire has carried off all that it can conſume of the Coal; there yet remains a great many Parts which compoſe the Cinder, which are pretty ſolid, for they appear of a whitiſh Colour.

*61. That,* cæteris paribus, *Black Bodies ought to weigh leſs than White.*

61. Becauſe the Particles of Black Bodies are more diſunited than thoſe of White Bodies, it follows, that they contain leſs of their own proper Matter in the ſame Bulk than theſe other. And becauſe the more a Body has of heavy Matter, the heavier ought it to weigh, therefore

---

[1] *Appears Black*) This is taken out of *Ariſtotle's firſt Book of Colours. Chap.* i. *There are three Ways that Black appears to us. Where we cannot ſee at all, it is naturally Black. Or where there is no Light brought to our Eyes. Or where the reflected Light is very rare and ſmall; and thus Shadows appear Black.*

[2] *Diſunited and eaſily ſhaken*) And they very eaſily and ſtrongly make other Bodies, to which they are applied, of a Black Colour, becauſe the very ſmall Particles of the Coal, the Number of which is very great, eaſily cover over the groſſer Particles of other Bodies. But this Opinion, *concerning the Nature of Blackneſs*, in general is very much confirmed from hence, *viz.* that Black Bodies are ſooner heated; and if wetted, grow ſooner dry than White, as is confirmed by certain Experiments. *See Art.* 62.

we ought to conclude, that *cæteris paribus* of two equal Bodies, the one *Black*, and the other *White*, the *latter* ought to weigh more than the *other*; Wherefore the *Wood* ought to weigh more than the *Coal*; and a piece of *White* Marble more than a Piece of *Black*, of the ſame Bigneſs.

*62. Why the Rays of the Sun, collected by a Convex-Glaſs, burn Black Bodies eaſier than they do White.*

62. Having thus explained the Nature of *White* and *Black*, we ſhall eaſily underſtand the Reaſon why the Rays of the Sun collected by a Convex-Glaſs, will not *burn* at all, or *burn* with greater Difficulty *White* Bodies; but will eaſily *kindle Black Bodies*, though they be both combuſtible. For it is evident, that the *White* Body which reflects all the Rays that fall upon it, is not ſhaked by them, and that the *Black* Body which abſorbs and choaks all the Rays, therefore abſorbs them becauſe it receives all their Motion; by which Means it begins to grow hot, and at laſt takes Fire.

*63. Why White Bodies weary the Sight, and Black Ones refreſh it.*

63. Hence we ſee the Reaſon of a Fact which we ſhould not know but by Experience; which is, that *White* Bodies weary the Sight, and *Black* ones refreſh it. For we cannot look upon *White*, but we muſt receive the Impreſſion of a great Quantity of Rays, which fatigues the Sight, whereas we ſee *Black* when no Rays come to us, which refreſhes it.

*64. What are the whiteſt and blackeſt Bodies of all.*

64. From all which it follows, that thoſe Bodies are the *whiteſt* which reflect all Ways, and with the ſame Force, all the Light which falls upon them; and on the contrary, that thoſe Bodies are the *blackeſt*, which abſorb the Light the moſt that can be. Such we have reaſon to believe *black Velvet* to be, becauſe the ſmall Threads of Silk of which it is made, are like Briſtles, and ſo placed as to be as rough as poſſible; wherefore it is the blackeſt Thing in the World.

*65. Of the Nature of other Colours.*

65. As to the Modifications of the Rays of Light, which excite in us the Senſation of other Colours; as *Red*, *Yellow*, and *Blue*, we ought to think that they conſiſt in this, *viz.* that the ſmall Globules of the ſecond Element, which compoſe the Rays that are reflected from all ſuch Bodies, have not ſo much Force or ſo great a Diſpoſition to go on in a ſtreight Line, as the Globules of the Rays which are reflected from white Bodies, and therefore inſtead thereof, they are ſome way turned about their own Centers; and ſo part of the Force which they had before to go on in a ſtreight Line, is beſtowed upon this Motion. Which may be juſtified from hence, that we cannot conceive what other Alteration than this can hap-

pen to the Rays of Light, in paſſing through [1] a triangular Glaſs *Priſm*; and yet we ſee, that by going through this *Priſm*, they are capable of exciting in us the Senſation of *Red*, *Yellow*, and *Blue*.

66. But

---

1. *A triangular Glaſs Priſm*) Becauſe the Experiments of a triangular Priſm, are as it were the Touchſtone by which every Hypotheſis, and every Theory, concerning the Nature and Properties of Colours, is to be examined and tried; I ſhall not think it too much trouble briefly to enumerate here the principal Phænomena as they are explained by the famous Sir *Iſaac Newton* all along in his Opticks. 1. Then, the Rays of Light tranſmitted through a Priſm, paint an Image upon the oppoſite Wall, diſtinguiſhed into various Colours, the Chief of which are, Red, Yellow, Green, Blue, and Violet. 2. This Image is not round, but when the Angle of the Priſm is about 60 or 65 Degrees, five times as long as it is broad. 3. Thoſe Rays which make a Yellow Colour, deviate more from a ſtreight Line, than thoſe which make a Red; and thoſe which make a green Colour, deviate more than thoſe that make a Yellow, *&c.* and thoſe which make a violet Colour deviate moſt of all. 4. If the Priſm, through which the Rays are tranſmitted, be ſo turned about its Axis, that the Red, Yellow, Green, *&c.* Rays fall in order through a ſmall Hole upon another Priſm, about twelve Foot diſtance, and be turned another Way; the Yellow, *&c.* Rays, though they fall with the ſame Incidence upon the ſecond Priſm as the Red do, yet they will not be turned upon the ſame Place as the Red, but will be carried further towards that Part, to which the Refraction is made. Further, if in the Place of the ſecond Priſm they be received by a Glaſs that is a little gibbous, the Yellow, Green, *&c.* Rays, every one in their Order, will meet in a Focus ſooner than the Red. 5. The Colours of the coloured Rays, well ſeparated, (the manner of doing which, you may ſee in *Newt. Opt. p.* 54, *&c.*) cannot be deſtroyed, nor any Way altered by repeated Refractions. 6. The Colours of coloured Rays cannot be at all altered, by paſſing through a Place that is Light, nor by croſſing each other; nor by the Confines of a Shadow; nor by reflecting them from any natural Bodies in a Place dark every where elſe. 7. All the coloured Rays together, collected, either by ſeveral Priſms, or by a Convex or Concave-Glaſs, make White; but when ſeparated, after croſſing each other, they all exhibit their own Colour. 8. If the Rays of the Sun, fall upon the inward Superficies of the Priſm, with the greateſt Obliquity that any of the Rays can be tranſmitted at, thoſe that are reflected will be Violet, and thoſe which are tranſmitted will be Red. 9. If there be two Priſms, the one filled with a red Liquor, and the other with a Blue; the two Priſms clapped together will be opake, though if they be both filled with a red or blue Liquor, they will be tranſparent when clapped together. 10. All natural Bodies, but eſpecially White, when looked at through a Priſm, appear to be bordered on one Side with a red and yellow Colour, and on the other Side Side with a Violet and Blue. 11. If two Priſms be ſo placed, that the Red of the one, and the Purple of the other, be mixed on a fitted Piece of Paper, ſurrounded with Darkneſs, there will be a pale Image; which if it be looked upon through a third Priſm at a due Diſtance, will appear double, Red and Purple. 12. So likewiſe, if two Sorts of Powder, the one perfectly Red, and the other perfectly Blue, be mixed together, and any ſmall Body be dawbed thick with that Mixture, it will appear to the Eye through a Priſm, to have two Images, a red and a blue One.

Theſe are the moſt general Phænomena of the Priſm; (to reckon up all the Particulars which are worth obſerving, would be endleſs) from which it appears at firſt Sight, that the Colours cannot conſiſt in the turning round of the Globules only, according to *Cartes*, nor in the Obliquity

66. But for the clearer underſtanding hereof; let the Side BC of the Priſm ABC be covered all over with ſome opake Body, except the Place DE, where there is to be a Hole in the opake Body for ſome of the Rays FI, GL, coming from the Sun FG to paſs through; which,

*66. Of the Action of the Rays of Light paſsing through a Glaſs Priſm.*
Tab. V.
Fig. 3.

liquity of the Pulſes of the ætherial Matter, as Mr. *Hook* thought, *Microg. Obſer.* 9, nor in the Light being thick and rare or ſlower moved; as the famous *Barrow* conjectures, *Lect.* 12. towards the End. But theſe and all other Phænomena of Colours, are very eaſily and clearly explained, by the true Theory of that incomparable Perſon ſo often cited.

For Firſt. *The Rays of Light tranſmitted through a Priſm, paint an Image upon the oppoſite Wall, diſtinguiſhed into various Colours:* Becauſe the coloured Rays are ſeparated by Refraction. Thus the blue Rays, for Inſtance, marked with the prick'd Line, which begin to be ſeparated in the Side *ca* of the Priſm *abc* (and alſo in the firſt Superficies of the Globe of Water *abc*) from the reſt by the firſt Refraction in *dd*; are ſeparated ſtill more in *bc*, the other Side of the Priſm (and alſo in coming out of the Globe *abc*) by a ſecond Refraction towards the ſame part in *ee*: But, on the contrary, in the plane Glaſs *abcf* (and alſo in the Priſm *glo* placed in another Situation, the blue Rays, which begin to be ſeparated from the reſt in the firſt Superficies in *dd*, go out parallel in the other Superficies, the Refraction being made the contrary Way, that is, they are mixed again with the Colours of the other Rays.

Tab. XXII.
Fig. 1. Fig. 2.
Fig. 4.
Fig. 3.

Secondly. *This Image is not round, but about five times as long as it is broad:* Becauſe ſome Rays are more refracted than others, and therefore they repreſent a great many Images of the Sun like one Image drawn into a great Length.

Thirdly and Fourthly. *Thoſe Rays which make a yellow Colour, deviate more from a ſtreight Line, than thoſe which make a Red, and thoſe which make a green Colour, deviate more than thoſe that make a Yellow,* &c. *and thoſe which make a violet Colour, deviate moſt of all: And further, if the Priſm through which the Rays are tranſmitted, be ſo turned about its Axis, that the Red, Yellow, Green,* &c. *Rays fall in order thro' a ſmall Hole upon another Priſm about twelve Foot diſtance, and be turned another Way; the Yellow,* &c. *Rays, though they fall with the ſame Incidence upon the ſecond Priſm as the Red do, yet they will not be turned upon the ſame Place as the Red, but will be carried further towards that Part, to which the Refraction is made. Further, if in the Place of the ſecond Priſm, they be received by a Glaſs that is a little gibbous, the Yellow, Green,* &c. *Rays, every one in their order, will meet in a Focus ſooner than the Red:* Becauſe the Yellow Rays are more refracted than the Red, and the Green than the Yellow, and the Blue and Violet moſt of all.

Fifthly and Sixthly. *The Colours of the coloured Rays well ſeparated, cannot be deſtroyed, nor any Way altered, by repeated Refractions, nor by paſſing through a light Place, nor by croſſing each other, nor by the Confines of a Shadow, nor by reflecting them from any natural Bodies, in a Place dark every where elſe:* Becauſe their Colours are not Modifications ariſing from Refraction, but immutable Properties belonging to their Nature.

Seventhly. *All the coloured Rays together, collected either by ſeveral Priſms, or by a convex or concave Glaſs, make White; but when ſeparated after croſſing each other, they all exhibit their own Colour:* For as the Ray, before it was divided into ſeveral Parts by Refraction, was White; ſo by thoſe Parts being mixed together again, it becomes White again; and the coloured Rays, when they unite, do not deſtroy one another, but are only mixed together. And hence it is, that Red, Yellow, Green, Blue, and Violet Powders mixed together in a certain Proportion, are ſomewhat Whitiſh; that is, are of ſuch a Colour as ariſes from a Mixture of White and Black, which, according to what was ſaid before, will be refracted in ſuch a manner, that the Ray FI will tend towards M, and from thence to N, and GL will go to O, and from thence to P. Whence it is to be obſerved, that FI, GL are therefore turned out of the Way in this manner, becauſe the ſmall Globules at their entring into the Glaſs, find an eaſier Paſſage this Way, that is towards the right Hand, than towards the Left. Thus for inſtance; Let STV be one of theſe Globules, we muſt

---

Black, and would be entirely White, if ſome of the Rays were not abſorbed: So likewiſe if a round piece of Paper be painted with all thoſe Colours diſtinct from each other, and in a certain Proportion, and then turned very quick round upon its Center, that by the Swiftneſs of the Motion, all the Species of Colours may be mixed together in the Eye; the particular Colours will immediately vaniſh, and the Paper will look all of one Colour, which is a Medium betwixt White and Black.

Eighthly. *If the Rays of the Sun fall upon the inward Superficies of the Priſm, with the greateſt Obliquity that any of the Rays can be tranſmitted at, thoſe which are reflected will be Violet, and thoſe which are tranſmitted, will be Red:* Becauſe the Rays, ſince they were coloured before they were refracted at all, and the more they are capable of being refracted, the ſooner are they reflected alſo; are ſeparated in this manner.

Ninthly. *If there be two Priſms, the one filled with a Red Liquor, and the other with a Blue, the two Priſms clapped together, will be opake, tho' if they be both filled with a Red or a Blue Liquor, they will be tranſparent when clapped together:* Becauſe one of them tranſmit none but Red Rays, and the other none but Blue, therefore when put together, they can tranſmit none at all.

Tenthly. *All natural Bodies, but eſpecially white ones, when looked at through a Priſm, appear to be bordered on one Side, with a Red and Yellow Colour, and on the other Side with a Blue and Violet.* Becauſe thoſe Borders are the Extremities of whole Images, which the Rays of every Species, according as they are more or leſs refracted, exhibit at a greater or leſs diſtance from the true Place of the Object.

Eleventhly and Twelfthly. *If two Priſms be ſo placed, that the Red of the one, and the Purple of the other, be mixed on a Piece of Paper fitted and ſurrounded with Darkneſs; there will be a pale Image, which if it be looked upon through a third Priſm, at a due Diſtance, will appear double, Red and Purple:* So likewiſe, *if two Sorts of Powder, the one perfectly Red, and the other perfectly Blue, be mixed together, and any ſmall Body be dawbed thick with that Mixture, it will appear to the Eye, through a Priſm, to have two Images, a Red and a Blue one:* Becauſe the Red Rays, and the Purple or Blue ones are ſeparated *by* an unequal Refraction.

Moreover, thirteenthly. *If the Rays which are tranſmitted through a gibbous Glaſs, be received upon a Piece of Paper before they meet in the* Focus, *the Confines of Light and Shadow will ſeem tinged with a red Colour, but if beyond the* Focus *with a Blue:* Becauſe in the former Caſe, the Red Rays, which are ſomewhat leſs refracted, are uppermoſt; but after croſſing in the *Focus*, the Blue are ſo.

Fourteenthly. *If the Rays that go through one half of the Pupil be intercepted by any opake Body put cloſe to the Eye, the Extremities of the Objects beyond, will appear tinged with Colours, as they do through a Priſm, but not ſo vivid:* Becauſe the Rays which are tranſmitted through the other part of the Pupil, are ſeparated into Colours by Refraction, and will not be diluted by the Mixture of the intercepted Rays, which would have been refracted the contrary way: And hence it is, that a Body which looked at through two Holes in a Piece of Paper, appears double, appears tinged with Colours alſo.

think that the Superficies AB determines it to move towards S, rather than towards V, and conſequently to turn about its Center in the order of the Letters STV, which it will continue to do the whole Length of the Line IM. And becauſe when it is come to M, where it undergoes a Refraction towards the right Hand; this is a Reaſon why it ſhould be turned about again in like manner; therefore it muſt be acknowledged, that the ſmall Globules which come out of the Glaſs towards N, are ſo modified, that beſides the Diſpoſition they have to move ſtreight along, they have a Diſpoſition alſo to turn about their own Centers.

*67. That the Shadow cauſes divers Modifications in theſe Rays.* Tab. V. Fig. 3.

67. What was affirmed of the Globules of the Ray FIMN is to be underſtood alſo of thoſe of the Ray GLOP and of all the other intermediate Rays. But after the ſecond Refraction, which is made at the Surface BC, we find on the one Hand, that the ſmall Globules of the Ray MN are turned about in the ſame manner as they were at firſt, from a new Cauſe; for the Shadow on the Side D ſlackens the Motion of the Globule M on the ſame Side; and the Rays which are between IMN and LOP being ſtronger than the other, preſs upon the Side Q of the ſame Globule, and becauſe they move the ſame Way as it turns, they quickens its Motion on this Side: And on the other Hand, we are aſſured, that the Globules of the Ray GLOP, have the Rotation which they had acquired from theſe two Refractions hindred by Two Things. Firſt, From the Shadow which hinders them on that Side on which they were moſt ſtrongly impelled, and retards their Motion. And, Secondly, Becauſe they are impelled on the other Side, by Rays that are ſtronger, and which impreſs a Motion upon them, contrary to that of their Rotation.

*68. What the Modifications of thoſe Rays are which cauſe Red and Yellow, and Blue.* Tab. V. Fig. 3.

68. Having thus conſidered the ſeveral Alterations, and the Reaſons of thoſe Alterations which may happen to the Rays of Light in their Way to the opake Body NP; we find, that the Globules which fall near N *are turned round with a greater Force, than that with which they are moved on in a ſtraight Line*; and on the contrary, that the Globules of the Rays which fall near P, *move on in a ſtraight Line, with a greater Force than that with which they turn round, their Centres.* And, Laſtly, That there intermediate Rays, about X, *have pretty near the ſame Force to turn round, as to move ſtraight along.* But by Experience we find, that we ſee *Red* in N, *Blue* in P, *Yellow* in X, *Orange* between N and X, and *Green* between X and P;

whence it appears what the particular Diſpoſitions of the Globules which compoſe the Rays of Light are, to excite in us theſe Senſations.

*69. What the Colours of coloured Bodies conſiſt in.*

69. Now there are two Things in the Objects [1] which we call coloured, which may cauſe the ſame Modifications in the Light, as thoſe acquired in paſſing through a *Priſm.* For, Firſt, Their Particles may be ſo tranſparent, that the Rays of Light may penetrate a little Way into them, and be refracted, before they are reflected: Secondly, (and which may produce the ſame Effect, and be the Cauſe of the Colours of different Objects) Their Particles may be ſo ſmall and uneven, that the Globules of the Rays of Light which fall upon them, may communicate ſome of their Motion to them, and by that Means they may be turned round and reflected back, in the ſame manner as a Ball thrown with great Force upon the Graſs, is ſtopped a little by the Spires and turned round.

*70. That coloured Bodies are in ſome meaſure tranſparent.*

70. Neither can it be doubted, but that ſome of the Particles of coloured Bodies are really tranſparent, as may be ſeen by the Help of a *Microſcope,* in all kinds of Sand, Flint-ſtone, Marble, Sugar, Silk, Wool, Hair, Herbs, and an infinite number of other Bodies.

*71. That the Surfaces of coloured Bodies is made rough by colouring them.*

71. And that the Particles are very ſmall and broken, is evident, not only from hence, that coloured Bodies appear coloured when viewed all Ways, but is further confirmed from the manner in which Colours are made by the *Dyers.* For, ſince Braſil-Wood, Indian-Wood, Indico, Yellow-Weed, *&c.* will not tincture any Thing with a red, violet, blue, yellow, *&c.* Colour, unleſs there be ſome Allum mixed with them, we muſt conclude, that this penetrating corroſive Body inſinuates itſelf into the Pores of the Cloth, and dilates them; whereby there is Room made for the Water to enter tinctured with the ſeveral Colours, which ſink into the Cloth in ſuch a manner, as to leave ſome on the Superficies, which cauſes a kind of Roughneſs, and makes it capable of all the different Modifications of Light.

*72. That the Particles of black Bodies are more broken than thoſe of any other coloured Bodies.*

72. After what has been ſaid concerning *Dying,* it is neceſſary to make one particular Obſervation about Black; and that is, that becauſe the Roughneſs, in which this Colour conſiſts, muſt be the greateſt that can be, to extinguiſh all the Rays; therefore in dying Cloth of a Black Colour, Allum and Nut-galls are not ſufficient alone;

---

[1] *Which we call coloured*) See above on *Art.* 52.

but there muſt be Vitriol inſtead of Allum, which is more corroſive than Allum; and further, to make the Vitriol corrode the more, they put the Cloths to be died into the Copper, and leave them for ſome time in the boiling Liquor; whereas in dying of other Colours, they only dip the Cloth ſeveral times into the Liquor, which is but juſt warm.

*73. Why black Cloth wears ſooner than other.*

73. Since the Particles of *black* Bodies are the moſt uneven, it is eaſy to imagine, that Cloths and other Stuffs of this Colour muſt *tear* and *wear* ſooner than thoſe of any other Colour.

*74. Why Cloths of light Colours will dye of darker Colours, but not the contrary.*

74. Further, if we conſider, that the darkeſt Colours require that the Particles ſhould be the ſmalleſt that can be; it is evident, that we may eaſily make a light Piece of Cloth of a dark Colour, becauſe it requires only to have its Superficies made rough; but becauſe it is very difficult to make it ſmooth again; therefore Cloth of a dark Colour, can very hardly be died of a Lighter.

*75. It is not neceſſary that Things of the ſame Colour ſhould have the ſame Taſte.*

75. Now, when I ſpeak of the Particles of coloured Bodies, I mean only the very ſmalleſt of all; many Hundreds of which may be united together differently, in order to compoſe groſſer Parts which may be of very different Figures, in the ſame manner as different Buildings may be formed of Bricks, which are all alike. Thus we know, that coloured Bodies act upon the *Eyes* by their *ſmalleſt* Particles, and upon the *Tongue* by thoſe which are *larger*, and compoſed of the other; whence we conclude, that Things of the ſame *Colour* have not neceſſarily the ſame *Taſte*.

*76. By altering the ſmalleſt Particles of any Body the Colour is altered alſo.*

76. Since there are two Sorts of Particles in the ſame Body, this ſhows us, that if we make any Alteration in the ſmaller Sort, the Colour muſt be changed likewiſe. And ſo we experience it in Herbs bruiſed in a Mortar; and in Colours which Painters grind upon a Stone, ſuch as Vermilion and Orpiment. But if the Body be ſuch, that the ſmalleſt Particles of it cannot be altered, neither can the Colour be changed; as we ſee in ſome Paints, which are not ſo eaſy to be altered as thoſe mentioned; eſpecially as Herbs, whoſe Particles have before a proper Motion of their own, as being in ſome meaſure liquid, which helps to daſh them againſt each other, and to ſeparate them into ſmaller Particles, than they would otherwiſe be.

77. *How a white Body ought to appear, which receives Rays already modified.*

77. From what has been ſaid concerning coloured Bodies, and particularly concerning a white Body; we may infer, that if there fall no other Rays of Light upon a white Body, but thoſe that are caſt upon it by another Body which has already modified them, the Rays will not be altered at all by the white Body, but reflected back to the Eye with the ſame Modification; ſo that the Body inſtead of appearing White, will appear of the Colour of that Body from which it received the Rays.

78. *A curious Experiment.*

78. We may be convinced of this by a very curious Experiment, which it is not very difficult to make. The Way of doing it is this. Let all the Windows of the Room be ſhut up cloſe, except a very ſmall Hole, through which the Rays reflected from the Objects on the outſide, may enter in; then let the Rays fall upon a white Cloth, or any other white Body, and it is pleaſant to ſee the different Colours of the Objects which are painted upon it.

79. *Why the Actions of different Objects tranſmitted thro' one and the ſame Place, do not deſtroy each others Effects.*

79. This Experiment perhaps may raiſe a Difficulty in the Minds of ſome, who may imagine, that different Rays, and differently modified, paſſing through the ſame Hole, muſt hinder one another, and confound their reſpective Actions: But it will not be hard to get clear of this Difficulty, if they conſider in the firſt Place, the vaſt number of Pores that there is in the leaſt Quantity of Air, or of any other tranſparent Body, which afford a Paſſage for an infinite number of Rays, if I may ſo ſpeak, without diſturbing one another. But that which is principally to be conſidered, and which takes away the Difficulty intirely, is, that the Light, or the Colours, does not conſiſt ſo much in actual Motion, as in a Tendency to Motion, or a Preſſure. Now it is eaſy to apprehend, that an infinite number of theſe ſort of Actions, different from each other, may be tranſmitted through the ſame Point without confounding one another. For inſtance, ſuppoſe a Force equal to a hundred Pound Weight, applied to the Point A, of the ſtraight Line AB, puſhing it towards B, where we ſuppoſe alſo, that there is a Body able to reſiſt this Force. The Line AB could not move at all according to the Direction of AB, much leſs can it bend towards C or D, becauſe it is ſtraight; but the leaſt Force that can be, will bend it towards any Side whatſoever. Thus if any Force in C puſhes it by E towards D, if it be but the Force of one Pound, it will bend it towards D: But if we ſuppoſe another Force in D which can reſiſt that of a Pound,

Tab. V. Fig. 4.

this will hinder the Line AB from bending; ſo that the Force which is at A, ſhall tranſmit its Action whole and entire to B, without being diſturbed by the Force which is at C: and the Force which is at C ſhall tranſmit its Action to D, without the leaſt hindring the Continuance of the Action along AB. So likewiſe we may imagine a Force at F equal to five Pounds acting upon a Body at G. The ſame Point E therefore may ſerve to tranſmit as many Actions as we will, without at all confounding them.

*80. That Colours are not rightly diſtinguiſhed, into true and falſe, real and apparent Colours.*

80. After what I have already ſaid: I have but one Thing more to remark concerning the Diſtinction that is uſually made of Colours; *viz.* that ſome of them are *true* or *real* Colours, ſuch as thoſe of Tapiſtry, and others *falſe* or *ſeeming* Colours only, ſuch as thoſe ſeen through a Glaſs Priſm. But I don't ſee any Foundation for this Diſtinction, becauſe the Reality is juſt the ſame in each of them: For if the Senſation of Colour which we have upon viewing a Piece of Tapiſtry be real; that which we have in looking through a Priſm is as real; for the Priſm is as real a Thing as the Tapiſtry. And indeed it is the ſame Light which cauſes us to perceive the Colours through the *Priſm*, as cauſes us to perceive the other.

*81. That we make a falſe Judgement of all Colours.*

81. If any one, in order to ſupport that Diſtinction of Colours which we have juſt now rejected, replies; that there is at leaſt ſome falſe Appearance in looking through a Priſm, becauſe we apply the Colours that we ſee, to Objects where they are not: To this I anſwer, that the Fault is not in our Sight, but only in the Judgement which we make afterwards. And if this were ſufficient to conclude, that theſe are falſe Colours; we may for the ſame Reaſon ſay, that all other Colours are falſe likewiſe, becauſe we equally falſely refer the Senſations which are cauſed in us by them, to the coloured Objects.

*82. That there is as little Reaſon for diſtinguiſhing Colours into fixed and flying.*

82. Nor have they ſucceeded any better, who owning all Colours to be equally real, have yet diſtinguiſhed them into *fixed* and *flying*; giving the Name *fixed* to thoſe which the other called *real*; and the Name *flying* to thoſe which the other called *falſe*: For if the Eye continue never ſo long applied to the *Priſm*, and during that Time the Light intervene in the ſame manner, we ſhall always ſee the ſame Colours; ſo that theſe are no leſs fixed and durable, than thoſe of a Piece of Tapiſtry.

83. *That there is no Difference at all between the one and the other.*

83. All the Difference that is to be found in the Objects that raiſe in us any Senſation of Colour, is only this; that ſome of them, ſuch as the *Priſm*, ſeem to require that the Eye ſhould be fixed in a certain Place, out of which there is nothing to be ſeen; whereas others, ſuch as Tapiſtry appear of the ſame Colour, which way ſo ever they are looked upon. However, if we conſider the Matter a little more cloſely, it is certain, that the Priſm, and the Tapiſtry, agree in this; that the ſame Parts of the Tapiſtry which reflect the Light to the Eye when it is in any certain Place, does not reflect the ſame to it, when it is removed ever ſo little out of that Place; and the only Reaſon why we perceive the ſame Colour when we change our Place is, becauſe inſtead of theſe Parts, thoſe Parts that are next to them, and which are exactly like them, reflect the Light in the ſame manner. If therefore the Eye were fixed in one certain Poſition, from whence it ſhould ſee ſome particular Places of the Tapiſtry of ſome particular Colours, and God ſhould annihilate all the other Parts of the Tapiſtry, ſo that they could not at all reflect any Light; in the Place where the Eye is, it would continue to ſee the ſame Colours, but if it ſhould change its Place, they would immediately diſappear.

84. *Of the Nature of changeable Colours.*

84. This being well underſtood, there will be no great Difficulty in explaining thoſe Colours which we call *Changeable*, ſuch as we obſerve in a Duck's Neck, or in a Pidgeon, or in a Peacock's Tail: For it is eaſie to conceive, that the Parts of theſe Bodies are placed in ſuch order, that thoſe of them which are proper to modify the Light after one particular manner, are diſpoſed to reflect it to one certain Place; and thoſe that modify it in another manner, reflect it to another Place. Thus, if the Eye be in the Place where the Rays come, which cauſe the Senſation of Red in us, then the Object appears Red, and if it be placed where the Rays, which cauſe Yellow are reflected, the Object appears Yellow.

85. *A Compariſon of changeable Colours with Things made by Art.*

85. This is confirmed from hence; that Workmen have found out a Way to make Stuffs of a changeable Colour, by making the *Warp* of a Light Colour, and the *Striking* of a Colour not quite ſo Light: But what moſt reſembles the Objects to which we aſcribe theſe changeable Colours, are thoſe channell'd Tables which repreſent different Sorts of Things, according as they are viewed from different Places: For one of theſe Tables, when

it is looked directly upon, repreſents a *Cæſar*'s Face; when looked upon on the Right Side, it repreſents a Cat, and on the Left Side a Skeleton. Thus, as they are different Parts of the Table which make theſe different Repreſentations, ſo likewiſe are they different Parts of the Pidgeon which cauſe us to ſee different Colours.

86. *The remaining Properties of Light and Colours cannot be underſtood, till we have explained the Nature of Viſion.*

86. If after what has been ſaid concerning the Nature and Properties of Light and Colours, there remains any further Difficulty, it will be ſolved afterwards, when we have particularly examined the Nature of Viſion: And this is what I ſhall proceed to; which I the more readily do, becauſe the following Parts of this Treatiſe of Natural Philoſophy, depend, in ſome meaſure, upon Obſervations made by the Help thereof, ſo that it is neceſſary to know all the Circumſtances, of this Sort of Senſation, which is the moſt wonderful of any that we are poſſeſſed of: I ſhall begin with a Deſcription of the Eye, and to avoid Tediouſneſs, I ſhall mention only thoſe Things which belong particularly to this Subject.

# CHAP. XXVIII.

## *A Deſcription of the EYE.*

1. *Of the Figure of the Eye.* Tab. V. Fig. 5.

WHILST the Eye is incloſed in the Head of any Animal, the Bones which ſurround it, hinder us from ſeeing what Figure it is of; but when it is taken out, we find it is round, and ſuch as is repreſented in the Figure ABCDEF. FABC is the fore-part of it, or that which ſticks out; CDEF that part which is incloſed in the hollow Bone of the Head.

2. *Of the* Tunica Cornea.

2. AB is a tranſparent Part of that particular Coat of the Eye, which is called the *Tunica Cornea*.

3. *Of that which joins to it, or the White of the Eye.*

3. BCDEFA is the reſt of this Covering, the Parts of which, that are next to A and B, are called *the White* of the Eye.

4. *Of the* Tunica Uvea, *and the Pupil.*

4. AILB is *the Tunica Uvea,* in which there is is a Hole IL, which is called *the Pupil.*

5. *Of the Ciliary Ligaments.*

5. MN, MN, are certain black Filaments, which are called *the Ciliary Ligaments*; there is a certain ſoft and tranſparent Body called *the Chryſtalline Humour* which is ſuſpended upon them.

6. *Of the Aqueous Humour.*

6. The Space QQQ is filled with a tranſparent Liquor, which is very fluid like Water, and for that Reaſon is called the *Aqueous Humour.*

7. NONP

*7. Of the Chryſtalline Humour.*

7. NONP is a tranſparent Body of the Figure of a Lens, a little more convex on the Superficies NPN than on NON, which, becauſe it is a little hard, is called *the Chryſtalline Humour*.

*8. Of the Vitreous Humour.*

8. The reſt of the Cavity of the Eye RRR is filled with a ſlimy Matter, almoſt like the White of an Egg, which is more tranſparent than either the Aqueous or the Cryſtalline Humour, and is of middle Conſiſtency betwixt them, (for it can eaſier be compreſſed than the Chryſtalline, and yet it is not ſo fluid as the Aqueous Humour;) and this is called *the Vitreous Humour*.

*9. Of the Optick Nerve, and the* Retina.

9. DEGH is a Part of *the Optick Nerve*, whoſe Capillaments TS, beginning in the Brain, and reaching to the Eye, form at the Bottom of it a curious Piece of Network which Phyſicians call the *Retina*.

*10. That the Inſide of the Eye is black.*

10. I purpoſely forbear mentioning the Number and Names of the ſeveral Coats with which the Eye is covered, becauſe they are not of any particular Uſe in explaining the Nature of Viſion; but I muſt not omit to take notice, that the Superficies of theſe Coats are all Black in thoſe Places which are over-againſt the Bottom of the Eye.

*11. Of the Muſcles of the Eye.*

11. The whole Body of the Eye is encompaſſed with ſix *Muſcles*, four of which are called *Right*, and the other two *Oblique*. Every Nerve, which is thought to be the Original of the ſeveral *Right Muſcles*, is derived immediately from the Brain, from whence it comes along through a little Hole in the Bone of the Head, and divides it ſelf into theſe Muſcles, every one of which is inſerted into ſome Part of the Coat of the Eye, ſuch as that here marked F, in ſuch a manner, that of theſe four Muſcles, the Firſt is above, the Second below, and the other Two on each Side this Coat. And as the *oblique Muſcles* have their Origin alſo in the Brain, their Nerves are bent round, ſo that they ſeem to come from that Corner of the Eye which is next the Ear, and one of them ſpreads over the Top, and the other along the Bottom of the Eye, and ſo croſs the four right Muſcles, and then are inſerted into the Bone of the Noſe.

*12. The Uſe of the Muſcles of the Eye.*

12. There is no one Muſcle in the whole Body, but what is ſometimes filled with a certain Liquid like very thin and fine Air, which comes to it from the Brain along the Nerve which belongs to it. This Liquid is what Phyſicians call *the Animal Spirits*, which cannot ſwell the Muſcle without ſhortning it or leſſening the Length be-

twixt the Origin and the Place into which it is inſerted. Thus when the right Muſcle which is above, is filled with Spirits, the Eye muſt neceſſarily be lifted up, and when the Three other right Muſcles are filled in their Turns, they ſerve either to turn the Eye downwards, or to the Right, or to the Left Side. But what is very remarkable here, is, that if theſe four Muſcles be filled all at the ſame time, they will alter the Figure of the Eye a little, and make it flatter than it was before. But as to the oblique Muſcles, I am not of the ſame Opinion with thoſe Phyſicians, who ſay, that they ſerve to turn the Eye round like a Pulley: I rather think, that they are filled both together with Spirits, and by that Means ſhortned, and ſo they preſs upon the Eye and alter its Figure, in ſuch a manner, that the fore-part of it is made more gibbous, and the hinder-part ſunk a little deeper in, and this makes a greater Diſtance between the Chryſtalline Humour and the *Retina*.

*13. That the Pupil is capable of being dilated.*

13. To theſe Alterations of the Eye we may add, that the Pupil is capable of dilating and contracting it ſelf. And thus we find, that it dilates it ſelf, when we are in Places where there is but a little Light, and when we try to look at a great Diſtance; and on the other Hand, it contracts it ſelf when we are in a very light Place, or look at an Object very near.

*14. Of the two Optick Nerves.*

14. Laſtly, we may obſerve, that if the two *Optick Nerves* be purſued to the Origin of them, we ſhall find, that after they come into the Skull, they approach nearer and nearer to each other, till at laſt their Coats are mixed together, and they become one and the ſame, but afterwards they are ſeparated again, and then enter into the very Subſtance of the Brain, after which we ſee them no more. Wherefore to add any Thing further about this Matter, would have no Similitude of Truth; unleſs it were to account for certain Phænomena which otherwiſe could not poſſibly be explained.

## CHAP. XXIX.

### *How Viſion is commonly explained.*

1. *What is meant by Viſion, and that* Ariſtotle *has ſaid nothing about it.*

ARISTOTLE has ſaid nothing in particular as to the manner how *Viſion* is performed; for though the Title of the Seventh Chapter of his Second Book *of the Soul, concerning Viſion*, ſeems to promiſe treating of this Matter fully; yet he ſays nothing more of it, but only this; that the Object muſt act upon the *Medium* in order to have its Action tranſmitted to the *Organ* of Sight. It is true indeed, that he ſays further in the Twelfth Chapter of the ſame Book; that in every Senſation we receive the *Images* of the Things, but not the Matter, in the ſame manner as Wax receives the Impreſſion of the Seal, without retaining any part of the Seal it ſelf: but here likewiſe, what he ſays is as general and looſe, as what he ſaid in the forecited Place; and the Compariſon which he makes, does not at all ſhow us how ſo great a Number of Parts of which the Object is compoſed, can be diſtinctly perceived at the ſame Time, nor how we can know the Situation, Diſtance, Bigneſs, Figure, Number, Motion or Reſt of the Objects which are in our View.

2. *The Opinion of the* Ariſtotelians *about Viſion.*

2. The Followers of *Ariſtotle* ſaw plainly, that he fell very much ſhort of teaching what one would wiſh to know upon this Subject; and this has put them upon trying to find how his Doctrine was to be underſtood. Thus taking the Word *Image*, which he ſpeaks of in the forecited Place, in the literal Senſe; they affirm, that the viſible Object impreſſes an Image upon the Air which ſurrounds it; that this Image impreſſes another a little leſs upon the Air beyond it, and this impreſſes a Third, a little leſs ſtill, and ſo they go on till there is one impreſſed on the Chryſtalline Humour of the Eye, which they pretend is the principal Organ of Viſion, or that Part of the Body which the Soul makes immediate uſe of to cauſe Senſation. Theſe are what they call *intentional Images* or *Species*; and in order to explain their Manner of Production, they ſay, that the Objects cauſe them in the ſame manner, as our own Image is produced in a Looking-Glaſs.

3. From what has been already ſaid, it ſufficiently appears, that I agree with *Ariſtotle* himſelf; but I can by no Means come in with his Followers in this Thing of their *intentional Species*, the Nature of which ſeems to me inconceivable, and has all along put their Underſtandings upon the Rack. And it is a mere Sophiſm to pretend to eſtabliſh their Opinion upon the Inſtance of a Looking-Glaſs, becauſe reflected Images are harder to be explained than direct.

3. *That the* Ariſtotelians *do not at all explain the Nature of their intentional Species.*

4. There is no need of mentioning all the Abſurdities conſequent hereupon, in order to ſhow that there is no ſuch Thing as *intentional Species*. It ſhall ſuffice only to obſerve; that if *They* are diminiſhed in the manner they ſay, it will follow, that when an Object is ſeen at ten Yards diſtance, the *Species* of it is only as little again, as when it is ſeen at five Yards diſtance; that is, an Object of ſix Foot in Length in the one Caſe, will appear of three Foot in Length in the other Caſe. Wherefore if the Eye and the Object be within five Yards of each other, it can receive but a very ſmall Part of ſuch a *Species*, and conſequently we could ſee but a very ſmall Part of the Object; but this is contrary to all Experience, for we can ſee ſuch an Object intire at ſuch a Diſtance, nay, at a much leſs. If they ſay, that theſe *Species* diminiſh otherwiſe when the Eye is nearer to them, than when it is further off; they muſt allow then, that a Thing inanimate, and which acts neceſſarily, has however Underſtanding enough to proportion its Action, ſo as to perform the ſame Thing at different Diſtances. Which being abſurd, it follows, that the Foundation upon which their *Species* is eſtabliſhed, is abſurd alſo.

4. *The Abſurdity of theſe Species.*

5. It is not only without Reaſon, but contrary to Reaſon, to affirm, *that Viſion is perfected in the Chryſtalline Humour*, and that the Vitreous Humour behind it, is of the ſame Uſe as the Quickſilver behind a Looking-Glaſs, *viz.* to terminate the Action of the viſible Object: For doubtleſs, the Object ought to continue its Action thro' the Vitreous Humour, which being one of the moſt tranſparent Things that we know of in the World, cannot reaſonably be compared to Quickſilver, which is very opake. To this we may add, that ſince the Chryſtalline Humour is found in both Eyes, and two Species are formed by it at the ſame Time, if That were the principal Organ of Viſion, it would follow, that we muſt always ſee the Object double, when we look upon it with both Eyes at once.

5. *That Viſion is not performed in the Chryſtalline Humour.*

6. *Neither is it performed in the* Retina.

6. This laſt Reaſon ſhows alſo how falſe the Opinion of ſome Philoſophers is, who affirm the *Retina to be the principal Organ of Viſion.*

7. *That it is not performed in the Place, where the Optick Nerves meet.*

7. As to the Opinion of thoſe who contend that this Senſation ariſes from hence, that *the Action of the Object is carried to the Place where the Optick Nerves meet;* this is confuted by the Experience of *Anatomiſts,* who have found theſe Nerves ſeparated in the dead Bodies of ſome Men, who, when they were alive, ſaw Things in the ſame manner as others do.

## CHAP. XXX.

## *Of the Paſſage of the Light through the Humours of the Eye.*

1. *How the ancient Philoſophers came to be miſtaken upon this Subject of Viſion.*

I Think that moſt of thoſe who have endeavoured to explain the Nature of Viſion, have run into great Miſtakes, principally from hence, becauſe they attempted too many Things at a Time, and did not obſerve any Method or Order: Their Miſtake will be a Help to us, if, upon obſerving, that Viſion is a Conſequence of the Action of the Object upon both the *external* and *internal* Organs; we, in the firſt Place, inquire, *how the Rays of Light, which are the Means by which any Objects are ſeen, are received by the Humours of the Eye.*

2. *That it is ſufficient to conſider only ſome few of thoſe many Rays which come from every Point of an Object.* Tab. VI.

2. Let us ſuppoſe, for Inſtance, Z to be the Eye, and ABC the Object; there is no Doubt, but that every Point, that is, every the ſmalleſt viſible Part of this Object, ſends forth Rays all Ways through the Air, to every Place where it can be ſeen; but becauſe thoſe only which paſs through the Pupil are of any uſe to cauſe Viſion, we will examine thoſe only which fall upon that Part of the *Tunica Cornea* which anſwers directly to the Pupil: Thus, in order to examine the Action of the Point B, it is ſufficient to conſider ſome few of the Rays which come from this Point, ſuch as BD, BE, BF.

3. *That ſome of the Rays go to the Bottom of the Eye without any Refraction at all.*

3. Now becauſe the Ray BD is perpendicular to the Superficies EDF, it will not be at all refracted in paſſing out of the Air into the aqueous Humour, wherefore it will continue on in a ſtraight Line to H, where falling again perpendicularly upon the Superficies of the Chryſtal-

talline Humour, it muſt go on ſtill directly to M; and here falling again likewiſe perpendicularly upon the Superficies of the Vitreous Humour, it muſt go directly to the Point O in the Bottom of the Eye.

*4. Of the Refraction of ſome other of the Rays, and how they which come from one Part of an Object, meet again in one Point in the* Retina.

4. But the Ray BE not falling perpendicular upon the Superficies EDF, where it is to paſs out of Air into Water, it ought to be refracted, and to go towards the Perpendicular EP, and conſequently it will tend to ſome Point of the Superficies of the Chryſtalline Humour, ſuppoſe G, which is ſomewhat nearer H, than it would be without ſuch Refraction: Again, the Ray EG likewiſe, not being perpendicular to the Superficies GHI, through which it is to paſs out of the Aqueous Humour into a denſer *Medium*, it ought to be refracted again, and go towards the Perpendicular GR, and conſequently to arrive at ſome Point of the Vitreous Humour, as L, which is nearer to M than if there had been no Second Refraction: Laſtly, Becauſe the Ray GL is alſo inclined to the Superficies LMN, through which it is to paſs from a denſe *Medium* to one that is much rarer, it muſt be refracted, and go from the Perpendicular LT, the Poſition of which is ſuch, you ſee, that the Ray, by going from the Perpendicular, approaches towards the Ray BDO; and we may conceive it refracted in ſuch a manner, that it ſhall go to the ſame Point that the Ray BDO went to, that is, to the Point O. So likewiſe if we conſider the Ray BF, we ſhall find that the Refractions will carry it from F to I, and from I to N, and that at laſt it will meet the other Two at O. And ſince the Rays which fall betwixt BE and BF, are not quite ſo much refracted as they themſelves are, it is evident, that they cannot do otherwiſe than meet all together in the ſame Point O. Thus we ſee, that the Point B acts upon the Bottom of the Eye, in the ſame manner, as if the Pupil were of no Breadth, and as if there were to come but one Ray with a Force equal to the Forces of all them that are contained between BE and BF.

*5. That the Rays which come from different Points of the Object, fall upon as many different Points of the* Retina.

5. Now if we conſider the Rays which come from any other Point of the Object, as from A, we ſhall find, that all thoſe which enter into the Eye, will be refracted in ſuch a Manner, as almoſt to meet all together in the ſame Point X. And ſo likewiſe thoſe Rays which come from any other Point between A and B, they will meet very near together in ſome Point of the Bottom of the Eye between X and O. So that we may affirm in general, *That every Point of the Object, acts very nearly*

*ly but upon one and the ſame Point in the Bottom of the Eye,* and on the other Hand, *That every Point of the Bottom of the Eye receives very nearly the Impreſſion of one Point only of the Object.*

*6. That the Rays which come from ſome Points, do not reunite ſo exactly as thoſe which come from ſome other Points.*

6. I ſay very nearly, not exactly. For if the Superficies EDF, GHL, LMN, were of ſuch a Curvature, as to carry the Rays from one ſingle Point, ſuch as B, to another ſingle Point ſuch as O, exactly; it would be impoſſible for them to unite the Rays which come from any other Point ſuch as A, becauſe every other Point is differently ſituated from B with reſpect to the Eye.

*7. That if the Eye could no way be altered, the Refractions could not reunite upon the* Retina, *the Rays which come from Objects at all Sorts of Diſtances.*

Tab. VI.

7. Now we may obſerve, that if the Object be removed further from the Eye, in ſuch a manner that the Point B continues always in the Line BD, and the Shape or Diſpoſition of the Eye be no ways altered; the Rays which come from the Point B to the Pupil, will not diverge ſo much, or be at quite ſo great a Diſtance from each other as they were before; wherefore in entring the Three Superficies EDE, GHI, LMN, they will be refracted in ſuch a manner, as to reunite a little nearer to the Chryſtalline Humour than the Point O is. On the other Hand; if the Object be removed nearer to the Eye; becauſe the Rays which come from the Point B in order to paſs through the Pupil, diverge more than they did, their Refractions will cauſe them to meet beyond the Point O. And the Object may be ſo very near the Eye, that the Rays which come from any one of the Points, may diverge ſo much, as never to unite at all. In all which Caſes, 'tis plain, there would be no one Point of the Object, that would not affect too large a Portion of the Bottom of the Eye; and conſequently the Action of each Point, would be confounded by that of the Point which is next unto it.

*8. Of the Alteration made in the Eye, in order to reunite them.*

8. This is what would happen, if the Figure of the Eye could not be altered; but to remedy all theſe Inconveniences Nature has ſo formed the Eye, that it can become flatter or longer to ſuch a Degree, as to adjuſt it ſelf to the different Diſtances that we would view the Object at. Wherefore when we would look upon an Object at a greater Diſtance, than it could be ſeen diſtinctly at when the Eye is of the uſual Figure, it is then made flat by the Help of the four right Muſcles, all which acting together, pull it towards the Bottom of its Ball, and the *Retina* is by this means near enough to the Chryſtalline Humour, to be exactly in

the Place where all the Rays which come from any one Point of the diſtant Object are reunited. And when we would look upon an Object that is very near, the Eye is lengthened by the Help of the oblique Muſcles which encompaſs it, and by being ſwelled, compreſs it; and then the Diſtance between the Chryſtalline Humour and the *Retina* becomes greater, that the Rays which come from any ſingle Point of the Object which is ſo near, may be reunited in a ſingle Point upon the *Retina*. If, therefore, there remains any Confuſion which Nature has not provided a Remedy for, it is only in reſpect to the Action of thoſe Rays which come from an Object that is too near the Eye, at two or three Inches diſtance, ſuppoſe; but this is needleſs, or at leaſt, not neceſſary to be remedied; for as Sight was given us principally to take Notice of Things at a Diſtance, and there is very ſeldom any Occaſion for ſeeing Objects ſo very near, Nature has not provided for it.

9. *That the Eyes of Birds are altered in a different manner.*

9. This Approaching and Receding of the Chryſtalline Humour with reſpect to the Bottom of the Eye, is ſo neceſſary in order to ſee diſtinctly, that becauſe it cannot be performed by Muſcles in ſome Birds, the Coats of whoſe Eyes are almoſt as hard and inflexible as Bones, Nature has provided another Way. For there are placed in the Eyes of ſuch Birds certain black Filaments, that are not in the Eyes of Men or other Animals, by which the Chryſtalline Humour is connected with the Bottom of the Eye, and by which it can be made to draw nearer to, or remove further from the *Retina*.

10. *A remarkable Obſervation of the Eyes of Fiſhes.*

10. It is obſervable, that the firſt of the three Refractions which the Rays of Light undergo, in paſſing thro' the Humours of the Eye, is not to be found in Fiſhes who live in the Water, becauſe the Rays are already in an aqueous *Medium*, when they begin to enter into the Eyes of Fiſhes. And this ſeems to be a Reaſon why the Want of this Refraction ſhould be compenſated ſome other Way. And ſo we find it is; for Nature has made the Chryſtalline Humour of Fiſhes Eyes more convex, inſomuch, that it is almoſt as round as a Globe, and not of the Figure of a Lens, as it is in other Animals.

11. *That the Images of Objects that are near, is very confuſed in old Men.*

11. As moſt antient Perſons grow lean and thin by Age, ſo their Eyes grow flat and more ſunk than when they were younger. Now in this Figure of the Eyes, the Rays which come from an Object very near, come to the *Retina* before they are reunited; wherefore they impreſs but a confuſed Image upon it; ſo that it is impoſſi-

ble for ſuch Sort of Eyes to receive any diſtinct Image, except when the Object is at a ſufficient Diſtance.

*12. That thoſe Eyes which are very large and ſtick out, receive only a confuſed Impreſſion of Objects that are at a Diſtance.*

12. On the other Hand, ſome Perſons have by Nature Eyes that are longer and more gibbous than thoſe of other Men; in which the Diſtance betwixt the Chryſtalline Humour, and the Bottom of the Eye, is likewiſe greater than uſual: In theſe, the Rays which come from one Point of an Object further off than ordinary, are reunited alſo, before they come at the *Retina*, and then are ſeparated again, ſo that they ſpread themſelves a little upon the Bottom of the Eye. Whence it comes to paſs, that theſe Sort of Eyes can receive only a confuſed Image of Objects that are at a Diſtance; and have a diſtinct Image of thoſe only that are near.

## CHAP. XXXI.

### *What we mean, when we ſay, that the Images of the Objects are impreſſed upon the Organs of Sight.*

*1. That perfect Images of viſible Objects are impreſſed on the* Retina.

WHEN we once clearly underſtand, that every ſingle Point of the Object acts upon one ſingle Point only of the Bottom of the Eye which anſwers directly to it; and on the other hand, that every Point of the Bottom of the Eye receives the Impreſſion of but one Point only of the Object; it is not difficult to conceive that the whole Objct acts upon a certain Part of the *Retina*, which is as exactly of the ſame Shape with it, as could be drawn upon a Cloth by the moſt skilful Painter. We can yet further conceive, that this Part of the *Retina* does ſtill more perfectly reſemble the Object, becauſe it receives as many different Preſſures in all its ſeveral Parts as there are different Colours, or different Degrees of Light in the ſeveral Parts of the Object. And becauſe we call that an Image, or a Species, which has any Reſemblance to the Thing which it repreſents, we call that Part of the *Retina* upon which all the Rays of the Object fall by that Name, and ſay, *That it impreſſes its Image on the Bottom of the Eye.*

2. There

*2. Wherein this Image is different from the Object.*

2. There is no need of ſearching after any other Reſemblance in this Image, than what has been mentioned. For if we would make any further Compariſon betwixt it and the Object, we ſhall find them very different. And firſt herein they differ, that a Body is always repreſented by a Superficies, and ſometimes a Superficies by a Line, and ſometimes a Line by a Point: Secondly, The Situation is different, for the upper Part of the Object is painted upon the lower Part of the Eye, and the right Side of the Object upon the left Side of the Eye, *&c.* Laſtly, They differ in Magnitude, for a very large Object is repreſented upon a very ſmall Part of the Eye.

*3. The further the Object is diſtant from the Eye, the leſſer is its Image.*

Tab. VII. Fig. 2.

3. And the further diſtant the Object is, ſo much the leſs is this Part of the Bottom of the Eye; as is evident in the Figure of the Eye C, where the Space HI, which receives the Image of the Object FG, is leſs than the Space DE on which the Object AB, which I ſuppoſe equal to FG, is impreſſed; and this very nearly in the ſame Proportion, as the Diſtance of FG from the Eye is greater than the Diſtance of AB.

*4. An Experiment whereby theſe Images may be ſeen.*

4. Whoever conſiders ever ſo little of what we have before laid down, concerning the Nature of Light and Colours, cannot but be of our Opinion, *That the Images of Objects are in this manner impreſſed on the Bottom of the Eye:* But he may be further convinced of it from Experience; for if, after having darkned all the Windows of a Room, over-againſt which are ſome bright Objects, we make a Hole in the Window Shut, and place in it the Eye of an Animal, freſh killed, firſt taking off neatly all the Membranes which the Bottom of the vitreous Humour is covered with, and put an Egg-Shell in their ſtead to hold this Humour in, and you will ſee upon the Egg-Shell a diſtinct Picture of all the Objects that are without.

*5. An artificial Eye for the ſame Purpoſe.*

5. But becauſe there are ſome Difficulties to make this Experiment ſucceed well; I have thought that the ſame Thing might be done, by making a large artificial Eye, which I accordingly tryed: The opake Coats, or Tunicks, were all made of thick Paper, except the *Retina,* which was made of a very white thin Piece of Vellum; in the Room of the *Tunica Cornea,* I put a tranſparent Glaſs, and inſtead of the Chryſtalline Humour, was a Piece of Chryſtal of the Figure of a Lens, but more flat than this Humour; for ſince there was nothing in this Machine but Air, in the Places of the aqueous and vitreous Humours, a little leſs Convexity was ſufficient to produce

the Refractions required: And becauſe it was very difficult to flatten or lengthen this artificial Eye, in the manner the natural Eye is done by the Muſcles, I placed the Vellum in ſuch a manner, that it could be moved backward or forward, at pleaſure.

*6. How to ſee the Image of an Object in this artificial Eye.*

6. This artificial Eye being ſo placed in the Window of a Room, that the Glaſs which repreſents the *Tunica Cornea*, may be directly againſt ſome Objects that are very much illuminated; we ſhall not only ſee the Images of them impreſſed upon the Vellum, but we may alſo obſerve all the moſt minute Particularities, which we before collected from Reaſon. Thus we may obſerve,

*7. The firſt Obſervation.*

7. *Firſt*, That it is at one particular Diſtance only of the Vellum from the Chryſtal Lens, that the Image will appear the moſt diſtinct that is poſſible.

*8. The ſecond Obſervation.*

8. *Secondly*, That this Image is not ſo diſtinct in the extreme Parts, as in the Middle.

*9. The third Obſervation.*

9. *Thirdly*, That if the Vellum be too near the Lens; the Image will be leſs, and very much confuſed.

*10. The fourth Obſervation.*

10. *Fourthly*, That if it be too far, the Image will be larger, but all confuſed likewiſe.

*11. The fifth Obſervation.*

11. *Fifthly*, That the diſtinct Image of any Object, is ſo much the leſs, as the Object is more remote.

*12. The ſixth Obſervation.*

12. *Sixthly*, If a certain Diſtance between the Lens and the Vellum, be requiſite to make a diſtinct Image of an Object at a moderate Diſtance; the Vellum muſt be moved a little nearer, ſo that the Diſtance of the Lens from it may be leſs, if we would have a diſtinct Image of aanother Object, which is at a conſiderably further Diſtance.

*13. The ſeventh Obſervation.*

13. *Seventhly*, When the Vellum is at a proper Diſtance, to repreſent diſtinctly an Object which is at a great Diſtance, ſuppoſe an Hundred, or Two hundred Yards; there is no need of altering it, in order to repreſent, as diſtinct as is poſſible, any Objects that are at a ſtill greater Diſtance.

*14. The eighth Obſervation.*

14. *Eighthly*, The nearer the Object is to this artificial Eye, the further muſt the Vellum be removed from the Lens.

*15. The ninth Obſervation.*

15. *Ninthly*, When the Object is too near this artificial Eye, it is impoſſible to get any diſtinct Image, let the Vellum be removed to what Diſtance we will.

16. It is to be obſerved, that in thoſe Caſes where any Alteration muſt be made in the Eye, in order for the Image to become diſtinct, this Alteration is much leſs in the Eyes of Animals, the Coats of which are flexible, than in this artificial Eye. For in Animals, the lengthning or ſhortning the Eye being always attended with a greater or leſs Convexity of the Cornea, the Figure of this Coat contributes its Part in producing that Effect which in the artificial Eye wholly depends upon the Length or Shortneſs of it. Thus, if when the artificial Eye has received a diſtinct Image of a diſtant Object, another Object be placed before it at ſuch a nearer Diſtance, that in order to have the Rays which come from every Point of it reunited, the Eye ought to be made One hundredth Part longer than it is; the Vellum muſt be removed juſt ſo much further from the Lens: But in a parallel Caſe of the natural Eye, it is not requiſite that *That* ſhould be lengthened a hundredth Part of the Whole, becauſe the *Tunica Cornea* being more gibbous than it was before, cauſes greater *Refractions*, and ſo makes the Rays reunite ſooner than they would otherwiſe do.

*16. The difference betwixt this artificial Eye, and the natural Eye.*

17. The Image of an Object impreſſed on the Eye of an Animal, being received in a Place where the Capillaments, of which every Optick Nerve is compoſed, meet each other; it is very probable, that this Image is ſo impreſſed, that the Rays do not move theſe Capillaments ſide-ways, but always fall directly upon the Extremities of them. To which, if we add; That the Impreſſion which is made upon the Extremity of every one of theſe Capillaments, is communicated from one End to the other, we may conclude, that the Image of the Object is tranſmitted intire to that Place where theſe Capillaments end in the Brain.

*17. That the Capillaments of the Optick Nerves, tranſmit the Action of the Object to the Brain.*

18. And becauſe we have no Senſation, when thoſe Parts of the Body are any way affected, in which there are no Nerves; it is very probable, that the Nerves are neceſſary to Senſation. And becauſe we have no Senſation likewiſe, when any Object makes an Impreſſion upon a Nerve, if its Communication with the Brain be hindred, or if the Brain it ſelf be affected with any particular Diſtemper; therefore it is reaſonable to think, that the Nerves are not the immediate *Organs* of the Soul, but that they are ſo formed by Nature, as to tranſmit the Impreſſion which they receive, to that Place in the Brain where the Origin of them is, and where probably the immediate Organ of the Soul's Senſation is.

*18. That the Brain is the Place where the Soul perceives.*

19. How-

19. *That there is a Part of the Brain which is the principal Organ of the Soul.*

19. However, we may further obſerve, that there being Two of a Sort, of almoſt all the Parts of the Brain, they cannot all of them indifferently be thought the immediate *Organ* of the Soul. On the contrary, it is highly probable, that ſince we have but one Senſation only, though two Impreſſions are made by the Object upon the external *Organs* of the Senſes which are affected, that there is likewiſe one particular Place in the Brain where theſe two Impreſſions meet. Which that Place is, may be very difficult to determine; but whether it be that ſmall Gland which Phyſicians call the *Conarium*, or whether it be any other Part of the Brain, it is hardly to be conceived how they can thus unite, without ſuppoſing ſomething equivalent to what is now ſaid.

20. *A Conjecture about the Continuation of the Capillaments of the two Optick Nerves.*
Tab. VII. Fig. 2.

20. Beſides the manifeſt Reſemblance which there is betwixt the two Eyes; I imagine there is another yet, which cannot be diſcerned by the Senſes, which conſiſts in this, that the Number of Capillaments in one *Optick* Nerve, is equal to the Number of Capillaments in the other Optick Nerve. Thus (to make the Thing eaſier) if we ſuppoſe the *Optick* Nerve of the Eye A to contain five Capillaments, the Extremities of which are CDEFG; it is reaſonable to think, that there is the ſame Number in the Nerve of the Eye B, the Extremities of which are HIKLM. I imagine alſo, that the Extremities E and K, which are in the Middle of the Reſt, are exactly at the End of the *Optick* Axes, that is, at the Ends of the Lines TE, VK, which paſs through the Centers of the Pupil, the Chryſtalline Humour, and the Body of the Eye; and that the reſt are placed ſo regularly about theſe, that we may take ſeparately all the Capillaments of one Eye in order, and aſſociate them with thoſe in the other Eye taken in the ſame Order, ſo as to make up a great Number of Pairs, which may be called *Sympathetick:* Thus beginning with the Capillaments C and H, which are moſt on the Left Hand, I make them the firſt Pair; the other Pairs are DI, EK, FL, GM. I am alſo of Opinion, that each Pair of *Sympathetick* Capillaments end in [1] the

---

[1] *In the ſame Point of that Part of the Brain*) This Conjecture is not yet confirmed, by cutting open the Brain. But be that as it will; the Capillaments CH, DI, EK, &c. may very properly be called *Sympathetick.* For whether the Pairs of Nerves meet in the Brain or no, it is evident, that two Images of every Object impreſſed upon thoſe Capillaments muſt be ſeen in the very ſame Place (becauſe the Optical Axes meet each other) that is, muſt become one; and therefore the Object appears ſingle.

Tab. VII. Fig. 2.

ſame Point of that Part of the Brain which raiſes a Senſation in the Soul; as you ſee in the Figure, where the Pair CH meet in the Point O of the principal *Organ* X, the Pair DI in the Point P, the Pair EK in the Point Q, the Pair FL in the Point R, and the Pair GM in the Point S.

*21. How the Object acts upon the immediate Organ of the Soul.*

Tab. VII. Fig. 2.

21. This being ſuppoſed. I conceive that when we would look upon an Object, we turn our Eyes to it in ſuch a manner, that the two *Optick* Axes meet at the Point which we fix our Attention principally upon. Thus the Rays TE, VK, coming from that Point, and falling upon the *Sympathetick* Capillaments E and K, the two Impreſſions which they make there, are reunited in one Point only, *viz.* in the Point Q. So likewiſe the Part of the Object which is on the right Hand, ſhakes the *Sympathetick* Capillaments D and I, the Impreſſions of which are carried to P. And again, the Part of the Object which is on the left Hand acts upon the *Sympathetick* Capillaments F and L, and their Impreſſions unite in the Point R, and ſo of the reſt. So that though there be two Images impreſſed upon the Eyes, yet there is but one impreſſed upon that Part of the Brain X which we here ſuppoſe to be the immediate *Organ* of Viſion.

*22. An evident Proof, that the Chryſtalline Humour is not the immediate Organ of Viſion.*

22. What has been already ſaid of the Images which viſible Objects impreſs upon the Eye, being well underſtood; it cannot but be a ſtill greater Surpriſe, that the *Ariſtotelians* and almoſt all Phyſicians ſhould be ſo miſtaken, as to affirm, that theſe Images are impreſſed upon the Chryſtalline Humour, and go no further; for it will evidently appear, that the different Impreſſions of the diverſe Points of the ſame Object, are all confuſed there.

## CHAP. XXXII.

### *How Viſion is performed.*

*1. What is meant by Viſion.*

AFTER having traced the *material* Image of the Object, or the *Impreſſion* which it makes upon the external Organs, to the Brain, I come next to explain how this raiſes in us an *immaterial* Image, or that Senſation in which Sight properly conſiſts, and to ſhow the Reaſons why it is *clear* and *diſtinct*; and alſo how we perceive the *Place, Situation, Diſtance, Magnitude, Figure, Number,* and *the Motion or Reſt* of ſuch Objects.

*2. How the immaterial Image of the Object is formed in the Soul.*

2. In order to underſtand how this *immaterial* Image is formed in us, I muſt remind you of a certain Truth which has been ſufficiently demonſtrated before, and that is, That ſuch is the Nature of our Soul, that particular Motions of the Body to which it is united, are the Occaſions of particular Perceptions in it: Now different Parts of the Object, act diſtinctly upon different Parts of the Bottom of the Eye, and their Impreſſions being tranſmitted to that Place of the Brain which is the principal *Organ* of the Soul, it is eaſy to apprehend, that the Soul muſt have as many diſtinct Senſations raiſed in it, at the ſame Time, and without any Confuſion, as every one of them excites different Motions.

*3. Whence it is that this Image is ſo clear.*

3. It is manifeſt alſo, that this immaterial Image, ought to be ſo much the more *vivid* or *clear*, as the Object ſends forth more Rays of Light which are received by the Eye, for by this means the Impreſſion made upon the Organ will be ſo much the ſtronger   And the Largeneſs of the Pupil contributes likewiſe to this *Clearneſs*, becauſe it affords Room for more Rays that come from the ſame Point of an Object to impreſs the Image on the Bottom of the Eye.

*4. That the Image of a Body at a Diſtance ought to be as clear as that of a Body which is near.*

4. It is true, that if we conſider the Action of one Point of the Object only, we muſt ſay, that the Senſation ought to be weaker or more obſcure in proportion to the greater Diſtance of the Body, becauſe the Rays of Light which come from one Point of it diverge, and therefore fewer of them enter into the Pupil when the Eye is far of, than when it is near. But we know that one Point off the Object does not act alone, but always acts in company with a great many others, and the whole Image of

the Object is impreſſed upon ſo much a leſs Space on the *Retina*, as the Diſtance of the Object from the Eye is greater. Thus if one viſible Point, at the Diſtance of two Miles, ſend to the Pupil but half the Rays that it would do if it were but at a Mile diſtance only, this is made good by ſome other viſible Points that are near it, which ſend their Rays upon the ſame Capillament of the *Optick* Nerve, where one ſingle Point of a nearer Object would ſend its Rays; wherefore the Viſion ought to be as *ſtrong* and *vivid*.

*5. Why diſtant Objects appear more clear to us.*

5. To this we may add, that becauſe we open the Pupil of the Eye a little more when we look upon Objects that are at ſome diſtance, than when we look at thoſe which are near; therefore we take in more Rays from any Point than we do when the Pupil is not ſo wide, and this makes the Senſation more clear. And thus we find, that a Mountain looked upon at ſome diſtance does not appear of ſo dark a Colour as when we are nearer it.

*6. How Objects appear diſtinct.*

6. As to the *Diſtinctneſs of Viſion*, that evidently depends upon the Refraction of the Rays; and it is then as diſtinct as poſſible, when the Refraction is ſo made, as that all the Rays which come from one and the ſame Point of the Object, meet together exactly in one and the ſame Point of the Bottom of the Eye: But this never is preciſely ſo, but in thoſe Rays which come from that Point of the Object which is at the Extremity of the *Optical* Axis; for it is evident, that thoſe Rays which come from the other Points, are reunited ſo much the leſs exactly one than another, as they are more diſtant from this Axis; wherefore we cannot at the ſame time have the moſt diſtinct Senſation but in this Place alone, and the reſt will be more confuſed.

*7. Why old Men ſee Objects that are near them very confuſed.*

7. This being ſo, it follows from what was before demonſtrated concerning the confuſed Impreſſion of an Object that is near, on the Eye of an Old-Man; that he muſt ſee ſuch a near Object very confuſedly; and thus we ſhall eſcape the Error of thoſe, who are of Opinion, that the Confuſedneſs in the Sight of Old-Men, ariſes from hence; that the *Faculty of Seeing*, or the *Senſe of Seeing* is weaker in them than in others. And indeed it is very ſurprizing, and very lucky, that at a Time when the Doctrine of Refractions was not at all known, *Ariſtotle* ſhould hit upon ſaying, that if an old Man had the Eye of a young Man, he would ſee as the young Man does; which is the ſame Thing as to ſay; that the

Fault in the Sight of an old Man, does not ariſe from any Defect in the *Faculty of Seeing*, but only from ſome Defect in the *Organs*.

*8. Why ſome Perſons ſee Objects that are at a Diſtance confuſedly.*

8. On the other Hand we are aſſured, that thoſe Perſons, whoſe Eyes are longer and more gibbous than ordinary, receive a diſtinct Impreſſion only of thoſe Objects which are near; and a confuſed Impreſſion of thoſe that are diſtant: Whence it is eaſy to conclude, that ſuch Perſons muſt ſee Objects that are near them diſtinctly, and thoſe that are at a Diſtance confuſedly.

*9. Another Cauſe of the Diſtinctneſs of Viſion.*

9. The *Diſtinctneſs* of Viſion depends alſo upon the Largeneſs of the Space which the Impreſſion of the Object takes up in the Bottom of the Eye, where there ought to be at leaſt as many Extremities of the Capillaments of the *Optick* Nerve, as there are different ſenſible Parts in the Object which ſends forth the Rays, in order for every one of them to make a diſtinct Impreſſion. For if the Rays which come from two different Parts of the Object, meet together in two different Points of the ſame Capillament, it is the ſame Thing, as if they met in one Point, becauſe they cannot communicate two different Motions to this Capillament at the ſame time. And this is the Reaſon why Objects, that are at a very great Diſtance, becauſe their Images are impreſſed on a leſs Space, are ſeen but confuſedly.

*10. Why Objects, whoſe Parts are of different Colours, appear at a Diſtance of the ſame Colour.*

10. Further, if this diſtant Object be compoſed of a great many different Parts which are of different Colours, it is evident, that if ſeveral of theſe Parts act together upon the ſame Capillament, that which is of the brighteſt Colour is the only one that will be ſeen, becauſe the Capillament will receive the Impreſſion only of this Part. And thus we ſee in a Meadow where there are a great many white Flowers mixed with a vaſt Number of green Spires of Graſs, at a Diſtance it looks all White.

*11. How we refer our Senſation to external Things.*

11. If it had never been obſerved, that we ſometimes have no Perception, when we would have ſome, and at other Times have a Perception, when we would not, we ſhould not have been ſo ready to have connected our Judgement with our Senſation, and Senſation would only have been ſimple Perception: But when we had once made this Reflexion, our Senſation muſt neceſſarily be a compound Perception. And if we had been more wary in our Judgement at firſt, ſo as not to have aſſented to any Thing of which we had not a clear Perception, all that we could plainly have inferred, is, that ſomething concurred with us to cauſe Senſation. But having been dif-

ferently accuſtomed from the Beginning, and over haſty in our Judgement, we have drawn a different Conſequence; and look upon the Senſation, which now upon more mature Deliberation, we acknowledge only as an accidental Mode of exiſting, to be *without us*, and therefore we refer it to *external Objects*; and we have ſo often made this Judgement, that we are accuſtomed to do it without any Difficulty, and without the leaſt Suſpicion of its not being conformable to Truth.

12. *Another Reaſon why we do this.*

12. We have been confirmed in this Errour about *Viſion* by another Miſtake. We obſerve, that when an opake Body is put between the Object and our Eye, we then ceaſe to ſee it: From whence we ought to conclude, that the Thing which concurs with us to excite Senſation, is beyond the opake Body, and being no longer able to act upon our *Organs*, we ceaſe to have the Senſation we had before. But inſtead of reaſoning in this manner, we imagine, that the Senſation which we have of Light or Colour, that is, the Light or Colour which we perceive, is beyond that Body, and ſo carrying our Imagination as far as the Object it ſelf, we go as it were out of our ſelves, along the Line in which we receive the Impreſſion of the Object, and aſcribe our own Senſation to it, that is, the Colour which we perceive.

13. *How we perceive the Situation of an Object.*

13. The ſame Thing that leads us to refer the whole Senſation which we have of an Object to ſomething without us, leads us alſo to refer all the particular Senſations of which it is compoſed, in the ſame manner, in ſtraight Lines, according to the Direction in which we receive the Impreſſions from different Parts of the Object: Thus the Impreſſion which is made in the lower Part of the Bottom of the Eye, coming to us in the higheſt of all the Lines by which the Object raiſes any Senſation in us; it is along this Line that we refer the particular Senſation which ariſes from it. So likewiſe we refer to the loweſt Part of the Object, that Senſation which ariſes from the Impreſſion made by it, on the higheſt Part of the Bottom of the Eye. And hence it is, that though the whole Image which the Object impreſſes on the Bottom of the Eye be inverted, yet when we look upon the Object through a ſimple uniform *Medium*, this hinders not but that it appears in its true Situation; that is, the immaterial Image makes the Object appear to us as it is.

*14. How we perceive its Diſtance.*

14. The Knowledge of the *Diſtance* of an Object, as well as that of the Situation of it, depends upon our referring our Senſation to ſomething without us. For our regard being chiefly upon the Poſition of the two *optical* Axes, and the Motion of the right Muſcles of our Eyes by a natural Way of Reaſoning, ſhowing us very near, the Relation or Inclination which theſe two Axes have to each other, and at what Diſtance from us they meet together; it is to this Diſtance that we refer our Senſation, that is, to the ſame Place where the Object is. Wherefore if at any Time we are deceived in the Judgement we make of the Diſtance of any Object, when we look upon it with both Eyes, it is becauſe we do not know exactly at what Diſtance the *Optical* Axes meet.

*15. Another Way to know the Diſtance of an Object.*

15. And if we make uſe of but one Eye, we can know the *Diſtance* of an Object, provided we move from one Place to another; for we have ſome kind of Memory of the Poſition of the *Optical* Axis in the firſt Station, when we really attend to the Poſition of it in another Station, ſo that we imagine two *Optical* Axes, though there be indeed but one, and by that means gueſs at the Diſtance where they meet; and to this we refer the Object.

*16. A Third Way to know the Diſtance of an Object.*

16. Since we cannot incline the *Optical* Axes to each other in a certain manner, in order to make them meet at one Point of an Object which is at a certain Diſtance from us, but at the ſame Time, we muſt put each Eye into a particular Diſpoſition or Figure, neceſſary to ſee diſtinctly at that Diſtance; we may preſume that Nature has ſo ordered the Muſcles of the Eyes, that they neceſſarily procure both theſe Effects at the ſame Time: And that this is ſo, we ſhall have no Doubt, if we obſerve, that they who ſee but with one Eye, move their Eyes in the ſame manner to look upon Objects at different Diſtances, as they who ſee with both Eyes. So that it is ſufficient, if our Eye be ſo flattened or lengthened in a particular manner by the Action of the Muſcles, as to cauſe ſome Alteration in the Brain, which puts the Soul upon conceiving the Poſition of the *Optical* Axes: And ſince the perceiving this Diſpoſition is the moſt natural Argument to make us know the Diſtance of an Object, it follows, that the lengthning or flattening the Eye is alone ſufficient to diſcover this Diſtance.

*17. That it is eaſier to be deceived in the Judgement we make of the Diſtance of an Object, when we look upon it with but one Eye, than when we look upon it with both Eyes.*

17. But becauſe the Alteration of the Shape of one Eye only, when we make uſe of it, to ſee diſtinctly at different Diſtances, is not ſo ſenſible, as the Alteration of the Situation or Poſition of the two Eyes, when in order to look at different Diſtances, we turn them differently that we may make the two *Optical* Axes meet in the ſame Point; therefore we are not to think, that this latter Alteration is ſo exactly made, when it is determined by the other, as if it were cauſed by that Attention which we have when we look with both Eyes upon the ſame Point of an Object. And this is the Reaſon why we are more apt to be deceived in the Judgement we make of *Diſtance,* when we uſe but one Eye than when we uſe both. And indeed if we try to touch[1] an Object at three or four Foot diſtance, with the End of a Stick of about the ſame Length, we ſhall find, that if we look at it but with one Eye, we ſhall miſs touching it two or three times together; whereas if we look at it with both Eyes, we ſhall touch it the firſt Time.

*18. That it is eaſier for us to be deceived in our Judgement of great Diſtances than of ſmall.*

18. Whatever the Alteration be, which is made in the Eyes when we look upon Objects at unequal Diſtances, it is certain, that That Alteration cannot be at all ſenſible, when the Diſtance is ſuch, that the neareſt Object is a great Way off; wherefore we muſt be very liable to be more deceived in our Judgement of great Diſtances than of ſmall.

*19. That the Diſtinctneſs or Confuſedneſs of the Images of Objects, help us in judging of their Diſtance.*

19. Beſides the two forementioned Means of judging of the Diſtance of Objects, which are the principal ones, there is yet ſome others: As Firſt. Having often obſerved, that an Object appears more confuſed the further it is diſtant from us, we make this a Rule of determining the Diſtances of Bodies, ſo that according as they appear more or leſs confuſed do we imagine them to be at a greater or leſs Diſtance.

*20. The ſame Thing alſo follows from their being more or leſs bright.*

20. So likewiſe, becauſe we have often obſerved, that an Object looks of a brighter Colour, the further it is removed from us; therefore when we ſee an Object of a brighter Colour than it uſes to appear of when it is near; we conclude, that it is at a great Diſtance from us.

---

[1] *An Object at three or four Foot Diſtance*) It is to be obſerved, that the Stick muſt not be thruſt directly upon the Object, but moved obliquely, in the ſame manner, as if, when a Ring is turned Side-ways to the Eye, we would try to run a Stick through it; as is juſtly remarked by *Malbranch in his Enquiry after Truth. Book* I. *Chap.* ix. *Sect.* 3.

*21. That we know the Diſtance by the Situation alſo.*

21. The Situation is another Means ſtill of knowing the Diſtance of Objects. For, of thoſe Things which we imagine to be lower than our Eye we judge them to be fartheſt diſtant which affect the Eye, with the higheſt Rays; and on the other Hand, of thoſe Things which we imagine to be higher than our Eye, we judge them to be fartheſt diſtant which affect the Eye with the loweſt Rays.

*22. The Interpoſition of a great many other Bodies, makes us think, that the Object is at the greater Diſtance.*

22. Further, the Interpoſition of a great many other Objects, between us and the Object we look at, makes us think, that the Diſtance is greater than otherwiſe we ſhould; becauſe the Diſtance which we conceive to be betwixt every one of them, is the Meaſure which we compute the Diſtance of the Object by: Thus in the Inſtance of the Moon, when it is at the *higheſt* above the Horizon, and we look at it through the Air only in which there are no other viſible Objects, we imagine it to be nearer to us, than when it *riſes* or *ſets*, becauſe at thoſe Times, there are a great many intermediate Objects upon the Earth, between us and it.

*23. How we come to know the Bigneſs of Objects.*

23. When we know the Situation and Diſtance of an Object, by joining theſe together, we form a Judgement of the *Bigneſs* of it; For, becauſe we imagine the Extremities of an Object, to be contained between two ſtreight Lines coming from the Eye, which diverge from each other in proportion to their Diſtance; therefore we eaſily conceive what the *Bigneſs* of the Object is at a given Diſtance. So that if at any Time we are deceived in our Judgement of the Bigneſs of any Object, it is becauſe we are firſt deceived in our Notion of its Diſtance. Thus, becauſe we cannot truly comprehend the Diſtance of the Moon or Sun from us, therefore no Imagination can repreſent thoſe Bodies to us ſo great as they really are.

*24. Why the Stars ſeem bigger to us when they are in the Horizon.*

24. And this is ſo true, that the Stars ſeem to us ſomewhat larger, when the Interpoſition of viſible Objects which are between them and us, helps us to imagine their Diſtance to be greater; For it is not owing [1] to the Interpoſition of Vapours, as the Ancients

---

[1] *To the Interpoſition of Vapours*, &c.) Since the Angle under which the Moon appears when in the Horizon, is not greater than ordinary, it is evident, that nothing ought here to be aſcribed to the Refraction of the Vapours. And that this Angle is not greater than ordinary, is clear from hence; that though every particular Part of the Horizon (as well the Diſtances of the Stars from each other as the Stars them-

thought, that makes the Stars to appear of different Bigneſſes, as if the Rays which came from the Extremities of them to the Eye of the Spectator, were by that means refracted, ſo as that he ſhould ſee them under a bigger Angle. For modern *Aſtronomers* who have meaſured the Angles under which the Stars appeared, when they were in the Horizon, and when they were at their greateſt Altitude in the ſame Day, [1] have always found them the ſame.

*25. That very bright Objects appear larger than they ought to be.*

25. It is to be obſerved alſo, that very luminous or bright Objects muſt needs appear bigger than they would do if they were not ſo bright. For if the Image which they impreſs upon the Bottom of the Eye, affects not only a certain Number of Capillaments, but ſpreads it ſelf to the Extremities of other Capillaments which are about it, it is the ſame as if it had covered them alſo; becauſe the Rays have ſo great a Force that all theſe Capillaments are moved by them, and not at all hindred by the Motion of thoſe Rays which come from the other ſurrounding Bodies which affect the ſame Part, but are very faint; therefore a bright Body appears ſo much the bigger, as it takes up part of the Object which is not ſo bright, whoſe Rays are ſwallowed up by it.

*26. Why the fixed Stars, when looked at through a Teleſcope, appear as much diminiſhed, as other Objects appear magnified.*

26. We may add ſtill further; that the Impreſſion of a very luminous Body may be ſo ſtrong as to extend it ſelf all round to ſome Capillaments, which no Rays at all come to from the luminous Body; in which Caſe, it is manifeſt, that the Object muſt appear much bigger than it would do, if its Light were more faint. And it is certain, that we ſee the fixed Stars in this manner; becauſe if we weaken their Action, by artificially contracting the Pupil, and looking at them through a Hole made in a Card with a Needle, [2] they appear much leſs. But that which moſt ſurpriſes thoſe who

---

themſelves; nay the Stars, when they ſeem to be larger, ſeem alſo to take up more of the Space which ſurrounds them;) though, I ſay, every Part of the Horizon ſeems to be equally inlarged; yet the whole Circle cannot contain any more than 360 Degrees; wherefore Bodies in the Horizon are not ſeen under a greater Angle, but every Degree in the Horizon ſeems greater than in the Meridian.

[1] *Have always found them the ſame*) Nay, they have found the Diameter of the Moon, when at the higheſt, a little bigger, than when ſhe riſes or ſets. See *Malbranch's Search after Truth. Book* I. *Chap.* ix. *Sect.* 3.

[2] *They appear much leſs*) Nay, that the fixed Stars, by reaſon of their immenſe Diſtance, are but like Points only, except that their Light is a little dilated by Refraction, is evident

who ſee not the Reaſon of this, is, that when we look at the Stars with a Teleſcope, they appear as much diminiſhed as other Objects appear inlarged by it; and for this ſole Reaſon, becauſe hereby the Force of their Rays is very much weakned.

*27. The knowing the Bigneſs of an Object, helps us much in judgeing of its Diſtance.*

27. It is certain alſo, that as the Knowledge of the Diſtance helps us to find out the Bigneſs, ſo likewiſe the knowing of the Bigneſs helps us to conceive the Diſtance. Thus, when we know that a Man is about five or ſix Foot high, when we ſee him to appear but very little, we conclude him to be at a great Diſtance.

*28. How we know the Figure of an Object.*

28. It would be ſuperfluous to ſhow particularly how we know what *Figure* any Object is of, after what has been ſaid concerning knowing the Situation, Diſtance, and Bigneſs of its Parts; for the Knowledge of its Figure conſiſts in theſe.

*29. Why we ſee an Object ſingle, when we look at it with both Eyes.*

29. Nor is it difficult, after what has been ſaid, to give a Reaſon why an Object appears ſometimes *ſingle* and ſometimes *double*; for it is evident, that an Object muſt appear ſingle, when it ſo affects the *Sympathetick Capillaments* of the two *Optick* Nerves, as to impreſs [1] but one Image upon the Brain.

*30. Why an Object appears double.*

30. And this is confirmed from hence, That if we preſs either of our Eyes with our Finger, ſo as to make it receive the Image of the Object on a different Part from what it would do by the common Motion of the Muſcles; as it is certain, that the Images which are then impreſſed on the two Eyes, do not fall upon *the Sympathetick Nerves*, nor reunite in the Brain, ſo we cannot fail to ſee the Object double.

*31. Another Way to ſee an Object double.*

31. So likewiſe, if we look very intently upon a particular Object, and at the ſame time another Object be placed nearer or further off, which conſequently cannot impreſs its Image on the *Sympathetick Capillaments* of the two *Optick Nerves*; in this caſe it muſt impreſs two Images on that Part of the Brain which is the immediate

---

evident from hence, that when they are about to be eclipſed by the Moon, when they enter into its Body, their Light does not decreaſe gradually (as that of the Planets does) but vaniſhes all at once, and at the End of the Eclipſe, it appears again all at once.

[1] *But one Image upon the Brain*) See *the Notes on Chap.* xxxi. *Art.* 20.

*Organ* of Viſion, and therefore [1] it muſt be ſeen double.

32. *How we perceive Motion and Reſt.*

32. Having ſeen how we come to know the Situation, Diſtance, Magnitude, and Number of Objects by our Sight; nothing more remains but to examine how we know whether they be in *Motion* or at *Reſt*. Now it is not difficult to conceive, that we know a Body to be in Motion; firſt, when its Image appears ſucceſſively applied to different Images of certain Objects, which we do not compare with any other, but imagine to be immoveable; or when we find that we muſt turn our Head or our Eyes in order to have the Object always at the End of the Line, along which we carry our principal Attention; or laſtly, when, if we move neither our Eyes nor our Head, we find it is gone out of that Line. The contrary to all which makes an Object appear to us to be at reſt.

---

Tab. VII. Fig. 2.

[1] *It muſt be ſeen double*) It may be further obſerved here, that if the Object now mentioned, be placed beyond the Point where the Optical Axes meet, it will then appear double in ſuch a manner, that of the two Images, that which is on the right Hand is ſeen with the right Eye, and that on the left Hand with the left Eye; but if the Object be on this Side that Point, then the Image which is on the right Hand will be ſeen with the left Eye; and the Image on the left Hand with the right Eye. The Reaſon of which is, becauſe in the former Caſe the Object impreſſes its Image on HIK the left Side of the right Eye, and therefore is ſeen by it on the right Hand, and on EFG the right Side of the left Eye, and therefore is ſeen by it on the left Hand: In the latter Caſe it impreſſes its Image on KLM the right Side of the right Eye, and therefore appears to it on the left Hand; and on CDE the left Side of the left Eye, and therefore appears to it on the right Hand.

*What ſurpriſing Things follow from this Obſervation*, may be ſeen in *the Notes on the following Chapter*.

# CHAP. XXXIII.

## *Of DIOPTRICKS.*

*1. That our Opinion about Viſion may be confirmed by the Examination of different Sorts of Perſpective-Glaſſes and Looking-Glaſſes.*

IN order to prove the Truth of ſome of thoſe Suppoſitions which we have made about Viſion; we ought now to conſider, whether or no all thoſe Things, which upon theſe Suppoſitions ought to come to paſs, when we look through different Sorts of Perſpective-Glaſſes or upon Looking-Glaſſes, be agreeable to Experience; for this will be a great Proof of the Truth of thoſe Suppoſitions.

*2. Why an Object is multiplied when looked at thro' a multiplying-Glaſs.*

Tab. VIII.

2. We will begin with Perſpective-Glaſſes, and firſt let us conſider that Sort called *Multiplying-Glaſſes*, ſuch as that in the Figure ABCD. Now it is evident in the firſt Place, that without this Glaſs, the Eye E would ſee the Object F, by means of the Rays which come from F to G; and becauſe the Superficies BC is here parallel to the Superficies AD, which is oppoſite to it, and therefore the Refraction which the Rays ſuffer when they enter into the Glaſs, is deſtroyed by the Refraction made at their coming out; it follows, that the Eye ought notwithſtanding, to receive the Impreſſion of the Object in the ſame Place G, where it would have received it if there had been no Glaſs, and for this Reaſon it ought ſtill to ſee the Object in F. It is alſo certain, that the Object F, would make an Impreſſion upon an Eye placed in N by the Rays which it would ſend thither, if there were no Glaſs between; but becauſe theſe Rays now meet with the Superficies AB, by which they are ſo refracted, that when they come out of the Glaſs, they enter into the Pupil of the Eye E, and afterwards go on in ſuch a manner as to fall upon that Part of the Bottom of the Eye marked I, where they impreſs ſuch an Image as an Object placed in M would do; therefore this cauſes the Eye at the ſame Time that it ſees the Object F in its true Place, to ſee it alſo in M. So likewiſe the Rays which would excite Viſion in the Eye, if it were placed in O, and no Perſpective-Glaſs intervened, being in this Caſe refracted by the Superficies CD, ſo as to impreſs an Image of the Object F on the Part of the Eye marked H, where an Object

placed in L would make its Impreſſion if there were no Glaſs; it follows, that the Eye E ought to ſee yet another Object F in L. In a Word, it is eaſy to infer, that the Eye muſt ſee the Object F in all thoſe Places, where the ſtreight Lines terminate, which coming from the Pupil, paſs through the ſeveral Sides of the Glaſs, by which the Rays of the Object are ſo refracted as afterwards to make an Impreſſion of it upon the *Retina*.

*3. Why it ſometimes appears coloured.*

3. I have nothing further to add to this, but only that ſometimes the Object when looked at through the Sides AB, CD may appear differently coloured from what it does when looked at through the Side BC; the Reaſon of which is, becauſe the Rays which come from the Object through the Sides AB, CD, are refracted pretty much in the ſame manner, as they are by a *Priſm*, which has been explained before.

*4. How Rays that come from different Points, are refracted in paſſing thro' a convex Glaſs.*

Tab. X.

4. Let us now examine a *convex Glaſs* ſuch as that in the Figure CDEF. Now it is to be obſerved, that as it is the Property of this Glaſs to collect into a Point the Rays which fall parallel upon it; ſo is it the Property of it, to collect into a Point, likewiſe the ſeveral Rays that fall upon it from any ſingle Point of an Object, with this Condition, that the Point where they are reunited is ſo much the further diſtant from the Glaſs, as the Point from which the Rays ſeparate is nearer to it; and this latter Point may be ſo near, that the Rays which proceed from it, may never be reunited at all, but become parallel or ſomewhat diverging when they come out.

*5. How a convex Glaſs, may make the Image of the Object confuſed.*

5. This being ſuppoſed, if the Object AB be at a proper Diſtance from the Glaſs, all the Rays which come from every Point of this Object, may be reunited again in as many other Points. For inſtance, the Rays which come from the Point A may be collected together in H, and thoſe which come from the Point B, may be collected together in G. Now if the Eye were placed in the Point I, it is certain, that becauſe the Rays which convey the Image to it from every Point are converging, that is, enter into the Eye with a Tendency to unite together; therefore I ſay it muſt neceſſarily be, ſince the Refractions of the three Humours of the Eye are made in the uſual manner, that by means hereof theſe Rays muſt unite together ſomewhat nearer to the Chryſtalline Humour than they would otherwiſe have done. Wherefore

if this Eye be the Eye of *a young Man*, which cannot flatten it ſelf beyond what is requiſite to ſee Objects diſtinctly, whoſe Rays fall upon it as it were parallel, it is evident, that ſuch a Perſon will ſee Objects ſo much the more confuſedly as the Rays which fall on the Eye have a greater Tendency to unite together more on this Side the *Retina*.

*6. How it makes old Men ſee more diſtinct.*

6. But if it be the Eye of an *old Man*, which by the common Decay of Age is become flatter than the Eyes of other Men; becauſe the Reaſon of ſuch a Perſon's ſeeing Objects confuſedly is, that the Rays which come from any Point in an Object are not reunited when they come at the *Retina*, which they fall upon ſooner than they ſhould do, therefore a Convex-Glaſs makes them ſee *diſtinctly*; for it makes the Rays more converging, and ſo helps the Humours of the Eye to reunite them juſt when they come at the *Retina*.

*7. Why it makes an Object appear at a greater Diſtance.*

7. The *Diſtance* of an Object looked at through ſuch a Glaſs, ought to appear *greater*, becauſe the Diſpoſition of the Rays which come from any Point is ſuch, as cauſes the Eye to put it ſelf into ſuch a Figure, as occaſions the Mind to imagine the Diſtance greater. And this is the Reaſon [1] why we think the Object to be further off, if we be not prejudiced before-hand in our Opinion of the Place where it really is.

---

[1] *Why we think the Object to be further off*) Here the famous Dr. *Barrow* propoſes a very great Difficulty in his *Optical Lectures*, viz. *the* 18. towards the End. *However*, ſays he, *I will not leave off, till I have propoſed to you a very great Difficulty* (*out of the Sincerity I owe to you, and to Truth, by no means to be diſſembled*) *which is contradictory to that Opinion which I have been recommending to you, at leaſt cannot be ſolved by it. It is briefly this. Let the Point A be expoſed to the Lens* Tab. X. *CDEF, at ſuch a Diſtance, that the Rays may be ſo bent as to tend towards uniting ſomewhere in the Axis HD, and let the Point H be the Place where they meet, or the Image of the Point A as we have all along before aſſerted*, viz. the Focus; *between this Point and the Glaſs V, let us ſuppoſe the Eye to be any where placed. I ask, in what Place ought the Point A to appear to be. In the Nature of Things it cannot be ſeen behind at the Point H* (*becauſe every Impreſſion that affects the Senſe, comes from the oppoſite Part*, viz. *A*) *and it is contrary to Experience alſo. Now it ſeems to follow, from the Doctrine we have laid down, that it ſhould appear to be before us, and at the greateſt Diſtance poſſible* (*a Diſtance exceeding any that we can imagine*). *For the leſs diverging the Rays that come from any Object are, ſo much the further diſtant do we conceive it to be* (*if we be not prejudiced concerning its Diſtance before-hand*;) *and that Object which ſends forth parallel Rays we imagine to be the moſt diſtant that can be. In Reaſon therefore, one would think, that when the Rays come from the Object converging, it ſhould appear, if it were poſſible, at a greater Diſtance yet. But in this Caſe it may be asked in general, what is it that determines the apparent*

8. As to the Situation, that will appear the ſame as uſual, and the ſame as if we look at the Object without the Glaſs, becauſe the Eye ſees the right Side of the Object

*8. Why it makes the Object appear in its true Situation.*

*parent Place of the Point A, and makes it appear ſometimes nearer, and ſometimes further off, and always in the ſame Proportion. To which Scruple we can give no Anſwer from the Analogy of any Thing that has been hitherto ſaid, only that the Point A ought always to appear to be at the greateſt Diſtance. But Experience ſhows the contrary,* viz. *that it appears at different Diſtances, according to the different Poſition of the Eye between the Points* F *and* H, *and ſcarce ever (if at all) at a further Diſtance than the Point A really is; but many times it appears much nearer; nay, the more the Rays which come to the Eye converge, the nearer the Image of the Object approaches. Thus, if the Eye be placed in the Point V, the Point A will ſeem to be very nearly in its true Place; if the Eye be moved backward to T, the Image will ſeem to approach nearer; and it will appear ſtill nearer, if the Eye be in I or L, and ſo by degrees till the Eye be placed ſomwhere near H, where the Object will appear very near, and begin to vaniſh confuſedly. All which ſeem to contradict our Arguments and Opinions, or at leaſt, do not very well agree with them. And this Experiment not only contradicts our Notion, but all other that I know of, equally. It ſeems ſo much to overthrow that antient and common one, which is more a-kin to ours than any other, that the learned* Tacquet *was forced thereby to renounce that Principle (upon which alone, almoſt all his Catoptricks depend) as uncertain, and not to be depended upon, whereby he overthrew his own Doctrine----In the preſent Caſe there is ſomething that lies deep hid in the Subtlety of Nature, which perhaps cannot be diſcovered, till we underſtand the Nature of Viſion more perfectly. Concerning which, I confeſs, I have not yet been able to think of any Thing to flatter my ſelf with, much leſs to give my ſelf entire Satisfaction. I therefore leave this Difficulty with you, and wiſh you better Succeſs in ſolving it.* Thus far the famous Dr. *Barrow*,

And indeed it muſt be acknowledged, that there is a very great Difficulty here. For it is evident, that a Candle, the Rays coming from which, are collected together, and made to converge by a convex Glaſs, however near, we, by a ſurprizing Miſtake in our Judgement, conceive it to be, does notwithſtanding affect the Eye when it is placed in I or L, exactly in the ſame manner, as it would do, if thoſe very Rays came indeed from an infinite Diſtance, as will appear by the following Obſervations.

*Firſt,* If the Lens be ſo broad, that we can ſee the Candle through it with both Eyes at the ſame time, though we endeavour all we can to make our Optical Axes diverge to a diſtant View, yet the Candle will never appear ſingle, but always double; in ſuch a manner double, that of the two Images of the Candle, the right Hand one will appear on the right Hand, and the left Hand one, on the left Hand. Whence it is moſt manifeſt, that the Place from whence we ought to judge the Rays come, is beyond that where the optical Axes meet, be it at never ſo great a Diſtance; that is, the Candle will affect the Eye in the ſame manner as if it were at an infinite Diſtance. See *the Notes on Chap.* xxxii. *Art.* 31.

Neither can it be ſaid here, that the Candle is not therefore ſeen double, becauſe it is ſeen, as it were, at an infinite Diſtance; but that it is only an accidental Thing, and effected by the Interpoſition of the Glaſs. For if we look through a concave Glaſs, it does not appear double; and it may be ſeen ſingle through a Convex-Glaſs, if either the Eye, or the Candle, be ſo near the Glaſs, that the Rays fall upon the Eye, not converging, but only leſs diverging; in which Caſe, ſuch Glaſſes are of great Uſe to render the Sight more diſtinct.

Object B, by means of the Ray VI, which is on the right Hand of the Ray SI, by means of which, it ſees the left Side A.

*Secondly*, The Reaſon of the Appearance of a Candle in this manner when looked at through a convex Glaſs, is exactly the ſame, as that of a Candle ſeen erect when the Rays are reflected by a concave Looking-Glaſs. In both Caſes the Rays are converging; in both Caſes the Object ſeems equally near. Now in a concave Glaſs, if when the Image is ſeen erect behind the Glaſs, a Stick or a long Reed be ſo put between the Candle and the Superficies of the Glaſs as to ſtand perpendicular to the Glaſs, the Image of that Stick ought to appear of an infinite Length behind the Glaſs (as *Tacquett* has demonſtrated in his *Catoptricks, Book* III. *Prop.* 22. and as the Thing it ſelf ſhows us); and yet the Image of the Candle muſt neceſſarily appear beyond the Image of this Stick; however near therefore we, through Prejudice, judge the Image of the Candle to be when alone, it is yet evident, that it does really affect the Eye, as if there were an infinite diſtance between. And the ſame muſt be ſaid of a convex Glaſs.

Now here is the great Difficulty (as the learned Perſon before-mentioned obſerved) how it comes to paſs, that when the Rays fall upon the Eye as if they came really from an infinite Diſtance, yet the Candle does not ſeem (as one would expect) to be as remote as poſſible, but always very near, though ſometimes nearer than other, and that in a certain and conſtant Proportion.

Now having conſidered this Difficulty on all Sides, I at laſt found out the following Solution of this ſurprizing Phænomenon.

*Firſt*, Becauſe we cannot judge of the Diſtance of the *Candle* by the meeting of the optical Axes (for in this Caſe, thoſe Axes can never meet at all at the Candle, as was before demonſtrated;) and becauſe the Judgement which we make of the Diſtance of Objects by one Eye only, is always the worſt and moſt uncertain, and becauſe the true Diſtance of the Candle is known before; therefore from Prejudice and Prepoſſeſſion, it muſt always ſeem to be *pretty near to us*. To which we may add, that we cannot by our Sight perceive any Diſtance, how great ſoever it be, if there be nothing in the intermediate Space: Thus the Body of the Sun, though we very well know, that it is at an immenſe Diſtance from us, yet it ſeems very near; and were it not that we imagine to our ſelves, from the Concavity of the Heavens, a certain Radius of a Sphere, we ſhould think it ſtill much nearer. Thus if we look at the Sun through a very long Tube, which hinders our ſeeing any other Bodies, it ſeems to be at the End of the Tube.

*Secondly*, It ought alſo *to appear ſometimes nearer than other, and that in a certain and conſtant Proportion.* For when the Eye is placed near the Glaſs, as in V, the Candle ſeems further off (as by the Laws of Opticks it ought to do) than it does without the Glaſs; now if the Eye be removed backward gradually, the common Refraction of the Rays will be ſuch, that the Candle muſt neceſſarily ſeem larger and brighter, in the ſame Proportion as the Eye recedes from the Glaſs. Now this Largeneſs and Brightneſs is the Reaſon why it ſeems nearer and almoſt cloſe to the Eye.

And this is confirmed from hence, that if the Rays of the Candle are firſt tranſmitted through a concave Glaſs (that the Bigneſs and Brightneſs of it may be diminiſhed) and then by paſſing through a convex Glaſs they be made to converge (as when we look through an inverted Teleſcope of two Glaſſes) then we eaſily imagine the Candle to be at a very great, and almoſt infinite Diſtance.

*9. Why it makes the Object appear bigger.*

9. But this Object will appear *ſomewhat bigger*, becauſe the Rays VI, SI, as they enter into the Eye, are inclined to each other with a larger Angle, than they are before they were refracted by the Glaſs, ſo that they ſeeming to come from the Places 2 and 3, impreſs an Image of the Object upon the Eye as big as if they poſſeſſed all the Space between 2 and 3.

*10. How it may make the Object appear ſtill bigger and more confuſed.*

Tab. X.

10. If the Eye be placed in L, the Rays which come to it from any Point are ſtill more converging; and therefore if the Sight were confuſed before, it will be much more ſo now. And becauſe the Rays XL, and TL, which come from the two Points A and B of the Object, make a ſtill greater Angle than SI, VI, they muſt make the Object appear yet bigger. Whence it ſhould ſeem to follow, that the Viſion ſhould not be ſo clear, but more obſcure; becauſe the Rays which impreſs the Image of the Object on the Eye taking up a larger Space upon the *Retina*, each Capillament of the Optick Nerve receive fewer of them in Proportion: However it is certain, that we can then ſee as *clearly* as if the Image of the Object were ſmaller. For there are a greater Number of Rays, which come from every Point, and which are diſpoſed by the Glaſs to reunite, that enter into the Pupil when it is ſo placed as to ſee the Object very large, than when it is placed where the Object appears ſmaller.

*11. How it may make the Object appear wholly confuſed.*

11. So likewiſe if the Eye be placed in Y, the Object ought to appear very *bright* and *clear*, becauſe all the Rays which come from any Point of the Object, and fall upon the whole Superficies of the Glaſs do then enter into the Pupil; but it muſt, notwithſtanding this, appear *very confuſed*, becauſe the Rays being already collected together when they are about to enter into the Eye, [1] are refracted afterwards by the ſeveral Humours of it, and ſo are by that means diſperſed again; ſo that thoſe which come from the ſame Point of the Object, impreſs an Image on a great many of the Capillaments of the *optick* Nerves, upon which the Rays which come from other Neighbouring Points impreſs their Image alſo, and this makes the Image of the Object wholly *confuſed*.

---

[1] *Are refracted afterwards*) Are diſperſed again when they come at the Bottom of the Eye.

12. If

12. *How it may make the Image appear inverted and confuſed.*

12. If the Eye be placed in M, the Object muſt neceſſarily appear *inverted*; for we ſee the left Side A by means of the Ray HM which is on the right Side of GM, by which we ſee the right Side of the Object. It muſt alſo neceſſarily appear *confuſed*; as well becauſe the Rays which come from any Point, as A, cannot be exactly collected together at all beyond the Glaſs, ſo that the Eye cannot put it ſelf into any Figure which will reunite all the Rays that come from H; as becauſe when the Rays really come from H as from one Point only, they fall ſo diverging upon the Eye, that it cannot lengthen it ſelf enough to reunite them upon the *Retina*. The Firſt of theſe Two Reaſons ſhows us, that in this Caſe it is impoſſible for the Eye to judge what Diſtance the Object is at; and [1] that it ſeems in that Place in which we before-hand imagine it to be.

13. If

---

Tab. X.

[1] *That it ſeems in that Place*) Here we meet with another Difficulty, concerning the Place in which the Image ought to appear, almoſt as great as the former, which Mr. *Dechales* propoſes in this manner, *Book* II. *Prop.* 11. *of his Dioptricks. There is,* ſays he, *always a very great Difficulty in explaining the manner how the Eye ſees the Place of the Object, but in this Caſe there is a very particular Difficulty, becauſe Reaſon and Experience do not ſeem to agree together, nay, the Experience here is contrary to other Experiments alſo. For it is evident from Experience, that the Object AB is not ſeen in the Place of its Image,* viz. *in GYH, when the Eye is placed in M, for I have tried That a hundred Times, and turned the Glaſſes all Ways in order to find if I could poſſibly make it ſucceed ſo. However, according to Reaſon, it ought without all Doubt to be ſeen in the Place of the Image,* viz. *in GYH. For when the Object AB affects the Eye by the Rays of its Image, it ſhould ſeem as if it ought ſo to affect the Eye as if it were in GYH. For if the Point A, for Inſtance, were in H, it would ſend forth Rays from* H *to the Eye in M; and though it be in its proper Place* viz. *in the Point A, yet it ſends forth Rays in the ſame manner as if they came from the Point H; therefore it ſeems as if it ſhould affect the Eye in the ſame manner as if it were in the Point H.*

To this Difficulty, this famous Perſon anſwers, That the Body AB is indeed really ſeen by the Eye M in the Place of its Image GYH; but becauſe it can be ſeen only by one Eye at a Time, therefore by a miſtaken Judgement, we imagine it to be further from us. *Thus far He.*

I have oftentimes ſo ordered the Glaſs, that the Object AB (which ought to be a Candle) may be ſeen with both Eyes N and P at the ſame Time. If it be a very large Glaſs the Candle may very eaſily be ſeen with both Eyes at the ſame Time.

Having therefore made exact Obſervation of this Matter through ſuch a Glaſs, I affirm, that the Body AB is ſeen by the Eyes NP exactly in the Place of its Image GYH

Tab. X.

For if the optical Axes be ſo directed, as to meet in the Superficies of the Glaſs, the Candle will always be ſeen double, and in ſuch a manner double, that the right Hand Image is ſeen by the left Eye, and the left Hand Image by the right Eye. Whence it is moſt manifeſt, that the Image is placed within

*14. How the Object may appear inverted and leſs confuſed.*

13. If the Eye be ſuppoſed in N, the Second of theſe Reaſons will not take Place, and therefore the Object ought to be ſeen a little more *diſtinct*, but always *inverted*, for the Reaſon above-mentioned. And as to the Bigneſs of it, we judge of that by the Largeneſs of the Angle made by the Rays, which come from the Extremities of the Object, at their Entrance into the Eye, compared with the Diſtance which we imagine it to be at. But it muſt not here be omitted, that the Space OP and QR, through which the Rays which come from each Extremity of the Object diffuſe themſelves, is ſo much the greater as it is further diſtant from Y, where the Rays which come from every Point of the Object meet. And this make the Space QP, where the Eye receives the Impreſſion of the two Extremities A and B at the ſame Time, to be ſo much the bigger alſo; ſo that there is a large Space for the Eye to move about in, where it will always ſee the whole Object.

*14. How it may be made to appear very diſtinct.*

14. Hitherto we ſuppoſed the Object to be ſo far removed from the convex Glaſs, that the Rays coming from it might eaſily be reunited in the Bottom of the Eye; let us now ſuppoſe it ſo near the Glaſs, that the Rays which come from any one Point of it, have no Tendency towards uniting together, after they are paſſed through it, but are only made much leſs diverging than they were before: Let us ſuppoſe alſo, the Eye to be at ſuch a Diſtance from the Glaſs, that the Refractions which are made at the Entrance into each of the Humours be ſuch, as will cauſe the Rays which come from any ſingle Point of the Object, to unite again in one Point upon the *Retina*; in this Caſe it is evident, that the Viſion muſt be *exceedingly diſtinct*. For, beſides that the Rays which come from different Points of the Object, do not at all confound each other, the whole Image impreſſed by them is ſo large, that there is a ſufficient Number of Capillaments of the Optick Nerve, to cauſe the Soul to perceive a great many Particulars, which it would

within the Place of Concourſe of the optical Axes, that is, between the Glaſs and the Eye, *viz*. in GYH. See *the Notes on Chap*. xxxii. *Art*. 31. But further, if the optical Axes be ſo directed as to meet on this Side the Glaſs, the Candle will be ſeen ſingle, and manifeſtly on this Side the Glaſs.

But in the former Caſe, where the optical Axes were directed to a Point further diſtant, becauſe the Image of a Candle does not terminate the Sight like a ſolid Body, and becauſe we were beforehand prejudiced concerning the true Place of it, therefore it ſeems to be at a greater Diſtance.

otherwiſe have taken no notice of, if the Image had been ſo ſmall, that the Rays which came from two adjoining Points of the Object, had been forced to meet together in two different Points of one and the ſame Capillament.

15. *Concerning Microſcopes.* 15. Upon this Foundation it is, that thoſe ſmall Glaſſes which we call *Microſcopes*, are made. They conſiſt of [1] one Glaſs only, which is ſo convex, that if a Flea, or any other ſmall Object be placed at about an Inch Diſtance from the Eye, and the Glaſs be put between them, it will cauſe the Rays which come from any ſingle Point of ſuch a ſmall Object, and which diverge very much, to diverge afterwards ſo little, that the ordinary Refractions of the Humours of the Eye, will determine them to unite in one Point on the *Retina*. By this Means the Eye which without a Glaſs cannot ſee any Object diſtinctly which is nearer than a Foot Diſtance from it, may be made to ſee one which is twelve Times nearer it. From whence it follows, that the Diameter of the Image which this Object impreſſes upon the *Retina* is twelve times larger, and conſequently, that the whole Superficies is a Hundred and Forty Four times as large, as it would be, if the Object were at a Foot Diſtance; wherefore ſince it extends it ſelf upon a Hundred and Forty Four times as many Capillaments of the Optick Nerve as it would otherwiſe do, the Object cannot but be ſeen very diſtinctly.

16. *How a concave Glaſs refracts the Rays which come from different Points of an Object.* Tab. XI. 16. Let us now examine a *concave Glaſs*, ſuch as that in the Figure CDEFGH, the Property of which is, according to what was before ſaid, to make the Rays which it receives from any ſingle Point of an Object, to become more diverging than they were before they paſſed through the Glaſs. Thus the Rays which come from the Point A, and fall upon that Part of the Glaſs marked VX, ſpread themſelves after they are paſſed through it, from R to Z; and thoſe which come from the Point B, and fall upon the ſame Space VX, extend themſelves through the Space YT. Further, it is alſo the Property of a concave Glaſs, ſo to incline the Rays, which come from two different

---

[1] *They conſiſt of one Glaſs only*) There are ſome which conſiſt of ſeveral Glaſſes, that are much more nice. What and how ſurprizing Things have been found out by the Help of theſe *Microſcopes*, may be ſeen in Mr. *Hook's Micrography*, and in others.

Points of the Object, to each other; that when they meet together, they make a leſs Angle than they would do, if they had not paſſed through ſuch a Glaſs. For inſtance, the Ray MI which comes from the Extremity of the Object A, and the Ray LI which comes from the other Extremity B, make ſo ſmall an Angle, *viz.* MIL, that they ſeem to come from the Places marked N, O.

17. *How it may make the Viſion confuſed.*

17. Whence it follows, that if the Eye be placed in I and look upon the Object AB, it will ſee it *confuſedly*: Becauſe the Rays which come from every Point, are ſo diverging, that the Refractions of the Humours of the Eye cannot make them unite in ſo many Points upon the *Retina*.

18. *That it may make ſome Perſons ſee very diſtinctly.*

18. However, there may be ſome Eyes ſo much longer and more gibbous than ordinary, as to reunite the Rays which they receive from any ſingle Point of a diſtant Object, before they come to the *Retina*, ſo that they can ſee only near Objects diſtinctly; they therefore who have ſuch Sort of Eyes as theſe, may make good uſe of a concave Glaſs to ſee diſtant Objects diſtinctly with; becauſe by this Means the Rays which come from any ſingle Point of the Object are made ſo diverging, that the large Refractions made by the Humours of ſuch Eyes, do not reunite them before they come at the *Retina*.

19. *How it may ſometimes make the Sight leſs and ſometimes more confuſed.*

19. If an Eye of the ordinary Figure be placed at a greater Diſtance from the Glaſs, as at P, it will ſee *ſomewhat more diſtinctly*, becauſe the Rays which fall upon the Pupil from any ſingle Point of the Object are leſs diverging than they were in I; and on the other Hand, an Eye too long or too gibbous will ſee it ſo much the more confuſedly as the Point P is further from the Glaſs, becauſe the Rays which come from any ſingle Point of the Object, being leſs diverging, the Refractions made in the Eye, determine them to meet before they come to the *Retina*.

20. *That it ſhews the Object in its true Situation.*

20. But whatſoever the Figure of our Eyes be, whether they are fitted to ſee Objects that are near, or ſuch as are at a Diſtance; whoever makes uſe of ſuch a Glaſs will ſee the Object in its true *Situation*; for the Rays which cauſe us to ſee the right Side of the Object, come to us from the right Side; and thoſe which cauſe us to ſee the left Side, come from the left Side.

21. As

*21. That it makes it appear nearer to us.*

21. As to the *Diſtance*, it makes that ſeem *leſs* than it really is, becauſe when the Rays which come from any one Point, enter into the Humours of the Eye, they diverge juſt as much as they would do, if they did indeed come from a Point of an Object much nearer.

*22. That it makes it appear leſs.*

22. And as to the *Bigneſs*; becauſe the Extremities of the Object are ſeen by Rays which make a leſs Angle than they would make without a Glaſs, it follows, that it muſt appear *much leſs*.

*23. That it makes it look equally clear.*

23. Becauſe the Rays which come from any Point of the Object are made more diverging by paſſing through a concave Glaſs, it follows, that fewer of them can enter into the Pupil, than if they had not paſſed through the Glaſs; however the Viſion ought not to be the leſs clear upon this Account; becauſe this is made good by the Image being impreſſed on a leſs Space of the *Retina*, ſo that every Capillament of the *Optick* Nerve is ſufficiently ſhaked to cauſe us, when we look through ſuch a Glaſs, to ſee the Object as *clear* as when we look on it without a Glaſs.

*24. That it makes a large Space for the Object to be ſeen in.*

24. To what has been hitherto ſaid concerning the concave Glaſs, we may add, that the Space RT, which contains the Rays that come from the two Extremities of the Object, being very large, it follows, that the Eye may ſee the Object entire in any Part of this large Space.

*25. Concerning Teleſcopes.*

25. One of the beſt Inventions of our Age, is that of *Teleſcopes*. For by the Help of them we have not only diſcovered ſome Particulars in the Stars, which were not obſerved before, but they ſhow us alſo a Multitude of new Stars in the Heavens, which we cannot ſee without them, nor ſhould we ever have come to the Knowledge of them otherwiſe. They were indeed firſt diſcovered by Chance; but the Invention appeared ſo ſurprizing, and ſo uſeſul, that the greateſt Genius's have laboured hard to bring them to the higheſt Perfection poſſible. I cannot therefore forbear explaining the Nature of them in this Place; and the ſo doing will very much confirm all that has been hitherto ſaid about Viſion. They conſiſt commonly of two Glaſſes, fixed to each End of a Tube: That Glaſs which is at the End next the Object, and is for that Reaſon called the *Object-Glaſs*, is a little convex, and the other Glaſs which

is at the End of the Tube next the Eye, and is therefore called the *Eye-Glaſs*, is on the other Hand, very [1] concave, that is, much thinner in the Middle, than at the extreme Parts.

26. *The Property of the Object-Glaſs.*

26. The *Object-Glaſs* cauſes all the Rays which come from every ſingle Point of the Object, to unite together very nearly in as many different Points, on a Superficies which we are to ſuppoſe on this Side the Glaſs, at a greater or leſs Diſtance from it, according as the Glaſs is more or leſs convex; now becauſe the Rays which come from different Points of the Object, croſs one another as they paſs through the Glaſs, it is eaſy to conceive, that they paint ſuch a Sort of an Image upon this Superficies as we have before ſhown they do upon the *Retina*, and that it is ſo much the larger, as the reuniting of the Rays, cauſes it to be at a greater Diſtance from the Glaſs: If therefore the Bottom of the Eye were put in the Place of this Superficies, and it were poſſible for the Humours of it not to make any Refractions; we ſhould have a very large Image impreſſed on the *Retina*, by Means of this ſingle Glaſs, and it would fall upon ſo great a Number of the ſmall Capillaments of the Optick Nerve, which would receive diſtinctly the Impreſſion of every ſmall Part of the Object, that it would be impoſſible but that the Viſion muſt be very diſtinct.

27. *The Property of the Eye-Glaſs.*

27. But becauſe the Humours of the Eye cannot be hindred from cauſing the uſual Refractions, they muſt neceſſarily ſo refract the Rays which come from every Point of the Object, and which had before a Tendency to unite together, that they will unite before they come at the *Retina*, and then ſeparating again, will impreſs a confuſed Image upon that Tunick. Now the *Eye-Glaſs* is ſo fitly placed between the *Object-Glaſs* and the Place where it would make the Rays meet; that it cauſes thoſe which come from any Point of the Object converging, to become parallel, or rather a little diverging; but yet it does not hinder the Rays which come from different Points, from being as much diſperſed as they were when they croſſed each other in paſſing through the Object-Glaſs. And thus the Refractions neceſſarily made by the

---

[1] *Concave*) There are alſo Teleſcopes conſiſting of two, three, or four convex Glaſſes; Concerning which, ſee *Regis Phyſicks*, *Book* VIII. *Part.* II. *Chap.* xxxix, xl, xli.

Humours of the Eye, inſtead of being injurious, as they were without this Glaſs, become very uſeful with it; for they unite thoſe Rays which this Eye-Glaſs diſperſed; and by this Means the Image which the Object impreſſes on the *Retina* becomes perfectly diſtinct, and at the ſame Time very large. Whence it follows, that the Object is ſeen diſtinctly and [1] ſo much the bigger as the Rays which come from any one of theſe Points, are leſs diverging, and make us think it at a greater Diſtance.

*28. Why theſe Glaſſes, the longer they are, make the Sight ſo much the more obſcure.*

28. The beſt Curvature that can be of the Superficies of Glaſſes for Teleſcopes, is, [2] that of an *Hyperbola*, or any ſuch like Figure, and not the Curvature of a *Sphere*. But Workmen have not yet been able to make their

---

[1] *So much the bigger as the Rays which come from any one of theſe Points are leſs diverging, and make us think it at a greater Diſtance.*) That is, by how much the Rays of every Pencil being leſs diſperſed, make it appear further off. For the further the Object ſeems to be from us, the more do we neceſſarily imagine the Pencils of Rays, which croſs one another as they paſs thro' the Object-Glaſs, to divaricate, that is, the Object ſeems ſo much the bigger.

[2] *That of an Hyperbola, or any ſuch like Figure, &c.*) Cartes took a great deal of Pains about theſe ſort of Figures, and about the manner of poliſhing Glaſſes, but with no great Succeſs. For it is evident, that *Spharical* Glaſſes, as they can be more eaſily and more accurately made, than Elliptical or Hyperbolical ones; ſo are they to be preferred before ſuch upon this Account, becauſe they do more exactly refract the Pencils of Rays which are out of the Axis of the Glaſs. And indeed, it is not to be aſcribed to the Unfitneſs of the Figures of the Glaſſes, but to quite other Cauſes, that Teleſcopes cannot be made abſolutely perfect and compleat. The Two Principal of which Cauſes are theſe.

*Firſt*, The unequal Refraction of the Rays themſelves; (*See the Notes on Chap.* xxvii. *Art.* 52.) by which means neither *the Eye-Glaſs* (which is Convex) can be made of Spheres ſmall enough to magnify the Object; nor the *Object-Glaſs* of a ſufficient Aperture, to render the Object bright and diſtinct, but every Thing will immediately be tinged with Colours, and confounded by the unequal Refraction of the Rays. For the eminent Sir *Iſaac Newton* has ſhown, that the Difference between the Refraction of the leaſt and moſt refrangible Rays, is about the Twenty ſeventh Part of the whole Refraction of the mean refrangible Rays; and that the Focus of the moſt refrangible Rays is nearer to the *Object-Glaſs* than the Focus of the leaſt refrangible ones by about a Twenty ſeventh Part and a Half of the whole Diſtance between the *Object-Glaſs* and the Focus of the mean refrangible Rays. (Opt. p. 74.) And therefore the greateſt Errours which ariſe from *the ſpharical Figure of the Glaſs*, are very much leſs than the Errours which ariſe from the unequal Refraction of the Rays themſelves; nay, in ſome Caſes, the Proportion is as great between them, as 1200 to 1 (pag. 89.) From whence it abuntheir Glaſſes of any other Curvature but that of a Sphere, of which they take ſo ſmall a Part, that it does not ſenſibly differ from an *Hyperbola*. But then there is this Inconvenience attends it, that there does not fall ſo many Rays upon it from any one Point of the Object, as there would do if the Glaſs were larger; and conſequently all the Rays which come from the whole Object, and which ſpread themſelves upon a large Portion of the *Retina*, ſhake but a very few of the Capillaments of the *Optick* Nerve; and this is the Reaſon why we ſee Things more obſcurely, than when we do not uſe ſuch a Glaſs; and the longer ſuch Glaſs is, and the fewer the Rays are which come upon the Pupil from any Point of the Object, ſo much the weaker and more obſcure muſt that Object appear.

---

abundantly appearing, that not *the ſpherical Figure of the Glaſſes,* but the different Refrangibility of the Rays themſelves, is the Cauſe why Teleſcopes have not hitherto been made abſolutely perfect and compleat, and that there can be no Remedy for this Incovenience by any way figuring or poliſhing *refracting Glaſſes;* this excellent Perſon, at length invented, and agreeable to Experiments, propoſed the manner of making a Teleſcope which ſhould cauſe the Object to be ſeen by *Reflexion:* Concerning the Conſtruction and Uſe of which Inſtrument, See Optic. pag. 95.

Secondly, *If the Theory of making Teleſcopes could at length be fully brought into Practice, yet there would be certain Bounds, beyond which Teleſcopes could not perform.* For the Air *through which we look upon the Stars,* is *in* a perpetual Tremor; *as may be ſeen by the tremulous Motion of Shadows caſt from high Towers, and by the twinkling of the fixed Stars. But theſe Stars do not twinkle when viewed through Teleſcopes which have larger Apertures. For the Rays of Light which paſs through diverſe Parts of the Aperture tremble each of them apart, and by means of their various, and ſometimes contrary Tremors, fall at one and the ſame Time upon different Points in the Bottom of the Eye, and their trembling Motions are too quick and confuſed to be perceived ſeverally. And all theſe illuminated Points conſtitute one broad lucid Point, compoſed of thoſe many trembling Points confuſedly and inſenſibly mixed with one another by very ſhort and ſwift Tremors, and thereby cauſe the Star to apear broader than it is, and without any Trembling of the Whole. Long Teleſcopes may cauſe Objects to appear brighter and larger than ſhort ones can do, but they cannot be ſo formed as to take away that Confuſion of the Rays which ariſes from the Tremors of the Atmoſphere. The only Remedy is a moſt ſerene and quiet Air, ſuch as may perhaps be found on the Tops of the higheſt Mountains above the groſſer Clouds.* Newt. Opticks p. 98.

# CHAP. XXXIV.

## *Of Looking-Glaſſes.*

*1. Of the different Sorts of Looking-Glaſſes.* BESIDES plain Looking-Glaſſes, which are every where uſed, there are two other Sorts, *viz.* Convex and Concave ones, not to mention thoſe which are compounded of theſe three Sorts, which are capable of being infinitely diverſify'd.

*2. The common Property of all Sorts of Looking-Glaſſes.* 2. Each Sort of Looking-Glaſſes has indeed its particular Property or Manner of repreſenting the Object; but in this they all agree, that they ſo reflect the Rays of Light, that the Angle of *Incidence* is equal to the Angle of *Reflexion*, and that the reflected Ray is not in the leaſt turned aſide, either to the right Hand or to the Left; that is to ſay, [1] the incident and reflected Rays are always in the ſame Plane which is perpendicular to the Superficies of the Glaſs; whence it follows, that though the viſible Object ſends forth from every Point a Multitude of Rays which are reflected by the whole Superficies of the Glaſs, yet a determinate Number of them only can come to the Eye when it is fixed in a certain Place.

---

[1] *The incident and reflected Rays are always in the ſame Plane which is perpendicular to the Superficies of the Glaſs*) This Property wonderfully perplexed the famous Dr. *Barrow*; *you will not eaſily find any good and clear Account of this Matter amongſt the Writers of* Opticks; *almoſt every Thing that they alledge with relation to it, is either begging the firſt Principle, or elſe labours under ſome incomprehenſible Obſcurity; nor do I much wonder that this ſhould be the Caſe of thoſe who always conſider a Ray of Light as one continued ſtreight Line; which if granted, I can ſcarce believe it poſſible to aſſign any good Reaſon for this Thing. I therefore think that a Ray of Light is not a mere Line, but a Body endued with all the Dimenſions; ſo that it may be cylindrical or priſmatical,* &c. *Lect.* I. *Sect.* 11. But there do not ſeem to be any neceſſity of recurring to the Figure of the Rays; it is all one whether they be cylindrical or priſmatical, whether they be ſolid Bodies or indiviſible Lines. Tab. II. Fig. 6. For let GBL be the Superficies of the Earth (which I ſuppoſe to be plain and ſmooth) A the North, I the South, AB a Ray of Light. Now it is evident, that this Ray of Light is carried with a double Determination, the one AG downwards to the Earth, the other AH directly to the South; the firſt Determination is reſiſted by the Superficies of the Earth, the other is not; the Ray therefore ought to go on directly to the South with this Determination, that is, in a Plane perpendicular to the Superficeies of the Earth; nor can it turn towards the Eaſt in an oblique Plane.

3. This

*3. How a plain Looking-Glaſs makes any one Point in the Object to be ſeen.*

Tab. VII. Fig. 3.

3. This being ſuppoſed, let AB be a plain Looking-Glaſs, by Means of which the Eye C ſees the Object DE; having drawn from any Point at Pleaſure, ſuppoſe D, the Line DIL perpendicular to the Superficies of the Glaſs, we ſhall ſhow that this Point D ought to be ſeen in the Point L of this Perpendicular, ſo that the Diſtance IL, which we imagine it to be at behind the Glaſs, ſhall be equal to the Line ID; [1] for it is eaſy to demonſtrate, that the Rays DF, DG, by which the Point D affect the Senſe, are ſo reflected in the Lines FC, GH, that they enter into the Pupil CH, as if they really came from the Point L; ſo that this diverging of the Rays cauſes the Eye to put it ſelf into ſuch a Shape, as gives occaſion to the Soul to imagine that it ſees the Object really in the Point L.

*4. That the whole Object ought to appear as far beyond a plain Looking-Glaſs as it is placed on this Side of it.*

4. And as the Point D was taken at pleaſure, what has been ſaid concerning that, ought equally to be underſtood of all other Points of the Object; and therefore it is evident, that when we look upon an Object in a plain Looking-Glaſs, *the whole Image ought to appear as far behind the Glaſs, as the Object is placed before it.*

*5. That a plain Looking-Glaſs ought to make the Object appear of its true Bigneſs.*

5. It is further evident, that this Object ought alſo to appear of the ſame Bigneſs, as if it were really placed in LM: For the Space which the Image ſeems to take up, is comprehended between two parallel Lines which are at the ſame Diſtance from each other as the Extremities of the Object are.

*6. That it ought to appear in its true Situation.*

Tab. VII. Fig. 3.

6. Laſtly, This Object ought ſo to appear in the Looking-Glaſs, that the upper Part ſhould be ſeen above, and the right Side on the right Side, and ſo of the reſt. Thus the Part D, which is higher than E being ſeen by the Rays of Incidence DF, DG, and by the reflected Rays FC, GH, which ſeem to come from the Point L; and the lower Part E being ſeen by the Rays of Incidence EN, EO, and by the reflected Rays NC, OH,

---

[1] *For it is eaſy to demonſtrate,* &c.) For the Angle DFI = to the Angle CFB: and the Angle CFB = to the Angle IFL, therefore the Angle DFI = to the Angle IFL; and the Angles at I are right, and the Side IF common. Therefore the Triangles DFI and IFL are ſimilar and equal. In like manner the Triangles DGI and IGL are ſimilar and equal: Therefore the Triangles DGF and FGL are ſimilar and equal. Q. E. D.

Tab. VII. Fig. 3.

which ſeem to come from the Point M; we refer the Senſation which we have of the Point D to the Place L, and that which we have of the Point E to the Place M, which is lower than L.

*7. That it is the ſame Thing whether we look upon the Glaſs with one Eye or with both.*

7. What has been ſaid concerning one Eye, ought equally to be underſtood of the other. And indeed if we ſuppoſe the Spectator principally attentive to look upon the Point L, it will eaſily appear, that his two Optical Axes, will be ſo inclined to each other, that they will ſeem to meet in the Point L. Whence it follows, that the Rays which come from every Point of the Object to enter into one of the Eyes, ſeem to come from the ſame Points beyond the Glaſs, from whence the Rays ſeem to come which cauſe every Point of the Object to be ſeen by the other Eye.

*8. That a convex Looking-Glaſs ought to make the Object appear at a leſs Diſtance behind the Glaſs, than it is on this Side.* Tab. IX, Fig. 1.

8. As to a *convex Looking-Glaſs*, ſuch as that in the Figure repreſented by ABC, by Means of which the Eye D ſees the Object EF, [1] it is eaſy to apprehend, that it ſo reflects the Rays which fall upon it from any Point of the Object, ſuch as EB, EG, that the reflected Rays BD, GH diverge juſt as much as if they really came from the Point I, which is at a much leſs Diſtance behind the Glaſs than the Object is before it: And this is the Reaſon why we ſee the Image much nearer than when we look upon a plain Looking-Glaſs.

*9. That it ought to appear ſmaller.*

9. Further, the Point L from whence the Rays MD, NH, ſeem to come, by which we ſee the Point F, [2] is ſo near the Point I, that IL appears much leſs than EF, that is, a convex Looking-Glaſs makes the Object appear much leſs than it really is.

*10. That it ought to appear in its true Situation.*

10. But though in this a convex and plain Looking-Glaſs differ from each other, yet they agree in another Particular, *viz.* that they both make the Object to be ſeen *in its true Situation*, as appears from hence, that

---

[1] *It is eaſy to apprehend,* &c.) This may eaſily be demonſtrated, if we draw a ſtraight Line BG repreſenting a plain Looking-Glaſs, and compare it (as to the Situation) with the Tangents of the Points B and G. Tab. IX. Fig. 1.

[2] *Is ſo near the Point I,*) There are two Reaſons of this. Firſt, Becauſe the Image in this Glaſs, by reaſon the Rays of every Pencil are more diſperſed, is not ſo far diſtant from the Vertex of the *Angle of Viſion* as in a plain Looking-Glaſs. Secondly, Becauſe this *Angle of Viſion* is therefore leſs, becauſe the Portion of the Glaſs upon which the Rays that are reflected to the Eye, fall, is leſs than in a plain Looking-Glaſs.

the Rays EBD, EGH, by which the Eye ſees the Point E are higher than the Rays FMD, FNH, by which it ſees the Point F, which is the lower Part of it.

*11. Why a concave Looking-Glaſs makes the Object appear at a greater diſtance behind it, than it is at before it.* Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

11. As to Viſion made in looking upon a concave Looking-Glaſs, it may be diverſify'd ſeveral Ways according as the Eye and the Object are in different Poſitions. Let us ſuppoſe a concave ſpherical Looking-Glaſs, whoſe Center is about the Point T; and let us imagine in the firſt Place, that by Means thereof the Eye D ſees the Object EF which is pretty near the Superficies of it. This being ſuppoſed, the Rays EB, EG which come from the Point E, are ſo reflected to the Pupil, that BD, GK diverge but very little, and ſeem to come from the Point H, which is at a much greater diſtance beyond the Glaſs, than the Object is on this Side of it.[1] And this makes us refer the Image of it to a greater diſtance than if we look on a plain Looking-Glaſs, and to a ſtill greater than when we look on a convex Looking-Glaſs.

*12. How it may make the Image to appear in the ſame Situation and much larger than the Object.* Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

12. As to the Rays which come from different Points of the Object, they are in this Caſe ſo reflected, that thoſe which affect the Senſe from the upper Part of the Object, are higher than thoſe which affect the Senſe from the lower Part of it; thus the Rays BD, GK, which cauſe the Senſation of the Point E, are higher than the Rays ID, LK, which cauſe the Senſation of the Point F; and theſe Rays ID, LK, ſeeming when they enter into the Pupil as if they came from the Point M, are the Cauſe of ſeeing the Point F as if it were in M. And becauſe HM is much bigger than EF, it follows that the Object ought not only to appear in its *true Situation*, but alſo *much bigger* than it really is.

*13. How it may make the Image appear inverted.* Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

13. The Rays EN, FO, as they go towards the Glaſs divide more and more from each other; wherefore if they be continued backwards, they muſt meet together ſomewhere in the Point P, and afterwards dividing again that which was uppermoſt, will be lowermoſt, and that which was lowermoſt will be uppermoſt; whence we cannot but conclude, that if an Object be in QR,

---

[1] *And this makes us refer the Image,* &c.) See the *Notes on Chap.* xxxiii. *Art.* 7. for the Caſe of the concave Looking-Glaſs here is the ſame as that of the convex Glaſs there.

it muſt appear *inverted*; but becauſe the Rays which ought to affect the Senſe from any ſingle Point of it, fall in ſuch a manner upon the Superficies of the Glaſs that as they are reflected to the Eye, they croſs one another in ſeveral Places between the Glaſs; and ſo cannot be reunited in one Point upon the *Retina*, therefore the Viſion muſt be very confuſed.

*14. How it may be that the Pupil only can be ſeen.*

14. If the Eye be placed exactly in the Center of a concave Looking-Glaſs, it can ſee nothing but the Pupil; for thoſe Rays only which fall perpendicularly on the ſpherical Superficies, are reflected to the Center; and thoſe Rays only which come from the Center fall perpendicularly upon the Superficies; wherefore the Rays which go from the Pupil and fall upon the whole Superficies of the Glaſs, return from thence to the Eye again, which muſt therefore ſee the Pupil ſpread all over the Glaſs.

*15. How the Object may appear very large.* Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

15. If the Object EF continues in its Place, and the Eye be moved to X, between the Rays BD, GK, prolongued; it is evident, that it will ſtill ſee the Point E by means of ſome of thoſe Rays which it ſaw it by before; but it will not ſee the Point F, by Means of the Rays ID, LK, which came to it from the Part IL of the Looking-Glaſs; inſtead of which, thoſe which fall from F upon Y, and go from thence to X will make the Point F to be ſeen, and conſequently it will ſeem to be ſomewhere in Z, and ſo the Object will appear as large as HZ.

*16. How it may appear abſolutely confuſed.*

16. If the Eye continues in D, and the Object EF be removed backward to P, the Rays which come from every Point of it, and fall upon any Part of the Glaſs as BG, will be leſs diverging than they were before. Wherefore after Reflexion they will become converging, and more diſpoſed to unite, when they enter into the Eye, than they ordinarily are, and ſo muſt really unite before they come at the *Retina*, which will make the Viſion *confuſed*. But it will be ſtill *more confuſed* if the Eye be in that Place where the Rays which come from every Point of the Object meet together again; for theſe Rays at their Entrance into the Eye will begin to be [1] ſe-

---

[1] *Separated by Refraction*) They are ſeparated, not by Refraction, but merely by receding from the Point where they croſs each other.

parated by Refraction, and will be ſeparated more and more by the Humours of it.

17. *Another Reaſon of its appearing confuſed.*

17. If the Object remain in P, and the Eye be removed a little from the Place where the Rays which come from every Point of the Object reunite, the Rays when they enter into the Pupil, will diverge too much; wherefore becauſe the Eye cannot lengthen it ſelf enough, the Object will *appear confuſed* here alſo.

18. *How the Object may be ſeen between the Eye and the concave Looking-Glaſs.*

18. But if the Eye be moved ſo far backward from that Place where the Rays reunite, that the Rays which enter into it, be not too much diverging, the Viſion ought then to be *diſtinct*; and what is here very remarkable, and the moſt ſurprizing Effect of a concave Looking-Glaſs, is this; that becauſe we are accuſtomed to refer our Senſation to the Place from whence the Rays which affect the Eye from every Point of the Object ſeem to come, therefore *the Image muſt appear between the Glaſs and the Eye*; ſo that if a drawn Sword be preſented before the Glaſs, we ſhall ſee the Blade come out from the Glaſs, and grow longer and longer as we approach nearer to it; becauſe the Rays which come from every Point of the Object, the nearer it is, are the leſs inclined to each other after Reflexion, and therefore meet together at ſo much the greater Diſtance.[1]

19. It

---

[1] The Phænomena of a concave Looking-Glaſs, may be very properly reduced to five Caſes.

Firſt, Let *the Arrow or the Candle EF be near the Glaſs.* Now becauſe the Pencils EBGKD, FILKD do not croſs each other, whereſoever the Eye be placed, whether it be near or at a diſtance; therefore the Image HM ought always to appear erect. And becauſe the Rays of thoſe Pencils are reflected, not converging to each other, but only leſs diverging, therefore the Candle ought to appear to be at a certain Diſtance beyond the Glaſs.

Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

Secondly, Let *the Candle be in the very Center T.* Then becauſe all the Rays fall perpendicularly upon the Glaſs, they muſt neceſſarily be all reflected to the Center it ſelf; therefore whereever the Eye is placed, out of the Center or any of the Lines tending to the Center, it is evident, that it cannot ſee the Candle at all in the Glaſs.

Tab. IX. Fig. 2.

Thirdly, Let *the Eye be in the Center T.* Then becauſe no Rays but thoſe which fall perpendicularly are reflected to the Center; therefore the Eye can ſee nothing but its own Image ſpread all over the Glaſs.

Fourthly, Let *the Candle QR be further diſtant from the Glaſs, and the Eye KD further diſtant alſo.* Then becauſe the Pencils QO, RN, croſs each other, it is evident, that the

19. *That Objects do not paint their Images on the Superficies of Looking-Glaſſes.*

19. It may be obſerved here, that they have been very much miſtaken, who have affirmed, *that viſible Objects paint their Images upon the Superficies of Looking-Glaſſes*; for every Thing there is ſo confuſed, that there is no one Part of the Glaſs but receives Rays from all Parts of the Object at the ſame Time; and indeed it is certain that all Objects which we ſee by the Help of a Looking-Glaſs, do not impreſs their Image any where elſe but on the Bottom of the Eye, unleſs when we ſee them by Means of a concave Looking-Glaſs, under the Circumſtances mentioned in the foregoing Articles; and in that Caſe it is certain, that the Image impreſſed by the Image of the Candle ought to appear inverted to the Eye KD. Tab. IX. Fig. 2. And becauſe the Rays of every Pencil are reflected converging, and after meeting ſomewhere in a Focus, go from thence diverging to the Eye; therefore the Image will not appear beyond the Glaſs, but on this Side of it, in that Focus. So likewiſe, *in another Figure*, becauſe the Pencils GD, BC croſs each other, it is evident, that the Image of the Candle GB ought to appear inverted to the Eye in Q; Tab.XVII. Fig. 3. and alſo on this Side the Glaſs, and not beyond it, becauſe the Rays of every Pencil croſs one another in a Focus, as was before explained. But why in this Caſe we ſhould not imagine it to be very near, (unleſs we look *very intently* upon it) when it is really very near, See *the Notes on Chap.* xxxiii. *Art.* 12. for the Caſe is the ſame here as in the Perſpective Glaſs there.

Fifthly, Let *the Candle GB be at ſome Diſtance from the Glaſs, and the Eye M very near it.* Then becauſe the Candle GB is ſeen by other Pencils GHM, BCM which do not croſs each other; Tab.XVII. Fig. 3. it is manifeſt, that the Image of GB ought to appear erect again, but more confuſed.

But in this Caſe it is particularly to be obſerved, that the Eye M hath no way to judge either in what Place, or at what Diſtance behind the Glaſs the Image of the Candle ought to appear; Tab.XVII. Fig. 5. for ſince the Rays of every Pencil converge towards each other, that is, do not come from any given Point, but as it were from an infinite Diſtance, to enter into the Eye; and ſince thoſe reflected Rays BM, SM do not meet with their reſpective Perpendiculars of Incidence DT, FL, (from which meeting the Place of the Image is always determined) there remains nothing to judge of the Diſtance of the Image by but mere Prejudice.

It was very ill therefore in * *Tacquet*, after he had ſo well demonſtrated under this Head; *that the reflected Image in any Looking-Glaſs is always ſeen in the Place where the reflected Rays meet with their Cathetus of Incidence*, (*the Cathetus of Incidence* is a Line drawn from any Point in the Object perpendicular to the Glaſs) to except this laſt Caſe as contradicting this Axiom; whereas it is no ways contradictory to it. For when the Eye is in ſuch a Poſition, as to receive the reflected Rays before they meet with their Catheti of Incidence, the Image cannot be ſeen where they meet, becauſe they don't meet any where; neither is it ſeen in any other certain Place; but it affects the Eye as if it came from an infinite Diſtance; in the ſame manner as when the Rays come converging out of a Perſpective-Glaſs. *See the Notes on Chap.* xxxiii. *Art.* 7.

---

* Catropticks Book III. Prop. 30.

the Object, is not upon the Superficies of the Glaſs, but in the Air, in the Place where we imagine we ſee the Object, and where the Rays which come from every Part of it, are united after Reflexion.[1]

---

[1] Beſides ſuch Looking-Glaſſes, where we look upon one Superficies only, we may alſo conſider Perſpective-Glaſſes, or certain clear Glaſſes, as Looking-Glaſſes conſiſting of two Superficies; according to the Variety of which, there is alſo a wonderful Variety of reflected Images. For not only the firſt Superficies which receives the incident Rays out of Air, but alſo the ſecond Superficies which receives the Rays going out of Glaſs into Air, exhibits a reflected Image, as may be ſeen by placing a Candle before ſuch a Glaſs.

Firſt then, let a Candle be placed before a Glaſs which is plain on both Sides; then the Images reflected by each Superficies, will both be ſeen erect and exactly like each other, excepting only, that That which is reflected by the farther Superficies will ſeem a little more obſcure, becauſe a great many of the Rays have already been reflected by the firſt Superficies.

Secondly, Let the Glaſs be plain on the one Side, and convex on the other, then if the Candle be placed before the convex Superficies, the Image will be reflected erect by each Superficies (unleſs the Glaſs be of ſuch a Thickneſs, and the Fore-ſide of it ſo convex, that the Rays in paſſing through it are made converging, and after having been reflected by the plain Superficies, and paſſing a ſecond Time through the convex Side, meet in a Focus before they come to the Eye; in which Caſe the Image from the latter plain Superficies will be ſeen inverted) but that which is from the firſt and convex Superficies, will appear leſs. But if the Candle be placed before the plain Superficies, then the Image reflected from the firſt Superficies will be erect again, and that from the further Superficies, which is concave within, will be reflected inverted, and will alſo ſeem to be much nearer to the Eye, than that from the firſt and plain Superficies.

Thirdly, Let the Glaſs be plain on one Side, and concave on the other. Then if the Candle be placed before the concave Superficies, the Image reflected from the firſt Superficies will be inverted, and that from the further one, erect. But if the Candle be placed before the plain Superficies, the Images reflected from each Superficies will be erect, but that from the further one, which is convex within, will appear leſs.

Fourthly, Let the Glaſs be concave on one Side, and convex on the other. Then if the Candle be placed before the concave Superficies, the Images by each Superficies will be inverted; but if before the convex Side, they will be both erect.

Fifthly, Let the Glaſs be convex on both Sides. Then the Image of the Candle placed before it, will always be reflected erect by the firſt Superficies; and always inverted by the other Superficies, which is concave within.

Laſtly, Let the Glaſs be concave on both Sides. Then the Image of the Candle placed before it, will always be reflected by the firſt Superficies inverted, and always erect by the latter which is convex within.

## CHAP. XXXV.

### *A Solution of ſome Problems concerning Viſion.*

*1. Of the Rays which we ſee dart upwards and downwards from a Candle.*

THOUGH I have been very large upon this Subject of Viſion, yet I doubt not but that I have paſſed over a great many curious Queſtions, the Solution of which, may perhaps be ſomewhat difficult to thoſe who are not well acquainted with our manner of Explication. That this Treatiſe therefore may be as little defective as poſſible, and to ſhow the Uſefulneſs of it, I ſhall here propoſe ſome of theſe Sort of Queries; and leave the Excellency, at leaſt the *Truth* of our Hypotheſis to be judged of, by ſeeing how eaſy it is to reſolve them. And Firſt, I ask; *Whence it is, that when we look upon a lighted Candle at a little Diſtance with our Eyes winking, there ſeem to come Rays of Light from the Flame of the Candle, and dart upwards and downwards into the Air? And whence is it alſo, that if an opake Body be put between the Eye and the Place where we ſee the uppermoſt Rays, we ſtill continue to ſee them, and on the contrary, ceaſe to ſee the lowermoſt Rays?* In order to underſtand the Reaſon of theſe Phænomena, let us conſider the Eye A, the Eye-lids of which H, I, are ſo near each other, that there is only a very narrow Paſſage left, through which the Rays which come from the Candle BCD paſs to impreſs its Image on the Part of the *Retina* EFG in the manner above explained: Further, it is to be obſerved, that the Parts H and I (which are uſed to touch one another when the Eye is cloſe ſhut,) are ſo ſmooth, that they reſemble [1] two ſmall convex Looking-Glaſſes, which reflect the Rays of Light falling upon them, towards

Tab. IX. Fig. 3.

---

[1] *Two ſmall convex Looking-Glaſſes*) The Rays in this Caſe, are not reflected by the inward Superficies of the Eye-lids themſelves, in the manner of Looking-Glaſſes, but are refracted by the Humour which ſticks to the out-ſide of them; in explaining all the reſt of this Phænomenon, the Reaſon is the ſame.

wards the *Retina*, to the Parts of it EK, FL, which otherwiſe would not have been affected but by Objects which are about BM and CN. Wherefore the Impreſſion made upon EK cauſe the Appearance of bright Rays, which we refer to the Place BM, and the Impreſſion made on GL cauſe the Appearance of the Rays which we imagine to be in CN. But that which is moſt worthy of Obſervation here, is, that the Part of the Flame B, which illuminates the lower Eye-lid I by Rays which are reflected to the upper Part of the *Retina* LG, cauſe the Appearance of the lower Rays CN; wherefore if an opake Body OP be put between the Eye and upper Part of the Flame, we ſhall ceaſe to ſee the lower Rays, and continue to ſee the upper ones, becauſe they are ſeen by Means of the Rays CH, which come from the Bottom of the Flame, and which are not intercepted. And all the Difference that we ſhall find in theſe upper Rays, is this; that whereas before they ſeemed to be in BM, they will now ſeem to be on this Side the opake Body OP. But when the Eye is open as uſual, that is, when the Eyelids come no nearer than S and T, we ought not to ſee theſe Rays of Light; becauſe the Rays which fall upon thoſe Places which we now compared to Looking-Glaſſes, enter but a little Way into the *aqueous Humour* at furtheſt, and are hindred from going any further by the *Uveous Tunick*.

*2. Of a Fire-brand turned round.*

2. *Whence is it that when a Fire-brand is turned round, we ſee a Circle of Fire through which it paſſed?* The Reaſon of this, is, becauſe the Fire-brand makes a circular Impreſſion upon the *Retina*, and the Motion of it being very quick, ſome of the Impreſſion made at firſt remains till it returns again.

*3. That the Senſe of Seeing continues ſome time.*

3. From this Phænomenon we may draw this Concluſion, that though Viſion is made in an Inſtant, it does however continue ſome ſhort Space of Time.

*4. Why we cannot at all ſee ſome Bodies which move very quick.*

4. *Whence is it that a Cannon-Ball, or any other black Body, paſſing very quick before a white Wall, cannot be perceived at all?* The Reaſon is, becauſe a black Body making no Impreſſion upon the Eye; the Ball interrupts the Rays of Light reflected from the Wall, ſo very little, that the Motion which theſe Rays excited in the Eye juſt before, is continued in it for ſo ſhort a Time.

*5. Why ſome Perſons can ſee Objects diſtinctly, at a certain Diſtance only.*

5. *Why do ſome Perſons ſee diſtinctly at a certain Diſtance only, and ſee confuſedly at a greater or leſſer Diſtance?* It is [1] becauſe they are ſo accuſtomed to look at that Diſtance, that the Muſcles by which the Figure of the Eye is altered, are grown ſtiff, and uncapable of performing their Office; in the ſame manner as the other Muſcles of the Body are uncapable of moving the Members of it, if they have not been exerciſed for a long Time. To which we may add; that the Tunicks which contain the three Humours of the Eye, are ſo hardened, that they will not ſo eaſily yield as before.

*6. Of Viſion through a Hole made with a Needle.*

6. *Whence is it that an Object which appears confuſed, when we look at it too near, may be ſeen very diſtinctly at the ſame Diſtance through a Hole made with a Needle in a fine Card, or a Piece of Paper?* The Reaſon is, becauſe the Eye then receiving a leſs Quantity of Rays from every Point of the Object, each of them paints its Image but upon a very ſmall Space, ſo that they which come from two neighbouring Points, do not confound each other's Actions. [2]

7. *Whence*

---

[1] *Becauſe they are ſo accuſtomed*, &c.) This often happens to ſome particular Sort of Workmen, as Engravers, *&c.* and ought to be look'd upon as a particular Sort of Diſtemper.

[2] It may alſo here be enquired; *Why a very ſmall opake Body ſuſpended in the Middle of an Hole between the Eye and a great many Lights, is multiplied ſo, as to be ſeen before every Light?* The Reaſon is, becauſe the Rays croſs one another in that Hole, and are intercepted by the ſmall opake Body. Let us imagine GHILN to be the Eye, PEDFQ the ſmall Hole in the Paper, HD the ſmall opake Body ſuſpended in the Middle of the Hole; and A, B, C, three Candles. This being ſuppoſed, the Body H D will intercept the Ray BO; then the Shadow of that Body will fall on O, and therefore the Body it ſelf will be ſeen in B; ſo likewiſe it will intercept the Ray AX; ſo that its Shadow will fall upon X, and therefore it will be ſeen in A. Laſtly, it will alſo intercept the Ray CY, whoſe Shadow will fall on Y, and therefore it will be ſeen in C. Neither is it neceſſary that an opake Body ſhould be ſuſpended in a Hole at all: For ſince the Rays that come from a great many lucid Bodies, croſs one another in the *Tunica Cornea*, if you fix your Eyes upon a Fire of burning Coals, and put a very ſlender Iron-rod cloſe to your Eye, it will be greatly multiplied, and ſeen as it were before every Coal.

Tab. VI.

Secondly, *Why an Object is ſeen double when looked at with one Eye through two Holes made in a Paper cloſe to each other?* In order to account for this Effect, it is to be obſerved, that the Objects are never ſeen double, but when all the Rays of the ſame Pencil, meet together before they come to the Bottom of the Eye, or after they are paſſed beyond it. In order to have theſe Rays meet together before

7. *Whence is it that thoſe who have been couched for Cataracts, can ſee but confuſedly afterwards, and why do they want very large convex Glaſſes in order to ſee diſtinctly?* Before we reſolve this Queſtion, it is to be obſerved, that a Cataract is not a Pearly Subſtance formed between the Aqueous and Chryſtalline Humours, as has been long imagined, but is an Alteration made in the Chryſtalline Humour it ſelf, which has thereby intirely loſt its Tranſparency and is become opake, if not through the whole Subſtance of it, yet at leaſt in ſome Part of it; which may very eaſily be, for this Humour is compoſed of a great many Membranes one upon another, which become viſible when it is boiled. Whence

*7. Why they who have been couched of Cataracts want large magnifying-Glaſſes.*

---

fore they arrive at the Bottom of the Eye, let us ſuppoſe CDE to be the Pupil of a young deep Eye, the middle Part of which D is covered by the ſmall Interſtice between the Holes of the Paper; and let OQNPR be the Bottom of the Eye. Now becauſe this opake Body intercepts a great many of the Rays, and for that Reaſon makes all the Pencils hollow, that is, without any Rays in the Middle of them, it is evident that the Point A is ſeen in the Place marked 2 by the extreme Rays HR, and a few others near them, and in the Place marked 3 by the Rays HQ, HN, whereas, otherwiſe it would have been ſeen only confuſedly in A by the middle Rays P, and thoſe which ſurround them. And becauſe the ſame Thing happens in every other Point of the Arrow, it ſhows that it ought ſo to appear double, that when the right Hole DE of the opake Body which covers the Pupil is ſtopped, the left Image OQ, and the Arrow on the right Side diſappear; and if the left Hole be ſtopped, the right Image and left Arrow diſappear. But if on the other Hand, we ſuppoſe the Eye to be old and flat, ſo that the Bottom of it is not OQNPR, but very near GYH, and that the Rays of every Pencil arrive at the Bottom of the Eye before they are collected into a Point, the Arrow will be ſeen double again, but ſo that the Images of it upon ſtopping the Holes by Turns, will diſappear in the contrary manner to what they did before. Further, by the ſame Argument we may collect, that if there be a great many Holes inſtead of Two, there ought to be a great many Images of the Object ſeen. Laſtly, Why the Body which appears double in this manner, appears to be edged with Colours alſo, may be ſeen in the *Notes on Chap.* xxvii. *Art. 65. towards the End.*

Tab. X.

Thirdly, *Why, if there be two Candles A and B ſo placed, that through the Hole S, only the Candle A can be ſeen with the right Eye F, and only the Candle B with the left Eye D; when both the Eyes are open together, is there one Candle only ſeen, as if it were in H; but the Candles muſt be both of the ſame Heighth, and at the ſame Time no opake Bodies muſt be ſeen with which the true Places of the Candles A and B may be compared?* The Reaſon hereof, is, That becauſe one Candle only can be ſeen by each Eye; and one Eye only makes a very bad Judgement of the true Diſtance of Objects; each of theſe Candles are therefore ſeen nearer than it really is, the one in the Line AF, and the other in the Line BD, and therefore they ſeem both to unite in the common Place H as if they were but one.

it follows, that when the Cataract is taken away, the whole Chryſtalline Humour is taken away, or at leaſt, is made flatter or leſs convex than it was before: Now if this Humour be leſs convex than it was before, the Rays which the Eye receives from every Point of the Object will not be ſo much refracted, or will not incline ſo much to each other, as to be able to unite together when they come at the *Retina*; and this muſt make the Viſion confuſed. But this may be remedied by the Help of a very convex Glaſs, which makes the Rays that were before diverging, become converging when they enter into the Eye.

8. *Why we ſee confuſedly, when we are under Water.*

8. *Why do Divers, when they are under Water, ſee all Things confuſedly, unleſs they make uſe of very convex Glaſſes?* The Reaſon is, becauſe the Rays of Light which come to them from the Object, are very little refracted in paſſing out of Water into the Aqueous Humour of the Eye, ſo that thoſe Rays which come from the ſame Point, are not united together when they fall upon the *Retina*; and this is remedied by very convex Glaſſes.

23 JY 63

9. *Why if we look intently with one Eye upon a ſmall Object, we cannot ſee another ſmall Object which is very near it.*

9. *Laſtly, Whence is it, that if we ſhut one Eye, and look intently with the other, upon a ſmall Object, which is at ſix Foot Diſtance, ſuppoſe, we cannot at the ſame Time ſee another ſmall Object which is at a little more than half a Foot Diſtance from it; though we can ſee it, if it be a little nearer, or a little further off?* The Reaſon is, becauſe when this other ſmall Object is at the Place where it cannot be ſeen, it impreſſes the Image exactly on that Part of the Bottom of the Eye where the *Optick* Nerve enters in, and where the Separation of the Capillaments of this Nerve is made, in order to ſpread themſelves every Way, and cover the Bottom of the Eye; ſo that this Image has no Effect, becauſe it does not fall upon the Extremities of the Capillaments of the *Optick* Nerve, which is neceſſary in order to Sight, as has been before explained.

10. *That it is ſometimes worth while to take the Pains to find out the Truth.*

10. There are innumerable other Queſtions upon this Subject that might be asked; but they who rightly underſtand the *Nature of Viſion*, will find it no great Difficulty to reſolve themſelves, and the Pains which they take in finding out the Solution of them, will make them have a clearer Notion of them, and render them more familiar: And as to thoſe who are unca-

pable of underſtanding them, or who will not be at any Pains; it is to no purpoſe to attempt to ſatisfy them, by explaining a great Number of Queſtions. Wherefore I ſhall here conclude this firſt Part; which is ſufficient to content all reaſonable Perſons, and to open the Minds of ſuch, that they may for the future proceed in a right Method of diſcovering the Truth, and avoiding Error, which are the Two Things we ought principally to have in View in all humane Sciences. For the Exactneſs and Improvement of Reaſon, together with ſuch a Freedom and Openeſs of Mind, as may render it capable of judging ſincerely and impartially, and of clearing it ſelf of all Difficulties, are incomparably more to be valued than the Knowledge of all the Sciences in the World.

*The End of the Firſt Part.*

BOOKS

## BOOKS *Written by the Reverend Dr.* SAMUEL CLARKE; *And Printed for* JAMES KNAPTON, *at the* CROWN *in St.* PAUL's-CHURCH-YARD.

23 JY 63

A Diſcourſe concerning the *Being and Attributes of God*, the Obligations of Natural Religion, and the Truth and Certainty of the *Chriſtian Revelation*: In Anſwer to Mr. *Hobb's*, *Spinoza*, the *Author of the Oracles of Reaſon*, and other Deniers of Natural and Revealed Religion. Being ſixteen Sermons Preached at the Cathedral-Church of St. *Paul*, in the Years 1704 and 1705, at the Lecture Founded by the Honourable *Robert Boyle*, Eſq; *The fifth Edition, Corrected.* There are added in this Edition, ſeveral Letters to Dr. *Clarke* from a Gentleman in *Glouceſterſhire*, relating to the firſt Volume; with the *Doctor*'s Anſwers. Price 6 *s*.

A Paraphraſe on the four *Evangeliſts*. Wherein, for the clearer Underſtanding the Sacred Hiſtory, the whole Text and Paraphraſe are Printed in ſeparate Columns over-againſt each other. Together with critical Notes on the more difficult Paſſages. Very uſeful for Families. In two Vols. *The Fourth Edition*, 8*vo*. pr. 12 *s*.

Three Practical Eſſays on Baptiſm, Confirmation, and Repentance: Containing full Inſtructions for a holy Life, with earneſt Exhortations, eſpecially to young Perſons, drawn from the Conſideration of the Severity of the Diſcipline of the Primitive-Church. The *Fourth* Edition. Pr. 1 *s*. and for the Encouragement of the Charitable, 116 for 5 *l*. bound.

A Letter to Mr. *Dodwell*; wherein all the Arguments in his *Epiſtolary Diſcourſe* againſt the Immortality of the Soul, are particularly anſwered, and the Judgment of *the Fathers* concerning that Matter truly repreſented. Together with *Four* Letters in Anſwer to the Author of *Remarks* on the Letter to Mr. *Dodwell*. To which is added, ſome Reflections on that Part of a Book called *Amyntor*, or the Defenſe of *Milton*'s Life, which relates to the Writings of the Primitive Fathers, and the Canon of the New-Teſtament. *The Fifth Edition*. pr. 4 *s*.

A Collection of Papers, which paſſed between the late Learned Mr. *Leibnitz*, and Dr. *Clarke*, in the Years 1715 and 1716; relating to the Principles of Natural Philoſophy and Religion. With an Appendix. To which are added, Letters to Dr. *Clarke* concerning Liberty and Neceſſity; from a Gentleman of the Univerſity of *Cambridge*, with the Doctor's Anſwers to them. Alſo Remarks upon a Book, Entitul'd, A Philoſophical Enquiry concerning human Liberty.

Six Sermons on ſeveral Occaſions.

Jacobi Rohaulti Phyſica. Latine vertit, recenſuit, & uberioribus jam Annotationibus ex illuſtriſſimi *Iſaaci Newtoni* Philoſophia maximam partem hauſtis, amplificavit & ornavit *S. Clarke*, S. T. P. Accedunt etiam in hac Quarta Editione, novæ aliquot Tabulæ æri inciſæ; & Annotationes multum ſunt auctæ, 8*vo.* pret. 8*s.*

*Iſ. Newtoni* Optice. Latinè reddidit *S. Clarke*, S. T. P.

C. Julii Cæſaris que extant, accuratiſſime cum Libris editis & MSS. optimis collata, *&c.* Acceſſerunt Annotationes *S. Clarke.* S. T. P.

The *Scripture-Doctrine* of the Trinity. In three Parts: Wherein *all* the *Texts* in the New Teſtament relating to that Doctrine, and the principal Paſſages in the Liturgy of the Church of *England*, are collected, compared, and explained. The *Second Edition.* pr. 6*s.*

A Letter to the Reverend Dr. *Wells*, Rector of *Coteſbach* in *Leiceſterſhire.* In Anſwer to his Remarks, *&c.* price 1*s.*

A Reply to the Objections of *Robert Nelſon*, Eſq; and of an Anonymous Author, againſt Dr. *Clarke*'s Scripture-Doctrine of the Trinity; being a Commentary upon *Forty* ſelect Texts of Scripture. To which is added, an Anſwer to the Remarks of the Author of ſome Conſiderations concerning the Trinity, and the Ways of managing that Controverſy, in 8*vo.* pr. 4*s.*

### *Books written by* J. Clarke, D. D. *Chaplain to his Majeſty.*

An Enquiry into the Cauſe and Origin of Evil: In which the Principal Phænomena of Nature are explained, according to the true Principles of Philoſophy; more particularly in Anſwer to Mr. *Bayle*, and other Defenders of the Antient *Manichæan* Scheme, of two independent Principles. Being the Subſtance of Eight Sermons preached in the Year 1719, at the Lecture founded by the Honourable *Robert Boyle*, Eſq;

An Enquiry into the Cauſe and Origin of Moral Evil. In which the preſent State and Condition of Mankind is conſidered and explained, upon the true Principles of Morality and Revelation; and the Objections of the Antient and Modern Defenders of the *Manichæan* Scheme, particularly Mr. *Bayle*, fully anſwered. Being the Subſtance of Eight Sermons preached in the Year 1720, at the Lecture founded by the Honourable *Robert Boyle*, Eſq;

The Truth of the Chriſtian Religion. In Six Books by *Hugo Grotius.* Corrected and illuſtrated with Notes, by Mr. *le Clerc.* To which is added, a Seventh Book, concerning this Queſtion, *What Chriſtian Church we ought to join our ſelves to?* Tranſlated by Dr. *John Clarke.* The Second Edition, with Additions.

## *BOOKS Written by the Right Reverend Father in God,* BENJAMIN HOADLY, D. D. *Lord Biſhop of* HEREFORD.

THE Reaſonableneſs of Conformity to the Church of *England.* To which is added, the brief *Defenſe* of *Epiſcopal Ordination. The Third Edition. price* 6 *s.*

The Original and Inſtitution of *Civil Government,* diſcuſſed. *The Second Edition. price* 5 *s.*

Eighteen Diſcourſes concerning the *Terms of Acceptance* with *God. The Second Edition. price* 5 *s.*

Several Tracts formerly publiſhed: Now collected into one Volume. To which are added Six Sermons never before publiſhed, 8*vo. price* 6 *s.*

The *Meaſures* of *Submiſſion* to the Civil Magiſtrate *conſidered.* The Fifth Edition. *price* 3*s.*

A Preſervative againſt the Principles and Practices of the Nonjurors, *&c.* The Fifth Edition. *pr.* 1*s.*

The Nature of the Kingdom or Church of Chriſt: A Sermon preached before the King, *March* 31. 1717. The Fifteenth Edition. *pr.* 4*d.*

An Anſwer to the Reverend Dr. *Snape*'s Letter. *pr.* 6 *d.*

An Anſwer to the Repreſentation drawn up by the *Committee* of the Lower Houſe of Convocation, concerning ſeveral dangerous Poſitions and Doctrines contained in the Biſhop of *Bangor*'s Preſervative and Sermon. *The Second Edition. price* 4 *s.*

An Anſwer to a Calumny caſt upon the Biſhop of *Bangor*, by the Reverend Dr. *Sherlock*, at the Concluſion of his Book entituled, *A Vindication of the Corporation and Teſt Acts*, &c. *pr.* 3 *d.*

An Anſwer to a late Book written by the Reverend Dr. *Sherlock*, entituled, *The Condition and Example of our Bleſſed Saviour vindicated. pr.* 1 *s.*

The common Rights of Subjects, defended: And the Nature of the *Sacramental Teſt*, conſidered. In Anſwer to *the Dean* of *Chicheſter*'s Vindication of the *Corporation* and *Teſt Acts. pr.* 3 *s.* 6 *d.*

An Anſwer to the Reverend Dr. *Hare*'s Sermon: with a Poſtſcript occaſioned by the Lord Biſhop of *Oxford*'s late Charge to his Clergy.

Six Sermons on ſeveral Occaſions.

---

The Works of *William Chillingworth*, M. A. of the Univerſity of *Oxford.* Containing his Book, Entituled, *The Religion of Proteſtants a ſafe Way to Salvation:* Together with his Nine Sermons preached before the King, or upon eminent Occaſions. His Letter to Mr. *Lewgar*, &c. The Seventh Edition, compared with all the Editions now extant, and made more correct than any of the former. In this Edition are added, *Two Letters* written by the Author *W. Chillingworth, M. A.* never before printed.

TAB. I.

Fig. 1.

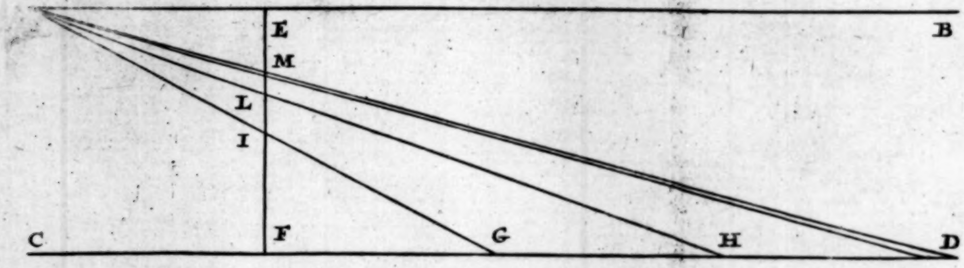


Fig. 6.

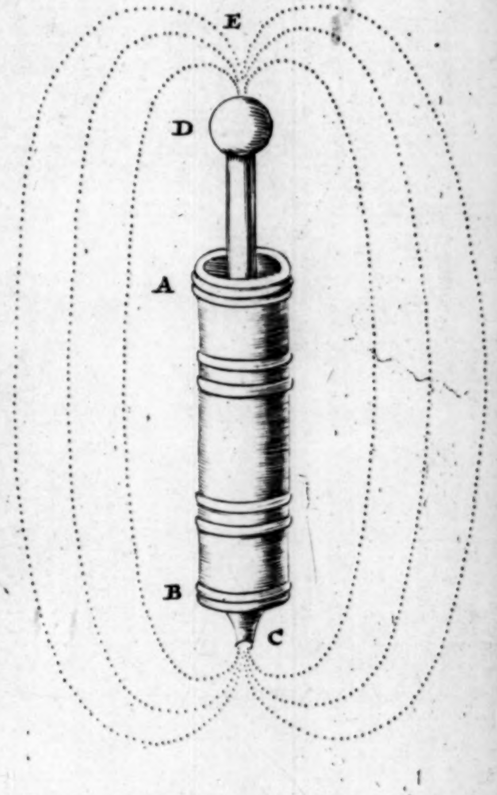


Fig. 3.

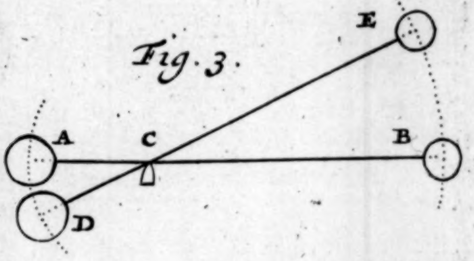


Fig. 2.

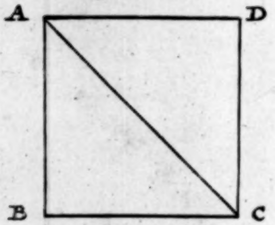


Fig. 4.

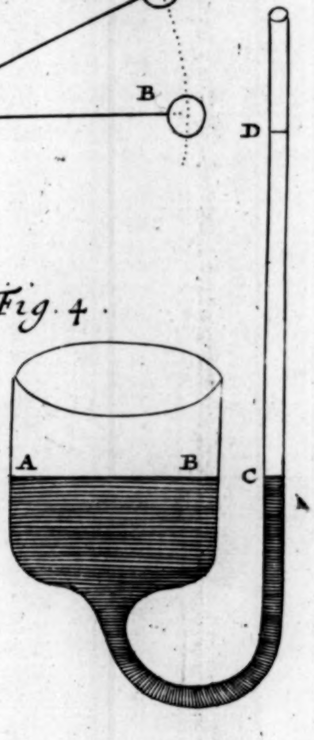


Fig. 5

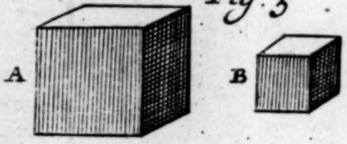
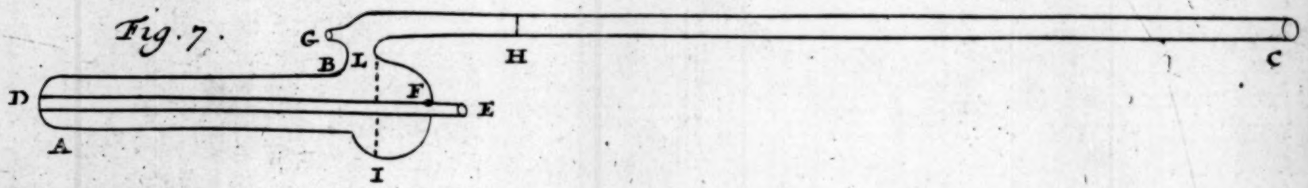


Fig. 7.



TAB. II.

Fig. 1.

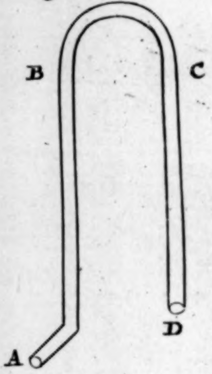


Fig. 2.

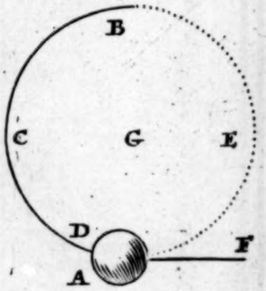


Fig. 6

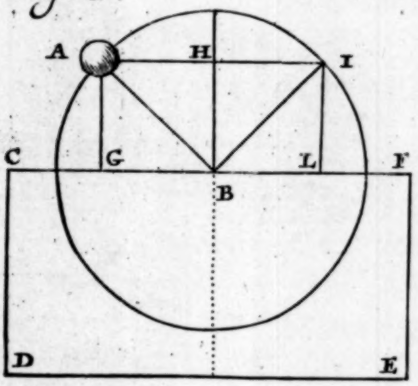
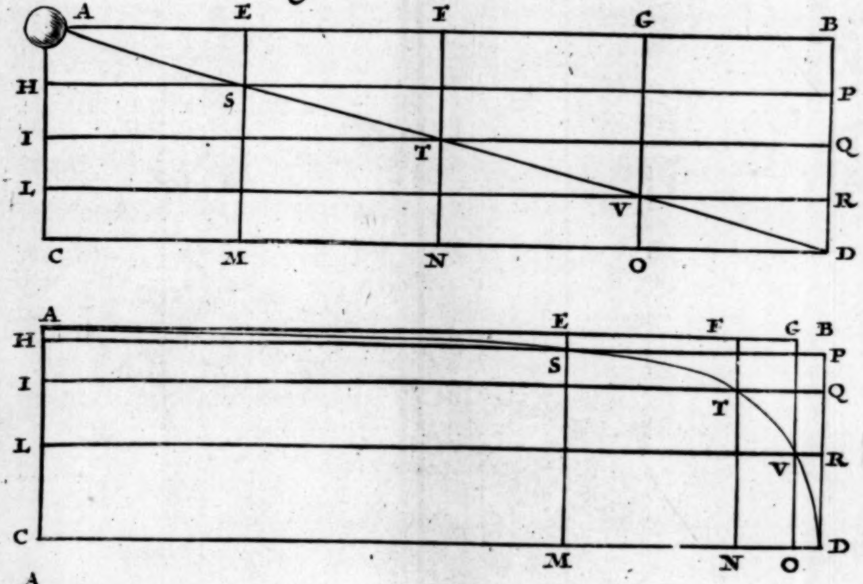


Fig. 3.



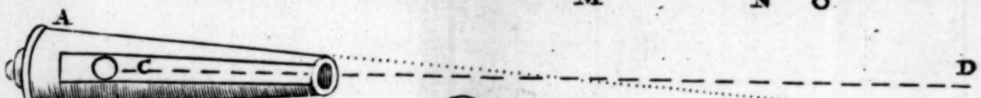


Fig. 4

Fig. 5.

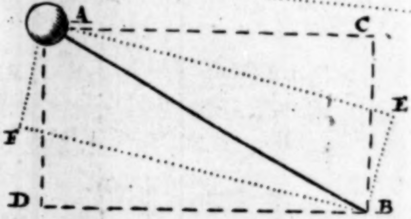


Fig. 1.

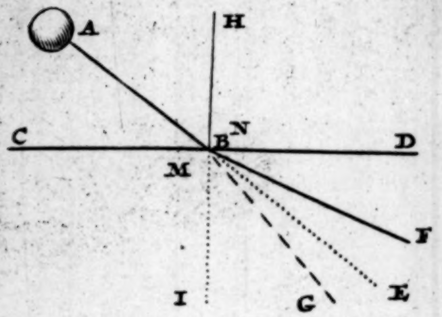


Fig. 2.

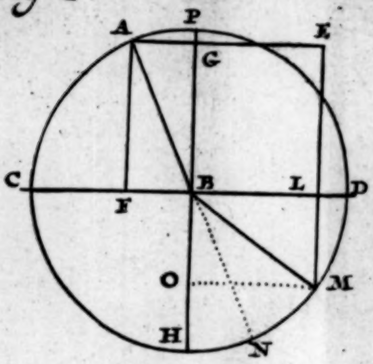


Fig. 3.

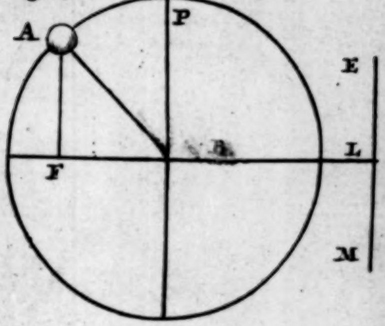


Fig. 4.

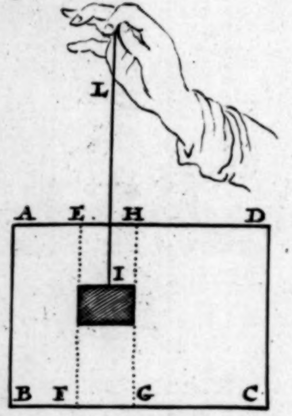


Fig. 5.

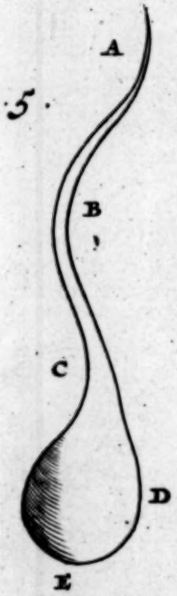


Fig. 6.

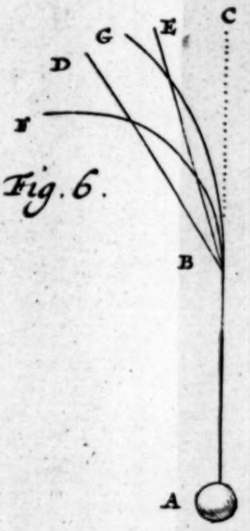


Fig. 7.

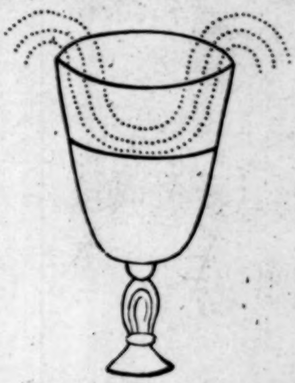


Fig. 8.

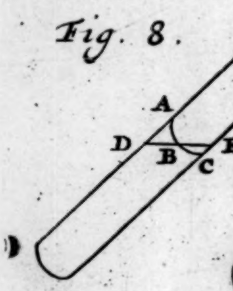


Fig. 9.

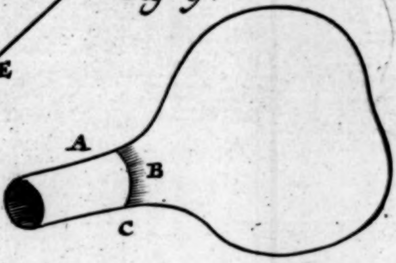
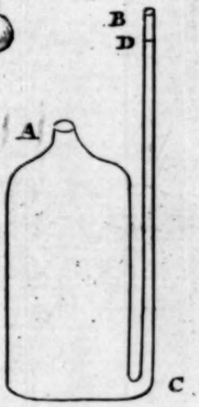


Fig. 10.



# TAB. IV.

Fig. 1.

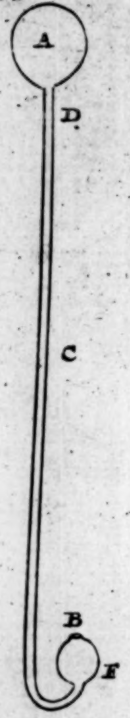


Fig. 2.

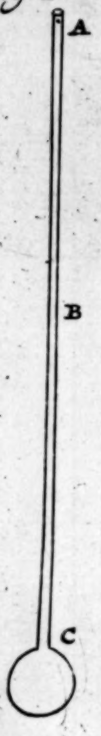


Fig. 3.

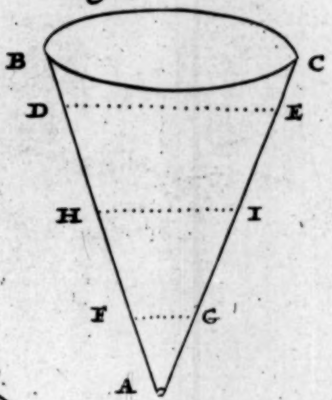


Fig. 4.

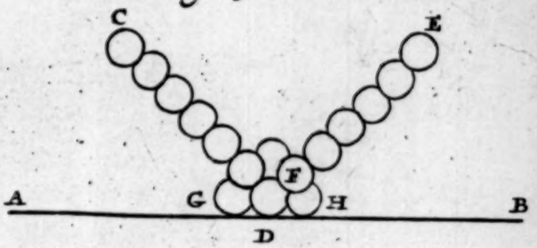


Fig. 5.

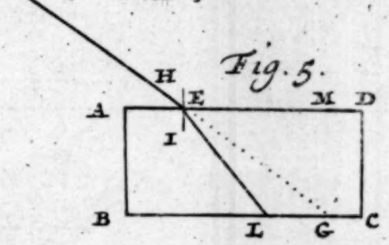


Fig. 6.

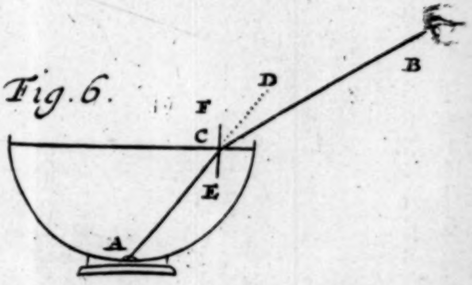


Fig. 9.

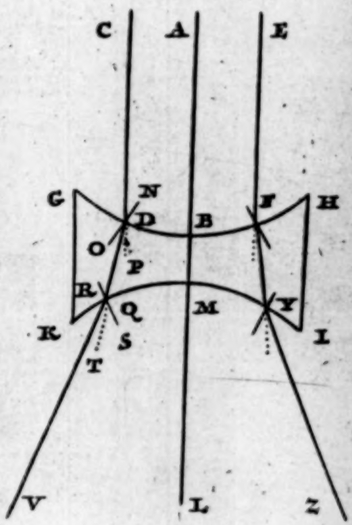


Fig. 8.

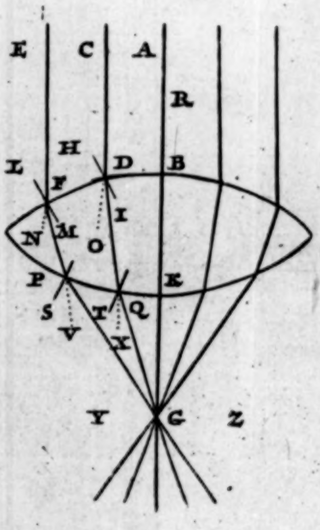
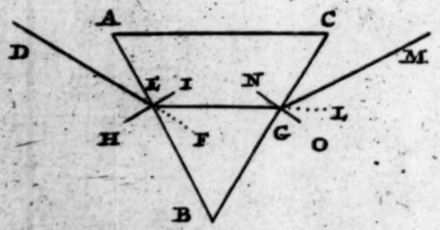


Fig. 7.



TAB. V.

Fig. 1.

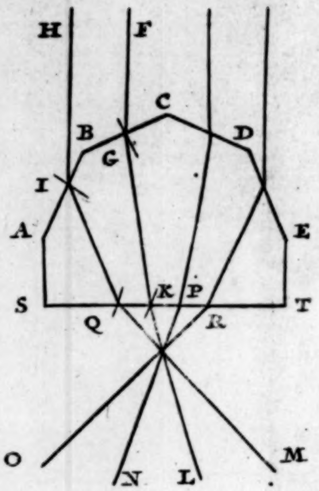


Fig. 2.

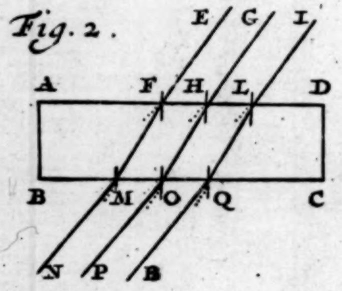


Fig. 3.

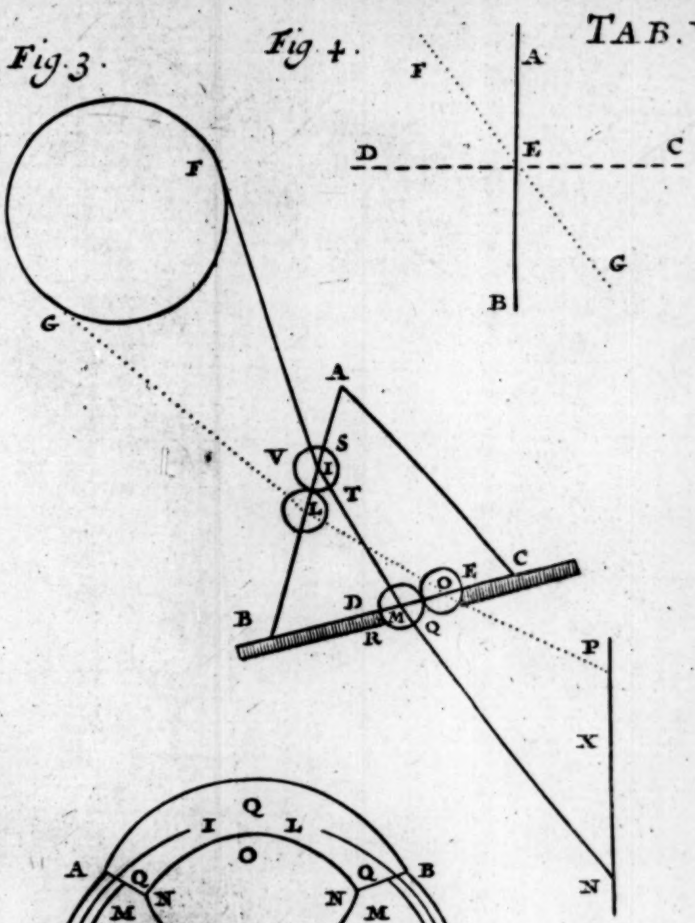
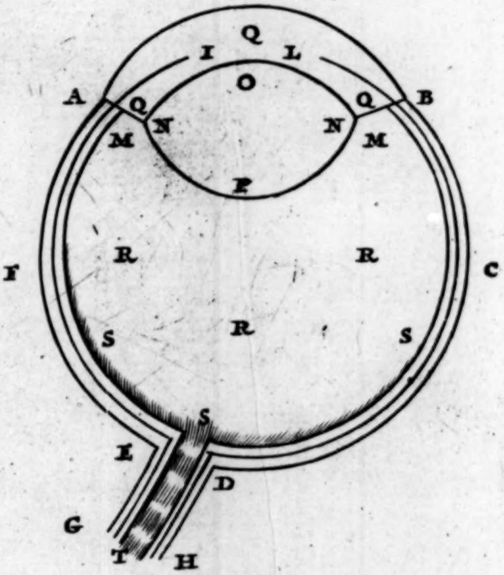
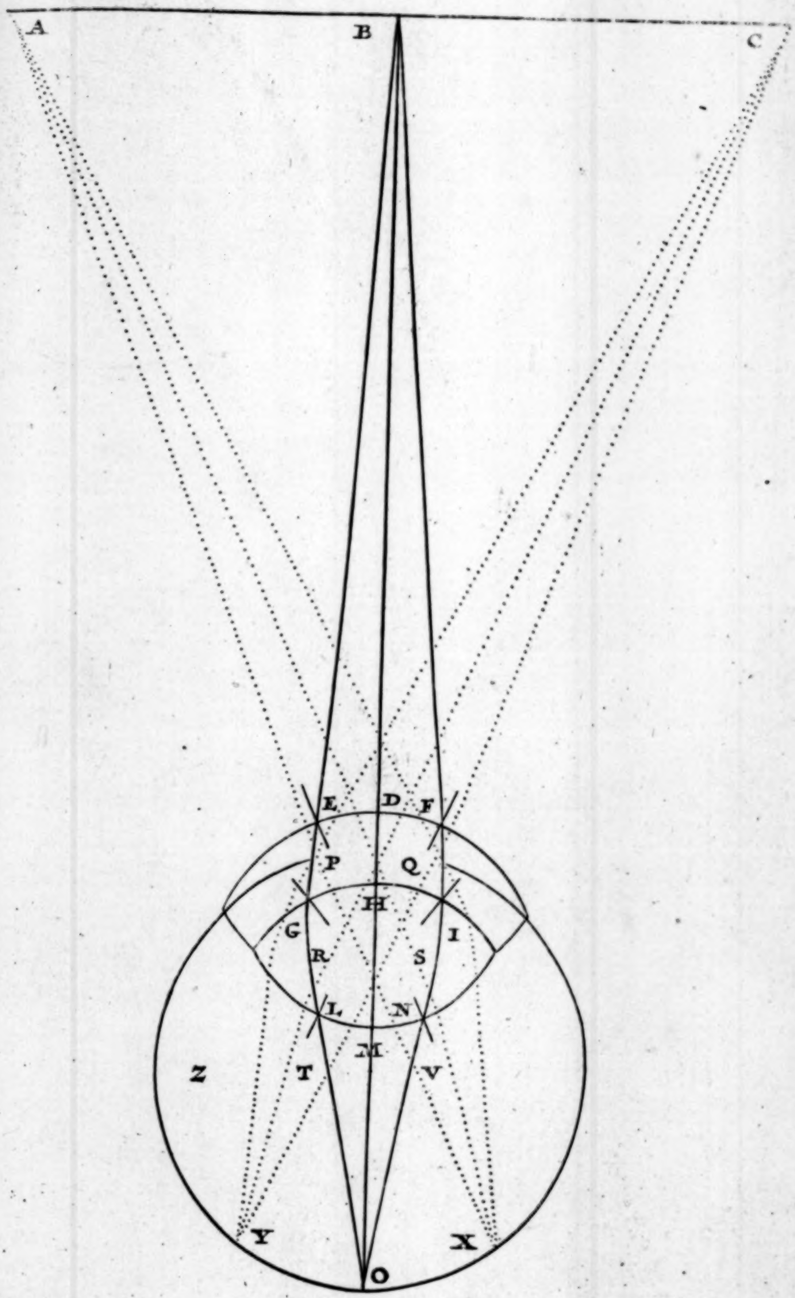


Fig. 4.

Fig. 5.




A
B
C
E
D
F
P
Q
H
G
I
R
S
L
N
M
Z
T
V
Y
X
O

TAB. VII.

Fig. 1.

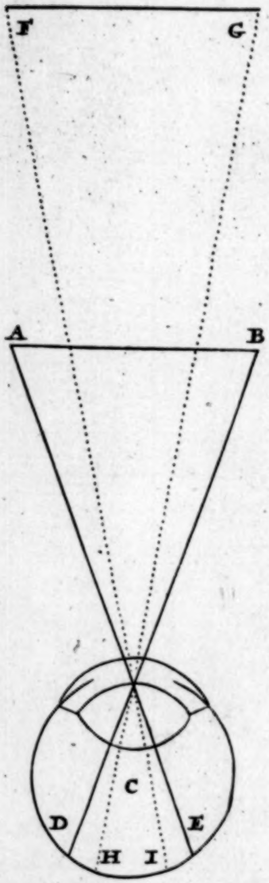
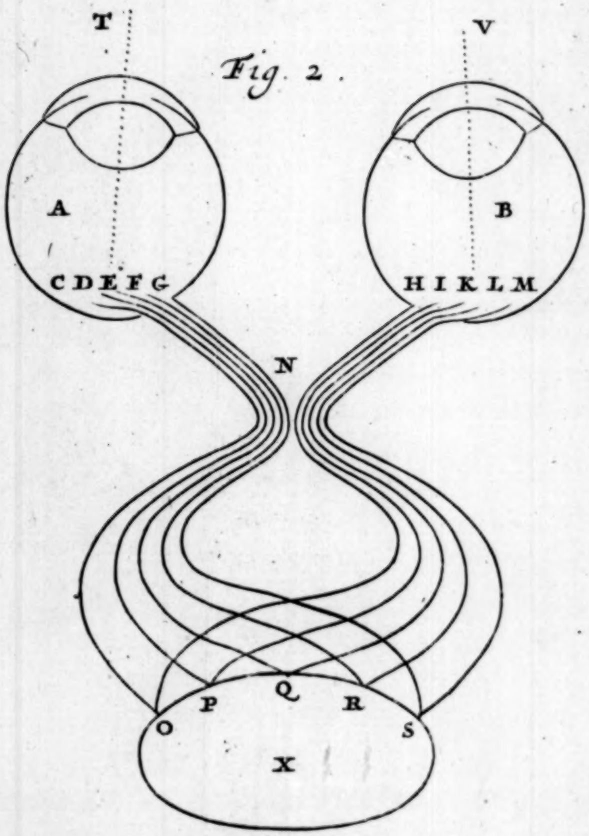


Fig. 2.



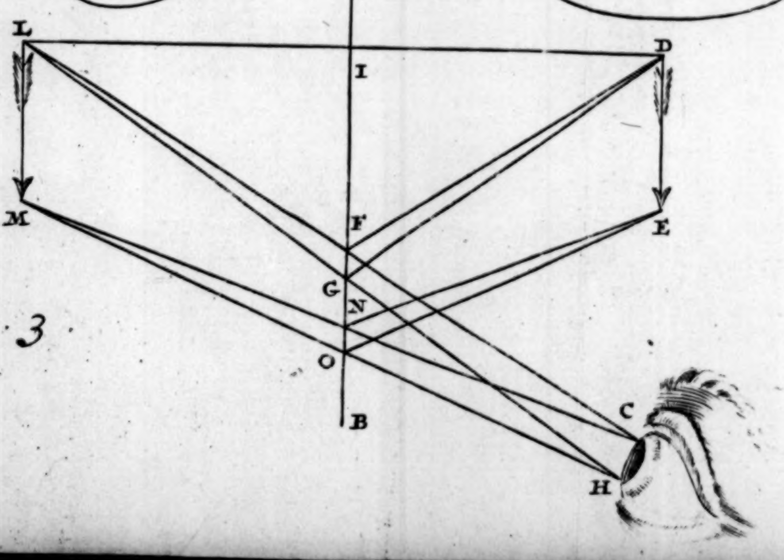
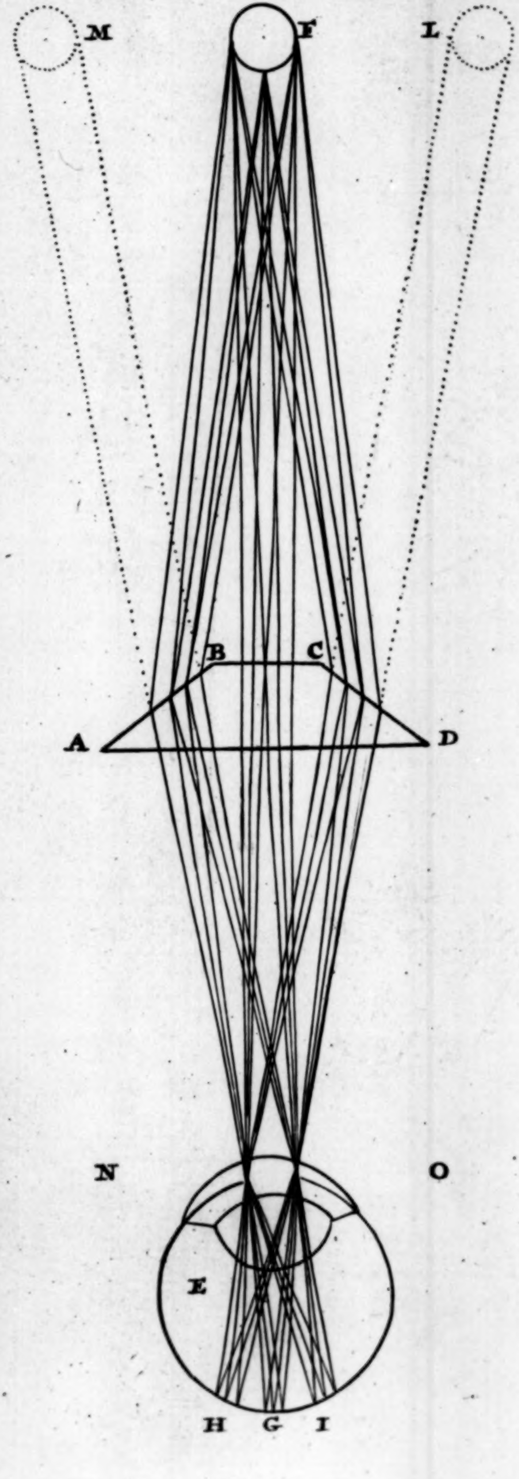


Fig. 3.

VIII .



# TAB. IX.

Fig 1.

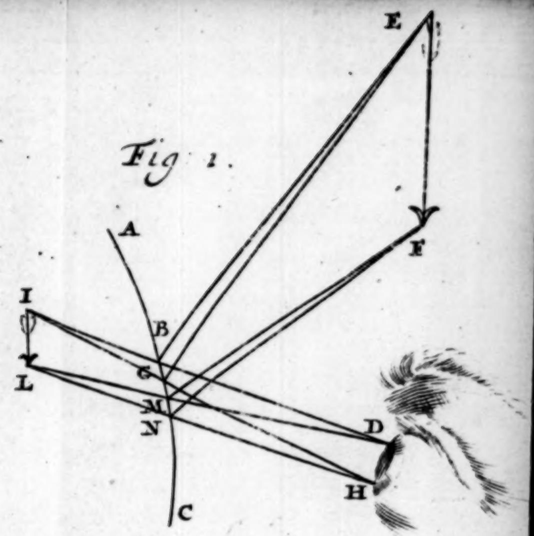


Fig 3

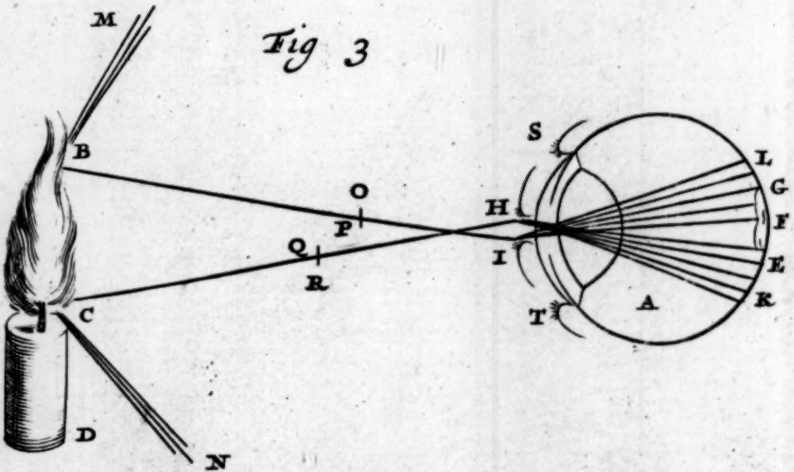
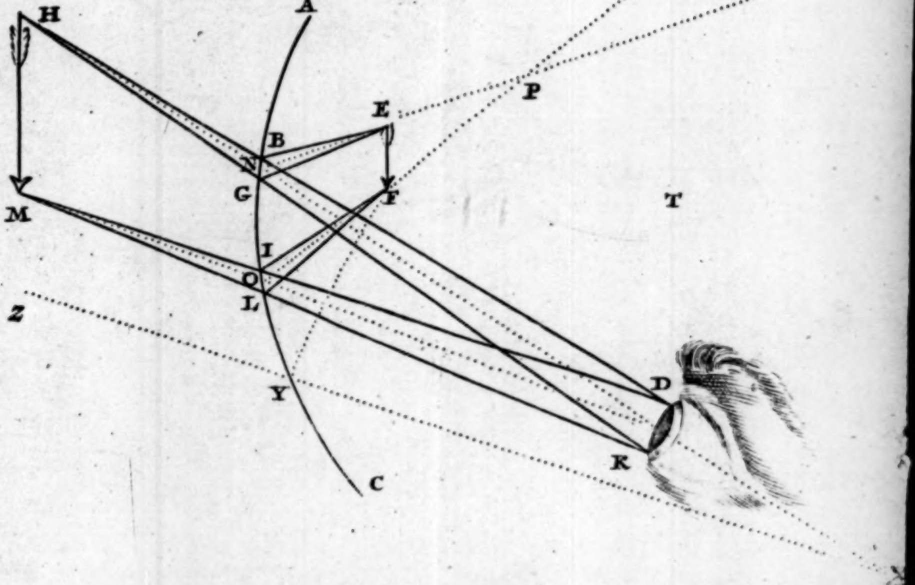
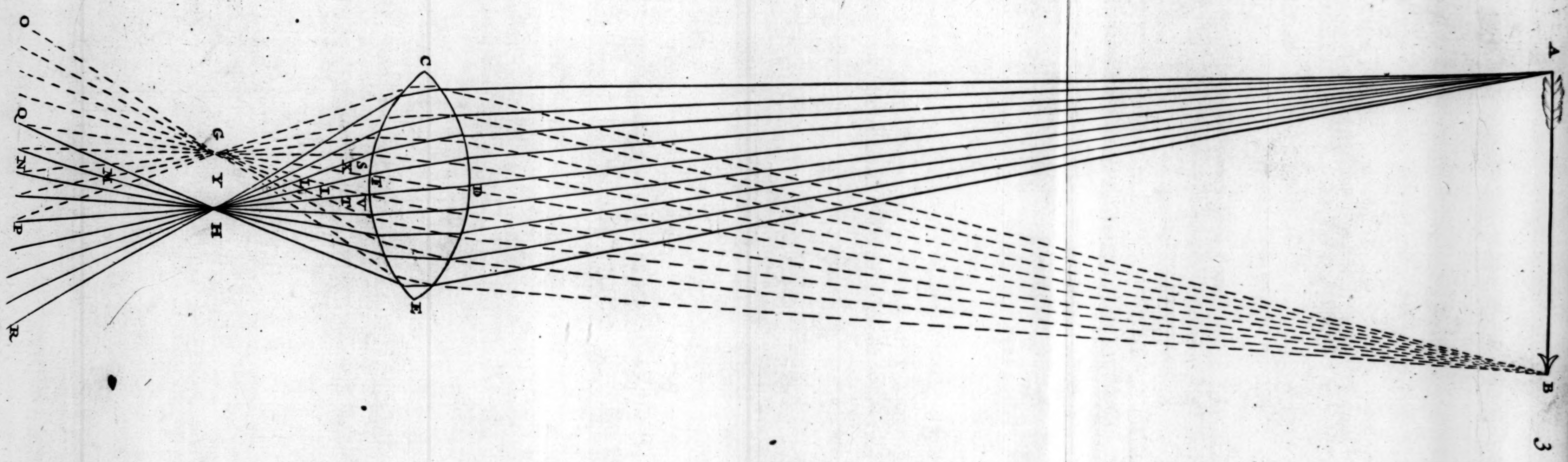


Fig: 2



TAB. X.



TAB. XI.